CHART

Of part of the SOUTH

Tracts and Discoveries

His Majestys

Dolphin, Commodore Byron & Tamer

Dolphin, Captain Wallis, and Swallo

AND

Endeavour, Lieutenant C

CHINA
COCHIN CHINA
PHILIPINE ISLES
LADRONE ISLES
Bashee I.s
Lu-conia
Timian
MINDANAO
Var: 4. 34 E.
BORNEO
CELEBES
GILOLO
Var: 2. 30 E.
St Andrews I.s
Currant I
Pa dangerous Shoal
Jo.s Freewills I.
Var: 4. 17 E.
Banca
SUMATRA
Straits of Sunda
Batavia
JAVA
Oct. 1770
Jan.y 26 1771
Lieut. Cooks Track
Var: 3. 30 W.
Var: 2. 30 W.
Savu
Rotto
TIMOR
Var: 1. 30 W.
Var: 0. 0 E.
Aroe
Tunerlaut
NEW GUINEA
Var: 2. 30 E.
Walsh
ENDEAVOURS STRAIT
Prince of Wales I.
York I.s
York Cape
Shelburne Bay
Cape Grenville
Providential Channels
Direction
Cape Bedford
Endeavour R.
Cape Tribulation
Trinity Bay
Var: 3. 35 E.
Cape Grafton
Cape Sunbiche
Rockingham Bay
Palm I.s
Halifax Bay
Cape Cleveland
Cape Gloucester
Edgcumbe Bay
Repulse Bay
Cumberland I.s
Cape Conway
Hillsborough
Northumberland I.s
Cape Upstart
Cape Manifold
Cape Capricorn
Keppel Bay
Var: 6. 28 E.
Bustard Bay
Sandy Cape
Harveys Bay
Wide Bay
Glass House Bay
Cape Morton
Mount Warning
Cape Byron
Solitary Isles
Smoaks Cape
Cape Hawke
Var: 9. 16 E.
Port Stephens
Port Jackson
Botany Bay
Banks
Solander
Cape St George
Batemans Bay
Cape Dromedary
Cape Howe
Point Hicks
Var: 8. 7 E.
Apr: 1. 1770
Lieut. Cooks Track
Var: 13. 30 E.
Apr: 6. 1770
Var: 15. 15 E.
Diemens Land discovered 1642
NEW SOUTH WALES
HOLLAND
NEW ZEELAND
Commodore Byrons & Capt.n Moutats Track
Byrons I.
Capt.n Wallis's Track
Admiralty I.s
New Hanover
New Ireland
Var: 6. 25 E.
Var: 6. 30 E.
Dampier
Byron
Var: 8. 30 E.
Covers I
Carters I
Volcano
Var: 6. 30 E.
L. Egmonts I.
Q. Charlottes I.
Capt.n Carterets Track
L.t of Danger
Manicola
or Espiritu Santo of Quiros
Dis.c 1618
Arnheim.t
Dirks Hartogs Land
C.e Inscription
Cape Inscription
Cape Flattery
Endeavour R.
Swains Isles
Providence I.
Duke of Yorks I.
Queen Charlotte's Sound
Admiralty Bay
Arrowsmith I.
Motuara I.
Anamocha
Amsterdam
Ist Start
Var: 8. 36 E.
Lieut. Cooks Track
Var: 16. 40 E.
Gulf of Carpentaria
C.e Van Diemen
Mount Cambier
Sandy Cape
Bof Islands
Cape Brett
Bream Bay
Barrier
Cape Colvill
Mercury Bay
Bof Plenty
Cape East
Poverty Bay
Table Cape
Hawkes Bay
Cape Kidnapper
Cape Turnagain
Cape Palliser
Cape Campbell
Var: 11. 16 E.
False Bay
Cape Egmont
Mount Egmont
C. Farewell
Cape Foulwind
Cascade Point
Var: 11. 30 E.
Doubtfull H.
Banks I.s
Var: 11. 30 E.
CAPE WEST
Solanders Isle
Mauna
Cape Saunders
Var: 16. 16 E.
CAPE SOUTH
The Traps
Var: 16. 24 E.
The Land of Peter Nuyts Disc.d Jan.o 1627.
The Land of Lyons Disc.d in 1622
Edels Land Disc.d 1619
De Wits Land discover.d 1629
The Land of Endracht Disc.d 1616
Sharks Bay

NOTE

The shaded Lands are new Discoveries except a part of the West side of New Zeeland which was seen by Tasman in 1642. Those without shade are copied from Charts

* Places where the Longitude is settled by Astronomical Observations

West Longitude from the Meridian of Greenwich.

CHART

of part of the SOUTH SEA, shewing the Tracts and Discoveries made by His Majestys Ships

Dolphin, Commodore Byron & Tamer, Capt.n Mouat, 1765.

Dolphin, Captain Wallis, and Swallow Capt.n Carteret, 1767.

AND

Endeavour Lieutenant Cooke 1769.

NOTE

The shaded Lands are new Discoveries except a part of the West side of New Zeeland which was seen by Tasman in 1642. Those without shade are copied from Charts

* *Places where the Longitude is settled by Astronomical Observations*

West Longitude from the Meridian of Greenwich.

AN

ACCOUNT

Eliza OF THE Blood

VOYAGES

UNDERTAKEN BY THE ORDER OF

HIS PRESENT MAJESTY,

FOR MAKING

Discoveries in the Southern Hemisphere,

AND SUCCESSIVELY PERFORMED BY

COMMODORE BYRON,
CAPTAIN WALLIS,
CAPTAIN CARTERET,
And CAPTAIN COOK,

In the DOLPHIN, the SWALLOW, and the ENDEAVOUR:

Drawn up from the JOURNALS which were kept by the several Commanders, and from the Papers of JOSEPH BANKS, Esq.

BY JOHN HAWKESWORTH, L.L.D.

To which is added,

A VOYAGE to the NORTH POLE.

By COMMODORE PHIPPS.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

Illustrated with CHARTS and elegant COPPER-PLATES.

VOL. II.

DUBLIN:

Printed for JAMES WILLIAMS, No 21. Skinner Row.

MDCC LXXV.



Swinderby Wood

1790

Kwith preceding

A

VOYAGE

TOWARDS

THE NORTH POLE:

UNDERTAKEN

BY HIS MAJESTY'S COMMAND,

1773.

BY CONSTANTINE JOHN PHIPPS.

DUBLIN:
Printed for JAMES WILLIAMS, No. 21, Skinner-Row.
M, DCC, LXXV.



TO

THE KING.

SIRE,

AS a Sea Officer addreſſing Your MAJESTY on a profeſſional Subject, I might juſtly be accuſed of ſingular Ingratitude, did I not avail myſelf of this Opportunity of reminding the World, that the Voyage to explore how far Navigation was practicable towards the North Pole was undertaken at a Period peculiarly diſtinguiſhed by Your MAJESTY's gracious Attention to Your Navy.

In a Time of profound Peace Your MAJESTY, by a liberal Addition to the Half Pay of the Captains, relieved the Neceſſities of many, and gratified the Ambition of all, at once demonſtrating Your MAJESTY's Regard to their Welfare, and the Remembrance of their Services.

The Armament, which followed in a few Months, and Your MAJESTY's Review of that Armament, which, by the Diſpatch of its Equipment, had prevented a War, afforded to Your Navy the moſt flattering and diſtinguiſhed Mark of Royal Favour, and to Your MAJESTY an additional Proof of that Alacrity for Your Service, which had ſo recently received both its Reward and Encouragement from Your MAJESTY's Protection.

Permit me, SIRE, to add, that Your MAJESTY's gracious Approbation of my Endeavours, and the Permiſſion I have been honoured with, of inſcribing the following Account of them to Your MAJESTY, are ſtrong Proofs of that Indulgence with which Your MAJESTY receives every Attempt to promote Your Service. —— An Indulgence, which, at the ſame Time that it cannot fail of animating the Zeal of others more worthy of Your MAJESTY's Notice, has added to the moſt devoted Attachment, the warmeſt Gratitude of,

SIRE,

Your MAJESTY's moſt dutiful

Subject and Servant,

2 JY 61

CONSTANTINE JOHN PHIPPS.

INTRODUCTION.

THE Idea of a paſſage to the Eaſt Indies by the North Pole was ſuggeſted as early as the year 1527, by Robert Thorne, merchant, of Briſtol, as appears from two papers preſerved by Hackluit; the one addreſſed to king Henry VIII. the other to Dr. Ley, the king's ambaſſador to Charles V. In that addreſſed to the king he ſays, "I know it to be my "bounden duty to manifeſt this ſecret to your Grace, "which hitherto, I ſuppoſe, has been hid." This ſecret appears to be the honour and advantage which would be derived from the diſcovery of a paſſage by the North Pole. He repreſents in the ſtrongeſt terms the glory which the kings of Spain and Portugal had obtained by their diſcoveries Eaſt and Weſt, and exhorts the king to emulate their fame by undertaking diſcoveries towards the North. He ſtates in a very maſterly ſtyle the reputation that muſt attend the attempt, and the great benefits, ſhould it be crowned with ſucceſs, likely to accrue to the ſubjects of this country, from their advantageous ſituation; which, he obſerves, ſeems to make the exploring this, the only hitherto undiſcovered part, the king's peculiar duty.

To remove any objection to the undertaking which might be drawn from the ſuppoſed danger, he inſiſts upon "the great advantages of conſtant day-light in "ſeas, that, men ſay, without great danger, diffi-"culty, and peril, yea, rather, it is impoſſible to "paſs; for they being paſt this little way which

" they named ſo dangerous (which may be two or " three leagues before they come to the Pole, and as " much more after they paſs the Pole) it is clear " from thenceforth the ſeas and lands are as tempe- " rate as in theſe parts."

In the paper addreſſed to Dr. Ley he enters more minutely into the advantages and practicability of the undertaking. Amongſt many other arguments to prove the value of the diſcovery, he urges, that by ſailing northward and paſſing the Pole, the navigation from England to the Spice Iſlands would be ſhorter, by more than two thouſand leagues, than either from Spain by the Straits of Magellan, or Portugal by the Cape of Good Hope; and to ſhew the likelihood of ſucceſs in the enterpize he ſays, it is as probable that the coſmographers ſhould be miſtaken in the opinion they entertained of the polar regions being impaſſible from extreme cold, as, it has been found, they were, in ſuppoſing the countries under the Line to be uninhabitable from exceſſive heat. With all the ſpirit of a man convinced of the glory to be gained, and the probability of ſucceſs in the undertaking, he adds,— " God knoweth, that though by it I ſhould have no " great intereſt, yet I have had, and ſtill have, no " little mind of this buſineſs: ſo that if I had faculty " to my will, it ſhould be the firſt thing that I would " underſtand, even to attempt, *If our ſeas North-* " *ward be navigable to the Pole or no.*" Notwithſtanding the many good arguments, with which he ſupported his propoſition, and the offer of his own ſervices, it does not appear that he prevailed ſo far as to procure an attempt to be made.

Borne, in his *Regiment of the Sea*, written about the year 1577, mentions this as one of the five ways to Cathay, and dwells chiefly on the mildneſs of climate which he imagines muſt be found near the Pole, from the conſtant preſence of the ſun during the ſummer. Theſe arguments, however, were ſoon after controverted by Blundeville, in his Treatiſe on Univerſal Maps.

In 1578, George Beſt, a gentleman who had been with Sir Martin Frobiſher in all his voyages for the diſcovery of the North Weſt paſſage, wrote a very ingenious

ingenious diſcourſe, to prove all parts of the world habitable.

No voyage, however, appears to have been undertaken to explore the circumpoplar ſeas, till the year 1607, when "Henry Hudſon was ſet forth, at the "charge of certain worſhipful merchants of Lon-"don, to diſcover a paſſage by the North Pole to "Japan and China." He ſailed from Graveſend on the firſt of May, in a ſhip called the Hopewell, having with him ten men and a boy. I have taken great pains to find his original journal, as well as thoſe of ſome others of the adventurers who followed him; but without ſucceſs: the only account I have ſeen is an imperfect abridgment in Purchas, by which it is not poſſible to lay down his track; from which, however, I have drawn the following particulars:—He fell in with the land to the Weſtward in latitude 73°, on the twenty-firſt of June, which he named Hold-with-Hope. The twenty-ſeventh, he fell in with Spitſbergen, and met with much ice; he got to eighty degrees twenty-three minutes, which was the Northermoſt latitude he obſerved in. Giving an account of the concluſion of his diſcoveries, he ſays, "On "the ſixteenth of Auguſt I ſaw land, by reaſon of "the clearneſs of the weather, *ſtretching far into "eighty-two degrees*, and, by the bowing and ſhew-"ing of the ſky, much farther; which, when I firſt "ſaw, I hoped to have had a free ſea between the "land and the ice, and meant to have compaſſed this "land by the North; but now finding it was impoſ-"ſible, by means of the abundance of ice compaſ-"ſing us about by the North, and joining to the land; "and ſeeing God did bleſs us with a wind, we re-"turned, bearing up the helm." He afterwards adds: "And this I can aſſure at this preſent, that "between ſeventy-eight degrees and an half, and "eighty-two degrees, by this way there is no paſ-"ſage."—In conſequence of this opinion, he was the next year employed on the North Eaſt diſcovery.

In March 1609, old ſtyle, "A voyage was ſet "forth by the right worſhipful Sir Thomas Smith, "and the reſt of the Muſcovy Company, to Cherry "Iſland, and for a further diſcovery to be made to-

" wards the North Pole, for the likelihood of a trade " or a paſſage that way, in the ſhip called the Amity, " of burthen ſeventy tuns, in which Jonas Poole was " maſter, having fourteen men and one boy."—He weighed from Blackwall, March the firſt, old ſtyle; and after great ſeverity of weather, and much difficulty from the ice, he made the South part of Spitſbergen on the 16th of May. He ſailed along and ſounded the coaſt, giving names to ſeveral places, and making many very accurate obſervations. On the 26th, being near Fair Foreland, he ſent his mate on ſhore;—and, ſpeaking of the account he gave at his return, ſays, " Moreover, I was certified that all " the ponds and lakes were unfrozen, they being " freſh water; which putteth me in hope of a mild " ſummer here, after ſo ſharp a beginning as I have " had; and my opinion is ſuch, and I aſſure myſelf " it is ſo, that a paſſage may be as ſoon attained this " way by the Pole, as any unknown way whatſoe- " ver, by reaſon the ſon doth give a great heat in " this climate, and the ice (I mean that freezeth " here) is nothing ſo huge as I have ſeen in ſeventy- " three degrees."

Theſe hopes, however, he was ſoon obliged to relinquiſh for that year, having twice attempted in vain to get beyond 79° 50′. On the 21ſt of June, he ſtood to the Southward, to get a loading of fiſh, and arrived in London the laſt of Auguſt. He was employed the following year (1611) in a ſmall bark called the Elizabeth, of 50 tuns. The inſtructions for this voyage, which may be found at full length in Purchas, are excellently drawn up: They direct him, after having attended the fiſhery for ſome time, to attempt diſcoveries to the North Pole as long as the ſeaſon will permit; with a diſcretionary clauſe, to act in unforeſeen caſes as ſhall appear to him moſt for the advancement of the diſcovery, and intereſt of his employers. This however proved an unfortunate voyage: for having ſtaid in Croſs Road till the 16th of June, on account of the bad weather, and great quantity of ice, he ſailed from thence on that day, and ſteered W b N fourteen leagues, where he found a bank of ice: he returned to Croſs Road; from whence,

whence, when he ſailed, he found the ice to lie cloſe to the land, about the latitude of 80°, and that it was impoſſible to paſs that way; and the ſtrong tides making it dangerous to deal with the ice, he determined to ſtand along it to the Southward, to try if he could find the ſea more open that way, and ſo get to the Weſtward, and proceed on his voyage. He found the ice to lie neareſt S W and S W b S and ran along it about an hundred and twenty leagues. He had no ground near the ice at 160, 180, or 200 fathoms: perceiving the ice ſtill to trend to the Southward, he determined to return to Spitſbergen for the fiſhery, where he loſt his ſhip.

In the year 1614, another voyage was undertaken, in which Baffin and Fotherby were employed. With much difficulty, and after repeated attempts in vain with the ſhip, they got with their boats to the firm ice, which joined to Red-Beach; they walked over the ice to that place, in hopes of finding whale-fins, &c. in which they were diſappointed. Fotherby adds, in his account, "Thus, as we could not find what "we deſired to ſee, ſo did we behold that which we "wiſhed had not been there to be ſeen; which was "great abundance of ice, that lay cloſe to the ſhore, "and alſo off at ſea as far as we could diſcern." On the eleventh of Auguſt, they ſailed from Fair-Haven, to try if the ice would let them paſs to the Northward, or Northeaſtward; they ſteered from Cape Barren, or Vogel Sang, N E b E eight leagues, where they met with the ice, which lay E b S and W b N. The fifteenth of Auguſt they ſaw ice frozen in the ſea of above the thickneſs of an half-crown.

Fotherby was again fitted out the next year in a pinnace of twenty tons, called the Richard, with ten men. In this voyage he was prevented by the ice from getting farther than in his laſt. He refers to a chart, in which he had traced the ſhip's courſe on every traverſe, to ſhew how far the ſtate of that ſea was diſcovered between eighty and ſeventy-one degrees of latitude, and for twenty-ſix degrees of longitude from Hackluit's headland. He concludes the account of his voyage in the following manner:

"Now,

"Now, if any demand my opinion concerning "hope of a paſſage to be found in thoſe ſeas, I an- "ſwer; that it is true, that I both hoped and much "deſired to have paſſed further than I did, but was "hindered with ice; wherein although I have not at- "tained my deſire, yet foraſmuch as it appears not "yet to the contrary, but that there is a ſpacious ſea "betwixt Groinland and king James his new land, "[Spitſbergen] although much peſtered with ice; "I will not ſeem to diſſuade this worſhipful company "from the yearly adventuring of 150 or 200 pounds "at the moſt, till ſome further diſcovery be made of "the ſaid ſeas and lands adjacent." It appears that the Ruſſia company, either ſatisfied with his endeavours and deſpairing of further ſucceſs, or tired of the expence of the undertaking, never employed any more ſhips on this diſcovery.

All theſe voyages having been fitted out by private adventurers, for the double purpoſe of diſcovery and preſent advantage; it was natural to ſuppoſe, that the attention of the navigators had been diverted from purſuing the more remote and leſs profitable object of the two, with all the attention that could have been wiſhed. I am happy, however, in an opportunity of doing juſtice to the memory of theſe men; which, without having traced their ſteps, and experienced their difficulties, it would have been impoſſible to have done. They appear to have encountered dangers, which at that period muſt have been particularly alarming from their novelty, with the greateſt fortitude and perſeverance; as well as to have ſhewn a degree of diligence and ſkill, not only in the ordinary and practical, but more ſcientific parts of their profeſſion, which might have done honour to modern ſeamen, with all their advantages of later improvements. This, when compared with the accounts given of the ſtate of navigation, even within theſe forty years, by the moſt eminent foreign authors, affords the moſt flattering and ſatisfactory proof of the very early exiſtence of that decided ſuperiority in naval affairs which has carried the power of this country to the height it has now attained.

This

This great point of geography, perhaps the moſt important in its conſequences to a commercial nation and maritime power, but the only one which had never yet been the object of royal attention, was ſuffered to remain without further inveſtigation, from the year 1615 till 1773, when the Earl of Sandwich, in conſequence of an application which had been made to him by the Royal Society, laid before his Majeſty, about the beginning of February, a propoſal for an expedition to try how far navigation was practicable towards the North Pole; which his Majeſty was pleaſed to direct ſhould be immediately undertaken, with every encouragement that could countenance ſuch an enterprize, and every aſſiſtance that could contribute to its ſucceſs.

As ſoon as I heard of the deſign, I offered myſelf, and had the honour of being entruſted with the conduct of this undertaking. The nature of the voyage requiring particular care in the choice and equipment of the ſhips, the Racehorſe and Carcaſs bombs were fixed upon as the ſtrongeſt, and therefore propereſt for the purpoſe. The probability that ſuch an expedition could not be carried on without meeting with much ice, made ſome additional ſtrengthening neceſſary: they were therefore immediately taken into dock, and fitted in the moſt compleat manner for the ſervice. The complement for the Racehorſe was fixed at ninety men, and the ordinary eſtabliſhment departed from, by appointing an additional number of officers, and entering effective men inſtead of the uſual number of boys.

I was allowed to recommend the officers; and was very happy to find, during the courſe of the voyage, by the great aſſiſtance I received on many occaſions from their abilities and experience, that I had not been miſtaken in the characters of thoſe upon whom ſo much depended in the performance of this ſervice. Two maſters of Greenlandmen were employed as pilots for each ſhip. The Racehorſe was alſo furniſhed with the new chain-pumps made by Mr. Cole, according to Captain Bentinck's improvements, which were found to anſwer perfectly well. We alſo made uſe of Dr. Irving's apparatus for diſtilling freſh water from

from the ſea, with the greateſt ſucceſs. Some ſmall but uſeful alterations were made in the ſpecies of proviſions uſually ſupplied in the navy; an additional quantity of ſpirits was allowed for each ſhip, to be iſſued at the diſcretion of the commanders, when extraordinary fatigue or ſeverity of weather might make it expedient. A quantity of wine was alſo allotted for the uſe of the ſick. Additional cloathing, adapted to the rigor of that climate, which from the relations of former navigators we were taught to expect, was ordered to be put on board, to be given to the ſeamen when we arrived in the high latitudes. It was foreſeen that one or both of the ſhips might be ſacrificed in the proſecution of this undertaking; the boats for each ſhip were therefore calculated, in number and ſize, to be fit, on any emergency, to tranſport the whole crew. In ſhort, every thing which could tend to promote the ſucceſs of the undertaking, or contribute to the ſecurity, health, and convenience of the ſhips' companies, was granted.

As a voyage of this kind would probably afford many opportunities of making experiments and obſervations in matters relative to navigation, I took care to provide myſelf with all the beſt inſtruments hitherto in uſe, as well as others which had been imperfectly, or never, tried.

In the Journal which follows, I mean to confine myſelf to the occurrences of the voyage as they ſucceeded in order of Time; which, for the convenience of the generality of readers, I have reduced from the nautical to the civil computation.

A voyage of a few months to an unhabited extremity of the world, the great object of which was to aſcertain a very intereſting point in geography, cannot be ſuppoſed to afford much matter for the gratification of mere curioſity.

JOURNAL.

JOURNAL.

APRIL 19th, 1773, I received my commiſſion for the Racehorſe, with an order to get her fitted with the greateſt diſpatch, for a voyage of diſcovery towards the North Pole, and to proceed to the Nore for further orders.

23d. The ſhip was hauled out of dock.

May 21ſt. The ſhip being manned and rigged, and having got in all the proviſions and ſtores, except the Gunner's, we fell down to Galleons.

22d. We received on board the powder, with eight ſix-pounders, and all the gunner's ſtores. Lord Sandwich gave us the laſt mark of the obliging attention he had ſhewn during the whole progreſs of the equipment, by coming on board to ſatisfy himſelf, before our departure, that the whole had been compleated to the wiſh of thoſe who were embarked in the expedition. The Eaſterly winds prevented our going down the river till the 26th, when I received my inſtructions for the voyage, dated the 25th; directing me to fall down to the Nore in the Racehorſe, and there taking under my command the Carcaſs, to make the beſt of my way to the Northward, and proceed up to the North Pole, or as far towards it as poſſible, and as nearly upon a meridian as the ice or other obſtructions might admit; and, during the courſe of the voyage, to make ſuch obſervations of every kind as might be uſeful to navigation, or tend to the promotion of natural knowledge: in caſe of arriving at the Pole, and even finding free navigation

vigation on the oppoſite meridian, not to proceed any farther; and at all events to ſecure my return to the Nore before the winter ſhould ſet in. There was alſo a clauſe authorizing me to proceed in unforeſeen caſes, according to my own diſcretion; and another clauſe directing me to proſecute the voyage on board the Carcaſs, in caſe the Racehorſe ſhould be loſt or diſabled.

27th. I anchored at the Nore, and was joined by Captain Lutwidge, in the Carcaſs, on the 30th: her equipment was to have been in all reſpects the ſame as that of the Racehorſe, but when fitted, Captain Lutwidge finding her too deep in the water to proceed to ſea with ſafety, obtained leave of the Admiralty to put ſix more guns on ſhore, to reduce the complement to eighty men, and return a quantity of proviſions proportionable to that reduction. The officers were recommended by Captain Lutwidge, and did juſtice to his penetration by their conduct in the courſe of the voyage. During our ſtay here, Mr. Lyons landed with the aſtronomical quadrant at Sheerneſs fort, and found the latitude to be 51° 31′ 30″, longitude 0° 30′ Eaſt. The eaſterly winds prevented our moving this day and the following.

June 2d. Having the wind to the Weſtward of North, at five in the morning I made the ſignal to weigh; but in leſs than half an hour, the wind ſhifting to the Eaſtward and blowing freſh, I furled the topſails. The wind came in the afternoon to N b E; we weighed, but did not get far, the tide of flood making againſt us.

3d. The wind blowing freſh all day Eaſterly, we did not move.

4th. The wind coming round to the Weſtward at ſix in the morning, I weighed immediately, and ſent the boat for Captain Lutwidge, to deliver him his orders. At 10 A. M. longitude by the watch 56′ E. At noon the latitude obſerved was 51° 37′ 36′ N. At eight in the evening we had got as far as Balſey Cliff, between Orford and Harwich. Little wind at night.

5th. Anchored in Hoſcley Bay at half paſt ſeven in the evening, in five and an half fathom water. Orford Caſtle N E b N.

Angle

Angle between Aldborough Church and Orford Light Houſe,	7°	38′
Light Houſe and Orford Church, - -	18	16
Orford Church and Caſtle, - - - - -	2	20
Caſtle and Hoſeley Church, - - - - -	100	59
Hoſeley and Balſey Church, - - - - -	35	27

6th. At five in the morning, the wind at S S W, weighed, and ſtood out to ſea, finding I might loſe two tides by going through Yarmouth Roads. Examined the log line, which was marked forty-nine feet; the glaſs was found, by comparing it with the time-keeper, to run thirty ſeconds: at noon latitude obſerved 52° 16′ 54″, longitude by the watch 1° 30′ 15″ E.

Angle between Southwold and Walderſwick	10°	39′
Walderſwick and Dunwich, - - - - -	20	21
Dunwich and Aldborough, - - - - -	46	53

Southwold N W ½ N, ſuppoſed diſtance three leagues. We concluded the latitude of Southwold to be 52° 22′, and longitude 1° 18′ 15″ E. The dip was 73° 22′.

7th. The wind was Northerly all day, and blew freſh in the morning. We had ſtood far out in the night and the day before, to clear the Lemon and Ower.

8th. Little wind moſt part of the day, with a very heavy ſwell. Stood in for the land. At half paſt ten longitude by the watch 0° 41′ 15″ E. At noon the latitude was 53° 38′ 37″. We ſaw the high land near the Spurn, in the evening.

9th. About noon Flamborough Head bore N W b N diſtant about ſix miles: we were by obſervation in latitude 54° 4′ 54″, longitude 0° 27′ 15″ E; which makes Flamborough Head, in latitude 54° 9′, longitude 0° 19′ 15″ E. In the afternoon we were off Scarborough. Almoſt calm in the evening.

10th. Anchored in the morning for the tide in Robin Hood's Bay, with little wind at N W: worked up to Whitby Road next tide, and anchored there at four in the afternoon, in fifteen fathom, with very little wind.

11th. Calm in the morning; compleated our water, live ſtock and vegetables. At nine in the morning longitude obſerved by the watch 1° 55′ 30″ W;

Whitbey

Whitbey Abbey bore S ½ W. Weighed with the wind at S E, and ſteered N E b N to get ſo far into the mid-channel as to make the wind fair Eaſterly or Weſterly, without being too near either ſhore, before we were clear of Shetland and the coaſt of Norway.

12th. The wind at S E; and the ſhip well advanced, I ordered the allowance of liquor to be altered, ſerving the ſhip's company one-fourth of their allowance in beer, and the other three-fourths in brandy; by which means the beer was made to laſt the whole voyage, and the water conſiderably ſaved. One half of this allowance was ſerved immediately after dinner, and the other half in the evening. It was now light enough all night to read upon deck.

13th. The weather ſtill fine, but conſiderably leſs wind than the day before, and in the afternoon more Northerly. The longitude at ten in the morning was found by my watch 0° 6′ W. We took three obſervations of the moon and ſun for the longitude; the extremes differed from one another near two degrees: the mean of the three gave the longitude 1° 37′ E. At noon the latitude obſerved was 59° 32′ 31″. We found a difference of 36′ between the latitude by dead reckoning and obſervation, the ſhip being ſo much more Northerly than the reckoning. The diſtance of this log was too ſhort by forty-three miles. A log marked forty-five feet, according to the old method, would have agreed with the obſervation within two miles in the two days' run. The circumſtance of ſteering upon a meridian, which afforded me ſuch frequent opportunities of detecting the errors of the log, induced me to obſerve with care the comparative accuracy of the different methods of dividing the line, recommended by mathematicians, or practiſed by ſeamen. In the afternoon I went on board the Carcaſs to compare the time-keepers by my watch. At ſix in the evening the longitude by my watch 0° 4′ E. This evening the ſun ſet at twenty-four minutes paſt nine, and bore about N N W by the compaſs. The clouds made a beautiful appearance long after to the Northward, from the reflection of the ſun below the horizon. It was quite light all night; the Carcaſs made the ſignal for ſeeing the land in the evening.

14th.

14th. Little wind, or calm, all day; but very clear and fine weather. Made ſeveral different obſervations for the longitude by the ſun and moon, and by my watch. The longitude of the ſhip was found by my watch, at ten in the morning, to be 1° 11′ 45″ W. The longitude by the lunar obſervations differed near two degrees from one another. By the mean of them the ſhip was in longitude 2° 57′ 45″ W. Some Shetland boats came on board with fiſh. At noon the latitude by obſervation was 60° 16′ 45″. At one in the afternoon the dip was obſerved to be 73° 30′; and at eight 75° 18′: the evening calm, and very fine; the appearance of the ſky to the Northward very beautiful. Variation, by the mean of ſeveral obſervations, 22° 25′ W.

15th. By an obſervation at eight in the morning, the longitude of the dip was by the watch 0° 39′ W: dip 74° 52′. At half paſt ten in the morning, the longitude, from ſeveral obſervations of the ſun and moon, was 0° 17′ W; at noon being in latitude 60° 19′ 8″, by obſervation, I took the diſtance between the two ſhips by the Megameter; and from that baſe determined the poſition of Hangcliff, which had never before been aſcertained, though it is a very remarkable point, and frequently made by ſhips. According to theſe obſervations it is in latitude 60° 9′, and longitude 0° 56′ 30″ W. At one, obſerved the dip to be 75°. A thick fog came on in the afternoon, with a flat calm; we could not ſee the Carcaſs, but heard her anſwer the ſignals for keeping company. Variation, from the mean of ſeveral obſervations, 25° 1′ W.

16th. A very thick fog in the morning; latitude obſerved at noon 60° 29′ 17″: the dip was obſerved at nine in the evening to be 76° 45′. In the afternoon, the weather clear, and the wind fair, ſteered N N E: ſent Captain Lutwidge his further orders and places of rendezvous.

17th. Wind fair, and blowing freſh at S S W, continued the courſe N N E: ordered the people a part of the additional cloathing: ſaw an Engliſh ſloop, but had no opportunity of ſending letters on board, the ſea running high. At ten in the morning, longitude by the watch 0° 19′ 45″ W: at noon, the latitude obſerved

was 62° 59′ 27″. The ſhip had out-run the reckoning eleven miles. I tried Bouguer's log twice this day, and found it give more than the common log. Variation 19° 22′ W.

18th. Little wind all day, but fair, from S S W to S E: ſtill ſteering N N E: latitude obſerved at noon 65° 18′ 17″. At three in the afternoon, ſounded with 300 fathom of line, but got no ground. Longitude by the watch 1° 0′ 30″ W.

19th. Wind to the N W. Took the meridian obſervation at midnight for the firſt time: the ſun's lower limb 0° 37′ 30″ above the horizon; from which the latitude was found 66° 54′ 39″ N: at four in the afternoon, longitude by the watch 0° 58′ 45″ W: at ſix the variation 19° 11′ W.

20th. Almoſt calm all day. The water being perfectly ſmooth, I took this opportunity of trying to get ſoundings at much greater depths than I believe had ever been attempted before. I ſounded with a very heavy lead the depth of 780 fathom, without getting ground; and by a thermometer invented by Lord Charles Cavendiſh for this purpoſe, found the temperature of the water at that depth to be 26° of Fahrenheit's thermometer; the temperature of the air being 48° ½.

We began this day to make uſe of Doctor Irving's apparatus for diſtilling freſh water from the ſea: repeated trials gave us the moſt ſatisfactory proof of its utility: the water produced from it was perfectly free from ſalt, and wholeſome, being uſed for boiling the ſhip's proviſions; which convenience would alone be a deſirable object in all voyages, independent of the benefit of ſo uſeful a reſource in caſe of diſtreſs for water. The quantity produced every day varied from accidental circumſtances, but was generally from thirty-four to forty Gallons, without any great addition of fuel. Twice indeed the quantity produced was only twenty-three gallons on each diſtillation; this amounts to more than a quart for each man, which, though not a plentiful allowance, is much more than what is neceſſary for ſubſiſtence. In caſes of real neceſſity I have no reaſon to doubt that a much greater quantity

quantity might be produced without an inconvenient expence of fuel.

21ſt. A freſh gale at S E all day; ſteered N N E. At four in the morning we ſpoke with a ſnow from the ſeal fiſhery, bound to Hamburgh, by which we ſent ſome letters. At ſix in the morning the variation, by the mean of ſeveral obſervations, was 23° 18′ W. longitude by the watch at nine was 0° 34′ 30″ W. Latitude obſerved at noon 68° 5′.

22d. Calm moſt part of the day; rainy and rather cold in the evening. At noon obſerved the dip to be 77° 52′.

23d. Very foggy all day; the wind fair; altered the courſe and ſteered N E and E N E, to get more into the mid channel, and to avoid falling in with the Weſtern ice, which, from the increaſing coldneſs of the weather, we concluded to be near. At ſeven o'clock in the morning, being by our reckoning to the Northward of 72°, we ſaw a piece of drift wood, and a ſmall bird called a Redpoll. Dip obſerved at nine in the evening to be 81° 30′.

24th. Very foggy all the morning; the wind came round to the Northward. The dip obſerved at noon was 80° 35′. In the afternoon, the air much colder than we had hitherto felt it; the thermometer at 34°. A fire made in the cabin for the firſt time, in latitude 73° 40°.

25th. Wind Northerly, with a great ſwell; ſome ſnow, but in general clear. At eight in the morning, the longitude obſerved by the watch was 7° 15′ E. Made ſeveral obſervations on the variation, which we found, by thoſe taken at ſeven in the morning, to be 17° 9′ W; by others at three in the afternoon, only 7° 47′ W. I could not account for this very ſudden and extraordinary decreaſe, as there were ſeveral different obſervations taken both in the morning and evening, which agreed perfectly well with each other, without any apparent cauſe which could produce an error affecting all the obſervations of either ſet. At eight in the evening the longitude by the moon was 12° 57′ 30″ E, which differed 2° 35′ from that by the watch. Little wind at night.

26th. Little wind all day; the weather very fine and moderate. The latitude obſerved at noon was

74° 25′. The thermometer expoſed to the ſun, which ſhone very bright, roſe from 41° to 61° in twenty minutes. By each of two lunar obſervations which I took with a ſextant of four inches radius, at half paſt one, the longitude was 9° 57′ 30″ E; which agreed within thirty-ſeven minutes with an obſervation made by the watch at half an hour after three, when the longitude was 8° 52′ 30′ E. Dip 79° 22′.

27th. At midnight the latitude obſerved was 74° 26″. The wind came to the S W, and continued ſo all day, with a little rain and ſnow. The cold did not increaſe. We ſteered N b E. At ſeven in the morning the variation, by a mean of ſeveral obſervations, was found to be 20° 38′ W. We were in the evening, by all our reckonings, in the latitude of the South part of Spitſbergen, without any appearance of ice or ſight of land, and with a fair wind.

28th. Leſs wind in the morning than the day before, with rain and ſleet: continued ſteering to the Northward. At five in the afternoon picked up a piece of drift wood, which was fir, and not worm-eaten: ſounded in 290 fathom; no ground. At ſix the longitude by the watch was 7° 50′ E: between ten and eleven at night, ſaw the land to the Eaſtward at ten or twelve leagues diſtance. At midnight, dip 81° 7′.

29th. The wind Northerly; ſtood cloſe in with the land. The coaſt appeared to be neither habitable nor acceſſible; it was formed by high, barren, black rocks, without the leaſt marks of vegetation; in many places bare and pointed, in other parts covered with ſnow, appearing even above the clouds: the vallies between the high cliffs were filled with ſnow or ice. This proſpect would have ſuggeſted the idea of perpetual winter, had not the mildneſs of the weather, the ſmooth water, bright ſunſhine, and conſtant day-light, given a chearfulneſs and novelty to the whole of this ſtriking and romantick ſcence.

I had an opportunity of making many obſervations near the Black Point. Latitude obſerved at noon 77° 59′ 11″. The difference of latitude, from the laſt obſervation on the 27th at midnight to this day at noon, would according to the old method of marking the log have been two hundred and thirteen miles; which

agrees

agrees exactly with the obſervation. At three in the afternoon, brought to and ſounded 110 fathom; ſoft muddy ground: hoiſted out the boat and tried the ſtream; found it, both by the common and Bouguer's log (which agreed exactly) to run half a knot North; Black Point bearing E N E. At four the longitude by the watch was 9° 31′ E: at eight the variation, by the mean of nineteen obſervations, 11° 53′ W. I could not account from any apparent cauſe for this great change in the variation: the weather was fine, the water ſmooth, and every precaution we could think of uſed to make the obſervations accurate. The dip was 80° 26′. Plying to the Northward.

30th. At midnight the latitude by obſervation was 78° 0′ 50″. At four in the morning, by Lord Charles Cavendiſh's thermometer the temperature of the water at the depth of 118 fathoms was 31° of Fahrenheit's; that of the air was at the ſame time 40° ½. At nine in the morning we ſaw a ſhip in the N W, ſtanding in for the land. Having little wind this morning, and that Northerly, I ſtood in for the land, with an intention to have watered the ſhip, and got out immediately, but was prevented by the calm which followed. At noon the latitude obſerved was 78° 8′; the dip 79° 30′. At two in the afternoon we ſounded in 115 fathom; muddy bottom: at the ſame time we ſent down Lord Charles Cavendiſh's thermometer, by which we found the temperature of the water at that depth to be 33°; that of the water at the ſurface was at the ſame time 40°, and in the air 44° ¼. Fahrenheit's thermometer plunged in water brought up from the ſame depth, ſtood at 38° ½. This evening the maſter of a Greenland ſhip came on board, who told me, that he was juſt come out of the ice which lay to the Weſtward about ſixteen leagues off, and that three ſhips had been loſt this year, two Engliſh, and one Dutch. The weather fine, and rather warm. At ſix in the evening the longitude by my watch was 9° 28′ 45″ E.

July 1ſt. Little wind Northerly, or calm, all day: the weather very fine, and ſo warm that we ſat without a fire, and with one of the ports open in the cabin. At noon the latitude obſerved was 78° 13′ 36″; Black Point bearing S 78° E; which makes the latitude of

that point nearly the ſame as that of the ſhip, and agrees very well with the chart of this coaſt in Purchas.

2d. Little wind, and calms, all day; the weather very fine. At ſix in the morning five ſail of Greenlandmen in ſight. At noon the latitude obſerved was 78° 22′ 41″. I took a ſurvey of the coaſt, as far as we could ſee: I took alſo with the megameter the altitudes of ſeveral of the mountains: but as there is nothing particularly intereſting to navigators in this part of the coaſt, I ſhall only mention the height of one mountain, which was fifteen hundred and three yards. This may ſerve to give ſome idea of the appearance and ſcale of the coaſt. At half paſt ſix the longitude by the watch was 9° 8′ 30″ E: Variation 14° 55″ W.

3d. Latitude at midnight 78° 23′ 46′: Dip 80° 45′. The weather fine, and the wind fair all day. Running along by the coaſt of Spitſbergen all day: ſeveral Greenlandmen in ſight. Between nine and ten in the evening we were abreaſt of the North Foreland, bearing E b S ½ S, diſtance 1 ½ mile. Sounded in twenty fathom: rocky ground.

4th. Very little wind in the morning. At noon the latitude by obſervation was 79° 31′. Magdalena Hook bore N 39° E diſtant about four miles; which gives the latitude of that place 79° 34′; the ſame as Fotherby obſerved it to be in 1614. Stood in to a ſmall bay to the Southward of Magdalena and Hamburgher's Bay: anchored with the ſtream anchor, and ſent the boat for water. About three in the afternoon, when the boat was ſent on ſhore, it appeared to be high water, and ebbed about three feet. This makes high water full and change at half an hour paſt one, or with a S S W moon; which agrees exactly with Baffin's obſervation in 1613. The flood comes from the Southward. Went aſhore with the aſtronomer, and inſtruments, to obſerve the variation. A thick fog came on before we had completed the obſervations. The ſhip driving, I weighed and ſtood out to ſea under an eaſy ſail, firing guns frequently to ſhew the Carcaſs where we were; and in leſs than two hours joined her. Soon after (about four in the morning of the 5th) the Rockingham Greenland ſhip ran under our ſtern, and the maſter told me he had juſt ſpoke with ſome ſhips from which

which he learned, that the ice was within ten leagues of Hacluyt's Head Land, to the North Weſt. In conſequence of this intelligence, I gave orders for ſteering in towards the Head Land; and if it ſhould clear up, to ſteer directly for it; intending to go North from thence, till ſome circumſtance ſhould oblige me to alter my courſe.

5th. At five the officer informed me, that we were very near ſome iſlands off Dane's Gat, and that the pilot wiſhed to ſtand farther out; I ordered the ſhip to be kept N b W, and hauled farther in, when clear of the iſlands. At noon I ſteered North, ſeeing nothing of the land; ſoon after I was told that they ſaw the ice: I went upon deck, and perceived ſomething white upon the bow, and heard a noiſe like the ſurf upon the ſhore; I hauled down the ſtudding ſails, and hailed the Carcaſs to let them know that I ſhould ſtand for it to make what it was, having all hands upon deck ready to haul up at a moment's warning: I deſired that they would keep cloſe to us, the fog being ſo thick, and have every body up ready to follow our motions inſtantaneouſly, determining to ſtand on under ſuch ſail as ſhould enable us to keep the ſhips under command, and not riſk parting company. Soon after two ſmall pieces of ice not above three feet ſquare paſſed us, which we ſuppoſed to have floated from the ſhore. It was not long before we ſaw ſomething on the bow, part black and part covered with ſnow, which from the appearance we took to be iſlands, and thought that we had not ſtood far enough out; I hauled up immediately to the NNW and was ſoon undeceived, finding it to be ice which we could not clear upon that tack; we tacked immediately, but the wind and ſea both ſetting directly upon it, we neared it very faſt, and were within little more than a cable's length of the ice, whilſt in ſtays. The wind blowing freſh, the ſhips would have been in danger on the lee ice, had not the officers and men been very alert in working the ſhip. The ice, as far as we could then ſee, lay nearly E b N and W b S. At half paſt ſeven in the evening, the ſhip running entirely to the Southward, and the weather clearing a little, I tacked, and ſtood for the ice. When I ſaw it, I bore down to make it plain; at ten

the

the ice lay from N W to Eaſt, and no opening. Very foggy, and little wind, all day; but not cold. At eleven came on a thick fog. At half paſt midnight, heard the ſurge of the ice, and hauled the wind to the Eaſtward.

6th. Clear weather all day, and the wind Eaſterly off the ice. In the morning I ſtood in to make the land plain. At ſix was within four miles of the ice, which bore from E N E to W N W: at ten near Vogel Sang; at noon, latitude obſerved 79° 56′ 39″; wind Eaſterly. Continued plying to windward betwen the land and the ice: was within a quarter of a mile of the ice, which lay from E N E to N N W, when I tacked at two in the afternoon; and within half a cable's length at midnight; the Carcaſs was a great way aſtern and to leeward all day. Being ſo near the laſt rendezvous, I did not chuſe to bring to for her, but was very anxious to avail myſelf of this favourable opportunity, having the wind off the ice and clear weather, to ſee whether there was any opening to the N E of the Head Land. By all the accounts from the Greenlandmen this year, and particularly the laſt account from the Rockingham, as well as from what we had ſeen ourſelves, the ice appeared to be quite cloſe to the N W. We had ſeen it from E S E to W N W. It was probable that the ſea, if open any where, would be ſo to the Eaſtward, where the Greenlandmen do not often venture, for fear of being prevented from returning by the ice joining to Spitſbergen. I determined therefore, ſhould the wind continue in the ſame quarter next day, to find whether the ice joined to the land, or was ſo detached as to afford me an opportunity of paſſing to the Eaſtward. In caſe of the ice being faſt I could, with the wind Eaſterly, range cloſe along the edge of it to the Weſtward. The weather exceedingly fine. At ſix in the afternoon, the longitude by the watch was 9° 43′ 30″ E.

7th. At five in the morning the wind was Northerly, and the weather remarkably clear. Being near the ice I ranged along it. It appeared to be cloſe all round; but I was in hopes that ſome opening might be found to get through to a clear ſea to the Northward. I ran in amongſt the ſmall ice, and kept as cloſe

cloſe as poſſible to the main body, not to miſs any opening. At noon, Cloven Cliff W ½ S ſeven leagues. At one in the afternoon, being ſtill amongſt the looſe ice, I ſent the boat to one of the large pieces to fill water. At four we ſhoaled the water very ſuddenly to fourteen fathom: the outer part of Cloven Cliff bore W ½ N: Redcliff, S ½ E. The looſe ice being open to the E N E, we hauled up, and immediately deepened our water to twenty-eight fathom; muddy ground, with ſhells. At half paſt four, the ice ſetting very cloſe, we ran between two pieces, and having little wind were ſtopped. The Carcaſs being very near, and not anſwering her helm well, was almoſt on board of us. After getting clear of her, we ran to the Eaſtward. Finding the pieces increaſe in number and ſize, and having got to a part leſs crowded with the drift ice, I brought to, at ſix in the evening, to ſee whether we could diſcover the leaſt appearance of an opening: but it being my own opinion, as well as that of the pilots and officers, that we could go no farther, nor even remain there without danger of being beſet, I ſent the boat on board the Carcaſs for her pilots, to hear their opinion; they both declared that it appeared to them impracticable to proceed that way, and that it was probable we ſhould ſoon be beſet where we were, and detained there. The ice ſet ſo faſt down, that before they got on board the Carcaſs we were faſt. Captain Lutwidge hoiſted our boat up, to prevent her being ſtove. We were obliged to heave the ſhip through for two hours, with ice anchors from each quarter; nor were we quite out of the ice till midnight. This is about the place where moſt of the old diſcoverers were ſtopped. The people in both ſhips being much fatigued, and the Carcaſs not able to keep up with us, without carrying ſtudding-ſails, I ſhortened ſail as ſoon as we were quite out, and left orders to ſtand to the Northward under an eaſy ſail: I intended, having failed in this attempt, to range along the ice to the N W, in hopes of an opening that way, the wind being fair, and the weather clear; reſolving, if I found it all ſolid, to return to the Eaſtward, where probably it might by

that

that time be broken up, which the very mild weather encouraged me to expect.

8th. Little wind in the morning, and a ſwell ſetting on the ice, we were obliged to get the boats a-head, to tow the ſhip clear; which they effected with difficulty. A breeze ſpringing up when we were within two cables lengths of the main body of the ice, ſtood in for the land, and attacked at two, to ſtand to the N W for the ice; but the weather coming thick between five and ſix, I ſtood in again for the land. It clearing up ſoon after, I bore away again N W for the ice. At ten, ſpoke with a Greenland ſhip which had juſt left the ice all cloſe to the N N W. Between eleven and twelve the wind came to the S W, with an heavy ſwell and thick weather. Double-reefed the topſails, and tacked at twelve, to ſtand in for Hacluyt's Head Land, not thinking it proper to run in with the faſt ice to leeward in thick weather, without even the probability of an opening; and propoſing if that weather continued, to compleat the ſhip's water, and be ready with the firſt wind, off or along the ice, to look out for an opening, and run in. To avoid any inconvenience which from the experience of the preceding day I perceived might happen, from too many running to one place on any ſudden order, I divided the people into gangs under the midſhipmen, and ſtationed them to the ice hooks, poles, crabs, and to go over upon the ice when wanted.

9th. Having a fair opportunity, and S W wind, ſtood to the Weſtward; intending, when the weather was clear, to make the ice to the Northward, and run along it. About twelve, clearer; ſaw the faſt ice to the Northward, and the appearance of looſe ice to the N W: ſtood directly for it, and got amongſt it between two and three; ſteering as much to the Northward as the ſituation of the ice would permit. At ſix obſerved the dip 81° 52′. At half paſt ſeven, found the ice quite faſt to the Weſt, being in longitude 2° 2′ E, by our reckoning, which was the fartheſt to the Weſtward of Spitſbergen that we got this voyage. At eight the fog was ſo very thick, that we could neither ſee which way to puſh for an opening, nor where the Carcaſs was, though very near us. That we might

not

not riſk parting company with her, I was obliged to ply to windward under the topſails, tacking every quarter of an hour to keep in the opening in which we were, and clear of the ice which ſurrounded us. At four in the afternoon we were in 80° 36′.

10th. We loſt the Carcaſs twice in the night, from the very thick fog, and were working all night amongſt the ice, making very ſhort tacks; the opening being ſmall, and the floating ice very thick about the ſhip. The ſituation of the people from the very fatiguing work and wet weather, made the moſt minute precautions neceſſary for the preſervation of their health: we now found the advantage of the ſpirits which had been allowed for extraordinary occaſions; as well as the additional cloathing furniſhed by the Admiralty. Notwithſtanding every attention, ſeveral of the men were confined with colds, which affected them with pains in their bones; but, from the careful attendance given them, few continued in the ſick liſt above two days at a time. At nine in the morning, when it cleared a little, we ſaw the Carcaſs much to the Southward of us. I took the opportunity of the clear weather to run to the Weſtward, and found the ice quite ſolid there; I then ſtood through every opening to the Northward, but there alſo ſoon got to the edge of the ſolid ice. I was forced to haul up to weather a point which ran out from it. After I had weathered that, the ice cloſing faſt upon me, obliged me to ſet the foreſail, which with the freſh wind and ſmooth water, gave the ſhip ſuch way as to force through it with a violent ſtroke. At one in the afternoon, immediately on getting out into the open ſea, we found a heavy ſwell ſetting to the Northward; though amongſt the ice, the minute before, the water had been as ſmooth as a mill pond. The wind blew ſtrong at S S W. The ice, as far as we could ſee from the maſt head, lay E N E: we ſteered that courſe cloſe to it, to look for an opening to the Northward. I now began to conceive that the ice was one compact impenetrable body, having run along it from Eaſt to Weſt above ten degrees. I purpoſed, however, to ſtand over to the Eaſtward, in order to aſcertain whether the body of ice joined to Spitſbergen. This the quantity of looſe ice had before ren-

dered

dered impracticable: but thinking the Weſterly winds might probably by this time have packed it all that way, I flattered myſelf with the hopes of meeting with no obſtruction till I ſhould come to where it joined the land; and in caſe of an opening, however ſmall, I was determined at all events to puſh through it. The weather clearer, and the land in ſight.

11th. At half paſt four in the morning the longitude by the lunar obſervation was 9° 42′ E. And at the ſame time by my watch 9° 2′ E. Cloven Cliff S S E, diſtant eight miles. This would make the longitude of Cloven Cliff 9° 38′ E; which is within twenty minutes of what it was determined by the obſervations and ſurvey taken in Fair Haven. At noon the latitude obſerved was 80° 4′; Vogel Sang W S W. Little wind and a great ſwell in the morning. Calm moſt part of the day.

12th. Calm all day, with a great ſwell from the S W, and the weather remarkably mild. At eight in the evening longitude by the watch 10° 54′ 30″ E: Cloven Cliff S W b S, The Carcaſs drove with the current ſo near the main body of the ice, as to be obliged to anchor; ſhe came to in twenty-ſix fathom water.

13th. Calm till noon, the ſhip driving to the Weſtward with the current, which we obſerved to be very irregular, the Carcaſs being driven at the ſame time to the Eaſtward. Near the main body of the ice, the detached pieces probably affect the currents, and occaſion the great irregularity which we remarked. We had found an heavy ſwell from the S W theſe two days. At two in the afternoon it came on very ſuddenly to blow freſh from that quarter, with foggy weather: we worked into Vogel Sang, and anchored with the beſt bower in eleven fathom, ſoft clay.

The place where we anchored is a good roadſtead, open from the N E to the N W. The Northeaſternmoſt point is the Cloven Cliff, a bare rock ſo called from the top of it reſembling a cloven hoof, which appearance it has always worn, having been named by ſome of the firſt Dutch navigators who frequented theſe ſeas. This rock being entirely detached from the other mountains, and joined to the reſt of the iſland

iſland by a low narrow iſthmus, preſerves in all ſituations the ſame form; and being nearly perpendicular, it is never diſguiſed by ſnow. Theſe circumſtances render it one of the moſt remarkable points on the coaſt. The Northweſternmoſt land is an high bluff point, called by the Dutch, Vogel Sang. This ſound, though open to the Northward, is not liable to any inconvenience from that circumſtance, the main body of the ice lying ſo near as to prevent any great ſea; nor are ſhips in any danger from the looſe ice ſetting in, as this road communicates with ſeveral others formed by different iſlands, between all which there are ſafe paſſages. To all the ſounds and harbours formed by this knot of Iſlands, the old Engliſh navigators had given the general name of Fair Haven; of which Fotherby took a in *plat* 1614: that in which the Racehorſe and Carcaſs lay at this time they called the North Harbour; the harbour of Smeerenberg, diſtant about eleven miles, (in which we anchored in Auguſt) they named the South Harbour. Beſides theſe, there are ſeveral others; particularly two, called, Cook's Hole, and the Norways, in both which ſeveral Dutch ſhips were lying at this time. Here the ſhore being ſteep-to, we completed our water with great eaſe, from the ſtreams which fall in many places down the ſides of the rocks, and are produced by the melting of the ſnow. I fixed upon a ſmall flat iſland, or rock, about three miles from the ſhip, and almoſt in the center of thoſe iſlands which form the many good roads here, as the propereſt place for erecting a tent, and making obſervations. The foggy weather on the 14th prevented us from uſing the inſtruments that day. I regretted this circumſtance much, fearing it would deprive me of the only probable opportunity of making obſervations on ſhore in thoſe high latitudes, as our water was nearly recruited: however, having little wind with the weather very fair from the 15th to the 18th in the morning, I made the beſt uſe of that time. Even in the cleareſt weather here, the ſky was never free from clouds, which prevented our ſeeing the moon during the whole of our ſtay, or even being ſure of our ſolar obſervations, Mr. Lyons never having been able to

get

get equal altitudes for ſettling the rates of going of the time-keepers. Once indeed we were fortunate enough to obſerve a revolution of the ſun, of which I availed myſelf to determine the going of the pendulum adjuſted to vibrate ſeconds at London. During the courſe of this experiment, a particular and conſtant attention was paid to the ſtate of the thermometer, which I was ſurpriſed to find differ ſo little about noon and midnight; its greateſt height was 58°½, at eleven in the forenoon; at midnight it was 51°.

On the 16th, at noon, the weather was remarkably fine and clear. The thermometer in the ſhade being at 49°, when expoſed to the ſun roſe in a few minutes to 89°½ and remained ſo for ſome time, till a ſmall breeze ſpringing up, made it fall 10° almoſt inſtantly. The weather at this time was rather hot; ſo that I imagine, if a thermometer was to be graduated according to the feelings of people in theſe latitudes, the point of temperature would be about the 44th degree of Fahrenheit's ſcale. From this iſland I took a ſurvey, to aſcertain the ſituation of all the points and openings, and the height of the moſt remarkable mountains: the longeſt baſe the iſland would afford was only 618 feet, which I determined by a croſs baſe, as well as actual meaſurement, and found the reſults not to differ above three feet. To try how far the accuracy of this ſurvey might be depended upon, I took in a boat, with a ſmall Hadley's ſextant, the angels between ſeven objects, which interſected exactly when laid down upon the plan. I had a farther proof of its accuracy ſome days after, by taking the bearings of Vogel Sang and Hacluyt's Head Land in one, which correſponded exactly with their poſition on my chart.

On the 17th, the weather being very clear, I went up one of the hills, from which I could ſee ſeveral leagues to the NE: the ice appeared uniform and compact, as far as my view extended. During our ſtay here, we found the latitude of the iſland on which the obſervations were made, to be 79° 50′; longitude 10° 2′ 30″ E; variation 20° 38′ W; dip 82° 7′: latitude of Cloven Cliff 79° 53′; longitude 9° 53′ 30″ E: Hacluyt's Head Land 79° 47′; longitude

tude 9° 11′ 30″ E. The tide roſe about four feet, and flowed at half an hour after one, full and change. The tide ſet irregularly, from the number of iſlands between which it paſſed; but the flood appeared to come from the Southward.

18th. The calm weather ſince the 14th had given us full time to finiſh the obſervations, and complete our water: a breeze ſpringing up in the morning, I went aſhore to get the inſtruments on board. Between one and two we weighed, with the wind Weſterly, and ſtood to the Northward. Between eleven and twelve at night, having run about eight leagues, we were prevented by the ice from getting farther. We ſtood along the edge of it to the Southward. At two in the morning, being embayed by the ice, I tacked, and left orders to ſtand to the Eaſtward along the edge of the ice, as ſoon as we could weather the point; hoping, if there ſhould be no opening, between the land and the ice, that I ſhould at leaſt be able to aſcertain where they joined, and perhaps to diſcover from the land, whether there was any proſpect of a paſſage that way: At that time the ice was all ſolid as far as we could ſee, without the leaſt appearance of water to the Northward.

19th. At ſix in the morning we had got to the Eaſtward among the looſe ice which lay very thick in ſhore, the main body to the Northward and Eaſtward: the land near Deer Field not four miles off, and the water ſhoaled to twenty fathoms. Here we found ourſelves nearly in the ſame place where we had twice been ſtopped, the ice ſituated as before, locked with the land without any paſſage either to the Eaſtward or Northward: I therefore ſtood back to the Weſtward. At noon the Northernmoſt part of Vogel Sang bore S W b S, diſtant about ſeven leagues. The weather being very fine, and the wind to the Eaſtward, we were enabled to coaſt along the ice to the Weſtward, hauling into all the bays, going round every point of ice in ſearch of an opening, and ſtanding cloſe along by the main body all day, generally within a ſhip's length.

20th. At half after three in the morning the land was out of ſight, and we imagined ourſelves in rather more than eighty degrees and an half; ſome of the

the openings being near two leagues deep, had flattered us with hopes of getting to the Northward; but theſe openings proved to be no more than bays in the main body of the ice. About one in the afternoon, we were by our reckoning in about 80° 34′, nearly in the ſame place where we had been on the 9th. About three we bore away for what appeared like an opening to the S W; we found the ice run far to the Southward.

21ſt. We ſtill continued to run along the edge of the ice, which trended to the Southward. At noon we were in the latitude of 79° 26′, by obſervation, which was twenty-five miles to the Southward of our reckoning. Finding that the direction of the ice led us to the Southward, and that the current ſet the ſame way, I ſtood to the Northward and Weſtward cloſe along the ice, to try whether the ſea was opened to the Northward by the wind from that quarter. At nine in the evening we had no ground with 200 fathom of line. At ten we got into a ſtream of looſe ice. The weather fine, but cool all day, and ſometimes foggy.

22d. At two in the morning we bore away to the N E, for the main body of the ice; the weather became foggy ſoon afterwards. At ſix we ſaw the ice; and the weather being ſtill foggy, we hauled up to the S S E, to avoid being embayed in it. The air very cold.

23d. At midnight, tacked for the body of the ice. Latitude obſerved 80° 13′ 38″. Rainy in the morning; fair in the afternoon; ſtill working up to the Northward and Eaſtward, with the wind Eaſterly. At ſix in the evening, the Cloven Cliff bearing South about ſix leagues, ſounded in 200 fathom, muddy ground; the lead appeared to have ſunk one third of its length in in the mud. At two in the morning, with little wind, and a ſwell from the South Weſt, I ſtood to the Northward amongſt the looſe ice: at half paſt two the main body of the ice a cable's length off, and the looſe ice ſo cloſe that we wore ſhip, not having room or way enough to tack; ſtruck very hard againſt the ice in getting the ſhip round, and got upon one piece, which lifted her in the water for near a minute, before her weight broke it. The ſhips had been ſo well

ſtrengthened,

ſtrengthened, that they received no damage from theſe ſtrokes; and I could with the more confidence puſh through the looſe ice, to try for openings. Hacluyt's Head Land bore S 50° W diſtant about ſeven leagues.

24th. By this ſituation of the ice we were diſappointed of getting directly to the Northward, without any proſpect after ſo many fruitleſs attempts of being able to ſucceed to the Weſtward; nor indeed, could I with an Eaſterly wind and heavy ſwell attempt it, as the wind from that quarter would not only pack the looſe ice cloſe to the Weſtward, but by ſetting the ſea on it, make it as improper to be approached as a rocky lee ſhore. To the Eaſtward on the contrary it would make ſmooth water, and detach all the looſe ice from the edges; perhaps break a ſtream open, and give us a fair trial to the Northward; at all events, with an Eaſterly wind we could run out again, if we did not find it practicable to proceed. Finding the ice ſo faſt to the Northward and Weſtward, it became a deſirable object to aſcertain how far it was poſſible to get to the Eaſtward, and by that means purſue the voyage to the Northward. Theſe conſiderations determined me to ply to the Eaſtward, and make another puſh to get through where I had been three times repulſed. In working to the Eaſtward, we kept as near the body of the ice as poſſible. At noon the Cloven Cliff bore S W b S about ſeven leagues. At ſix we were working to the N E, and at nine we ſteered to the S E, the the ice appearing more open that way: we had freſh gales and cloudy weather. The ſhip ſtruck very hard in endeavouring to force through the looſe ice. At midnight the wind freſhened, and we double reefed the topſails. It was probably owing to the freſh gales this day, as well as to the ſummer being more advanced, that we were enabled to get farther than in any of our former attempts this way. We continued coaſting the ice, and at two in the morning the North part of Vogel Sang and Hacluyt's Head Land in one bore S 65° W; Cloven Cliff S 52° W; the neareſt part of the ſhore about three leagues off. When I left the deck, at four in the morning, we were very near the ſpot where the ſhips had been faſt in the ice on the 7th in the evening, but rather farther to the Eaſtward;

we had paſſed over the ſame ſhoal water we had met with that day, and were now in twenty-fathom, rocky ground; ſtill amongſt looſe ice, but not ſo cloſe as we had hitherto found it.

25th. At ſeven in the morning we had deepened our water to fifty-five fathom, and were ſtill amongſt the looſe ice. At noon we had deepened our water to ſeventy fathom, with muddy bottom, at the diſtance of about three miles from the neareſt land. By two in the afternoon we had paſſed Deer Field, which we had ſo often before attempted without ſucceſs; and finding the ſea open to the N E, had the moſt flattering proſpect of getting to the Northward. From this part, all the way to the Eaſtward, the coaſt wears a different face; the mountains, though high, are neither ſo ſteep or ſharp pointed, nor of ſo black a colour as to the Weſtward. It was probably owing to this remarkable difference in the appearance of the ſhore, that the old navigators gave to places hereabouts the names of *Red Beach*, *Red Hill*, and *Red Cliff*. One of them, ſpeaking of this part, has deſcribed the whole country in a few words: "Here (ſays he) I ſaw a more "natural earth and clay than any that I have ſeen in "all the country, but nothing growing thereupon more "than in other places." At two in the afternoon we had little wind, and were in ſight of Moffen Iſland, which is very low and flat.

The Carcaſs being becalmed very near the iſland in the evening, Captain Lutwidge took that opportunity of obtaining the following exact account of its extent, which he communicated to me.

"At 10 P M, the body of Moffen Iſland bearing "E b S diſtant two miles; ſounded thirteen fathoms; "rocky ground, with light brown mud, and broken "ſhells. Sent the maſter on ſhore, who found the "iſland to be nearly of a round form, about two miles "in diameter, with a lake or large pond of water in "the middle, all frozen over, except thirty or forty "yards round the edge of it, which was water, with "looſe pieces of broken ice, and ſo ſhallow they "walked through it, and went over upon the firm "ſolid ice. The ground between the ſea and the "pond is from half a cable's length to a quarter of a

"mile

" mile broad, and the whole iſland covered with gra-
" vel and ſmall ſtones, without the leaſt verdure or
" vegetation of any kind. They ſaw only one piece
" of drift wood (about three fathom long, with a root
" on it, and as thick as the Carcaſs's mizen maſt)
" which had been thrown up over the high part of the
" land, and lay upon the declivity towards the pond.
" They ſaw three bears, and a number of wild ducks,
" geeſe, and other ſea fowls, with birds neſts all over
" the iſland. There was an inſcription over the grave
" of a Dutchman, who was buried there in July 1771.
" It was low water at eleven o'clock when the boat
" landed, and the tide appeared to flow eight or nine
" feet; at that time we found a current carrying the
" ſhip to the N W from the iſland, which before car-
" ried us to the S E (at the rate of a mile an hour) to-
" wards it. On the Weſt ſide is a fine white ſandy
" bottom, from two fathoms, at a ſhip's length from
" the beach, to five fathoms, at half a mile's diſtance
" off."

The ſoundings all about this iſland, and to the Eaſtward, ſeem to partake of the nature of the coaſt. To the Weſtward the rocks were high, and the ſhores bold and ſteep too; here the land ſhelved more, and the ſoundings were ſhoal, from thirteen to ten fathom. It appears extraordinary that none of the old navigators, who are ſo accurate and minute in their deſcriptions of the coaſt, have taken any notice of this iſland, ſo remarkable and different from every thing they had ſeen on the Weſtern coaſt; unleſs we ſhould ſuppoſe that it did not then exiſt, and that the ſtreams from the great ocean up the Weſt ſide of Spitſbergen, and through the Waygat's Straits, meeting here, have raiſed this bank, and occaſioned the quantity of ice that generally blocks up the coaſt hereabouts.—At four in the afternoon, hoiſted out the boat, and tried the current, which ſet N E b E, at the rate of three quarters of a mile an hour. At midnight, Moſſen Iſland bore from S E b S to S b W, diſtant about five miles.

26th. About two in the morning, we had little wind, with fog; made the ſignals to the Carcaſs, for keeping company. At half an hour after three in the afternoon, we were in longitude 12° 20′ 45″ E; va-

riation, by the mean of five azimuths, 12° 47′ W. At nine we ſaw land to the Eaſtward; ſteering to the Northward with little wind, and no ice in ſight, except what we had paſſed.

27th. Working ſtill to the N E, we met with ſome looſe ice; however from the openneſs of the ſea hitherto, ſince we had paſſed Deer Field, I had great hopes of getting far to the Northward; but about noon, being in the latitude of eighty and forty-eight, by our reckoning, we were ſtopped by the main body of the ice, which we found lying in a line, nearly Eaſt and Weſt, quite ſolid. Having tacked, I brought to, and ſounded cloſe to the edge of the ice, in 79 fathom, muddy bottom.

The wind being ſtill Eaſterly, I worked up cloſe to the edge of the ice, coaſting it all the way. At ſix in the evening we were in longitude 14° 59′ 30″ E, by obſervation.

28th. At midnight the latitude obſerved was 80° 37′. The main body of the ice ſtill lying in the ſame direction, we continued working to the Eaſtward, and found ſeveral openings to the Northward, of two or three miles deep; into every one of which we ran, forcing the ſhip, wherever we could, by a preſs of ſail, amongſt the looſe ice, which we found here in much larger pieces than to the Weſtward. At ſix in the morning the variation, by the mean of ſix azimuths, was 11° 56′ W; the horizon remarkably clear. At noon, being cloſe to the main body of the ice, the latitude by obſervation was 80° 36′: we ſounded in 101 fathom, muddy ground. In the afternoon the wind blew freſh at N E, with a thick fog; the ice hung much about the rigging. The looſe ice being thick and cloſe, we found ourſelves ſo much engaged in it, as to be obliged to run back a conſiderable diſtance to the Weſtward and Southward, before we could extricate ourſelves: we afterwards had both the ſea and the weather clear, and worked up to the North Eaſtward. At half paſt five the longitude of the ſhip was 15° 16′ 45″ E. At ſeven the Eaſternmoſt land bore E ½ N, diſtant about ſeven or eight leagues, appearing like deep bays and iſlands, probably thoſe called in the Dutch charts the *Seven Iſlands*; they ſeemed to be ſurrounded

rounded with ice. I ſtood to the Southward, in hopes of getting to the Southeaſtward round the ice, and between it and the land, where the water appeared more open.

29th. At midnight the latitude by obſervation was 80° 21′. At four, tacked cloſe to the ice, hauled up the foreſail and backed the mizen top-ſail, having too much way amongſt the looſe ice. At noon, latitude obſerved 80° 24′ 56″. An opening, which we ſuppoſed to be the entrance of Waygat's Straits, bore South; the Northernmoſt land N E b E; the neareſt ſhore diſtant about four miles. In the afternoon the officer from the deck came down to tell me, we were very near a ſmall rock even with the water's edge; on going up, I ſaw it within little more than a ſhip's length on the lee bow, and put the helm down: before the ſhip got round, we were cloſe to it, and perceived it to be a very ſmall piece of ice, covered with gravel. In the evening, ſeeing the Northern part of the iſlands only over the ice, I was anxious to get round it, in hopes of finding an opening under the land. Being near a low flat iſland oppoſite the Waygat's Straits, not higher, but much larger than Moſſen Iſland, we had an heavy ſwell from the Southward, with little wind, and from ten to twenty fathom: having got paſt this iſland, approaching to the high land to the Eaſtward, we deepened our water very ſuddenly to 117 fathom. Having little wind, and the weather very clear, two of the officers went with a boat in purſuit of ſome ſea-horſes, and afterwards to the low iſland. At midnight we found by obſervation the latitude 80° 27′ 3″, and the dip 82° 2′ ½. At four in the morning I found, by Bouguer's log, that the current ſet two fathoms to the Eaſtward. At ſix in the morning the officers returned from the iſland; in their way back they had fired at, and wounded a ſea-horſe, which dived immediately, and brought up with it a number of others. They all joined in an attack upon the boat, wreſted an oar from one of the men, and were with difficulty prevented from ſtaving or overſetting her; but a boat from the Carcaſs joining ours, they diſperſed. One of that ſhip's boats had before been attacked

in

in the ſame manner off Moſſen Iſland. From Dr. Irving, who went on this party, I had the following account of the low iſland.

" We found ſeveral large fir trees lying on the " ſhore, ſixteen or eighteen feet above the level of " the ſea: ſome of theſe trees were ſeventy feet long, " and had been torn up by the roots; others cut down " by the axe, and notched for twelve feet lengths: " this timber was no ways decayed, or the ſtrokes " of the hatchet in the leaſt effaced. There were " likewiſe ſome pipe-ſtaves, and wood faſhioned for " uſe. The beach was formed of old timber, ſand, " and whale-bones.

" The iſland is about ſeven miles long, flat, and " formed chiefly of ſtones from eighteen to thirty " inches over, many of them hexagons, and commo- " dioufly placed for walking on: the middle of the " iſland is covered with moſs, ſcurvy graſs, ſorrel, " and a few ranunculuſes then in flower. Two rein- " deer were feeding on the moſs; one we killed, and " found it fat, and of high flavour. We ſaw a light " grey-coloured fox; and a creature ſomewhat larger " than a weaſel, with ſhort ears, long tail, and ſkin " ſpotted white and black. The iſland abounds with " ſmall ſnipes, ſimilar to the jack-ſnipe in England. " The Ducks were now hatching their eggs, and ma- " ny wild geeſe feeding by the water ſide."

When I left the deck at ſix in the morning, the weather was remarkably clear, and quite calm. To the N E, amongſt the iſlands, I ſaw much ice, but alſo much water between the pieces; which gave me hopes that when a breeze ſprung up, I ſhould be able to get to the Northward by that way.

30th. Little winds, and calm all day; we got ſomething to the Northward and Eaſtward. At noon we were by obſervation in latitude 80° 31′. At three in afternoon we were in longitude 18° 48′ E, being amongſt the iſlands, and in the ice, with no appearance of an opening for the ſhip. Between eleven and twelve at night I ſent the maſter, Mr. Crane, in the four-oared boat, amongſt the ice, to try whether he could get the boat through, and find any opening for the ſhip which might give us a proſpect of getting farther; with directions if he could reach the ſhore to go up one of

the

the mountains, in order to diſcover the ſtate of the ice to the Eaſtward and Northward. At five in the morning, the ice being all round us, we got out our ice-anchors, and moored along-ſide a field. The maſter returned between ſeven and eight, and with him Captain Lutwidge, who had joined him on ſhore. They had aſcended an high mountain, from whence they commanded a proſpect extending to the Eaſt and North Eaſt ten or twelve leagues, over one continued plain of ſmooth unbroken ice, bounded only by the horizon: they alſo ſaw land ſtretching to the S E, laid down in the Dutch charts as iſlands. The main body of ice, which we had traced from Weſt to Eaſt, they now perceived to join to theſe iſlands, and from them to what is called the North Eaſt land. In returning, the ice having cloſed much ſince they went, they were frequently forced to haul the boat over it to other openings. The weather exceedingly fine and mild, and unuſually clear. The ſcene was beautiful and pictureſque; the two ſhips becalmed in a large bay, with three apparent openings between the iſlands which formed it, but every where ſurrounded with ice as far as we could ſee, with ſome ſtreams of water; not a breath of air; the water perfectly ſmooth; the ice covered with ſnow, low, and even, except a few broken pieces near the edges: the pools of water in the middle of the pieces were frozen over with young ice.

31ſt. At nine in the morning, having a light breeze to the Eaſtward, we caſt off, and endeavoured to force through the ice. At noon the ice was ſo cloſe, that being unable to proceed, we moored again to a field. In the afternoon we filled our caſk with freſh water from the ice, which we found very pure and ſoft. The Carcaſs moved, and made faſt to the ſame field with us. The ice meaſured eight yards ten inches in thickneſs at one end, and ſeven yards eleven inches at the other. At four in the afternoon the variation was 12° 24′ W: at the ſame time the longitude 19° 0′ 15″ E; by which we found that we had hardly moved to the Eaſtward ſince the day before. Calm moſt part of the day; the weather very fine; the ice cloſed faſt, and was all round the ſhips; no opening to be ſeen any where, except an hole of about a mile and a half, where the

the ſhips lay faſt to the ice with ice-anchors. We completed the water. The ſhip's company were playing on the ice all day. The pilots being much farther than they had ever been, and the ſeaſon advancing, ſeemed alarmed at being beſet.

Auguſt 1ſt. The ice preſſed in faſt; there was not now the ſmalleſt opening; the two ſhips were within leſs than two lengths of each other, ſeparated by ice, and neither having room to turn. The ice, which had been all flat the day before, and almoſt level with the water's edge, was now in many places forced higher than the main yard, by the pieces ſqueezing together. Our latitude this day at noon, by the double altitude, was 80° 37′.

2d. Thick foggy wet weather, blowing freſh to the Weſtward; the ice immediately about the ſhips rather looſer than the day before, but yet hourly ſetting in ſo faſt upon us, that there ſeemed to be no probability of getting the ſhips out again, without a ſtrong Eaſt, or North Eaſt wind. There was not the ſmalleſt appearance of open water, except a little towards the Weſt point of the North Eaſt land. The ſeven iſlands and North Eaſt land, with the frozen ſea, formed almoſt a baſon, leaving but about four points opening for the ice to drift out, in caſe of a change of wind.

3d. The weather very fine, clear, and calm; we perceived that the ſhips had been driven far to the Eaſtward; the ice was much cloſer than before, and the paſſage by which we had come in from the Weſtward cloſed up, no open water being in ſight, either in that or any other quarter. The pilots having expreſſed a wiſh to get if poſſible farther out, the ſhips companies were ſet to work at five in the morning, to cut a paſſage through the ice, and warp through the ſmall openings to the Weſtward. We found the ice very deep, having ſawed ſometimes through pieces twelve feet thick. This labour was continued the whole day, but without any ſucceſs; our utmoſt efforts not having moved the ſhips above three hundred yards to the Weſtward through the ice, at the ſame time that they had been driven (together with the ice itſelf, to which they were faſt) far to the N E and Eaſtward by the current; which had alſo forced the looſe ice from the

Weſtward

Weſtward, between the iſlands, where it became packed, and as firm as the main body.

4th. Quite calm till evening, when we were flattered with a light air to the Eaſtward, which did not laſt long, and had no favourable effect. The wind was now at N W, with a very thick fog, the ſhip driving to the Eaſtward. The pilots ſeemed to apprehend that the ice extended very far to the Southward and Weſtward.

5th. The probability of getting the ſhips out appearing every hour leſs, and the ſeaſon being already far advanced, ſome ſpeedy reſolution became neceſſary as to the ſteps to be taken for the preſervation of the people. As the ſituation of the ſhips prevented us from ſeeing the ſtate of the ice to the Weſtward, by which our future proceedings muſt in a great meaſure be determined, I ſent Mr. Walden, one of the midſhipmen, with two pilots, to an iſland about twelve miles off, which I have diſtinguiſhed in the chart by the name of Walden's iſland, to ſee where the open water lay.

6th. Mr. Walden and the pilots, who were ſent the day before to examine the ſtate of the ice from the iſland, returned this morning with an account, that the ice, though cloſe all about us, was open to the Weſtward, round the point by which we came in. They alſo told me, that when upon the iſland they had the wind very freſh to the Eaſtward, though where the ſhips lay it had been almoſt calm all day. This circumſtance conſiderably leſſened the hopes we had hitherto entertained of the immediate effect of an Eaſterly wind in clearing the bay. We had but one alternative; either patiently to wait the event of the weather upon the ſhips, in hopes of getting them out, or to betake ourſelves to the boats. The ſhips had driven into ſhoal water, having but fourteen fathom. Should they, or the ice to which they were faſt, take the ground, they muſt be inevitably loſt, and probably overſet. The hopes of getting the ſhips out was not haſtily to be relinquiſhed, nor obſtinately adhered to, till all other means of retreat were cut off. Having no harbour to lodge them in, it would be impoſſible to winter them here, with any probability of their being again ſerviceable; our proviſions would be very ſhort for ſuch an undertaking,

taking, were it otherwiſe feaſible; and ſuppoſing, what appeared impoſſible, that we could get to the neareſt rocks, and make ſome conveniences for wintering, being now in an unfrequented part, where ſhips never even attempt to come, we ſhould have the ſame difficulties to encounter the next year, without the ſame reſources; the remains of the ſhip's company, in all probability, not in health; no proviſions; and the ſea not ſo open, this year having certainly been uncommonly clear. Indeed it could not have been expected that more than a very ſmall part ſhould ſurvive the hardſhips of ſuch a winter with every advantage; much leſs in our preſent ſituation. On the other hand, the undertaking to move ſo large a body for ſo conſiderable a diſtance by boats, was not without very ſerious difficulties. Should we remain much longer here, the bad weather muſt be expected to ſet in. The ſtay of the Dutchmen to the Northward is very doubtful: if the Northern harbours keep clear, they ſtay till the beginning of September; but when the looſe ice ſets in, they quit them immediately. I thought it proper to ſend for the officers of both ſhips, and informed them of my intention of preparing the boats for going away. I immediately hoiſted out the boats, and took every precaution in my power to make them ſecure and comfortable: the fitting would neceſſarily take up ſome days. The water ſhoaling, and the ſhips driving faſt towards the rocks to the NE, I ordered canvaſs bread-bags to be made, in caſe it ſhould be neceſſary very ſuddenly to betake ourſelves to the boats: I alſo ſent a man with a lead and line to the Northward, and another from the Carcaſs to the Eaſtward, to ſound wherever they found cracks in the ice, that we might have notice before either of the ſhips, or the ice to which they were faſt, took the ground; as in that caſe, they muſt inſtantly have been cruſhed or overſet. The weather bad; moſt part of the day foggy, and rather cold.

7th. In the morning I ſet out with a Launch over the ice; ſhe hauled much eaſier than I could have expected; we got her about two miles. I then returned with the people for their dinner. Finding the ice rather more open near the ſhips, I was encouraged to attempt

attempt moving them. The wind being Eaſterly, though but little of it, we ſet the ſails, and got the ſhips about a mile to the Weſtward. They moved indeed, but very ſlowly, and were not now by a great deal ſo far to the Weſtward as where they were beſet. However, I kept all the ſail upon them, to force through whenever the ice ſlacked the leaſt. The people behaved very well in hauling the boat; they ſeemed reconciled to the idea of quitting the ſhips, and to have the fulleſt confidence in their officers. The boats could not with the greateſt diligence be got to the water ſide before the fourteenth; if the ſituation of the ſhips did not alter by that time, I ſhould not be juſtified in ſtaying longer by them. In the mean time I reſolved to carry on both attempts together, moving the boats conſtantly, but without omitting any opportunity of getting the ſhips through.

8th. At half paſt four, ſent two pilots with three men to ſee the ſtate of the ice to the Weſtward, that I might judge of the probability of getting the ſhips out. At nine they returned, and reported the ice to be very heavy and cloſe, conſiſting chiefly of large fields. Between nine and ten this morning, I ſet out with the people, and got the Launch above three miles. The weather being foggy, and the people having worked hard, I thought it beſt to return on board between ſix and ſeven. The ſhips had in the mean time moved ſomething through the ice, and the ice itſelf had drifted ſtill more to the Weſtward. At night there was little wind, and a thick fog, ſo that I could not judge preciſely of the advantage we had gained; but I ſtill feared that, however flattering, it was not ſuch as to juſtify my giving up the idea of moving the boats, the ſeaſon advancing ſo faſt, the preſervation of the ſhips being ſo uncertain, and the ſituation of the people ſo critical.

9th. A thick fog in the morning: we moved the ſhip a little through ſome very ſmall openings. In the afternoon, upon its clearing up, we were agreeably ſurprized to find the ſhips had driven much more than we could have expected to the Weſtward. We worked hard all day, and got them ſomething more to the Weſtward through the ice; but nothing in compariſon

compariſon to what the ice itſelf had drifted. We got paſt the Launches; I ſent a number of men for them, and got them on board. Between three and four in the morning the wind was Weſterly, and it ſnowed faſt. The people having been much fatigued, we were obliged to deſiſt from working for a few hours. The progreſs which the ſhips had made through the ice was, however, a very favourable event: the drift of the ice was an advantage that might be as ſuddenly loſt, as it had been unexpectedly gained, by a change in the current: we had experienced the inefficacy of an Eaſterly wind when far in the bay, and under the high land; but having now got through ſo much of the ice, we began again to conceive hopes that a briſk gale from that quarter would ſoon effectually clear us.

10th. The wind ſpringing up to the N N E in the morning, we ſet all the ſail we could upon the ſhip, and forced her through a great deal of very heavy ice: ſhe ſtruck often very hard, and with one ſtroke broke the ſhank of the beſt bower anchor. About noon we had got her through all the ice, and out to ſea. I ſtood to the N W to make the ice, and found the main body juſt where we left it. At three in the morning, with a good breeze Eaſterly, we were ſtanding to the Weſtward, between the land and the ice, both in ſight; the weather hazy.

11th. Came to an anchor in the harbour of Smeerenberg, to refreſh the people after their fatigues. We found here four of the Dutch ſhips, which we had left in the Norways when we ſailed from Vogel Sang, and upon which I had depended for carrying the people home in caſe we had been obliged to quit the ſhips. In this Sound there is good anchorage in thirteen fathom, ſandy bottom, not far from the ſhore: it is well ſheltered from all winds. The iſland cloſe to which we lay is called Amſterdam Iſland, the Weſternmoſt point of which is Hacluyt's Head Land: here the Dutch uſed formerly to boil their whale-oil, and the remains of ſome conveniencies erected by them for that purpoſe are ſtill viſible. Once they attempted to make an eſtabliſhment, and left ſome people to winter here, who all periſhed. The Dutch ſhips ſtill reſort to this place for the latter ſeaſon of the whale fiſhery.

12th.

12th. Got the inſtruments on ſhore, and the tent pitched; but could not make any obſervations this day or the next, from the badneſs of the weather.

13th. Rain, and blowing hard: two of the Dutch ſhips ſailed for Holland.

14th. The weather being fine and little wind, we began our obſervations.

18th. Completed the obſervations. Calm all day. During our ſtay, I again ſet up the pendulum, but was not ſo fortunate as before, never having been able to get an obſervation of a revolution of the ſun, or even equal altitudes for the time. We had an opportunity of determining the refraction at midnight, which anſwered within a few ſeconds to the calculation in Dr. Bradley's table, allowing for the barometer and thermometer. Being within ſight of Cloven Cliff, I took a ſurvey of this part of Fair Haven, to connect it with the plan of the other part. Dr. Irving climbed up a mountain, to take its height with the barometer, which I determined at the ſame time geometrically with great care. By repeated obſervations here we found the latitude to be 79° 44′, which by the ſurvey correſponded exactly with the latitude of Cloven Cliff, determined before; the longitude 9° 50′ 45″ E; dip 82° 8′ ¾; variation 18° 57′ W; which agrees alſo with the obſervation made on ſhore in July. The tide flowed here half paſt one, the ſame as in Vogel Sang harbour.

Oppoſite to the place where the inſtruments ſtood, was one of the moſt remarkarble Icebergs in this country. Icebergs are large bodies of ice filling the vallies between the high mountains; the face towards the ſea is nearly perpendicular, and of a very lively light green colour. This was about three hundred feet high, with a caſcade of water iſſuing out of it. The black mountains, white ſnow, and beautiful colour of the ice, make a very romantick and uncommon picture. Large pieces frequently break off from the Icebergs, and fall with great noiſe into the water: we obſerved one piece which had floated out into the bay, and grounded in twenty-four fathom; it was fifty feet high above the ſurface of the water, and of the ſame beautiful colour as the Iceberg.

I ſhall

I ſhall here mention ſuch general obſervations as my ſhort ſtay enabled me to make. The ſtone we found was chiefly a kind of marble, which diſſolved eaſily in the marine acid. We perceived no marks of minerals of any kind, nor the leaſt appearance of preſent, or remains of former Volcanoes. Neither did we meet with inſects, or any ſpecies of reptiles; not even the common earthworm. We ſaw no ſprings or rivers, the water, which we found in great plenty, being all produced by the melting of the ſnow from the mountains. During the whole time we were in theſe latitudes, there was no thunder or lightning. I muſt alſo add, that I never found what is mentioned by Marten (who is generally accurate in in his obſervations, and faithful in his accounts) of the ſun at midnight reſembling in appearance the moon; I ſaw no difference in clear weather between the ſun at midnight and any other time, but what aroſe from a different degree of altitude; the brightneſs of the light appearing there, as well as elſewhere, to depend upon the obliquity of his rays. The ſky was in general loaded with hard white clouds; ſo that I do not remember to have ever ſeen the ſun and the horizon both free from them even in the cleareſt weather. We could always perceive when we were approaching the ice, long before we ſaw it, by a bright appearance near the horizon, which the pilots called the *blink of the ice*. Hudſon remarked that the ſea where he met with ice was blue; but the green ſea was free from it. I was particularly attentive to obſerve this difference, but could never diſcern it.

The driftwood in theſe ſeas has given riſe to various opinions and conjectures, both as to its nature and the place of its growth. All that which we ſaw (except the pipe-ſtaves taken notice of by Doctor Irving on the Low Iſland) was fir, and not worm-eaten. The place of its growth I had no opportunity of aſcertaining.

The nature of the ice was a principal object of attention in this climate. We found always a great ſwell near the edge of it; but whenever we got within the looſe ice, the water was conſtantly ſmooth. The looſe fields and flaws, as well as the interior part of the fixed ice, were flat, and low: with the wind blowing

blowing on the ice, the looſe parts were always, to uſe the phraſe of the Greenlandmen, *packed*; the ice at the edges appearing rough and piled up; this roughneſs and height I imagine to proceed from the ſmaller pieces being thrown up by the force of the ſea on the ſolid part. During the time that we were faſt amongſt the Seven Iſlands, we had frequent opportunities of obſerving the irreſiſtible force of the large bodies of floating ice. We have often ſeen a piece of ſeveral acres ſquare lifted up between two much larger pieces, and as it were becoming one with them; and afterwards this piece ſo formed acting in the ſame manner upon a ſecond and third; which would probably have continued to be the effect, till the whole bay had been ſo filled with ice that the different pieces could have had no motion, had not the ſtream taken an unexpected turn, and ſet the ice out of the bay.

19th. Weighed in the morning with the wind at N N E. Before we got out of the bay it fell calm. I obſerved for theſe three or four days, about eleven in the evening, an appearance of Duſk.

20th. At midnight, being exactly in the latitude of Cloven Cliff, Mr. Harvey took an obſervation for the refraction; which we found to agree with the tables. The wind Southerly all day, blowing freſh in the afternoon. About noon fell in with a ſtream of looſe ice, and about four made the main ice near us. We ſtood to the W N W along it at night, and found it in the ſame ſituation as when we ſaw it before; the wind freſhened and the weather grew thick, ſo that we loſt ſight of it, and could not venture to ſtand nearer, the wind being S S W.

21ſt. At two in the morning we were cloſe in with the body of the Weſt ice, and obliged to tack for it; blowing freſh, with a very heavy ſea from the Southward. The wind abated in the afternoon, but the ſwell continued, with a thick fog.

22d. The wind ſprung up Northerly, with a thick fog; about noon moderate and clearer; but coming on to blow freſh again in the evening, with a great ſea, and thick fog, I was forced to haul more to the Eaſtward, leſt we ſhould be embayed, or run upon lee ice.

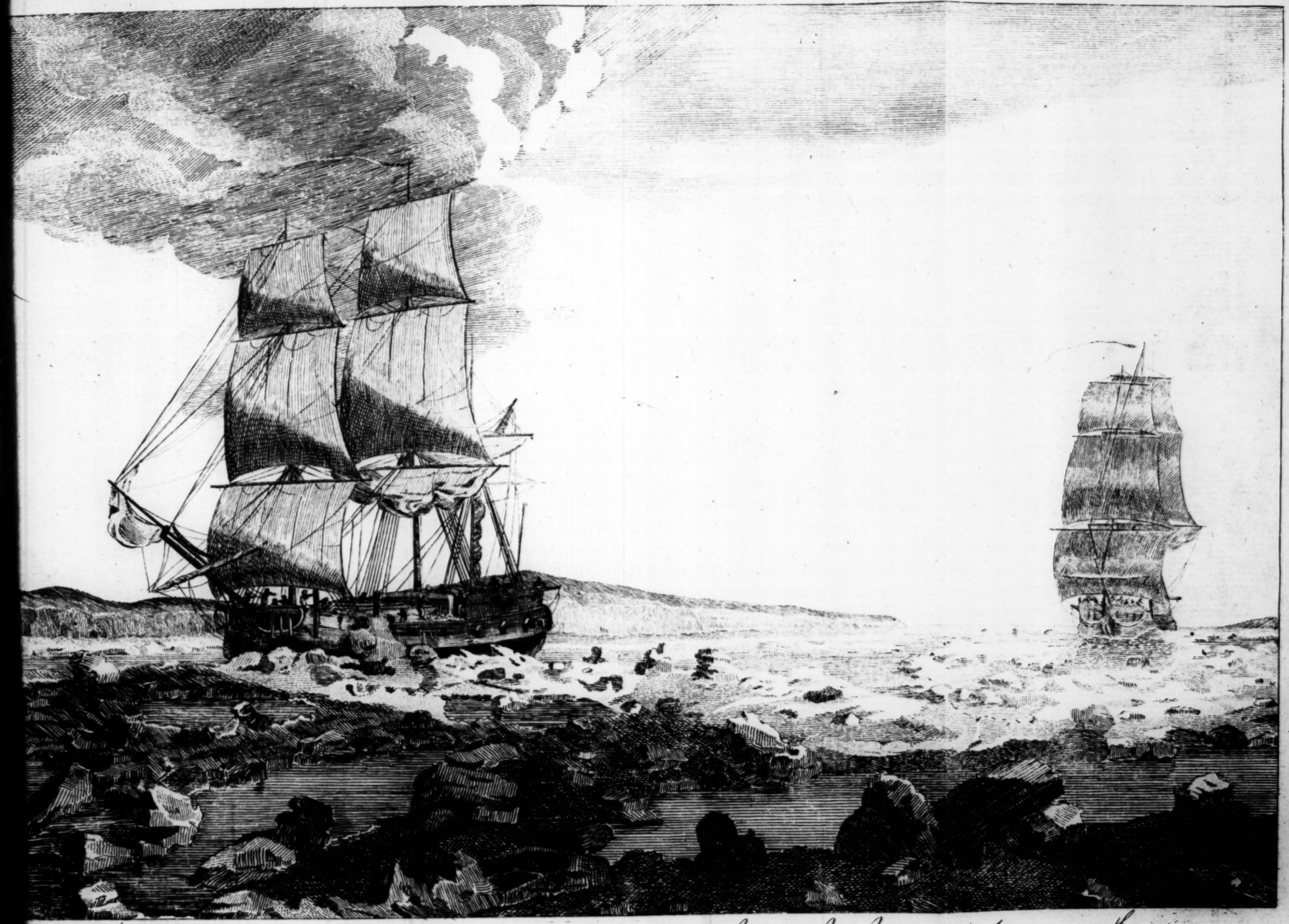
The ſeaſon was ſo very far advanced, and fogs as well

well as gales of wind ſo much to be expected, that nothing more could now have been done, had any thing been left untried. The ſummer appears to have been uncommonly favourable for our purpoſe, and afforded us the fulleſt opportunity of aſcertaining repeatedly the ſituation of that wall of ice, extending for more than twenty degrees between the latitudes of eighty and eighty-one, without the ſmalleſt appearance of any opening.

I ſhould here conclude the account of the voyage, had not ſome obſervations and experiments occurred on the paſſage home.

In ſteering to the Southward we ſoon found the weather grow more mild, or rather to our feelings warm. Auguſt 24th, we ſaw Jupiter: the ſight of a ſtar was now become almoſt as extraordinary a phenomenon, as the ſun at midnight when we firſt got within the arctic circle. The weather was very fine for ſome part of the voyage; on the 4th of September, the water being perfectly ſmooth with a dead calm, I repeated with ſucceſs the attempt I had made to get ſoundings in the main ocean at great depths, and ſtruck ground in ſix hundred and eighty-three fathoms; the bottom was a fine ſoft blue clay. From the 7th of September, when we were off Shetland, till the 24th, when we made Orfordneſs, we had very hard gales of wind with little intermiſſion, which were conſtantly indicated ſeveral hours before they came on by the fall of the barometer, and riſe of the manometer: this proved to me the utility of thoſe inſtruments at ſea. In one of theſe gales, the hardeſt, I think, I ever was in, and with the greateſt ſea, we loſt three of our boats, and were obliged to heave two of our guns overboard, and bear away for ſome time, though near a lee ſhore, to clear the ſhip of water. I cannot omit this opportunity of repeating, that I had the greateſt reaſon on this, as well as every other critical occaſion, to be ſatisfied with the behaviour both of the officers and ſeamen. In one of theſe gales on the 12th of September, Dr. Irving tried the temperature of the ſea in that ſtate of agitation, and found it conſiderably warmer than that of the atmoſphere. This obſervation is the more intereſting, as it agrees with a paſſage in Plutarch's Natural Queſtions, not (I believe) before taken notice of, or confirmed by experiment, in which he remarks,

" that



The RACEHORSE *and* CARCASS *forcing through the* ICE, *August 10th 1773.*

"that the ſea becomes warmer by being agitated in "waves."

The frequent and very heavy gales at the latter end of the year, confirmed me in the opinion, that the time of our ſailing from England was the propereſt that could have been choſen. Theſe gales are as common in the Spring as in the Autumn: there is every reaſon to ſuppoſe therefore, that at an early ſeaſon we ſhould have met with the ſame bad weather in going out as we did on our return. The unavoidable neceſſity of carrying a quantity of additional ſtores and proviſions, rendered the ſhips ſo deep in the water, that in heavy gales the boats, with many of the ſtores, muſt probably have been thrown over board; as we experienced on our way home, though the ſhips were then much lightened by the conſumption of proviſions, and expenditure of ſtores. Such accidents in the outſet muſt have defeated the voyage. At the time we ſailed, added to the fine weather, we had the further advantage of nearly reaching the latitude of eighty without ſeeing ice, which the Greenlandmen generally fall in with in the latitude of ſeventy-three or ſeventy-four. There was alſo moſt probability, if ever navigation ſhould be practicable to the Pole, of finding the ſea open to the Northward after the ſolſtice; the ſun having then exerted the full influence of his rays, though there was enough of the ſummer ſtill remaining for the purpoſe of exploring the ſeas to the Northward and Weſtward of Spitſbergen.

FINIS.

2 JY 61

CONTENTS

OF THE

SECOND VOLUME.

CHAP. I.

The Ceremonies of an Indian Funeral particularly described: General Obſervations on the Subject: A Character found among the Indians, to which the Ancients paid great Veneration: A Robbery at the Fort, and its Conſequences; with a Specimen of Indian Cookery, and various Incidents. Page 1

CHAP. II.

An Account of the Circumnavigation of the Iſland, and various Incidents that happened during the Expedition; with a Deſcription of a Burying-place and place of Worſhip, called Morai. 12

CHAP. III.

An Expedition of Mr. Banks to trace the River: Marks of ſubterraneous Fire: Preparations for leaving the Iſland: An Account of Tupia. 26

CONTENTS.

CHAP. IV.

A particular Deſcription of the Iſland; its Produce and Inhabitants; their Dreſs, Habitations, Food, domeſtic Life and Amuſements. 35

CHAP. V.

Of the Manufactures, Boats, and Navigation of Otaheite. 57

CHAP. VI.

Of the Diviſion of Time in Otaheite; Numeration, Computation of Diſtance, Language, Diſeaſes, Diſpoſal of the Dead, Religion, War, Weapons, and Government; with ſome general Obſervations for the Uſe of future Navigators. 71

CHAP. VII.

A Deſcription of ſeveral other Iſlands in the Neighbourhood of Otaheite, with various Incidents; a dramatic Entertainment; and many Particulars relative to the Cuſtoms and Manners of the Inhabitants. 88

BOOK II.

CHAP. I.

The Paſſage from Oteroah to New Zealand; Incidents which happened on going a-ſhore there, and while the Ship lay in Poverty-Bay. 114

CHAP. II.

A Deſcription of Poverty-Bay, and the Face of the adjacent Country. The Range from thence to Cape Turnagain, and back to Tolaga; with ſome Account of the People and the Country, and ſeveral Incidents that happened on that Part of the Coaſt. 127

CHAP. III.

The Range from Tolaga to Mercury-Bay, with an Account of many Incidents that happened both on board and a-ſhore. A Deſcription of ſeveral Views exhibited by the Country, and of the Heppahs, or forfeited Villages of the Inhabitants. 149

CHAP. IV.

The Range from Mercury-Bay to the Bay of Iſlands. An Expedition up the River Thames: Some Account of the Indians who inhabit its Banks, and the fine Timber that grows there. Several interviews with the Natives on different Parts of the Coaſt, and a Skirmiſh with them upon an Iſland. 170

CHAP. V.

Range from the Bay of Iſlands, round North-Cape to Queen Charlotte's Sound; and a Deſcription of that Part of the Coaſt. 188

CHAP. VI.

Tranſactions in Queen Charlotte's Sound. Paſſage through the Streight which divides the two Iſlands, and back to Cape Turnagain. Horrid Cuſtom of the Inhabitants. Remarkable Melody of Birds. A Viſit to a Hippah, and many other Particulars. 200

CONTENTS.

CHAP. VII.

Range from Cape Turnagain ſoutbward along the eaſtern Coaſt of Poenammoo, round Cape South, and back to the weſtern Entrance of Cooke's Streight, which compleated the Circumnavigation of this Country: with a Deſcription of the Coaſt, and of Admiralty Bay: The Departure from New Zealand, and various Particulars. 222

CHAP. VIII.

A general Account of New Zealand: its firſt Diſcovery, Situation, Extent, Climate, and Productions. 241

CHAP. IX.

A Deſcription of the Inhabitants, their Habitations, Apparel, Ornaments, Food, Cookery, and Manner of Life. 250

CHAP. X.

Of the Canoes and Navigation of the Inhabitants of New Zealand; their Tillage, Weapons, and Muſic; Government, Religion, and Language: With ſome Reaſons againſt the Exiſtence of a Southern Continent. 263

BOOK III.

CHAP. I.

The Run from New Zealand to Botany Bay, on the Eaſt Coaſt of New Holland, now called New South Wales. Various Incidents that happened there. With ſome Account of the Country and its Inhabitants. 279

CHAP.

CONTENTS.

CHAP. IV.

The Range from Botany Bay to Trinity Bay; with a farther Account of the Country, its Inhabitants and Productions. 300

CHAP. V.

Dangerous Situation of the Ship in her Courſe from Trinity Bay to Endeavour River. 331

CHAP. VI.

Tranſactions while the Ship was refitting in Endeavour River: a Deſcription of the adjacent Country, its Inhabitants, and Productions. 342

CHAP. VII.

Departure from Endeavour River; a particular Deſcription of the Harbour there, in which the Ship was refitted, the adjacent Country, and ſeveral Iſlands near the Coaſt: the Range from Endeavour River to the Northern Extremity of the Country, and the Dangers of that Navigation. 368

CHAP. VIII.

Departure from New South Wales. A particular Deſcription of the Country, its Products, and People. A Specimen of the Language; and ſome Obſervations upon the Currents and Tides. 396

CHAP. IX.

The Paſſage from New South Wales to New Guinea; with an Account of what happened upon landing there. 418

CHAP.

CONTENTS.

CHAP. X.

The Paſſage from New Guinea to the Iſland of Savu, and the Tranſactions there. 429

CHAP. XI.

A particular Deſcription of the Iſland of Savu; its Produce and Inhabitants; with a Specimen of their Language. 445

CHAP. XII.

The Run from the Iſland of Savu to Batavia, and an Account of the Tranſactions there while the Ship was refitting. 463

CHAP. XIII.

Some Account of Batavia and the adjacent Country, with their Fruits, Flowers, and other Productions. 479

CHAP. XIV.

Some Account of the Inhabitants of Batavia, and the adjacent Country, their Manners, Cuſtoms, and Manner of Life. 499

CHAP. XV.

The Paſſage from Batavia to the Cape of Good Hope. Some Account of Prince's Iſland, and its Inhabitants, and a comparative View of their Language with the Malay and Javaneſe. 514

CHAP.

CONTENTS.

CHAP. XVI.

Our Arrival at the Cape of Good Hope; ſome Remarks on the Run from Java Head to that Place; a Deſcription of the Cape, and of Saint Helena; with ſome Account of the Hottentots, and the Return of the Ship to England. 525

AN

2 JY 61

AN

ACCOUNT

OF A

VOYAGE round the WORLD.

CHAP. I.

The Ceremonies of an Indian Funeral particularly deſcribed: General Obſervations on the Subject: A Character found among the Indians, to which the Ancients paid great Veneration: A Robbery at the Fort, and its Conſequences; with a Specimen of Indian Cookery, and various Incidents.

ON the 5th we kept his Majeſty's birth-day; for though it is the 4th, we were unwilling to celebrate it during the abſence of the two parties who had been ſent out to obſerve the Tranſit. We had ſeveral of the Indian Chiefs at our entertainment, who drank his Majeſty's health by the name of Kihiargo, which was the neareſt imitation they could produce of King George. June 1769. Monday 5.

About this time died an old woman of ſome rank, who was related to Tomio, which gave us an opportunity to ſee how they diſpoſed of the body, and confirmed us in our opinion that theſe people, contrary to the preſent cuſtom of all other nations now known, never bury their dead. In the middle of a ſmall ſquare, neatly railed in with bamboo, the awning of a canoe was raiſed upon two poſts, and under this the

1769. June. body was depoſited upon ſuch a frame as has before been deſcribed: it was covered with fine cloth, and near it was placed bread-fruit, fiſh, and other proviſions: we ſuppoſed that the food was placed there for the ſpirit of the deceaſed, and conſequently, that theſe Indians had ſome confuſed notion of a ſeparate ſtate; but upon our applying for further information to Tubourai Tamaide, he told us, that the food was placed there as an offering to their gods. They do not, however, ſuppoſe, that the gods eat, any more than the Jews ſuppoſed that Jehovah could dwell in a houſe: the offering is made here upon the ſame principle as the Temple was built at Jeruſalem, as an expreſſion of reverence and gratitude, and a ſolicitation of the more immediate preſence of the Deity. In the front of the area was a kind of ſtile, where the relations of the deceaſed ſtood to pay the tribute of their ſorrow; and under the awning were innumerable ſmall pieces of cloth, on which the tears and blood of the mourners had been ſhed; for in their paroxyſms of grief it is a univerſal cuſtom to wound themſelves with the ſhark's tooth. Within a few yards two occaſional houſes were ſet up, in one of which ſome relations of the deceaſed conſtantly reſided, and in the other the chief mourner, who is always a man, and who keeps there a very ſingular dreſs, in which a ceremony is performed that will be deſcribed in its turn. Near the place where the dead are thus ſet up to rot, the bones are afterwards buried.

What can have introduced among theſe people the cuſtom of expoſing their dead above ground, till the fleſh is conſumed by putrefaction, and then burying the bones, it is perhaps impoſſible to gueſs; but it is remarkable, that Ælian and Apollonius Rhodius impute a ſimilar practice to the ancient inhabitants of Colchis, a country near Pontus in Aſia, now called Mingrelia; except that among them this manner of diſpoſing of the dead did not extend to both ſexes; the women they buried; but the men they wrapped in a hide, and hung up in the air by a chain. This practice among the Colchians is referred to a religious cauſe. The principal objects of their worſhip were the Earth and the Air; and it is ſuppoſed that, in conſequence

quence of ſome ſuperſtitious notion, they devoted their dead to both. Whether the natives of Otaheite had any notion of the ſame kind, we were never able certainly to determine; but we ſoon diſcovered, that the repoſitories of their dead were alſo places of worſhip. Upon this occaſion it may be obſerved, that nothing can be more abſurd than the notion that the happineſs or miſery of a future life depends, in any degree, upon the diſpoſition of the body when the ſtate of probation is paſt; yet that nothing is more general than a ſolicitude about it. However cheap we may hold any funeral rites which cuſtom has not familiarized, or ſuperſtition rendered ſacred, moſt men gravely deliberate how to prevent their body from being broken by the mattock and devoured by the worm, when it is no longer capable of ſenſation; and purchaſe a place for it in holy ground, when they believe the lot of its future exiſtence to be irrevocably determined. So ſtrong is the aſſociation of pleaſing or painful ideas with certain opinions and actions which affect us while we live, that we involuntarily act as if it was equally certain that they would affect us in the ſame manner when we are dead, though this is an opinion that nobody will maintain. Thus it happens, that the deſire of preſerving from reproach even the name that we leave behind us, or of procuring it honour, is one of the moſt powerful principles of action, among the inhabitants of the moſt ſpeculative and enlightened nations. Poſthumous reputation, upon every principle, muſt be acknowledged to have no influence upon the dead; yet the deſire of obtaining and ſecuring it, no force of reaſon, no habits of thinking, can ſubdue, except in thoſe whom habitual baſeneſs and guilt have rendered indifferent to honour and ſhame while they lived. This indeed ſeems to be among the happy imperfections of our nature, upon which the general good of ſociety in a certain meaſure depends; for as ſome crimes are ſuppoſed to be prevented by hanging the body of the criminal in chains after he is dead, ſo in conſequence of the ſame aſſociation of ideas, much good is procured to ſociety, and much evil prevented, by a deſire of preventing diſgrace or procuring honour to a name, when nothing but a name remains.

1769 June.

1769. June. Perhaps no better uſe can be made of reading an account of manners altogether new, by which the follies and abſurdities of mankind are taken out of that particular connection in which habit has reconciled them to us, than to conſider in how many inſtances they are eſſentially the ſame. When an honeſt devotee of the Church of Rome reads, that there are Indians on the banks of the Ganges, who believe that they ſhall ſecure the happineſs of a future ſtate by dying with a cow's tail in their hands, he laughs at their folly and ſuperſtition; and if theſe Indians were to be told, that there are people upon the continent of Europe, who imagine that they ſhall derive the ſame advantage from dying with the ſlipper of St. Francis upon their foot, they would laugh in their turn. But if, when the Indian heard the account of the Catholic, and the Catholic that of the Indian, each was to reflect, that there was no difference between the abſurdity of the ſlipper and of the tail; but that the veil of prejudice and cuſtom, which covered it in their own caſe, was withdrawn in the other, they would turn their knowledge to a profitable purpoſe.

Having obſerved that bread-fruit had for ſome days been brought in leſs quantities than uſual, we enquired the reaſon; and were told, that there being a great ſhew of fruit upon the trees, they had been thinned all at once, in order to make a kind of ſour paſte, which the natives call Mahie, and which, in conſequence of having undergone a fermentation, will keep a conſiderable time, and ſupply them with food when no ripe fruit is to be had.

Saturd. 10. On the 10th, the ceremony was to be performed, in honour of the old woman whoſe ſepulchral tabernacle has juſt been deſcribed, by the chief mourner; and Mr. Banks had ſo great a curioſity to ſee all the myſteries of the ſolemnity, that he determined to take a part in it, being told, that he could be preſent upon no other condition. In the evening, therefore, he repaired to the place where the body lay, and was received by the daughter of the deceaſed, and ſeveral other perſons, among whom was a boy about fourteen years old, who were to aſſiſt in the ceremony. Tubourai Tamaide was to be the principal mourner; and

and his dreſs was extremely fantaſtical, though not unbecoming. Mr. Banks was ſtripped of his European clothes, and a ſmall piece of cloth being tied round his middle, his body was ſmeared with charcoal and water, as low as the ſhoulders, till it was as black as that of a negroe; the ſame operation was performed upon ſeveral others, among whom were ſome women, who were reduced to a ſtate as near to nakedneſs as himſelf; the boy was blacked all over, and then the proceſſion ſet forward. Tubourai Tamaide uttered ſomething, which was ſuppoſed to be a prayer, near the body, and did the ſame when he came up to his own houſe: When this was done, the proceſſion was continued towards the fort, permiſſion having been obtained to approach it upon this occaſion. It is the cuſtom of the Indians to fly from theſe proceſſions with the utmoſt precipitation, ſo that as ſoon as thoſe who were about the fort ſaw it at a diſtance, they hid themſelves in the woods. It proceeded from the fort along the ſhore, and put to flight another body of Indians, conſiſting of more than an hundred, every one hiding himſelf under the firſt ſhelter that he could find; it then croſſed the river, and entered the woods, paſſing ſeveral houſes, all which were deſerted, and not a ſingle Indian could be ſeen during the reſt of the proceſſion, which continued more than half an hour. The office that Mr. Banks performed was called that of the Nineveh, of which there were two beſides himſelf; and the natives having all diſappeared, they came to the chief mourner, and ſaid matata, there are no people; after which the company was diſmiſſed to waſh themſelves in the river, and put on their cuſtomary apparel. 1769. June.

On the 12th, complaint being made to me, by ſome of the natives, that two of the ſeamen had taken from them ſeveral bows and arrows, and ſome ſtrings of plaited hair; I examined the matter, and finding the charge well ſupported, I puniſhed each of the criminals with two dozen laſhes. Mond. 12.

Their bows and arrows have not been mentioned before, nor were they often brought down to the fort. This day, however, Tubourai Tamaide brought down his, in conſequence of a challenge which he had received from Mr. Gore. The Chief ſuppoſed it was

1769. June. to try who could ſend the arrow fartheſt; Mr. Gore, who beſt could hit a mark: and as Mr. Gore did not value himſelf upon ſhooting to a great diſtance, nor the Chief upon hitting a mark, there was no trial of ſkill between them. Tubourai Tamaide, however, to ſhew us what he could do, drew his bow, and ſent an arrow, none of which are feathered, two hundred and ſeventy-four yards, which is ſomething more than a ſeventh, and ſomething leſs than a ſixth part of a mile. Their manner of ſhooting is ſomewhat ſingular; they kneel down, and the moment the arrow is diſcharged drop the bow.

Mr. Banks, in his morning walk this day, met a number of the natives, whom, upon inquiry, he found to be travelling muſicians; and having learned where they were to be at night, we all repaired to the place. The band conſiſted of two flutes and three drums, and we found a great number of people aſſembled upon the occaſion. The drummers accompanied the muſick with their voices, and, to our great ſurprize, we diſcovered that we were generally the ſubject of the ſong. We did not expect to have found among the uncivilized inhabitants of this ſequeſtered ſpot, a character which has been the ſubject of ſuch praiſe and veneration, where genius and knowledge have been moſt conſpicuous; yet theſe were the bards or minſtrels of Otaheite. Their ſong was unpremeditated, and accompanied with muſick; they were continually going about from place to place, and they were rewarded by the maſter of the houſe, and the audience, with ſuch things as one wanted, and the other could ſpare.

Wedneſ. 14. On the 14th, we were brought into new difficulties and inconvenience, by another robbery at the fort. In the middle of the night one of the natives contrived to ſteal an iron coal-rake, that was made uſe of for the oven. It happened to be ſet up againſt the inſide of the wall, ſo that the top of the handle was viſible from without; and we were informed that the thief, who had been ſeen lurking there in the evening, came ſecretly about three o'clock in the morning, and, watching his opportunity when the centinel's back

was

was turned, very dexterouſly laid hold of it with a long crooked ſtick, and drew it over the wall. I thought it of ſome conſequence, if poſſible, to put an end to theſe practices at once, by doing ſomething that ſhould make it the common intereſt of the natives themſelves to prevent them. I had given ſtrict orders that they ſhould not be fired upon, even when detected in theſe attempts, for which I had many reaſons: the common centinels were by no means fit to be entruſted with a power of life and death, to be exerted whenever they ſhould think fit; and I had already experienced, that they were ready to take away the lives that were in their power, upon the ſlighteſt occaſion; neither indeed did I think that the thefts which theſe people committed againſt us were, in them, crimes worthy of death: that thieves are hanged in England, I thought no reaſon why they ſhould be ſhot in Otaheite; becauſe, with reſpect to the natives, it would have been an execution by a law 'ex poſt facto:' they had no ſuch law among themſelves, and it did not appear to me that we had any right to make ſuch a law for them. That they ſhould abſtain from theft, or be puniſhed with death, was not one of the conditions under which they claimed the advantages of civil ſociety, as it is among us; and as I was not willing to expoſe them to fire arms, loaded with ſhot, neither could I perfectly approve of firing only with powder: at firſt, indeed, the noiſe and the ſmoke would alarm them, but when they found that no miſchief followed, they would be led to deſpiſe the weapons themſelves, and proceed to inſults, which would make it neceſſary to put them to the teſt, and from which they would be deterred by the very ſight of a gun, if it was never uſed but with effect. At this time, an accident furniſhed me with what I thought a happy expedient. It happened that above twenty of their ſailing canoes were juſt come in with a ſupply of fiſh; upon theſe I immediately ſeized, and bringing them into the river behind the fort, gave publick notice, that except the rake, and all the reſt of the things which from time to time had been ſtolen, were returned, the canoes ſhould be burned. This menace I ventured to publiſh, though I had no deſign to put it into execution, making no

1769. June.

1769. June. doubt but that it was well known in whoſe poſſeſſion the ſtolen goods were, and that as reſtitution was thus made a common cauſe, they would all of them in a ſhort time be brought back. A liſt of the things was made out, conſiſting principally of the rake, the muſket which had been taken from the marine when the Indian was ſhot, the piſtols which Mr. Banks loſt with his clothes at Atahourou, a ſword belonging to one of the petty officers, and the water caſk. About noon the rake was reſtored, and great ſolicitation was made for the releaſe of the canoes; but I ſtill inſiſted Thurſ. 15. upon my original condition. The next day came, and nothing farther was reſtored, at which I was much ſurpriſed, for the people were in the utmoſt diſtreſs for the fiſh, which in a ſhort time would be ſpoiled; I was therefore reduced to a diſagreeable ſituation, either of releaſing the canoes, contrary to what I had ſolemnly and publicly declared, or to detain them, to the great injury of thoſe who were innocent, without anſwering any good purpoſe to ourielves: as a temporary expedient, I permitted them to take the fiſh, but ſtill detained the canoes. This very licence, however, was productive of new confuſion and injury; for, it not being eaſy at once to diſtinguiſh to what particular perſons the ſeveral lots of fiſh belonged, the canoes were plundered, under favour of this circumſtance, by thoſe who had no right to any part of their cargo. Moſt preſſing inſtances were ſtill made that the canoes might be reſtored; and I having now the greateſt reaſon to believe, either that the things for which I detained them were not in the iſland, or that thoſe who ſuffered by their detention had not ſufficient influence over the thieves to prevail upon them to relinquiſh their booty, determined at length to give them up, not a little mortified at the bad ſucceſs of my project.

Another accident alſo about this time was, notwithſtanding all our caution, very near embroiling us with the Indians. I ſent the boat on ſhore with an officer to get ballaſt for the ſhip, and not immediately finding ſtones convenient for the purpoſe, he began to pull down ſome part of an incloſure where they depoſited the bones of their dead: this the Indians violently oppoſed, and a meſſenger came down to the tents to acquaint

quaint the officers that they would not ſuffer it. Mr. Banks immediately repaired to the place, and an amicable end was ſoon put to the diſpute, by ſending the boat's crew to the river, where ſtones enough were to be gathered without a poſſibility of giving offence. It is very remarkable, that theſe Indians appeared to be much more jealous of what was done to the dead than the living. This was the only meaſure in which they ventured to oppoſe us, and the only inſult that was offered to any individual among us was upon a ſimilar occaſion. Mr. Monkhouſe happening one day to pull a flower from a tree which grew in one of their ſepulchral incloſures, an Indian, whoſe jealouſy had probably been upon the watch, came ſuddenly behind him and ſtruck him: Mr. Monkhouſe laid hold of him, but he was inſtantly reſcued by two more, who took hold of Mr. Monkhouſe's hair, and forced him to quit his hold of their companion, and then ran away, without offering him any farther violence. 1769. June.

In the evening of the 19th, while the canoes were ſtill detained, we received a viſit from Oberea, which ſurprized us not a little, as ſhe brought with her none of the things that had been ſtolen, and knew that ſhe was ſuſpected of having ſome of them in her cuſtody. She ſaid, indeed, that her favourite, Obadee, whom ſhe had beaten and diſmiſſed, had taken them away; but ſhe ſeemed conſcious that ſhe had no right to be believed: ſhe diſcovered the ſtrongeſt ſigns of fear, yet ſhe ſurmounted it with aſtoniſhing reſolution, and was very preſſing to ſleep with her attendants in Mr. Banks's tent. In this, however, ſhe was not gratified; the affair of the jackets was too recent, and the tent was beſides filled with other people. Nobody elſe ſeemed willing to entertain her, and ſhe therefore, with great appearance of mortification and diſappointment, ſpent the night in her canoe. Mond. 19.

The next morning early ſhe returned to the fort, with her canoe and every thing that it contained, putting herſelf wholly into our power, with ſomething like greatneſs of mind, which excited our wonder and admiration. As the moſt effectual means to bring about a reconciliation, ſhe preſented us with a hog, and ſeveral other things, among which was a dog. Tueſd. 20.

We

1769. June. We had lately learned, that theſe animals were eſteemed by the Indians as more delicate food than their pork; and upon this occaſion we determined to try the experiment: the dog, which was very fat, we conſigned over to Tupia, who undertook to perform the double office of butcher and cook. He killed him, by holding his hands cloſe over his mouth and noſe, an operation which continued above a quarter of an hour. While this was doing, a hole was made in the ground about a foot deep, in which a fire was kindled, and ſome ſmall ſtones placed in layers alternately with the wood to heat; the dog was then ſinged, by holding him over the fire, and, by ſcraping him with a ſhell, the hair was taken off as clean as if he had been ſcalded in hot water: he was then cut up with the ſame inſtrument, and his entrails being taken out, were ſent to the ſea, where being carefully waſhed, they were put into cocoa-nut-ſhells, with what blood had come from the body: when the hole was ſufficiently heated, the fire was taken out, and ſome of the ſtones which were not ſo hot as to diſcolour any thing that they touched, being placed at the bottom, were covered with green leaves: the dog, with the entrails, was then placed upon the leaves, and other leaves being laid upon them, the whole was covered with the reſt of the hot ſtones, and the mouth of the hole cloſe ſtopped with mould: in ſomewhat leſs than four hours it was again opened, and the dog taken out excellently baked, and we all agreed that he made a very good diſh. The dogs which are here bread to be eaten, taſte no animal food, but are kept wholly upon bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, yams, and other vegetables of the like kind: all the fleſh and fiſh eaten by the inhabitants is dreſſed in the ſame way.

Wedneſ. 21. On the 21ſt, we were viſited at the fort by a Chief, called OAMO, whom we had never ſeen before, and who was treated by the natives with uncommon reſpect; he brought with him a boy about ſeven years old, and a young woman about ſixteen: the boy was carried upon a man's back, which we conſidered as a piece of ſtate, for he was as well able to walk as any preſent. As ſoon as they were in ſight, Oberea, and ſeveral other natives who were in the

the fort, went out to meet them, having firſt uncovered their heads and bodies as low as the waiſt: as they came on, the ſame ceremony was performed by all the natives who were without the fort. Uncovering the body, therefore, is in this country probably a mark of reſpect; and as all parts are here expoſed with equal indifference, the ceremony of uncovering it from the waiſt downwards, which was performed by Oorattooa, might be nothing more than a different mode of compliment, adapted to perſons of a different rank. The chief came into the tent, but no entreaty could prevail upon the young woman to follow him, though ſhe ſeemed to refuſe contrary to her inclination; the natives without were indeed all very ſolicitous to prevent her; ſometimes when her reſolution ſeemed to fail, almoſt uſing force: the boy alſo they reſtrained in the ſame manner; but Dr. Solander happening to meet him at the gate, took him by the hand, and led him in before the people were aware of it: as ſoon, however, as thoſe that were within ſaw him, they took care to have him ſent out. 1769. June.

Theſe circumſtances having ſtrongly excited our curioſity, we enquired who they were, and were informed, that Oamo was the huſband of Oberea, tho' they had been a long time ſeparated by mutual conſent; and that the young woman and the boy were their children. We learnt alſo, that the boy, whoſe name was TERRIDIRI, was heir apparent to the ſovereignty of the iſland, and that his ſiſter was intended for his wife, the marriage being deferred only till he ſhould arrive at a proper age. The ſovereign at this time was a ſon of WHAPPAI, whoſe name was OUTOU, and who, as before has been obſerved, was a minor. Whappai, Oamo, and Tootahah, were brothers: Whappai was the eldeſt, and Oamo the ſecond; ſo that, Whappai having no child but Outou, Terridiri, the ſon of his next brother Oamo, was heir to the ſovereignty. It will, perhaps, ſeem ſtrange that a boy ſhould be ſovereign during the life of his father: but, according to the cuſtom of the country, a child ſucceeds to a father's title and authority as ſoon as it is born: a regent is then elected, and the father of the new ſovereign is generally continued in his authority, under

1769. June. under that title, till his child is of age; but, at this time, the choice had fallen upon Tootahah, the uncle, in conſequence of his having diſtinguiſhed himſelf in a War. Oamo aſked many queſtions concerning England and its inhabitants, by which he appeared to have great ſhrewdneſs and underſtanding.

CHAP. II.

An Account of the Circumnavigation of the Iſland, and various Incidents that happened during the Expedition; with a Deſcription of a Burying-place and place of Worſhip, called Morai.

Monday 26. ON Monday the 26th, about three o'clock in the morning, I ſet out in the pinnace, accompanied by Mr. Banks, to make the circuit of the iſland, with a view to ſketch out the coaſt and harbours. We took our rout to the eaſtward, and about eight in the forenoon we went on ſhore, in a diſtrict called OAHOUNUE, which is governed by AHIO, a young Chief, whom we had often ſeen at the tents, and who favoured us with his company to breakfaſt. Here alſo we found two other natives of our old acquaintance, TITUBOALO and HOONA, who carried us to their houſes, near which we ſaw the body of the old woman, at whoſe funeral rites Mr. Banks had aſſiſted, and which had been removed hither from the ſpot where it was firſt depoſited, this place having deſcended from her by inheritance to Hoona, and it being neceſſary on that account that it ſhould lie here. We then proceeded on foot, the boat attending within call, to the harbour in which Mr. Bougainville lay, called OHIDEA, where the natives ſhewed us the ground upon which his people pitched their tent, and the brook at which they water, though no trace of them remained, except the holes where the poles of the tent had been fixed, and a ſmall piece of potſheard, which Mr. Banks found in looking narrowly about the ſpot. We met, however, with ORETTE, a Chief who was their principal friend, and whoſe brother OUTORROU went away with them.

This

This harbour lies on the weſt ſide of a great bay, under ſhelter of a ſmall iſland called BOOUROU, near which is another called TAAWIRRII; the breach in the reefs is here very large, but the ſhelter for ſhips is not the beſt. 1769. June.

Soon after we had examined this place, we took boat, and aſked Tituboalo to go with us to the other ſide of the bay; but he refuſed, and adviſed us not to go, for he ſaid the country there was inhabited by people who were not ſubject to Tootahah, and who would kill both him and us. Upon receiving this intelligence, we did not, as may be imagined, relinquiſh our enterprize; but we immediately loaded our pieces with ball: this was ſo well underſtood by Tituboalo as a precaution which rendered us formidable, that he now conſented to be of our party.

Having rowed till it was dark, we reached a low neck of land, or iſthmus, at the bottom of the bay, that divides the iſland into two peninſulas, each of which is a diſtrict or government wholly independent of the other. From Port-Royal, where the Ship was at anchor, the coaſt trends E. by S. and E. S. E. ten miles, then S. by E. and S. eleven miles to the iſthmus. In the firſt direction, the ſhore is in general open to the ſea; but in the laſt it is covered by reefs of rocks, which form ſeveral good harbours, with ſafe anchorage, in 16, 18, 20, and 24 fathom of water, with other conveniencies. As we had not yet got into our enemy's country, we determined to ſleep on ſhore: we landed, and though we found but few houſes, we ſaw ſeveral double canoes whoſe owners were well known to us, and who provided us with ſupper and lodging; of which Mr. Banks was indebted for his ſhare to Ooratooa, the lady who had paid him her compliments in ſo ſingular a manner at the fort.

In the morning, we looked about the country, and found it to be a marſhy flat, about two miles over, acroſs which the natives haul their canoes to the correſponding bay on the other ſide. We then prepared to continue our route for what Tituboalo called the other Kingdom; he ſaid that the name of it was TIARRABOU, or OTAHEITE ETE; and that of the Chief who governed it, WAHEATUA: upon this occaſion Tueſ. 27.

1769. June. caſion alſo, we learnt that the name of the peninſula where we had taken our ſtation was OPOUREONU, or OTAHEITE NUE. Our new aſſociate ſeemed to be now in better ſpirits than he had been the day before; the people in Tiarabou would not kill us, he ſaid, but he aſſured us that we ſhould be able to procure no victuals among them; and indeed we had ſeen no bread-fruit ſince we ſet out.

After rowing a few miles, we landed in a diſtrict, which was the dominion of a Chief, called MARAITATA, the burying-place of men; whoſe father's name was PAHAIREDO, the ſtealer of boats. Though theſe names ſeemed to favour the account that had been given by Tituboalo, we ſoon found that it was not true. Both the father and the ſon received us with the greateſt civility, gave us proviſions, and, after ſome delay, ſold us a very large hog for a hatchet. A croud ſoon gathered round us, but we ſaw only two people that we knew; neither did we obſerve a ſingle bead or ornament among them, that had come from our ſhip, though we ſaw ſeveral things which had been brought from Europe. In one of the houſes lay two twelve-pound ſhot, one of which was marked with the broad arrow of England, though the people ſaid they had them from the ſhips that lay in Bougainville's harbour.

We proceeded on foot till we came to the diſtrict which was immediately under the government of the principal Chief, or King of the peninſula, Waheatua. Waheatua had a ſon, but whether, according to the cuſtom of Opoureonu, he adminiſtered the government as regent, or in his own right, is uncertain. This diſtrict conſiſts of a large and fertile plain, watered by a river ſo wide, that we were obliged to ferry over it in a canoe; our Indian train, however, choſe to ſwim, and took to the water with the ſame facility as a pack of hounds. In this place we ſaw no houſe that appeared to be inhabited, but the ruins of many, that had been very large. We proceeded along the ſhore, which forms a bay, called OAITIPEHA, and at laſt we found the Chief ſitting near ſome pretty canoe awnings, under which, we ſuppoſed, he and his attendants ſlept. He was a thin old man, with a very white head and beard, and had with him a comely woman, about five

five and twenty years old, whoſe name was TOUDIDDE. We had often heard the name of this woman, and, from report and obſervation, we had reaſon to think that ſhe was the OBEREA of this peninſula. From this place, between which and the iſthmus there are other harbours, formed by the reefs that lie along the ſhore, where ſhipping may lie in perfect ſecurity, and from whence the land trends S. S. E. and S. to the S. E. part of the iſland, we were accompanied by TEAREE, the ſon of Waheatua, of whom we had purchaſed a hog, and the country we paſſed through appeared to be more cultivated than any we had ſeen in other parts of the iſland: the brooks were every where banked into narrow channels with ſtone, and the ſhore had alſo a facing of ſtone, where it was waſhed by the ſea. The houſes were neither large nor numerous, but the canoes that were hauled up along the ſhore were almoſt innumerable, and ſuperior to any that we had ſeen before, both in ſize and make; they were longer, the ſterns were higher, and the awnings were ſupported by pillars. At almoſt every point there was a ſepulchral building, and there were many of them alſo inland. They were of the ſame figure as thoſe in Opoureonu, but they were cleaner and better kept, and decorated with many carved boards, which were ſet upright, and on the top of which were various figures of birds and men: on one in particular, there was the repreſentation of a cock, which was painted red and yellow, to imitate the feathers of that animal, and rude images of men were, in ſome of them, placed one upon the head of another. But in this part of the country, however fertile and cultivated, we did not ſee a ſingle bread-fruit; the trees were entirely bare, and the inhabitants ſeemed to ſubſiſt principally upon nuts which are not unlike a cheſnut, and which they call AHEE. 1769. June.

When we had walked till we were weary, we called up the boat, but both our Indians, Tituboalo and Tuahow, were miſſing: they had, it ſeems, ſtayed behind at Waheatua's, expecting us to return thither, in conſequence of a promiſe which had been extorted from us, and which we had it not in our power to fulfil.

Tearee,

1769. June. Tearee, however, and another, embarked with us, and we proceeded till we came a-breaſt of a ſmall iſland called OTOOAREITE; it being then dark, we determined to land, and our Indians conducted us to a place where they ſaid we might ſleep: it was a deſerted houſe, and near it was a little cove, in which the boat might lie with great ſafety and convenience. We were, however, in want of proviſions, having been very ſparingly ſupplied ſince we ſet out; and Mr. Banks immediately went into the woods to ſee whether any could be procured. As it was dark, he met with no people, and could find but one houſe that was inhabited: a bread-fruit and a half, a few ahees, and ſome fire, were all that it afforded; upon which, with a duck or two, and a few curlieus, we made our ſupper, which, if not ſcanty, was diſagreeable, by the want of bread, with which we had neglected to furniſh ourſelves, as we depended upon meeting with bread-fruit, and took up our lodging under the awning of a canoe belonging to Tearee, which followed us.

Wed. 28. The next morning, after having ſpent ſome time in another fruitleſs attempt to procure a ſupply of proviſions, we proceeded round the ſouth-eaſt point, part of which is not covered by any reef, but lies open to the ſea; and here the hill riſes directly from the ſhore. At the ſouthermoſt part of the iſland, the ſhore is again covered by a reef, which forms a good harbour; and the land about it is very fertile. We made this route partly on foot and partly in the boat; when we had walked about three miles, we arrived at a place where we ſaw ſeveral large canoes, and a number of people with them, whom we were agreeably ſurpriſed to find were of our intimate acquaintance. Here, with much difficulty, we procured ſome cocoa-nuts, and then embarked, taking with us Tuahow, one of the Indians who had waited for us at Waheatua's, and had returned the night before, long after it was dark.

When we came a-breaſt of the ſouth-eaſt end of the iſland, we went aſhore, by the advice of our Indian guide, who told us that the country was rich and good. The Chief, whoſe name was MATHIABO, ſoon came down to us, but ſeemed to be a total ſtranger both to us and to our trade: his ſubjects, however, brought us

us plenty of cocoa-nuts, and about twenty bread fruit. The bread-fruit we bought at a very dear rate, but his excellency ſold us a pig for a glaſs bottle, which he preferred to every thing elſe that we could give him. We found in his poſſeſſion a gooſe and a turkey-cock, which, we were informed, had been left upon the iſland by the Dolphin: they were both enormouſly fat, and ſo tame that they followed the Indians, who were fond of them to exceſs, wherever they went. 1769. June.

In a long houſe, in this neighbourhood, we ſaw what was altogether new to us. At one end of it, faſtened to a ſemi-circular board, hung fifteen human jaw-bones; they appeared to be freſh, and there was not one of them that wanted a ſingle tooth. A ſight ſo extraordinary ſtrongly excited our curioſity, and we made many enquiries about it; but at this time could get no information; for the people either could not or would not underſtand us.

When we left this place, the Chief, Mathiabo, deſired leave to accompany us, which was readily granted. He continued with us the remainder of the day, and proved very uſeful, by piloting us over the ſhoals. In the evening, we opened the bay on the north-weſt ſide of the iſland, which anſwered to that on the ſouth-eaſt, ſo as at the iſthmus, or carrying place, almoſt to interſect the iſland, as I have obſerved before; and when we had coaſted about two-thirds of it, we determined to go on ſhore for the night. We ſaw a large houſe at ſome diſtance, which, Mathiabo informed us, belonged to one of his friends; and ſoon after ſeveral canoes came off to meet us, having on board ſome very handſome women, who, by their behaviour, ſeemed to have been ſent to entice us on ſhore. As we had before reſolved to take up our reſidence here for the night, little invitation was neceſſary. We found that the houſe belonged to the Chief of the diſtrict, whoſe name was WIVEROU: he received us in a very friendly manner, and ordered his people to aſſiſt us in dreſſing our proviſion, of which we had now got a tolerable ſtock. When our ſupper was ready, we were conducted into that part of the houſe where Wiverou was ſitting, in order to eat it: Mathiabo ſupped with us; and Wiverou, calling for his

1769. June. ſupper at the ſame time, we eat our meal very ſo-ciably, and with great good humour. When it wa over, we began to enquire where we were to ſleep, an a part of the houſe was ſhewn us, of which we were told we might take poſſeſſion for that purpoſe. We then ſent for our cloaks, and Mr. Banks began to un-dreſs, as his cuſtom was, and, with a precaution which he had been taught by the loſs of the jackets a Atahourou, ſent his clothes aboard the boat, propoſ-ing to cover himſelf with a piece of Indian cloth. When Mathiabo perceived what was doing, he alſo pretended to want a cloak; and, as he had behaved very well, and done us ſome ſervice, a cloak was or-dered for him. We lay down, and obſerved that Ma-thiabo was not with us; but we ſuppoſed that he wa gone to bathe, as the Indians always do before they ſleep. We had not waited long, however, when an Indian, who was a ſtranger to us, came and told Mr. Banks, that the cloak and Mathiabo had diſappeared together. This man had ſo far gained our confidence that we did not at firſt believe the report; but it being ſoon after confirmed by Tuahow, our own Indian, we knew no time was to be loſt. As it was impoſſi-ble for us to purſue the thief with any hope of ſucceſs without the aſſiſtance of the people about us, Mr. Banks ſtarted up, and telling our caſe, required them to recover the cloak, and, to enforce his requiſition, ſhewed one of his pocket piſtols, which he alway kept about him. Upon ſight of the piſtol, the whole company took the alarm, and, inſtead of aſſiſting to catch the thief, or recover what had been ſtolen, be-gan with great precipitation to leave the place; one of them, however, was ſeized, upon which he immedi-ately offered to direct the chace: I ſet out therefore with Mr. Banks, and though we ran all the way, the alarm had got before us, for in about ten minutes we met a man bringing back the cloak, which the thief had relinquiſhed in great terror; and as we did not then think fit to continue the purſuit, he made his eſcape. When we returned, we found the houſe, in which there had been between two and three hundred people, entirely deſerted. It being, however, ſoon known that we had no reſentment againſt any body but

but Mathiabo, the Chief Wiverou, our hoſt, with his wife, and many others, returned, and took up their lodging with us for the night. In this place, however, we were deſtined to more confuſion and trouble, for about five o'clock in the morning our centry alarmed us with an account that the boat was miſſing: he had ſeen her, he ſaid, about half an hour before, at her grappling, which was not above fifty yards from the ſhore; but upon hearing the ſound of oars, he had looked out again, and could ſee nothing of her. At this account we ſtarted up greatly alarmed, and ran to the water ſide; the morning was clear and ſtar light, ſo that we could ſee to a conſiderable diſtance, but there was no appearance of the boat. Our ſituation was now ſuch as might juſtify the moſt terrifying apprehenſions; as it was a dead calm, and we could not therefore ſuppoſe her to have broken from her grappling, we had great reaſon to fear that the Indians had attacked her, and finding the people aſleep, had ſucceeded in their enterprize. We were but four, with only one muſquet and two pocket piſtols, without a ſpare ball or charge of powder for either. In this ſtate of anxiety and diſtreſs we remained a conſiderable time, expecting the Indians every moment to improve their advantage, when, to our unſpeakable ſatisfaction, we ſaw the boat return, which had been driven from her grappling by the tide; a circumſtance to which, in our confuſion and ſurpriſe, we did not advert. 1769. June.

As ſoon as the boat returned, we got our breakfaſt, and were impatient to leave the place, leſt ſome other vexatious accident ſhould befal us. It is ſituated on the north ſide of Tiarrabou, the ſouth-eaſt peninſula, or diviſion, of the iſland, and at the diſtance of about five miles ſouth-eaſt from the iſthmus, having a large and commodious harbour, inferior to none in the iſland, about which the land is very rich in produce. Notwithſtanding we had had little communication with this diviſion, the inhabitants every where received us in a friendly manner; we found the whole of it fertile and populous, and, to all appearance, in a more flouriſhing ſtate than Opoureonu, though it is not above one fourth part as large. Thurſ. 29.

1769. June. The next diſtrict in which we landed was the laſt in Tiarraboú, and governed by a Chief, whoſe name we underſtood to be OMOE. Omoe was building a houſe, and being herefore very deſirous of procuring a hatchet, he would have been glad to have purchaſed one with any thing that he had in his poſſeſſion; it happened, however, rather unfortunately for him and us, that we had not one hatchet left in the boat. We offered to trade with nails, but he would not part with any thing in exchange for them; we therefore reimbarked, and put off our boat; but the Chief being unwilling to relinquiſh all hope of obtaining ſomething from us that would be of uſe to him, embarked in a canoe, with his wife WHANNO-OUDA, and followed us. After ſome time we took them into the boat, and when we had rowed about a league, they deſired we would put aſhore: we immediately complied with his requeſt, and found ſome of his people, who brought down a very large hog. We were as unwilling to loſe the hog, as the Chief was to part with us, and indeed it was worth the beſt axe we had in the ſhip; we therefore hit upon an expedient, and told him, that if he would bring his hog to the fort at MATAVAI, the Indian name for Port Royal bay, he ſhould have a large axe, and a nail into the bargain, for his trouble. To this propoſal, after having conſulted with his wife, he agreed, and gave us a large piece of his country cloth as a pledge, that he would perform his agreement, which, however, he never did.

At this place we ſaw a very ſingular curioſity: it was the figure of a man conſtructed of baſket work, rudely made, but not ill deſigned; it was ſomething more than ſeven feet high, and rather too bulky in proportion to its height. The wicker ſkeleton was completely covered with feathers, which were white where the ſkin was to appear, and black in the parts which it is their cuſtom to paint or ſtain, and upon the head, where there was to be a repreſentation of hair: upon the head alſo were four protuberances, three in front, and one behind, which we ſhould have called horns, but which the Indians dignified with the name of TATE ETE, little men. The image was called

called MANIOE, and was ſaid to be the only one of the kind in Otaheite. They attempted to give us an explanation of its uſe and deſign, but we had not then acquired enough of their language to underſtand them. We learned, however, afterwards, that it was a repreſentation of Mauwe, one of their Eatuas, or gods of the ſecond claſs. 1769. June.

After having ſettled our affairs with Omoe, we proceeded on our return, and ſoon reached Opoureonu, the north-weſt peninſula. After rowing a few miles, we went on ſhore again, but the only thing we ſaw worth notice was a repoſitory for the dead, uncommonly decorated; the pavement was extremely neat, and upon it was raiſed a pyramid, about five feet high, which was intirely covered with the fruits of two plants peculiar to the country. Near the pyramid was a ſmall image of ſtone, of very rude workmanſhip, and the firſt inſtance of carving in ſtone that we had ſeen among theſe people. They appeared to ſet a high value upon it, for it was covered from the weather by a ſhed, that had been erected on purpoſe.

We proceeded in the boat, and paſſed through the only harbour, on the ſouth ſide of Opoureonu, that is fit for ſhipping. It is ſituated about five miles to the weſtward of the iſthmus, between two ſmall iſlands that lie near the ſhore, and about a mile diſtant from each other, and affords good anchorage in eleven and twelve fathom water. We were now not far from the diſtrict called PAPARRA, which belonged to our friends Oamo and Oberea, where we propoſed to ſleep. We went on ſhore about an hour before night, and found that they were both abſent, having left their habitations to pay us a viſit at Matavai: this, however, did not alter our purpoſe; we took up our quarters at the houſe of Oberea, which, though ſmall, was very neat, and at this time had no inhabitant but her father, who received us with looks that bid us welcome. Having taken poſſeſſion, we were willing to improve the little day-light that was left us, and therefore walked out to a point, upon which we had ſeen, at a diſtance, trees that are here called Etoa, which generally diſtinguiſh the places where theſe people bury the bones of their dead; their name for ſuch burying-grounds, which are

1769. June. alſo places of worſhip, is MORAI. We were ſoon ſtruck with the ſight of an enormous pile, which, we were told, was the Morai of Oamo and Oberea, and the principal piece of Indian architecture in the iſland. It was a pile of ſtone work, raiſed pyramidically upon an oblong baſe, or ſquare, two hundred and ſixty-ſeven feet long, and eighty-ſeven wide. It was built like the ſmall pyramidal mounts upon which we ſometimes fix the pillar of a ſun-dial, where each ſide is a flight of ſteps; the ſteps, however, at the ſides were broader than thoſe at the ends, ſo that it terminated not in a ſquare of the ſame figure with the baſe, but in a ridge, like the roof of a houſe; there were eleven of theſe ſteps, each of which was four feet high, ſo that the height of the pile was forty-four feet; each ſtep was formed of one courſe of white coral ſtone, which was neatly ſquared and poliſhed; the reſt of the maſs, for there was no hollow within, conſiſted of round pebbles, which, from the regularity of their figure, ſeemed to have been wrought. Some of the coral ſtones were very large; we meaſured one of them, and found it three feet and an half by two feet and an half. The foundation was of rock ſtones, which were alſo ſquared, and one of them meaſured four feet ſeven inches by two feet four. Such a ſtructure, raiſed without the aſſiſtance of iron tools to ſhape the ſtones, or mortar to join them, ſtruck us with aſtoniſhment: it ſeemed to be as compact and firm as it could have been made by any workman in Europe, except that the ſteps, which range along its greateſt length, are not perfectly ſtraight, but ſink in a kind of hollow in the middle, ſo that the whole ſurface, from end to end, is not a right line, but a curve. The quarry-ſtones, as we ſaw no quarry in the neighbourhood, muſt have been brought from a conſiderable diſtance, as there is no method of conveyance here but by the hand; the coral muſt alſo have been fiſhed for from under the water, where, though it may be found in plenty, it lies at a conſiderable depth, never leſs than three feet. Both the rock ſtone and the coral could be ſquared only by tools made of the ſame ſubſtance, which muſt have been a work of incredible labour; but the poliſhing was more eaſily effected by means of the ſharp coral ſand, which is found every where upon

upon the ſea-ſhore in great abundance. In the middle of the top ſtood the image of a bird, carved in wood; and near it lay the broken one of a fiſh, carved in ſtone. The whole of this pyramid made part of one ſide of a ſpacious area or ſquare, nearly of equal ſides, being three hundred and ſixty feet by three hundred and fifty-four, which was walled in with ſtone, and paved with flat ſtones in its whole extent; though there were growing in it, notwithſtanding the pavement, ſeveral of the trees which they call Etoa, and plantains. About an hundred yards to the weſt of this building, was another paved area or court, in which were ſeveral ſmall ſtages raiſed on wooden pillars, about ſeven feet high, which are called by the Indians Ewattas, and ſeem to be a kind of altars, as upon theſe are placed proviſions of all kinds, as offerings to the gods; we have ſince ſeen whole hogs placed upon them, and we found here the ſkulls of above fifty, beſides the ſkulls of a great number of dogs. 1769. June.

The principal object of ambition among theſe people is to have a magnificent Morai, and this was a ſtriking memorial of the rank and power of Oberea. It has been remarked, that we did not find her inveſted with the ſame authority that ſhe exerciſed when the Dolphin was at this place, and we now learnt the reaſon of it. Our way from her houſe to the Morai lay along the ſea ſide, and we obſerved every where under our feet a great number of human bones, chiefly ribs and vertebræ. Upon enquiring into the cauſe of ſo ſingular an appearance, we were told, that in the then laſt month of Owarahew, which anſwered to our December, 1768, about four or five months before our arrival, the people of Tiarrabou, the S. E. peninſula which we had juſt viſited, made a deſcent at this place, and killed a great number of the people, whoſe bones were thoſe that we ſaw upon the ſhore: that, upon this occaſion, Oberea, and Oamo, who then adminiſtered the government for his ſon, had fled to the mountains; and that the conquerors burnt all the houſes, which were very large, and carried away the hogs and what other animals they found. We learnt alſo, that the turkey and gooſe, which we had ſeen when we were with Mathiabo, the ſtealer of cloaks,

1769. June. were among the ſpoils; this accounted for their being found among people with whom the Dolphin had little or no communication; and upon mentioning the jaw-bones, which we had ſeen hanging from a board in a long houſe, we were told, that they alſo had been carried away as trophies, the people here carrying away the jaw-bones of their enemies, as the Indians of North America do the ſcalps.

After having thus gratified our curioſity, we returned to our quarters, where we paſſed the night in perfect ſecurity and quiet. By the next evening we arrived at Atahourou, the reſidence of our friend Tootahah, where, the laſt time we paſſed the night under his protection, we had been obliged to leave the beſt part of our clothes behind us. This adventure, however, ſeemed now to be forgotten on both ſides. Our friends received us with great pleaſure, and gave us a good ſupper and a good lodging, where we ſuffered neither loſs or diſturbance.

July. Saturday 1. The next day, Saturday, July the 1ſt, we got back to our fort at Matavia, having found the circuit of the iſland, including both peninſulas, to be about thirty leagues. Upon our complaining of the want of bread-fruit, we were told, that the produce of the laſt ſeaſon was nearly exhauſted; and that what was ſeen ſprouting upon the trees, would not be fit to uſe in leſs than three months; this accounted for our having been able to procure ſo little of it in our route.

While the bread-fruit is ripening upon the flats, the inhabitants are ſupplied in ſome meaſure from the trees which they have planted upon the hills to preſerve a ſucceſſion; but the quantity is not ſufficient to prevent ſcarcity: they live therefore upon the ſour paſte which they call Mahie, upon wild plantains, and ahee nuts, which at this time are in perfection. How it happened that the Dolphin, which was here at this ſeaſon, found ſuch plenty of bread-fruit upon the trees, I cannot tell, except the ſeaſon in which they ripen varies.

At our return, our Indian friends crowded about us, and none of them came empty-handed. Though I had determined to reſtore the canoes which had been detained

detained to their owners, it had not yet been done; but I now releaſed them as they were applied for. Upon this occaſion I could not but remark, with concern, that theſe people were capable of practiſing petty frauds againſt each other, with a deliberate diſhoneſty, which gave me a much worſe opinion of them than I had ever entertained from the robberies they committed under the ſtrong temptation to which a ſudden opportunity of enriching themſelves with the ineſtimable metal and manufactures of Europe expoſed them. 1769. July.

Among others who applied to me for the releaſe of a canoe, was one POTATTOW, a man of ſome conſequence, well known to us all. I conſented, ſuppoſing the veſſel to be his own, or that he applied on the behalf of a friend: he went immediately to the beach, and took poſſeſſion of one of the boats, which, with the aſſiſtance of bis people, he began to carry off. Upon this, however, it was eagerly claimed by the right owners, who, ſupported by the other Indians, clamorouſly reproached him for invading their property, and prepared to take the canoe from him by force. Upon this he deſired to be heard, and told them, that the canoe did, indeed, once belong to thoſe who claimed it; but that I, having ſeized it as a forfeit, had ſold it to him for a pig. This ſilenced the clamour, the owners, knowing that from my power there was no appeal, acquieſced; and Potattow would have carried off his prize, if the diſpute had not fortunately been overheard by ſome of our people, who reported it to me. I gave orders immediately that the Indians ſhould be undeceived; upon which the right owners took poſſeſſion of their canoe, and Potattow was ſo conſcious of his guilt, that neither he nor his wife, who was privy to his knavery, could look us in the face for ſome time afterwards.

CHAP.

1769. July.

CHAP. III.

An Expedition of Mr. Banks to trace the River: Marks of ſubterraneous Fire: Preparations for leaving the Iſland: An Account of Tupia.

Mond. 3. ON the 3d, Mr. Banks ſet out early in the morning, with ſome Indian Guides, to trace our River up the valley from which it iſſues, and examine how far its banks were inhabited. For about ſix miles they met with houſes, not far diſtant from each other, on each ſide of the river, and the valley was every where about four hundred yards wide from the foot of the hill on one ſide, to the foot of that on the other; but they were now ſhewn a houſe which they were told was the laſt that they would ſee. When they came up to it, the maſter of it offered them refreſhments of cocoa-nuts and other fruit, of which they accepted; after a ſhort ſtay, they walked forward for a conſiderable time; in bad way it is not eaſy to compute diſtances, but they imagined that they had walked about ſix miles farther, following the courſe of the river, when they frequently paſſed under vaults, formed by fragments of the rock, in which they were told people who were benighted frequently paſſed the night. Soon after they found the river banked by ſteep rocks, from which a caſcade falling with great violence, formed a pool, ſo ſteep, that the Indians ſaid they could not paſs it. They ſeemed, indeed, not much to be acquainted with the valley beyond this place, their buſineſs lying chiefly upon the declivity of the rocks on each ſide, and the plains which extended on their ſummits, where they found plenty of wild plantain, which they called Vae. The way up theſe rocks from the banks of the river was in every reſpect dreadful; the ſides were nearly perpendicular, and in ſome places one hundred feet high; they were alſo rendered exceedingly ſlippery by the water of innumerable ſprings which iſſued from the fiſſures on the ſurface; yet up theſe precipices a way was to be traced by a ſucceſſion of long pieces of the bark of the Hibiſcus tiliaceus, which ſerved as a rope for the climber to take hold

old of, and aſſiſted him in ſcrambling from one ledge to another, though upon theſe ledges there was footing only for an Indian or goat. One of theſe ropes was nearly thirty feet in length, and their guides offered to aſſiſt them in mounting this paſs, but recommended another, at a little diſtance lower down, as leſs difficult and dangerous. They took a view of this "better way," but found it ſo bad that they did not chooſe to attempt it, as there was nothing at the top to reward their toil and hazard but a grove of the wild plantain or Vae tree, which they had often ſeen before. 1769. July.

During this excurſion, Mr. Banks had an excellent opportunity to examine the rocks, which were almoſt every where naked, for minerals; but he found not the leaſt appearance of any. The ſtones every where, like thoſe of Madeira, ſhewed manifeſt tokens of having been burned; nor is there a ſingle ſpecimen of any ſtone, among all thoſe that were collected in the iſland, upon which there are not manifeſt and indubitable marks of fire, except perhaps ſome ſmall pieces of the hatchet-ſtone, and even of that, other fragments were collected, which are burned almoſt to a pumice. Traces of fire are alſo manifeſt in the very clay upon the hills; and it may, therefore, not unreaſonably be ſuppoſed, that this, and the neighbouring iſlands, are either ſhattered remains of a continent, which ſome have ſuppoſed to be neceſſary in this part of the globe, to preſerve an equilibrium of its parts, which were left behind when the reſt ſunk, by the mining of a ſubterraneous fire, ſo as to give a paſſage to the ſea over it; or were torn from rocks, which, from the creation of the world, had been the bed of the ſea, and thrown up in heaps, to a height which the waters never reach. One or other of theſe ſuppoſitions will, perhaps, be thought the more probable, as the water does not gradually grow ſhallow, as the ſhore is approached, and the iſlands are almoſt every where ſurrounded by reefs, which appear to be rude and broken, as ſome violent concuſſion would naturally leave the ſolid ſubſtance of the earth. It may alſo be remarked, upon this occaſion, that the moſt probable cauſe of earthquakes ſeems to be the ſudden ruſhing in of water upon ſome vaſt

maſs

1769. July. maſs of ſubterraneous fire, by the inſtantaneous rarefaction of which into vapour, the mine is ſprung, and various ſubſtances, in all ſtages of vitrification, with ſhells, and other marine productions, that are now found foſſil, and the ſtrata that covered the furnace, are thrown up; while thoſe parts of the land which were ſupported upon the broken ſhell give way, and ſink into the gulph. With this theory the phænomena of all earthquakes ſeem to agree; pools of water are frequently left where land has ſubſided, and various ſubſtances, which manifeſtly appear to have ſuffered by the action of fire, are thrown up. It is indeed true, that fire cannot ſubſiſt without air; but this cannot be urged againſt there being fire below that part of the earth which forms the bed of the ſea; becauſe there may be innumerable fiſſures by which a communication between thoſe parts and the external air may be kept up, even upon the higheſt mountains, and at the greateſt diſtance from the ſea-ſhore.

Tueſd. 4. On the 4th, Mr. Banks employed himſelf in planting a great quantity of the ſeeds of water-melons, oranges, lemons, limes, and other plants and trees which he had collected at Rio de Janeiro. For theſe he prepared ground on each ſide of the fort, with as many varieties of ſoil as he could chooſe; and there is little doubt but that they will ſucceed. He alſo gave liberally of theſe ſeeds to the Indians, and planted many of them in the woods: ſome of the melon ſeeds having been planted ſoon after our arrival, the natives ſhewed him ſeveral of the plants, which appeared to be in a moſt flouriſhing condition, and were continually aſking him for more.

We now began to prepare for our departure, by bending the ſails and performing other neceſſary operations on board the ſhip, our water being already on board, and the proviſions examined. In the mean time we had another viſit from Oamo, Oberea, and their ſon and daughter; the Indians expreſſing their reſpect by uncovering the upper parts of their body, as they had done before. The daughter, whoſe name we underſtood to be TOIMATA, was very deſirous to ſee the fort, but her father would by no means ſuffer her to come in. Tearee, the ſon of Waheatua, the ſove-

reign

eign of Tiarrabou, the ſouth-eaſt peninſula, was alſo with us at this time; and we received intelligence of the landing of another gueſt, whoſe company was neither expected nor deſired; this was no other than the ingenious gentleman who contrived to ſteal our quarrant. We were told, that he intended to try his fortune again in the night; but the Indians all offered very zealouſly to aſſiſt us againſt him, deſiring that, for his purpoſe, they might be permitted to lie in the fort. This had ſo good an effect, that the thief relinquiſhed his enterprize in deſpair. 1769. July.

On the 7th, the carpenters were employed in taking down the gates and palliſadoes of our little fortification, for fire-wood on board the ſhip; and one of the Indians had dexterity enough to ſteal the ſtaple and hook upon which the gate turned; he was immediately purſued, and after a chace of ſix miles he appeared to have been paſſed, having concealed himſelf among ſome ruſhes in the brook; the ruſhes were ſearched, and tho' the thief had eſcaped, a ſcraper was found, which had been ſtolen from the ſhip ſome time before; and ſoon after our old friend Tubourai Tamaide brought us the ſtaple. Friday 7.

On the 8th and 9th, we continued to diſmantle our fort, and our friends ſtill flocked about us; ſome, I believe, ſorry at the approach of our departure, and others deſirous to make as much as they could of us while we ſtayed. Saturd. 8. Sunday 9.

We were in hopes that we ſhould now leave the iſland, without giving or receiving any other offence; but it unfortunately happened otherwiſe. Two foreign ſeamen having been out with my permiſſion, one of them was robbed of his knife, and endeavouring to recover it, probably with circumſtances of great provocation, the Indians attacked him, and dangerouſly wounded him with a ſtone; they wounded his companions alſo ſlightly in the head, and then fled into the mountains. As I ſhould have been ſorry to take any farther notice of the affair, I was not diſpleaſed that the offenders had eſcaped, but I was immediately involved in a quarrel which I very much regretted, and which yet it was not poſſible to avoid.

In

1769. July. In the middle of the night between the 8th and 9th Clement Webb and Samuel Gibſon, two of the marines, both young men, went privately from the fort and in the morning were not to be found. As public notice had been given, that all hands were to go on board on the next day, and that the ſhip would ſail on the morrow of that day or the day following, I began to fear that the abſentees intended to ſtay behind. I knew that I could take no effectual ſteps to recover them, without endangering the harmony and good-will which at preſent ſubſiſted among us; and, therefore, determined to wait a day for the chance of their return.

Monday 10. On Monday morning the 10th, the marines, to my great concern, not being returned, an enquiry was made after them of the Indians, who frankly told us that they did not intend to return, and had taken refuge in the mountains, where it was impoſſible for our people to find them. They were then requeſted to aſſiſt in the ſearch, and, after ſome deliberation, two of them undertook to conduct ſuch perſons as I ſhould think proper to ſend after them to the place of their retreat. As they were known to be without arms, I thought two would be ſufficient, and accordingly diſpatched a petty officer, and the corporal of the marines, with the Indian guides, to fetch them back. As the recovery of theſe men was a matter of great importance, as I had no time to loſe, and as the Indians ſpoke doubtfully of their return, telling us, that they had each of them taken a wife, and were become inhabitants of the country, it was intimated to ſeveral of the Chiefs who were in the fort with their women, among whom were Tubourai Tamaide, Tomio, and Oberea, that they would not be permitted to leave it till our deſerters were brought back. This precaution I thought the more neceſſary, as, by concealing them a few days, they might compel me to go without them; and I had the pleaſure to obſerve, that they received the intimation with very little ſigns either of fear or diſcontent; aſſuring me that my people ſhould be ſecured and ſent back as ſoon as poſſible. While this was doing at the fort, I ſent Mr. Hicks in the pinnace to fetch Tootahah on board the ſhip, which he did, without alarming either him or his people.

people. If the Indian guides proved faithful and in earneſt, I had reaſon to expect the return of my people with the deſerters before evening. Being diſappointed, my ſuſpicions increaſed; and night coming on, I thought it was not ſafe to let the people whom I had detained as hoſtages continue at the fort, and I therefore ordered Tubourai Tamaide, Oberea, and ſome others, to be taken on board the ſhip. This ſpread a general alarm, and ſeveral of them, eſpecially the women, expreſſed their apprehenſions with great emotion and many tears, when they were put into the boat. I went on board with them, and Mr. Banks remained on ſhore, with ſome others whom I thought it of leſs conſequence to ſecure. 1769. July.

About nine o'clock, Webb was brought back by ſome of the natives, who declared, that Gibſon, and the petty officer and corporal would be detained till Tootahah ſhould be ſet at liberty. The tables were now turned upon me; but I had proceeded too far to retreat. I immediately diſpatched Mr. Hicks in the long-boat, with a ſtrong party of men, to reſcue the priſoners, and told Tootahah that it behoved him to ſend ſome of his people with them, with orders to afford them effectual aſſiſtance, and to demand the releaſe of my men in his name, for that I ſhould expect him to anſwer for the contrary. He readily complied; this party recovered my men without the leaſt oppoſition, and, about ſeven o'clock in the morning, returned with them to the ſhip, Tueſ. 11. though they had not been able to recover the arms which had been taken from them when they were ſeized: theſe, however, were brought on board in leſs than half an hour, and the Chiefs were immediately ſet at liberty.

When I queſtioned the petty officer concerning what had happened on ſhore, he told me, that neither the natives who went with him, nor thoſe whom they met in their way, would give them any intelligence of the deſerters; but, on the contrary, became very troubleſome: that as he was returning for further orders to the ſhip, he and his comrade were ſuddenly ſeized by a number of armed men, who having learned that Tootahah was confined, had concealed themſelves in a wood for that purpoſe, and, who having taken them at a diſadvantage, forced their weapons out of their hands,

1769. July. hands, and declared, that they would detain them till their Chief ſhould be ſet at liberty. He ſaid, however, that the Indians were not unanimous in this meaſure; that ſome were for ſetting them at liberty, and others for detaining them: that an eager diſpute enſued, and that from words they came to blows, but that the party for detaining them at length prevailed: that ſoon after, Webb and Gibſon were brought in by a party of the natives, as priſoners, that they alſo might be ſecured as hoſtages for the Chief; but that it was after ſome debate reſolved to ſend Webb to inform me of their reſolution, to aſſure me that his companions were ſafe, and direct me where I might ſend my anſwer. Thus it appears that whatever were the diſadvantages of ſeizing the Chiefs, I ſhould never have recovered my men by any other method. When the Chiefs were ſet on ſhore from the ſhip, thoſe at the fort were alſo ſet at liberty, and, after ſtaying with Mr. Banks about an hour, they all went away. Upon this occaſion, as they had done upon another of the ſame kind, they expreſſed their joy by an undeſerved liberality, ſtrongly urging us to accept of four hogs. Theſe we abſolutely refuſed as a preſent, and they as abſolutely refuſing to be paid for them, the hogs did not change maſters. Upon examining the deſerters, we found that the account which the Indians had given of them was true: they had ſtrongly attached themſelves to two girls, and it was their intention to conceal themſelves till the ſhip had ſailed, and take up their reſidence upon the iſland. This night every thing was got off from the ſhore, and every body ſlept on board.

Among the natives who were moſt conſtantly with us, was Tupia, whoſe name has been often mentioned in this narrative. He had been, as I have before obſerved, the firſt miniſter of Oberea, when ſhe was in the height of her power: he was alſo the chief Tahowa or Prieſt of the iſland, conſequently well acquainted with the religion of the country, as well with reſpect to its ceremonies as principles. He had alſo great experience and knowledge in navigation, and was particularly acquainted with the number and ſituation of the neighbouring iſlands. This man had often expreſſed a deſire to go with us, and on the 12th in the morning,

Wed. 12.

morning, having with the other natives left us the day before, he came on board, with a boy about thirteen years of age, his ſervant, and urged us to let him proceed with us on our voyage. To have ſuch a perſon on board, was certainly deſirable for many reaſons; by learning his language, and teaching him ours, we ſhould be able to acquire a much better knowledge of the cuſtoms, policy, and religion of the people, than our ſhort ſtay among them could give us; I therefore gladly agreed to receive them on board. As we were prevented from ſailing to-day, by having found it neceſſary to make new ſtocks to our ſmall and beſt bower anchors, the old ones having been totally deſtroyed by the worms, Tupia ſaid, he would go once more on ſhore, and make a ſignal for the boat to fetch him off in the evening. He went accordingly, and took with him a miniature picture of Mr. Banks's, to ſhew his friends, and ſeveral little things to give them as parting preſents. 1769. July.

After dinner, Mr. Banks being deſirous to procure a drawing of the Morai belonging to Tootahah at Eparré, I attended him thither, accompanied by Dr. Solander, in the pinnace. As ſoon as we landed, many of our friends came to meet us, though ſome abſented themſelves in reſentment of what had happened the day before. We immediately proceeded to Tootahah's houſe, where we were joined by Oberea, with ſeveral others who had not come out to meet us, and a perfect reconciliation was ſoon brought about; in conſequence of which they promiſed to viſit us early the next day, to take a laſt farewell of us, as we told them we ſhould certainly ſet ſail in the afternoon. At this place alſo we found Tupia, who returned with us, and ſlept this night on board the ſhip for the firſt time.

On the next morning, Thurſday the 13th of July, the ſhip was very early crowded with our friends, and ſurrounded by a multitude of canoes, which were filled with the natives of an inferior claſs. Between eleven and twelve we weighed anchor, and as ſoon as the ſhip was under ſail, the Indians on board took their leave, and wept, with a decent and ſilent ſorrow, in which there was ſomething very ſtriking and tender: the people in the canoes, on the contrary, ſeemed to vie Thurſ. 13.

1769. July. with each other in the boldneſs of their lamentations, which we conſidered rather as affectation than grief. Tupia ſuſtained himſelf in this ſcene with a firmneſs and reſolution truly admirable: he wept indeed, but the effort that he made to conceal his tears concurred, with them, to do him honour. He ſent his laſt preſent, a ſhirt, by Otheothea, to Potomai, Tootahah's favourite miſtreſs, and then went with Mr. Banks to the maſt-head, waving to the canoes as long as they continued in ſight.

Thus we took leave of Otaheite, and its inhabitants, after a ſtay of juſt three months; for much the greater part of the time we lived together in the moſt cordial friendſhip, and a perpetual reciprocation of good offices. The accidental differences which now and then happened, could not be more ſincerely regretted on their part than they were on ours: the principal cauſes were ſuch as neceſſarily reſulted from our ſituation and circumſtances, in conjunction with the infirmities of human nature, from our not being able perfectly to underſtand each other, and from the diſpoſition of the inhabitants to theft, which we could not at all times bear with or prevent. They had not however, except in one inſtance, been attended with any fatal conſequence; and to that accident were owing the meaſures that I took to prevent others of the ſame kind. I hoped, indeed, to have availed myſelf of the impreſſion which had been made upon them by the lives that had been ſacrificed in their conteſt with the Dolphin, ſo as that the intercourſe between us ſhould have been carried on wholly without bloodſhed; and by this hope all my meaſures were directed during the whole of my continuance at the iſland, and I ſincerely wiſh, that whoever ſhall next viſit it, may be ſtill more fortunate. Our traffic here was carried on with as much order as in the beſt regulated market in Europe. It was managed principally by Mr. Banks, who was indefatigable in procuring proviſion and refreſhments while they were to be had; but during the latter part of our time they became ſcarce, partly by the increaſed conſumption at the fort and ſhip, and partly by the coming on of the ſeaſon in which cocoa-nuts and bread-fruit fail. All kind of fruit we purchaſed

chaſed for beads and nails, but no nails leſs than forty-penny were current: after a very ſhort time we could never get a pig of more than ten or twelve pounds, for leſs than a hatchet; becauſe, tho' theſe people ſet a high value upon ſpike-nails, yet theſe being an article with which many people in the ſhip were provided, the women found a much more eaſy way of procuring them than by bringing down proviſions. 1769. July.

The beſt articles for traffic here are axes, hatchets, ſpikes, large nails, looking-glaſſes, knives, and beads, for ſome of which every thing that the natives have may be procured. They are indeed fond of fine linen-cloth, both white and printed; but an axe worth half a crown will fetch more than a piece of cloth worth twenty ſhillings.

CHAP. IV.

A particular Deſcription of the Iſland; its Produce and Inhabitants; their Dreſs, Habitations, Food, domeſtic Life and Amuſements.

WE found the longitude of Port-Royal Bay, in this iſland, as ſettled by Captain Wallis, who diſcovered it on the 9th of June 1767, to be within half a degree of the truth. We found Point Venus, the northern extremity of the iſland, and the eaſtern point of the bay, to lie in the longitude of 149° 30′, this being the mean reſult of a great number of obſervations made upon the ſpot. The iſland is ſurrounded by a reef of coral rock, which forms ſeveral excellent bays and harbours, ſome of which have been particularly deſcribed, where there is room and depth of water for any number of the largeſt ſhips. Port-Royal Bay, called by the natives Matavi, which is not inferior to any in Otaheite, may eaſily be known by a very high mountain in the middle of the iſland, which bears due ſouth from Point Venus. To ſail into it, either keep the weſt point of the reef that lies before Point Venus, cloſe on board, or give it a birth of near half a mile, in order to avoid a ſmall ſhoal of coral rocks, on which there is but two fathom and a half of water. The beſt anchoring is on the

1769. July. eaſtern ſide of the bay, where there is ſixteen and fourteen fathom upon an oozy bottom. The ſhore of the bay is a fine ſandy beach, behind which runs a river of freſh water, ſo that any number of ſhips may water here without incommoding each other; but the only wood for firing, upon the whole iſland, is that of fruit trees, which muſt be purchaſed of the natives, or all hope of living upon good terms with them given up. There are ſome harbours to the weſtward of this bay, which have not been mentioned, but, as they are contiguous to it, a deſcription of them is unneceſſary.

The face of the country, except that part of it which borders upon the ſea, is very uneven; it riſes in ridges that run up into the middle of the iſland, and there form mountains, which may be ſeen at the diſtance of ſixty miles: between the foot of theſe ridges and the ſea is a border of low land, ſurrounding the whole iſland, except in a few places where the ridges riſe directly from the ſea; the border of low land is in different parts of different breadths, but no where more than a mile and a half. The ſoil, except upon the very tops of the ridges, is extremely rich and fertile, watered by a great number of rivulets of excellent water, and covered with fruit-trees of various kinds, ſome of which are of a ſtately growth and thick foliage, ſo as to form one continued wood; and even the tops of the ridges, though in general they are bare, and burned up by the ſun, are, in ſome parts, not without their produce.

The low land that lies between the foot of the ridges and the ſea, and ſome of the vallies, are the only parts of the iſland that are inhabited, and here it is populous: the houſes do not form villages or towns, but are ranged along the whole border at the diſtance of about fifty yards from each other, with little plantations of plantains, the tree which furniſhes them with cloth. The whole iſland, according to Tupia's account, who certainly knew, could furniſh ſix thouſand ſeven hundred and eighty fighting men, from which the number of inhabitants may eaſily be computed.

The produce of this iſland is bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, bananas, of thirteen ſorts, the beſt we had ever eaten;

eaten; plantains; a fruit not unlike an apple, which, when ripe, is very pleaſant; ſweet potatoes, yams, cocoas, a kind of Arum; a fruit known here by the name of Jambu, and reckoned moſt delicious; ſugar-cane, which the inhabitants eat raw; a root of the Salop kind, called by the inhabitants Pea; a plant called Ethee, of which the root only is eaten; a fruit that grows in a pod, like that of a large kidney-bean, which, when it is roaſted, eats very much like a cheſnut, by the natives called Ahee; a tree called Wharra, called in the Eaſt-Indies Pandanes, which produces fruit, ſomething like the pine-apple; a ſhrub called Nono; the Morinda, which alſo produces fruit; a ſpecies of fern, of which the root is eaten, and ſometimes the leaves; and a plant called Theve, of which the root alſo is eaten; but the fruits of the Nono, the fern, and the Theve, are only eaten by the inferior people, and in times of ſcarcity. All theſe, which ſerve the inhabitants for food, the earth produces ſpontaneouſly, or with ſo little culture that they ſeem to be exempted from the firſt general curſe, that "man ſhould eat his bread in "the ſweat of his brow." They have alſo the Chineſe paper mulberry, morus papyrifera, which they call Aouta; a tree reſembling the wild fig-tree of the Weſt Indies; another ſpecies of fig, which they call Matte; the cordia ſebeſtina orientalis, which they call Etou; a kind of Cyprus graſs, which they call Moo; a ſpecies of tournefortia, which they call Taheinoo; another of the convolvulus poluce, which they call Eurhe; the ſolanum centifolium, which they call Ebooa; the calophyllum mophylum, which they call Tamannu; the hibiſcus tiliaceus, called Poerou, a fruteſcent nettle; the urtica argentea, called Erowa; with many other plants, which cannot here be particularly mentioned; thoſe that have been named already, will be referred to in the ſubſequent part of this work. 1769. July.

They have no European fruit, garden-ſtuff, pulſe, or legumes, nor grain of any kind.

Of tame animals they have only hogs, dogs, and poultry; neither is there a wild animal in the iſland, except ducks, pigeons, paroquets, with a few other birds, and rats, there being no other quadruped, nor

1769. July. any ſerpent. But the ſea ſupplies them with great variety of moſt excellent fiſh, to eat which is their chief luxury, and to catch it their principal labour.

Perſons. As to the people, they are of the largeſt ſize of Europeans. The men are tall, ſtrong, well-limbed, and finely ſhaped. The talleſt that we ſaw was a man upon a neighbouring iſland, called HUAHEINE, who meaſured ſix feet three inches and an half. The women of the ſuperior rank are alſo in general above our middle ſtature, but thoſe of the inferior claſs are rather below it, and ſome of them are very ſmall. This defect in ſize probably proceeds from their early commerce with men, the only thing in which they differ from their ſuperiors, that could poſſibly affect their growth.

Their natural complexion is that kind of clear olive, or Brunette, which many people in Europe prefer to the fineſt white and red. In thoſe that are expoſed to the wind and ſun, it is conſiderably deepened, but in others that live under ſhelter, eſpecially the ſuperior claſs of women, it continues of its native hue, and the ſkin is moſt delicately ſmooth and ſoft; they have no tint in their cheeks, which we diſtinguiſh by the name of colour. The ſhape of the face is comely, the cheek bones are not high, neither are the eyes hollow, nor the brow prominent; the only feature that does not correſpond with our ideas of beauty is the noſe, which, in general, is ſomewhat flat; but their eyes, eſpecially thoſe of the women, are full of expreſſion, ſometimes ſparkling with fire, and ſometimes melting with ſoftneſs; their teeth alſo are, almoſt without exception, moſt beautifully even and white, and their breath perfectly without taint.

The hair is almoſt univerſally black, and rather coarſe; the men have beards, which they wear in many faſhions, always, however, plucking out great part of them, and keeping the reſt perfectly clean and neat. Both ſexes alſo eradicate every hair from under their arms, and accuſed us of great uncleanneſs for not doing the ſame. In their motions there is at once vigour and eaſe; their walk is graceful, their deportment liberal, and their behaviour to ſtrangers and to each other affable and courteous. In their diſpoſitions alſo, they

ſeeme

ſeemed to be brave, open, and candid, without either ſuſpicion or treachery, cruelty or revenge; ſo that we placed the ſame confidence in them as in our beſt friends; many of us, particularly Mr. Banks, ſleeping frequently in their houſes in the woods, without a companion, and conſequently wholly in their power. They were, however, all thieves; and when that is allowed, they need not much fear a competition with the people of any other nation upon earth. During our ſtay in this iſland we ſaw about five or ſix perſons, like one that was met by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander on the 24th of April, in their walk to the eaſtward, whoſe ſkins were of a dead white, like the noſe of a white horſe; with white hair, beard, brows, and eye-laſhes; red, tender eyes; a ſhort ſight, and ſcurfy ſkins, covered with a kind of white down; but we found that no two of theſe belonged to the ſame family, and therefore concluded, that they were not a ſpecies, but unhappy individuals, rendered anomalous by diſeaſe. 1769

It is a cuſtom in moſt countries where the inhabitants have long hair, for the men to cut it ſhort, and the women to pride themſelves in its length. Here, however, the contrary cuſtom prevails; the women always cut it ſhort round their ears, and the men, except the fiſhers, who are almoſt continually in the water, ſuffer it to flow in large waves over their ſhoulders, or tie it up in a bunch on the top of their heads.

They have a cuſtom alſo of anointing their heads with what they call Monoe, an oil expreſſed from the cocoa-nut, in which ſome ſweet herbs or flowers have been infuſed: as the oil is generally rancid, the ſmell is at firſt very diſagreeable to an European; and as they live in a hot country, and have no ſuch thing as a comb, they are not able to keep their heads free from lice, which the children and common people ſometimes pick out and eat; a hateful cuſtom, wholly different from their manners in every other particular, for they are delicate and cleanly, almoſt without example, and thoſe to whom we diſtributed combs ſoon delivered themſelves from vermin, with a diligence which ſhewed that they were not more odious to us than to them.

1769. They have a cuſtom of ſtaining their bodies, nearly in the ſame manner as is practiſed in many other parts of the world, which they call Tattowing. They prick the ſkin, ſo as juſt not to fetch blood, with a ſmall inſtrument, ſomething in the form of a hoe; that part which anſwers to the blade is made of a bone or ſhell, ſcraped very thin, and is from a quarter of an inch to an inch and a half wide; the edge is cut into ſharp teeth or points, from the number of three to twenty, according to its ſize: when this is to be uſed, they dip the teeth into a mixture of a kind of lamp-black, formed of the ſmoke that riſes from an oily nut, which they burn inſtead of candles, and water: the teeth, thus prepared, are placed upon the ſkin, and the handle to which they are faſtened being ſtruck, by quick ſmart blows, with a ſtick fitted to the purpoſe, they pierce it, and at the ſame time carry into the puncture the black compoſition, which leaves an indelible ſtain. The operation is painful, and it is ſome days before the wounds are healed. It is performed upon the youth of both ſexes, when they are about twelve or fourteen years of age, on ſeveral parts of the body, and in various figures, according to the fancy of the parent, or perhaps the rank of the party. The women are generally marked with this ſtain, in the form of a Z, on every joint of their fingers and toes, and frequently round the outſide of their feet; the men are alſo marked with the ſame figure, and both men and women have ſquares, circles, creſcents, and ill-deſigned repreſentations of men, birds, or dogs, and various other devices, impreſſed upon their legs and arms, ſome of which, we were told, had ſignifications, though we could never learn what they were. But the part on which theſe ornaments are laviſhed with the greateſt profuſion, is the breech; this, in both ſexes, is covered with a deep black, above which, arches are drawn one over another as high as the ſhort ribs. They are often a quarter of an inch broad, and the edges are not ſtraight lines, but indented. Theſe arches are their pride, and are ſhown both by men and women with a mixture of oſtentation and pleaſure; whether as an ornament, or a proof of their fortitude and reſolution in bearing pain, we

we could not determine. The face in general is left unmarked; for we ſaw but one inſtance to the contrary. Some old men had the greateſt part of their bodies covered with large patches of black, deeply indented at the edges, like a rude imitation of flames; but we were told, that they came from a low iſland called NOOUOORA, and were not natives of Otaheite. 1769.

Mr. Banks ſaw the operation of Tattowing performed upon the backſide of a girl about thirteen years old. The inſtrument uſed upon this occaſion had thirty teeth, and every ſtroke, of which at leaſt an hundred were made in a minute, drew an ichor, or ſerum, a little tinged with blood. The girl bore it with a moſt ſtoical reſolution for about a quarter of an hour; but the pain of ſo many hundred punctures as ſhe had received in that time then became intolerable: ſhe firſt complained in murmurs, then wept, and at laſt burſt into loud lamentations, earneſtly imploring the operator to deſiſt: he was, however, inexorable, and when ſhe began to ſtruggle, ſhe was held down by two women, who ſometimes ſoothed, and ſometimes chid her; and now and then, when ſhe was moſt unruly, gave her a ſmart blow. Mr. Banks ſtayed in a neighbouring houſe an hour, and the operation was not over when he went away; yet it was performed but upon one ſide, the other having been done ſome time before; and the arches upon the loins, in which they moſt pride themſelves, and which give more pain than all the reſt, were ſtill to be done.

It is ſtrange that theſe people ſhould value themſelves upon what is no diſtinction; for I never ſaw a native of this iſland, either man or woman, in a ſtate of maturity, in whom theſe marks were wanting: poſſibly they may have their riſe in ſuperſtition, eſpecially as they produce no viſible advantage, and are not made without great pain; but though we enquired of many hundred, we could never get any account of the matter.

Their cloathing conſiſts of cloth or matting of different kinds, which will be deſcribed among their other manufactures. Their cloth, which will not bear wetting, they wear in dry weather, and the matting when it

1769. it rains: they are put on in many different ways, juſt as their fancy leads them; for in their garments nothing is cut into ſhape, nor any two pieces ſewed together. The dreſs of the better ſort of women conſiſts of three or four pieces; one piece, about two yards wide and eleven yards long, they wrap ſeveral times round their waiſt, ſo as to hang down like a petticoat as low as the middle of the leg, and this they call Parou; two or three other pieces, about two yards and an half long and one wide, each having a hole cut in the middle, they place one upon another, and then putting the head through the holes, they bring the long ends down before and behind, the others remain open at the ſides, and give liberty to the arms: this, which they call the Tebuta, is gathered round the waiſt, and confined with a girdle or ſaſh of thinner cloth, which is long enough to go many times round them, and exactly reſembles the garments worn by the inhabitants of Peru and Chili, which the Spaniards call Poncho. The dreſs of the men is the ſame, except that inſtead of ſuffering the cloth that is wound about the hips to hang down like a petticoat, they bring it between their legs, ſo as to have ſome reſemblance to breeches, and it is then called Maro. This is the dreſs of all ranks of people, and being univerſally the ſame as to form, the gentlemen and ladies diſtinguiſh themſelves from the lower people by the quantity; ſome of them will wrap round them ſeveral pieces of cloth, eight or ten yards long, and two or three broad; and ſome throw a large piece looſely over their ſhoulders, in the manner of a cloak, or perhaps two pieces, if they are very great perſonages, and are deſirous to appear in ſtate. The inferior ſort, who have only a ſmall allowance of cloth from the tribes or families to which they belong, are obliged to be more thinly clad. In the heat of the day they appear almoſt naked, the women having only a ſcanty petticoat, and the men nothing but the ſaſh that is paſſed between their legs and faſtened round the waiſt. As finery is always troubleſome, and particularly in a hot country, where it conſiſts in putting one covering upon another, the women of rank always uncover themſelves as low as the waiſt in the evening, throwing off all that they wear on the

upper

upper part of the body, with the ſame negligence and eaſe as our ladies would lay by a cardinal or double handkerchief. And the Chiefs, even when they viſited us, though they had as much cloth round their middle as would clothe a dozen people, had frequently the reſt of the body quite naked. 1769.

Upon their legs and feet they wear no covering; but they ſhade their faces from the ſun with little bonnets, either of matting or of cocoa-nut leaves, which they make occaſionally in a few minutes. This, however, is not all their head-dreſs; the women ſometimes wear little turbans, and ſometimes a dreſs which they value much more, and which, indeed, is much more becoming, called Tomou; the Tomou conſiſts of human hair, plaited in threads, ſcarcely thicker than ſewing ſilk. Mr. Banks has pieces of it above a mile in length, without a knot. Theſe they wind round the head in ſuch a manner as produces a very pretty effect, and in a very great quantity; for I have ſeen five or ſix ſuch pieces wound about the head of one woman: among theſe threads they ſtick flowers of various kinds, particularly the cape-jeſſamine, of which they have great plenty, as it is always planted near their houſes. The men ſometimes ſtick the tail feather of the Topic-bird upright in their hair, which, as I have obſerved before, is often tied in a bunch upon the top of their heads: ſometimes they wear a kind of whimſical garland, made of flowers of various kinds, ſtuck into a piece of the rind of plantain; or of ſcarlet peas, ſtuck with gum upon a piece of wood: and ſometimes they wear a kind of wig, made of the hair of men or dogs, or perhaps of cocoa-nut ſtrings, woven upon one thread, which is tied under their hair, ſo that theſe artificial honours of their head may hang down behind. Their perſonal ornaments, beſides flowers, are few; both ſexes wear ear-rings, but they are placed only on one ſide: when we came they conſiſted of ſmall pieces of ſhell, ſtone, berries, red peas, or ſome ſmall pearls, three in a ſtring; but our beads very ſoon ſupplanted them all.

The children go quite naked; the girls till they are three or four years old, and the boys till they are ſix or ſeven.

The

1769.

Houſes.

The houſes, or rather dwellings, of theſe people have been occaſionally mentioned before: they are all built in the wood, between the ſea and the mountains, and no more ground is cleared for each houſe, than juſt ſufficient to prevent the dropping of the branches from rotting the thatch with which they are covered; from the houſe, therefore, the inhabitant ſteps immediately under the ſhade, which is the moſt delightful that can be imagined. It conſiſts of groves of bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, without underwood, which are interſected, in all directions, by the paths that lead from one houſe to the other. Nothing can be more grateful than this ſhade in ſo warm a climate, nor any thing more beautiful than theſe walks. As there is no underwood, the ſhade cools without impeding the air; and the houſes, having no walls, receive the gale from whatever point it blows. I ſhall now give a particular deſcription of a houſe of a middling ſize, from which, as the ſtructure is univerſally the ſame, a perfect idea may be formed both of thoſe that are bigger, and thoſe that are leſs.

The ground which it covers is an oblong ſquare, four and twenty feet long, and eleven wide; over this a roof is raiſed, upon three rows of pillars or poſts, parallel to each other, one on each ſide, and the other in the middle. This roof conſiſts of two flat ſides inclining to each other, and terminating in a ridge, exactly like the roofs of our thatched houſes in England. The utmoſt height within is about nine feet, and the eaves on each ſide reach to within about three feet and an half of the ground: below this, and through the whole height at each end, it is open, no part of it being incloſed with a wall. The roof is thatched with palm-leaves, and the floor is covered, ſome inches deep, with ſoft hay; over this are laid mats, ſo that the whole is one cuſhion, upon which they ſit in the day, and ſleep in the night. In ſome houſes, however, there is one ſtool, which is wholly appropriated to the maſter of the family; beſides this, they have no furniture, except a few little blocks of wood, the upper ſide of which is hollowed into a curve, and which ſerve them for pillows.

The

The houſe is indeed principally uſed as a dormito- 1769.
y; for, except it rains, they eat in the open air, un-
er the ſhade of the next tree. The clothes that they
ear in the day, ſerve them for covering in the night:
he floor is the common bed of the whole houſehold,
nd is not divided by any partition. The maſter of
he houſe and his wife ſleep in the middle, next to
hem the marrried people, next to them the unmarried
omen, and next to them, at a little diſtance, the
nmarried men; the ſervants, or Toutous, as they are
alled, ſleep in the open air, except it rains, and in
hat caſe they come juſt within the ſhed.

There are, however, houſes of another kind, be-
onging to the Chiefs, in which there is ſome degree
f privacy. Theſe are much ſmaller, and ſo con-
ructed as to be carried about in their canoes from
lace to place, and ſet up occaſionally, like a tent;
hey are incloſed on the ſides with cocoa-nut leaves,
ut not ſo cloſe as to exclude the air, and the Chief and
is wife ſleep in them alone.

There are houſes alſo of a much larger ſize, not
uilt either for the accommodation of a ſingle Chief,
r a ſingle family; but as common receptacles for all
he people of a diſtrict. Some of them are two hun-
red feet long, thirty broad, and, under the ridge,
wenty feet high; theſe are built and maintained at
he common expence of the diſtrict, for the accommo-
ation of which they are intended; and have on one
ide of them a large area, incloſed with low palliſadoes.

Theſe houſes, like thoſe of ſeparate families, have
o walls. Privacy, indeed, is little wanted among
eople who have not even the idea of indecency, and
who gratify every appetite and paſſion before witneſſes,
with no more ſenſe of impropriety than we feel when
we ſatisfy our hunger at a ſocial board with our family
r friends. Thoſe who have no idea of indecency
with reſpect to actions, can have none with reſpect to
words; it is, therefore, ſcarcely neceſſary to obſerve,
hat, in the converſation of theſe people, that which
s the principal ſource of their pleaſure, is always the
rincipal topic: and that every thing is mentioned
without any reſtraint or emotion, and in the moſt di-
ect terms, by both ſexes.

Of

1769. Food.

Of the food eaten here the greater part is vegetable. Here are no tame animals except hogs, dogs, and poultry, as I have obſerved before, and theſe are by no means plenty. When a Chief kills a hog, it is almoſt equally divided among his dependants; and as they are very numerous, the ſhare of each individual at theſe feaſts, which are not frequent, muſt neceſſarily be ſmall. Dogs and fowls fall ſomewhat more frequently to the ſhare of the common people. I cannot much commend the flavour of their fowls; but we all agreed, that a South-Sea dog was little inferior to an Engliſh lamb; their excellence is probably owing to their being kept up, and fed wholly upon vegetables. The ſea affords them a great variety of fiſh. The ſmaller fiſh, when they catch any, are generally eaten raw, as we eat oyſters; and nothing that the ſea produces comes amiſs to them: they are fond of lobſters, crabs, and other ſhell fiſh, which are found upon the coaſt; and they will eat not only ſea-inſects, but what the ſeamen call Blubbers, tho' ſome of them are ſo tough, that they are obliged to ſuffer them to become putrid before they can be chewed. Of the many vegetables that have been mentioned already as ſerving them for food, the principal is the bread-fruit, to procure which coſts them no trouble or labour but climbing a tree: the tree which produces it, does not indeed ſhoot up ſpontaneouſly; but if a man plants ten of them in his life-time, which he may do in about an hour, he will as completely fulfil his duty to his own and future generations, as the native of our leſs temperate climate can do by ploughing in the cold of winter, and reaping in the ſummer's heat, as often as theſe ſeaſons return; even if, after he has procured bread for his preſent houſehold, he ſhould convert a ſurplus into money, and lay it up for his children.

It is true, indeed, that the bread-fruit is not always in ſeaſon; but cocoa-nuts, bananas, plantains, and a great variety of other fruits, ſupply the deficiency.

It may well be ſuppoſed that cookery is but little ſtudied by theſe people as an art; and, indeed, they have but two ways of applying fire to dreſs their food, broiling and baking; the operation of broiling is ſo ſimple that it requires no deſcription, and their baking has

has been deſcribed already, (page 10), in the account of an entertainment prepared for us by Tupia. Hogs, and large fiſh, are extremely well dreſſed in the ſame manner; and, in our opinion, were more juicy and more equally done than by any art of cookery now practiſed in Europe. Bread-fruit is alſo cooked in an oven of the ſame kind, which renders it ſoft, and ſomething like a boiled potatoe: not quite ſo farinaceous as a good one, but more ſo than thoſe of the middling ſort. 1769.

Of the bread-fruit they alſo make three diſhes, by putting either water or the milk of the cocoa-nut to it, then beating it to a paſte with a ſtone peſtle, and afterwards mixing it with ripe plantains, bananas, or the ſour paſte which they call Mahie.

The mahie, which has been mentioned as a ſucceſſaneum for ripe bread-fruit, before the ſeaſon for gathering a freſh crop comes on, is thus made:—The fruit is gathered juſt before it is perfectly ripe, and being laid in heaps, is cloſely covered with leaves; in this ſtate it undergoes a fermentation, and becomes diſagreeably ſweet: the core is then taken out entire, which is done by gently pulling the ſtalk, and the reſt of the fruit is thrown into a hole which is dug for that purpoſe, generally in the houſes, and neatly lined in the bottom and ſides with graſs; the whole is then covered with leaves, and heavy ſtones laid upon them: in this ſtate it undergoes a ſecond fermentation, and becomes ſour, after which it will ſuffer no change for many months: it is taken out of the hole as it is wanted for uſe, and being made into balls, it is wrapped up in leaves and baked; after it is dreſſed, it will keep five or ſix weeks. It is eaten both cold and hot, and the natives ſeldom make a meal without it, tho' to us the taſte was as diſagreeable as that of a pickled olive generally is the firſt time it is eaten.

As the making of this mahie depends, like brewing, upon fermentation, ſo, like brewing, it ſometimes fails, without their being able to aſcertain the cauſe; it is very natural, therefore, that the making it ſhould be connected with ſuperſtitious notions and ceremonies. It generally falls to the lot of the old women, who will ſuffer no creature to touch any thing belonging to it, but

1769. but thoſe whom they employ as aſſiſtants, nor even to go into that part of the houſe where the operation is carrying on. Mr. Banks happened to ſpoil a large quantity of it only by inadvertently touching a leaf which lay upon it. The old woman, who then preſided over theſe myſteries, told him, that the proceſs would fail; and immediately uncovered the hole in a fit of vexation and deſpair. Mr. Banks regretted the miſchief he had done, but was ſomewhat conſoled by the opportunity which it gave him of examining the preparation, which perhaps, but for ſuch an accident, would never have offered.

Such is their food, to which ſalt-water is the univerſal ſauce, no meal being eaten without it: thoſe who live near the ſea have it fetched as it is wanted; thoſe who live at ſome diſtance keep it in large bamboos, which are ſet up in their houſes, for uſe. Salt-water, however, is not their only ſauce; they make another of the kernels of cocoa-nuts, which being fermented till they diſſolve into a paſte ſomewhat reſembling butter, are beaten up with ſalt-water. The flavour of this is very ſtrong, and was, when we firſt taſted it, exceedingly nauſeous; a little uſe, however, reconciled ſome of us to it ſo much, that they preferred it to our own ſauces, eſpecially with fiſh. The natives ſeemed to conſider it as a dainty, and do not uſe it at their common meals; poſſibly, becauſe they think it ill management to uſe cocoa-nuts ſo laviſhly, or perhaps, when we were at the iſland, they were ſcarcely ripe enough for the purpoſe.

For drink, they have in general nothing but water, or the juice of the cocoa-nut; the art of producing liquors that intoxicate, by fermentation, being happily unknown among them; neither have they any narcotic which they chew, as the natives of ſome other countries do opium, beetle-root, and tobacco. Some of them drank freely of our liquors, and in a few inſtances became very drunk; but the perſons to whom this happened were ſo far from deſiring to repeat the debauch, that they would never touch any of our liquors afterwards. We were however informed, that they became drunk by drinking a juice that is expreſſed from the leaves of a plant which they call Ava Ava. This plant

plant was not in ſeaſon when we were there, ſo that we 1769.
ſaw no inſtances of its effects; and as they conſidered drunkenneſs as a diſgrace, they probably would have concealed from us any inſtances which might have happened during our ſtay. This vice is almoſt peculiar to the Chiefs, and conſiderable perſons, who vie with each other in drinking the greateſt number of draughts, each draught being about a pint. They keep this intoxicating juice with great care from their women.

Table they have none; but their apparatus for eating is ſet out with great neatneſs, though the articles are too ſimple and too few to allow any thing for ſhow, and they commonly eat alone; but when a ſtranger happens to viſit them, he ſometimes makes a ſecond in their meſs. Of the meal of one of their principal people I ſhall give a particular deſcription.

He ſits down under the ſhade of the next tree, or on the ſhady ſide of his houſe, and a large quantity of leaves, either of the bread-fruit on banana, are neatly ſpread before him upon the ground, as a table-cloth; a baſket is then ſet by him that contains his proviſion, which, if fiſh or fleſh, is ready dreſſed, and wrapped up in leaves, and two cocoa-nut ſhells, one full of ſalt and water, and the other of freſh: his attendants, which are not few, ſeat themſelves round him, and when all is ready, he begins by waſhing his hands and his mouth thoroughly with the freſh water, and this he repeats almoſt continually throughout the whole meal; he then takes part of his proviſion out of the baſket, which generally conſiſts of a ſmall fiſh or two, two or three bread-fruits, fourteen or fifteen ripe bananas, or ſix or ſeven apples: he firſt takes half a bread-fruit, peels off the rind, and takes out the core with his nails; of this he puts as much into his mouth as it can hold, and, while he chews it, takes the fiſh out of the leaves, and breaks one of them into the ſalt water, placing the other, and what remains of the bread-fruit, upon the leaves that have been ſpread before him. When this is done, he takes up a ſmall piece of the fiſh that has been broken into the ſalt water, with all the fingers of one hand, and ſucks it into his mouth, ſo as to get with it as much of the ſalt water

1769. as poſſible: in the ſame manner he takes the reſt by different morſels, and between each, at leaſt very frequently, takes a ſmall ſup of the ſalt water, either out of the cocoa-nut ſhell, or the palm of his hand; in the mean time one of his attendants has prepared a young cocoa-nut, by peeling off the outer rind with his teeth, an operation which to an European appears very ſurpriſing; but it depends ſo much upon ſlight, that many of us were able to do it before we left the iſland, and ſome that could ſcarcely crack a filbert: the maſter, when he chooſes to drink, takes the cocoa-nut, thus prepared, and boring a hole through the ſhell with his finger, or breaking it with a ſtone, he ſucks out the liquor. When he has eaten his bread-fruit and fiſh, he begins with his plantains, one of which makes but a mouthful, though it be as big as a black pudding; if, inſtead of plantains he has apples, he never taſtes them till they have been pared: to do this, a ſhell is picked up from the ground where they are always in plenty, and toſſed to him by an attendant; he immediately begins to cut or ſcrape off the rind, but ſo aukwardly, that great part of the fruit is waſted. If, inſtead of fiſh, he has fleſh, he muſt have ſome ſuccedaneum for a knife to divide it: a d for this purpoſe a piece of bamboo is toſſed to him, of which he makes the neceſſary implement, by ſplitting it tranſverſely with his nail. While all this has been doing, ſome of his attendants have been employed in beating bread-fruit with a ſtone peſtle upon a block of wood; by being beaten in this manner and ſprinkled from time to time with water, it is reduced to the conſiſtence of a ſoft paſte, and is then put into a veſſel ſomewhat like a butcher's tray, and either made up alone, or mixed with banana or mahie, according to the taſte of the maſter, by pouring water upon it by degrees, and ſqueezing it often through the hand; under this operation it acquires the conſiſtence of a thick cuſtard, and a large cocoa-nut ſhell full of it being ſet before him, he ſips it as we ſhould do a jelly, if we had no ſpoon to take it from the glaſs: the meal is then finiſhed, by again waſhing his hands and his mouth. After which the cocoa-nut ſhell

hells are cleaned, and every thing that is left is replac- 1769.
d in the baſket.

The quantity of food which theſe people eat at a neal is prodigious; I have ſeen one man devour two or hree fiſhes as big as a perch; three bread-fruits, each igger than two fiſts; fourteen or fifteen plantains, or ananas, each of them ſix or ſeven inches long, and our or five round; and near a quart of the pounded read-fruit, which is as ſubſtantial as the thickeſt unaked cuſtard. This is ſo extraordinary that I ſcarcely xpect to be believed; and I would not have related it pon my own ſingle teſtimony, but Mr. Banks, Dr. olander, and moſt of the other gentlemen, have had cular demonſtration of its truth, and know that I menon them upon the occaſion.

It is very wonderful that theſe people, who are remarkably fond of ſociety, and particularly that of their omen, ſhould exclude its pleaſures from the table, here, among all other nations, whether civil or ſaage, they have been principally enjoyed. How a eal, which every where elſe brings families and iends together, came to ſeparate them here, we often nquired, but could never learn. They eat alone, ey ſaid, becauſe it was right; but why it was right eat alone, they never attempted to tell us; ſuch, owever, was the force of habit, that they expreſſed e ſtrongeſt diſlike, and even diſguſt, at our eating in ciety, eſpecially with our women, and of the ſame ctuals. At firſt, we thought this ſtrange ſingularity oſe from ſome ſuperſtitious opinion; but they conantly affirmed the contrary. We obſerved alſo ſome prices in the cuſtom, for which we could as little count as for the cuſtom itſelf. We could never preil with any of the women to partake of the victuals our table, when we were dining in company; yet ey would go, five or ſix together, into the ſervants artments, and there eat very heartily of whatever ey could find, of which I have before given a partilar inſtance; nor were they in the leaſt diſconcerted we came in while they were doing it. When any us have been alone with a woman, ſhe has ſomemes eaten in our company; but then ſhe has exeſſed the greateſt unwillingneſs that it ſhould be

1769. known, and always extorted the ſtrongeſt promiſes of ſecrecy.

Among themſelves, even two brothers and two ſiſters have each their ſeparate baſkets, with proviſion and the apparatus of their meal. When they firſt viſited us at our tents, each brought his baſket with him; and when we ſat down to table, they would go out, ſit down upon the ground, at two or three yards diſtance from each other, and, turning their faces different ways, take their repaſt without interchanging a ſingle word.

The women not only abſtain from eating with the men, and of the ſame victuals, but even have their victuals ſeparately prepared by boys kept for that purpoſe, who depoſit it in a ſeparate ſhed, and attend them with it at their meals.

But though they would not eat with us or with each other, they have often aſked us to eat with them, when we have viſited thoſe with whom we were particularly acquainted at their houſes; and we have often, upon ſuch occaſions, eaten out of the ſame baſket, and drunk out of the ſame cup. The elder women, however, always appeared to be offended at this liberty; and if we happened to touch their victuals, or even the baſket that contained it, would throw it away.

Domeſtic life, and amuſements.

After meals, and in the heat of the day, the middle-aged people of the better ſort generally ſleep; they are indeed extremely indolent, and ſleeping and eating make almoſt all that they do. Thoſe that are older are ſeldom drowſy, and the boys and girls are kept awake by the natural activity and ſprightlineſs of their age.

Their amuſements have occaſionally been mentioned, in my account of the incidents that happened during our reſidence in this iſland, particularly muſic, dancing, wreſtling, and ſhooting with the bow; they also ſometimes vie with each other in throwing a lance. But ſhooting is not at a mark, but for a diſtance, throwing the lance is not for diſtance, but at a mark; the weapon is about nine feet long, the mark is the bole of a plantain, and the diſtance about twenty yards.

Their only muſical inſtruments are flutes and drums; the flutes are made of a hollow bamboo, about a ſpan long, and, as has been obſerved before, have only two ſtops

ſtops, and conſequently but four notes, out of which they ſeem hitherto to have formed but one tune; to theſe ſtops they apply the fore finger of the left hand, and the middle finger of the right. 1769.

The drum is made of a hollow block of wood, of a cylindrical form, ſolid at one end, and covered at the other with ſhark's ſkin; theſe they beat, not with ſticks, but their hands, and they know how to tune two drums of different notes into concord. They have alſo an expedient to bring the flutes that play together into uniſon, which is to roll up a leaf ſo as to ſlip over the end of the ſhorteſt, like our ſliding tubes for teleſcopes, which they move up or down till the purpoſe is anſwered, of which they ſeem to judge by their ear with great nicety.

To theſe inſtruments they ſing; and, as I have obſerved before, their ſongs are often extempore: they call every two verſes, or couplet a ſong, Pehay; they are generally, though not always, in rhime; and when pronounced by the natives, we could diſcover that they were metre. Mr. Banks took great pains to write down ſome of them, which were made upon our arrival, as nearly as he could expreſs their ſounds by combinations of our letters; but when we read them, not having their accent, we could ſcarcely make them either metre or rhime. The reader will eaſily perceive that they are of very different ſtructure.

Tede pahai de parow-a
Ha maru no mina.

E pahah Tayo malama tai ya
No Tabane tonatou whannomi ya.

E Turai eattu terara patee whennua toai
Ino o maio Pretane to wheunuaia no Tute.

Of theſe verſes our knowledge of the language is too imperfect to attempt a tranſlation. They frequently muſe themſelves by ſinging ſuch couplets as theſe when they are alone, or with their families, eſpecially after it is dark; for though they need no fires, they are not without the comfort of artificial light between

1769. ſunſet and bed-time. Their candles are made of the kernels of an oily nut, which they ſtick over one another upon a ſkewer, that is thruſt through the middle of them; the upper one being lighted burns down to the ſecond, at the ſame time conſuming that part of the ſkewer which goes through it; the ſecond taking fire burns in the ſame manner down to the third, and ſo of the reſt: ſome of theſe candles will burn a conſiderable time, and they give a very tolerable light. They do not often ſit up above an hour after it is dark; but when they have ſtrangers who ſleep in the houſe, they generally keep a light burning all night, poſſibly as a check upon ſuch of the women as they wiſh not to honour them with their favours.

Of their itinerary concerts, I need add nothing to what has been already ſaid; eſpecially as I ſhall have occaſion, more particularly, to mention them, when I relate our adventures upon another iſland.

In other countries, the girls and unmarried women are ſuppoſed to be wholly ignorant of what others, upon ſome occaſions, may appear to know; and their conduct and converſation are conſequently reſtrained within narrower bounds, and kept at a more remote diſtance from whatever relates to a connection with the other ſex; but here it is juſt the contrary. Among other diverſions, there is a dance called Timorodee, which is performed by young girls, whenever eight or ten of them can be collected together, conſiſting of motions and geſtures beyond imagination wanton, in the practice of which they are brought up from their earlieſt childhood, accompanied by words, which, if it were poſſible, would more explicitly convey the ſame ideas. In theſe dances, they keep time with an exactneſs which is ſcarely excelled by the beſt performers upon the ſtages of Europe. But the practice which is allowed to the virgin, is prohibited to the woman from the moment that ſhe has put theſe hopeful leſſons in practice, and realized the ſymbols of the dance.

It cannot be ſuppoſed that, among theſe people, chaſtity is held in much eſtimation. It might be expected that ſiſters and daughters would be offered to ſtrangers, either as a courteſy, or for reward; and that breaches of conjugal fidelity, even in the wife, ſhould

ſhould not be otherwiſe puniſhed than by a few hard words, or perhaps a ſlight beating, as indeed is the caſe: but there is a ſcale in diſſolute ſenſuality, which theſe people have aſcended, wholly unknown to every other nation, whoſe manners have been recorded from the beginning of the world to the preſent hour, and which no imagination could poſſibly conceive. 1769.

A very conſiderable number of the principal people of Otaheite, of both ſexes, have formed themſelves into a ſociety, in which every woman is common to every man: thus ſecuring a perpetual variety, as often as their inclination prompts them to ſeek it, which is ſo frequent, that the ſame man and woman ſeldom cohabit together more than two or three days.

Theſe ſocieties are diſtinguiſhed by the name of Arreoy; and the members have meetings, at which no other is preſent, where the men amuſe themſelves by wreſtling, and the women, notwithſtanding their occaſional connection with different men, dance the Timorodee in all its latitude, as an incitement to deſires, which, it is ſaid, are frequently gratified upon the ſpot. This, however, is comparatively nothing. If any of the women happen to be with child, which in this manner of life happens leſs frequently than if they were to cohabit only with one man, the poor infant is smothered the moment it is born, that it may be no incumbrance to the father, nor interrupt the mother in the pleaſures of her diabolical proſtitution. It ſometimes indeed happens, that the paſſion which prompts a woman to enter into this ſociety, is ſurmounted when ſhe becomes a mother, by that inſtinctive affection which Nature has given to all creatures for the preſervation of their offſpring; but even in this caſe, ſhe is not permitted to ſpare the life of her infant, except ſhe can find a man who will patroniſe it as his child; if this can be done, the murder is prevented; but both the man and woman, being deemed by this act to have appropriated each other, are ejected from the community, and forfeit all claim to the privileges and pleaſures of Arreoy for the future; the woman from that time being diſtinguiſhed by the term Whannownow, "bearer of children," which is here a term of reproach; though none can be more

1769. honourable in the eſtimation of wiſdom and humanity, of right reaſon, and every paſſion that diſtinguiſhes the man from the brute.

It is not fit that a practice ſo horrid and ſo ſtrange ſhould be imputed to human beings upon ſlight evidence, but I have ſuch as abundantly juſtifies me in the account I have given. The people themſelves are ſo far from concealing their connection with ſuch a ſociety as a diſgrace, that they boaſt of it as a privilege; and both myſelf and Mr. Banks, when particular perſons have been pointed out to us as members of the Arreoy, have queſtioned them about it, and received the account that has been here given from their own lips. They have acknowledged, that they had long been of this accurſed ſociety, that they belonged to it at that time, and that ſeveral of their children had been put to death.

But I muſt not conclude my account of the domeſtic life of theſe people, without mentioning their perſonal cleanlineſs. If that which leſſens the good of life, and increaſes the evil, is vice, ſurely cleanlineſs is a virtue; the want of it tends to deſtroy both beauty and health, and mingles diſguſt with our beſt pleaſures. The natives of Otaheite, both men and women, conſtantly waſh their whole bodies in running water three times every day; once as ſoon as they riſe in the morning, once at noon, and again before they ſleep at night, whether the ſea or river is near them or at a diſtance. I have already obſerved, that they waſh not only the mouth. but the hands at their meals, almoſt between every morſel; and their clothes, as well as their perſons, are kept without ſpot or ſtain; ſo that in a large company of theſe people, nothing is ſuffered but heat, which perhaps is more than can be ſaid of the politeſt aſſembly in Europe.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of the Manufacturers, Boats, and Navigation of Otaheite.

IF neceſſity is the mother of invention, it cannot be ſuppoſed to have been much exerted where the liberality of Nature has rendered the diligence of Art almoſt ſuperfluous; yet there are many inſtances both of ingenuity and labour among theſe people, which, conſidering the want of metal for tools, do honour to both. 1769.

Their principal manufacture is their cloth, in the making and dying of which, I think, there are ſome particulars which may inſtruct even the artificers of Great Britain, and for that reaſon my deſcription will be more minute. Manufactures.

Their cloth is of three kinds, and it is made of the bark of three different trees, the Chineſe paper mulberry, the bread-fruit tree, and the tree which reſembles the wild fig-tree of the Weſt Indies.

The fineſt and whiteſt is made of the paper mulberry, Aouta; this is worn chiefly by the principal people, and when it is dyed red takes a better colour. A ſecond ſort, inferior in whiteneſs and ſoftneſs, is made of the bread-fruit tree, Ooroo, and worn chiefly by the inferior people; and a third of the tree that reſembles the fig, which is coarſe and harſh, and of the colour of the darkeſt brown paper: this, though it is leſs pleaſing both to the eye and the touch, is the moſt valuable, becauſe it reſiſts water, which the other two cloths will not. Of this, which is the moſt rare as well as the moſt uſeful, the greater part is perfumed, and worn by the Chiefs as a morning dreſs.

All theſe trees are propagated with great care, particularly the mulberry, which covers the largeſt part of the cultivated land, and is not fit for uſe after two or three years growth, when it is about ſix or eight feet high, and ſomewhat thicker than a man's thumb; its excellence is to be thin, ſtraight, tall, and without branches; the lower leaves, therefore are carefully plucked

1769. plucked off, with their germs, as often as there is any appearance of their producing a branch.

But though the cloth made of theſe three trees is different, it is all manufactured in the ſame manner; I ſhall therefore deſcribe the proceſs only in the fineſt ſort, that is made of the mulberry. When the trees are of a proper ſize, they are drawn up, and ſtripped of their branches, after which the roots and tops are cut off; the bark of theſe rods being then ſlit up longitudinally, is eaſily drawn off, and, when a proper quantity has been procured, it is carried down to ſome running water, in which it is depoſited to ſoak, and ſecured from floating away by heavy ſtones; when it is ſuppoſed to be ſufficiently ſoftened, the women ſervants go down to the brook, and ſtripping themſelves ſit down in the water, to ſeparate the inner bark from the green part on the outſide: to do this, they place the under ſide upon a flat ſmooth board, and with the ſhell which our dealers call Tyger's Tongue, Tellina gargadia, ſcrape it very carefully, dipping it continually in the water, till nothing remains but the fine fibres of the inner coat.. Being thus prepared in the afternoon, they are ſpread out upon plantain leaves in the evening; and in this part of the work there appears to be ſome difficulty, as the miſtreſs of the family always ſuperintends the doing of it; they are placed in lengths of about eleven or twelve yards, one by the ſide of another, till they are about a foot broad, and two or three layers are alſo laid one upon the other; care is taken that the cloth ſhall be in all parts of an equal thickneſs, ſo that if the bark happens to be thinner in any one particular part of one layer than the reſt, a piece that is ſomewhat thicker is picked out to be laid over it in the next. In this ſtate it remains till the morning, when great part of the water, which it contained when it was laid out, is either drained off or evaporated, and the ſeveral fibres adhere together, ſo as that the whole may be raiſed from the ground as one piece.

It is then taken away, and laid upon the ſmooth ſide of a long piece of wood, prepared for the purpoſe, and beaten by the women ſervants, with inſtru-

ments

ments about a foot long and three inches thick, made of a hard wood which they call Etoa. The ſhape of this inſtrument is not unlike a ſquare razor ſtrap, only that the handle is longer, and each of its four ſides or faces is marked, lengthways, with ſmall grooves, or furrows, of different degrees of fineneſs; thoſe on one ſide being of a width and depth ſufficient to receive a ſmall packthread, and the others finer, in a regular gradation, ſo that the laſt are not more than equal to ſewing ſilk. 1769.

They beat it firſt with the coarſeſt ſide of this mallet, keeping time like our ſmiths; it ſpreads very faſt under the ſtrokes, chiefly, however, in the breadth, and the grooves in the mallet mark it with the appearance of threads; it is ſucceſſively beaten with the other ſides, laſt with the fineſt, and is then fit for uſe. Sometimes, however, it is made ſtill thinner, by beating it with the fineſt ſide of the mallet, after it has been ſeveral times doubled; it is then called Hoboo, and is almoſt as thin as a muſlin; it becomes very white by being bleached in the air, but is made ſtill whiter and finer by being waſhed, and beaten again after it has been worn.

Of this cloth there are ſeveral ſorts, of different degrees of fineneſs, in proportion as it is more or leſs beaten without being doubled; the other cloth alſo differs in proportion as it is beaten; but they differ from each other in conſequence of the different materials of which they are made. The bark of the bread-fruit is not taken till the trees are conſiderably longer and thicker than thoſe of the fig; the proceſs afterwards is the ſame.

When cloth is to be waſhed after it has been worn, it is taken down to the brook, and left to ſoak, being fixt faſt to the bottom, as at firſt, by a ſtone; it is then gently wrung, or ſqueezed, and ſometimes ſeveral pieces of it are laid one upon another, and beaten together with the coarſeſt ſide of the mallet, and they are then equal in thickneſs to broad-cloth, and much more ſoft and agreeable to the touch, after they have been a little while in uſe, though when they come immediately from the mallet, they feel as if they had been ſtarched. This cloth ſometimes breaks in the beating,

1769. beating, but it is eaſily repaired by paſting on a patch with a gluten, that is prepared from the root of the Pea, which is done ſo nicely that it cannot be diſcovered. The women alſo employ themſelves in removing blemiſhes of every kind, as our ladies do in needle-work or knotting; ſometimes, when their work is intended to be very fine, they will paſte an entire covering of hoboo over the whole. The principal excellencies of this cloth are its coolneſs and ſoftneſs; and its imperfections, its being pervious to water, like paper, and almoſt as eaſily torn.

The colours with which they dye this cloth are principally red and yellow. The red is exceedingly beautiful, and, I may venture to ſay, a brighter and more delicate colour than any we have in Europe; that which approaches neareſt is our full ſcarlet, and the beſt imitation which Mr. Banks's natural-hiſtory painter could produce, was by a mixture of vermilion and carmine. The yellow is alſo a bright colour, but we have many as good.

The red colour is produced by the mixture of the juices of two vegetables, neither of which ſeparately has the leaſt tendency to that hue. One is a ſpecies of fig, called here Matte, and the other the Cordia Sebeſtina, or Etou; of the fig the fruit is uſed, and of the Cordia the leaves.

The fruit of the fig is about as big as a rounce pea, or very ſmall gooſeberry; and each of them upon breaking off the ſtalk very cloſe, produces a drop of a milky liquor, reſembling the juice of other figs, of which the tree is indeed a ſpecies. This liquor the women collect into a ſmall quantity of cocoa-nut water: to prepare a gill of cocoa-nut water, they require between three and four quarts of theſe liquid figs. When a ſufficient quantity is prepared, the leaves of the Etou are well wetted in it, and then laid upon a plantain leaf, where they are turned about till they become more and more flaccid, and then they are gently ſqueezed, gradually increaſing the preſſure, but ſo as not to break them; as the flaccidity increaſes and they become ſpongy, they are ſupplied with more of the liquor; in about five minutes the colour begins to appear upon the veins of the leaves, and in about

n, or a little more, they are perfectly ſaturated with it; 1769.
ey are then ſqueezed with as much force as can be
plied, and the liquor ſtrained at the ſame time that
is expreſſed.

For this purpoſe the boys prepare a large quantity
the Moo, by drawing it between their teeth, or two
tle ſticks, till it is freed from the green bark and the
anny ſubſtance that lies under it, and a thin web of
e fibres only remains; in this the leaves of the Etou
e inveloped, and through theſe the juice which they
ntain is ſtrained, as it is forced out. As the leaves
e not ſucculent, little more juice is preſſed out of
em than they have imbibed: when they have been
ce emptied, they are filled again, and again preſſed,
l the quality which tinctures the liquor as it paſſes
rough them is exhauſted; they are then thrown
ay; but the Moo, being deeply ſtained with the li-
or is preſerved, as a bruſh to lay the dye upon the
oth.

The expreſſed liquor is always received into ſmall
ps made of the plantain leaf, whether from a notion
at it has any quality favourable to the colour, or from
e facility with which it is procured, and the conve-
nce of ſmall veſſels to diſtribute it among the artifi-
rs, I do not know.

Of the thin cloth they ſeldom dye more than the
ges, but the thick cloth is coloured through the
hole ſurface; the liquor is indeed uſed rather as a
gment than a dye, for a coat of it is laid upon one ſide
ly, with the fibres of the Moo; and though I have
n of the thin cloth that has appeared to have been
ked in the liquor, the colour has not had the ſame
hneſs and luſtre as when it has been applied in the
er manner.

Though the leaf of the Etou is generally uſed in this
oceſs, and probably produces the fineſt colour, yet
e juice of the figs will produce a red, by a mixture
h the ſpecies of Tournefortia, which they call Ta-
noo, the Pohuc, the Eurhe, or Convolvulus Braſilien-
, and a ſpecies of Solanum, called Ebooa; from the
e of theſe different plants, or from different propor-
ns of the materials, many varieties are obſervable in
the

1769. the colours of their cloth, ſome of which are conſpicuouſly ſuperior to others.

The beauty, however, of the beſt is nor permanent, but it is probable that ſome method might be found to fix it, if proper experiments were made, and perhaps to ſearch for latent qualities, which might be brought out by the mixture of one vegetable juice with another, would not be an unprofitable employment; our preſent moſt valuable dyes afford ſufficient encouragement to the attempt; for by the mere inſpection of indico, woad, dyer's weed, and moſt of the leaves which are uſed for the like purpoſes, the colours which they yield could never be diſcovered. Of this Indian red I ſhall only add, that the women who have been employed in preparing or uſing it, carefully preſerve the colour upon their fingers and nails, where it appears in its utmoſt beauty, as a great ornament.

The yellow is made of the bark of the root of the Morinda citrifolia, called Nono, by ſcraping and infuſing it in water; after ſtanding ſome time, the water is ſtrained and uſed as a dye, the cloth being dipped into it. The Morinda, of which this is a ſpecies, ſeems to be a good ſubject for examination with a view to dyeing. Brown, in his Hiſtory of Jamaica, mentions three ſpecies of it, which, he ſays, are uſed to dye brown; and Rumphius ſays of the Bancuda Auguſtifolia, which is nearly allied to our Nono, that it is uſed by the inhabitants of the Eaſt-India iſlands as a fixing drug for red colours, with which it particularly agrees.

The inhabitants of this iſland alſo dye yellow with the fruit of the Tamanu; but how the colour is extracted, we had no opportunity to diſcover. They have alſo a preparation with which they dye brown and black; but theſe colours are ſo indifferent, that the method of preparing them did not excite our curioſity.

Another conſiderable manufacture is matting of various kinds, ſome of which is finer, and better in every reſpect than any we have in Europe; the coarſer ſort ſerves them to ſleep upon, and the finer to wear in wet weather. With the fine, of which there are alſo two ſorts, much pains is taken, eſpecially with that made

ade of the bark of the Poerou, the Hibiſcus tiliaceus 1769.
Linnæus, ſome of which is as fine as a coarſe
oth; the other ſort, which is ſtill more beautiful,
ey call Vanne; it is white, gloſſy, and ſhining, and
made of the leaves of their Wharrou, a ſpecies of
e Pandanus, of which we had no opportunity to ſee
her the flowers or fruit: they have other matts, or,
they call them, Moeas, to ſit or to ſleep upon,
hich are formed of a great variety of ruſhes and
aſs, and which they make, as they do every thing
ſe that is plaited, with amazing facility and diſpatch.
They are alſo very dextrous in making baſket and
icker-work; their baſkets are of a thouſand different
tterns, many of them exceedingly neat; and the
aking them is an art that every one practiſes, both
en and women: they make occaſional baſkets and
nniers of the cocoa-nut leaf in a few minutes, and
e women who viſited us early in a morning, uſed to
nd, as ſoon as the ſun was high, for a few of the
aves, of which they made little bonnets to ſhade
eir faces, at ſo ſmall an expence of time and trouble,
at when the ſun was again low in the evening, they
ſed to throw them away. Theſe bonnets, however,
d not cover the head, but conſiſted only of a band
at went round it, and a ſhade that projected from
e forehead.

Of the bark of the Poerou they make ropes and
nes from the thickneſs of an inch to the ſize of a
all packthread; with theſe they make nets for fiſh-
g; of the fibres of the cocoa-nut they make thread,
r faſtening together the ſeveral parts of their canoes
nd belts, either round or flat, twiſted or plaited;
nd of the bark of the Erowa, a kind of nettle which
rows in the mountains, and is therefore rather ſcarce,
ey make the beſt fiſhing-lines in the world; with
eſe they hold the ſtrongeſt and moſt active fiſh, ſuch
s bonetas and albicores, which would ſnap our ſtrongeſt
lk lines in a minute, tho' they are twice as thick.

They make alſo a kind of ſeine, of a coarſe broad
raſs, the blades of which are like flags; theſe they
wiſt and tie together in a looſe manner, till the net,
hich is about as wide as a large ſack, is from ſixty to
eighty

1769. eighty fathom long; this they haul in ſhoal ſmoo water, and its own weight keeps it ſo cloſe to th ground that ſcarcely a ſingle fiſh can eſcape.

In every expedient, indeed, for taking fiſh, they ar exceedingly ingenious; they make harpoons of cane and point them with hard wood, which in their hand ſtrike fiſh more effectually, than thoſe which are head ed with iron can do in ours, ſetting aſide the advantag of ours being faſtened to a line, ſo that the fiſh is ſe cured if the hook takes place, tho' it does not mortall wound him.

Of fiſh-hooks they have two ſorts, admirably adapt ed in their conſtruction, as well to the purpoſe the are to anſwer, as to the materials of which they ar made. One of theſe, which they call Wittee Witte is uſed for towing. The ſhank is made of mother-o pearl, the moſt gloſſy that can be got; the inſide which is naturally the brighteſt, is put behind. T theſe hooks a tuft of white dogs or hogs hair is fixe ſo as ſomewhat to reſemble the tail of a fiſh; thei implements, therefore, are both hook and bait, an are uſed with a rod of bamboo, and line of Erow The fiſher, to ſecure his ſucceſs, watches the flight o the birds, which conſtantly attend the bonetas whe they ſwim in ſhoals, by which he directs his canoe, an when he has the advantage of theſe guides, he ſeldom returns without a prize.

The other kind of hook is alſo made of mother-o pearl, or ſome other hard ſhell; they cannot mak them bearded, like our hooks, but, to effect the ſam purpoſe, they make the point turn inwards. The are made of all ſizes, and uſed to catch various kind of fiſh with great ſucceſs. The manner of making them is very ſimple, and every fiſherman is his own artificer; the ſhell is firſt cut into ſquare pieces, by the edge of another ſhell, and wrought into a form correſponding with the outline of the hook by pieces of coral, which are ſufficiently rough to perform the office of a file; a hole is then bored in the middle, the drill being no other than the firſt ſtone they pick up that has a ſharp corner; this they fix into the end of a piece of bamboo, and turn it between the hands like

ke a chocolate-mill; when the ſhell is perforated, and 1769.
e whole ſufficiently wide, a ſmall file of coral is introced, by the application of which the hook is in a ſhort me completed, few coſting the artificer more time an a quarter of an hour.

Of their maſonry, carving, and architecture, the ader has already formed ſome idea, from the account at has been given of the Morais, or repoſitories of e dead: the other moſt important article of buildg and carving is their boats; and, perhaps, to faicate one of their principal veſſels with their tools, is great a work as to build a Britiſh man of war with rs.

They have an adze of ſtone; a chiſſel or gouge of ne, generally that of a man's arm, between the wriſt d elbow; a raſp of coral; and the ſkin of a ſtingy, with coral ſand, as a file or poliſher.

This is a complete catalogue of their tools, and with ſe they build houſes, conſtruct canoes, hew ſtone, d fell, cleave, carve, and poliſh timber.

The ſtone which makes the blade of their adzes is kind of Baſaltes, of a blackiſh or grey colour, not y hard, but of conſiderable toughneſs; they are med of different ſizes, ſome, that are intended for ing, weigh from ſix to eight pounds; others, that uſed for carving, not more than ſo many ounces; it is neceſſary to ſharpen both almoſt every minute, which purpoſe a ſtone and a cocoa-nut ſhell full of ter are always at hand.

Their greateſt exploit, to which theſe tools are leſs al than to any other, is felling a tree; this requires ny hands, and the conſtant labour of ſeveral days. hen it is down, they ſplit it, with the grain, into nks from three to four inches thick, the whole gth and breadth of the tree, many of which are ht feet in the girt, and forty to the branches, and rly of the ſame thickneſs throughout. The tree nerally uſed is in their language called Avie, the ſtem which is tall and ſtraight; though ſome of the aller boats are made of the bread-fruit tree, which a light ſpongy wood, and eaſily wrought. They ooth the plank very expeditiouſly and dexterouſly h their adzes, and can take off a thin coat from a

1769. whole plank without miſſing a ſtroke. As they have not the art of warping a plank, every part of the canoe, whether hollow or flat, is ſhaped by hand.

The canoes, or boats, which are uſed by the inhabitants of this and the neighbouring iſlands, may be divided into two general claſſes, one of which they call Ivahahs, the other Pahies.

The Ivahah is uſed for ſhort excurſions to ſea, and is wall-ſided and flat-bottomed; the Pahie for longer voyages, and is bow-ſided and ſharp-bottomed. The Ivahahs are all of the ſame figure, but of different ſizes, and uſed for different purpoſes; their length is from ſeventy-two feet to ten, but the breadth is by no means in proportion, for thoſe of ten feet are about a foot wide, and thoſe of more than ſeventy are ſcarcely two. There is the fighting Ivahah, the fiſhing Ivahah, and the travelling Ivahah; for ſome of theſe go from one iſland to another. The fighting Ivahah is by far the longeſt, and the head and ſtern are conſiderably raiſed above the body, in a ſemicircular form, particularly the ſtern, which is ſometimes ſeventeen or eighteen feet high, though the boat itſelf is ſcarcely three. Theſe never go to ſea ſingle, but are faſtened together, ſide by ſide, at the diſtance of about three feet, by ſtrong poles of wood, which are laid acroſs them and laſhed to the gunwales. Upon theſe, in the fore-part, a ſtage or platform is raiſed, about ten or twelve feet long, and ſomewhat wider than the boats, which is ſupported by pillars about ſix feet high; upon this ſtage ſtand the fighting men, whoſe miſſile weapons are ſlings and ſpears; for, among other ſingularities in the manners of theſe people, their bows and arrows are uſed only for diverſion, as we throw quoits: below theſe ſtages ſit the rowers, who receive from them thoſe that are wounded, and furniſh freſh men to aſcend in their room. Some of theſe have a platform of bamboos, or other light wood, through their whole length, and conſiderably broader, by means of which they will carry a great number of men; but we ſaw only one fitted in this manner.

The fiſhing Ivahahs vary in length from about forty feet to the ſmalleſt ſize, which is about ten; all that are of the length of twenty-five feet and upwards, of whatever

whatever ſort, occaſionally carry ſail. The travelling Ivahah is always double, and furniſhed with a ſmall neat houſe about five or ſix feet broad, and ſix or ſeven feet long, which is faſtened upon the fore-part for the convenience of the principal people, who ſit in them by day, and ſleep in them at night. The fiſhing Ivahahs are ſometimes joined together, and have a houſe on board; but this is not common. 1769.

Thoſe which are ſhorter than five and twenty feet, ſeldom or never carry ſail; and, though the ſtern riſes about four or five feet, have a flat head, and a board that projects forward about four feet.

The Pahie is alſo of different ſizes, from ſixty to thirty feet long, but, like the Ivahah, is very narrow. One that I meaſured was fifty-one feet long, and only one foot and a half wide at the top. In the wideſt part it was about three feet, and this is the general proportion. It does not, however, widen by a gradual ſwell, but, the ſides being ſtraight, and parallel, for a little way below the gunwale, it ſwells abruptly, and draws to a ridge at the bottom; ſo that a tranſverſe ſection of it has ſomewhat the appearance of the mark upon cards, called a Spade, the whole being much wider in proportion to its length. Theſe, like the largeſt Ivahahs are uſed for fighting, but principally for long voyages. The fighting Pahie, which is the largeſt, is fitted with the ſtage or platform, which is proportionably larger than thoſe of the Ivahah, as their form enables them to ſuſtain a much greater weight. Thoſe that are uſed for ſailing are generally double; and the middle ſize are ſaid to be the beſt ſea-boats. They are ſometimes out a month together, going from iſland to iſland; and ſometimes, as we were credibly informed, they are a fortnight or twenty days at ſea, and could keep it longer if they had more ſtowage for proviſions, and conveniences to hold freſh water.

When any of theſe boats carry ſail ſingle, they make uſe of a log of wood, which is faſtened to the end of two poles that lie acroſs the veſſel, and project from ſix to ten feet, according to the ſize of the veſſel, beyond its ſide, ſomewhat like what is uſed by the flying Proa of the Ladrone Iſlands, and called, in

1769. the Account of Lord Anſon's Voyage, an Outrigger. To this outrigger the ſhrouds are faſtened, and it is eſſentially neceſſary in trimming the boat when it blows freſh.

Some of them have one maſt, and ſome two; they are made of a ſingle ſtick, and when the length of the canoe is thirty feet, that of the maſt is ſomewhat leſs than five and twenty; it is fixed to a frame that is above the canoe, and receives a ſail of matting about one third longer than itſelf; the ſail is pointed at the top, ſquare at the bottom, and curved at the ſide, ſomewhat reſembling what we call a ſhoulder of mutton ſail, and uſe for boats belonging to men of war; it is placed in a frame of wood, which ſurrounds it on every ſide, and has no contrivance either for reefing or furling; ſo that, if either ſhould become neceſſary, it muſt be cut away, which, however, in theſe equal climates can ſeldom happen. At the top of the maſt are faſtened ornaments of feathers, which are placed inclining obliquely forwards; the ſhape and poſition of which will be conceived at once, from the figure in one of the cuts.

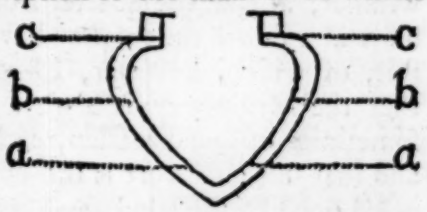
The oars or paddles that are uſed with theſe boats, have a long handle and a flat blade, not unlike a baker's peel. Of theſe every perſon in the boat has one, except thoſe that ſit under the awning; and they puſh her forward with them at a good rate. Theſe boats, however, admit ſo much water at the ſeams, that one perſon, at leaſt, is continually employed in throwing it out. The only thing in which they excel is landing, and putting off from the ſhore in a ſurf; by their great length and high ſterns they land dry, when our boats could ſcarcely land at all; and have the ſame advantages in putting off, by the height of the head.

The Ivahahs are the only boats that are uſed by the inhabitants of Otaheite; but we ſaw ſeveral Pahies that came from other iſlands. Of one of theſe I ſhall give the exact dimenſions from a careful admeaſurement, and then particularly deſcribe the manner in which they are built.

Extreme

	Feet	Inch	1769.
Extreme length from ſtem to ſtern, not reckoning the bending up of either	51	0	
Breadth in the clear of the top forward	1	2	
Breadth in the midſhips	1	6	
Breadth aft	1	3	
In the bilge forward	2	8	
In the midſhips	2	11	
Aft	2	9	
Depth in the midſhips	3	4	
Height from the ground on which he ſtood	3	6	
Height of her head from the ground, without the figure	4	4	
Height of the figure	0	11	
Height of the ſtern from the ground	8	9	
Height of the figure	2	0	

To illuſtrate my deſcription of the manner in which theſe veſſels are built, it will be neceſſary to refer to the figure; in which *a a* is the firſt ſeam, *b b* the ſecond, and *c c* the third.



The firſt ſtage or keel, under *a a*, is made of a tree hollowed out like a trough; for which the longeſt trees are choſen that can be got, ſo that there are never more than three in the whole length; the next ſtage under *b*, is formed of ſtrait plank, about four feet long, fifteen inches broad, and two inches thick: the third ſtage, under *c c*, is, like the bottom, made of trunks, hollowed into its bilging form; the laſt is alſo cut out of trunks, ſo that the moulding is of one piece with the upright. To form theſe parts ſeparately, without ſaw, plane, chiſſel, or any other iron tool, may well be thought no eaſy taſk; but the great difficulty is to join them together.

When all the parts are prepared, the keel is laid upon blocks, and the planks being ſupported by ſtanchions, are ſewed or clamped together with ſtrong thongs of plaiting, which are paſſed ſeveral times through holes that are bored with a gouge or auger of bone, that has been deſcribed already; and the nicety with which this is done, may be inferred from their being ſufficiently

1769. water-tight for uſe without calking. As the plaiting ſoon rots in the water, it is renewed at leaſt once a year; in order to which, the veſſel is taken entirely to pieces. The head and ſtern are rude with reſpect to the deſign; but very neatly finiſhed, and poliſhed to the higheſt degree.

Theſe Pahies are kept with great care, in a kind of houſe built on purpoſe for their reception; the houſes are formed of poles ſet upright in the ground, the tops of which are drawn towards each other, and faſtened together with their ſtrongeſt cord, ſo as to form a kind of Gothic arch, which is completely thatched quite to the ground, being open only at the ends; they are ſometimes fifty or ſixty paces long.

As connected with the navigation of theſe people, I ſhall mention their wonderful ſagacity in foretelling the weather, at leaſt the quarter from which the wind ſhall blow at a future time; they have ſeveral ways of doing this, of which, however, I know but one. They ſay, that the Milky-way is always curved laterally; but ſometimes in one direction, and ſometimes in another: and that this curvature is the effect of its being already acted upon by the wind, and its hollow part therefore towards it; ſo that, if the ſame curvature continues a night, a correſponding wind certainly blows the next day. Of their rules, I ſhall not pretend to judge; but I know that, by whatever means, they can predict the weather, at leaſt the wind, with much greater certainty than we can.

In their longer voyages, they ſteer by the ſun in the day, and in the night by the ſtars; all of which they diſtinguiſh ſeparately by names, and know in what part of the heavens they will appear in any of the months during which they are viſible in their horizon; they alſo know the time of their annual appearing and diſappearing with more preciſion than will eaſily be believed by an European aſtronomer.

1769.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Diviſion of Time in Otaheite; Numeration, Computation of Diſtance, Language, Diſeaſes, Diſpoſal of the Dead, Religion, War, Weapons, and Government; with ſome general Obſervations for the Uſe of future Navigators.

Time. WE were not able to acquire a perfect idea of their method of dividing time; but obſerved, that in ſpeaking of it, either paſt or to come, they never uſed any term but Malama, which ſignifies Moon. Of theſe moons they count thirteen, and then begin again; which is a demonſtration that they have a notion of the ſolar year: but how they compute their months ſo that thirteen of them ſhall be commenſurate with the year, we could not diſcover; for they ſay that each month has twenty-nine days, including one in which the moon is not viſible. They have names for them ſeparately, and have frequently told us the fruits that would be in the ſeaſon, and the weather that would prevail, in each of them; and they have indeed a name for them collectively, though they uſe it only when they ſpeak of the myſteries of their religion.

Every day is ſubdivided into twelve parts, each of two hours, of which ſix belong to the day, and ſix to the night. At theſe diviſions they gueſs pretty nearly by the height of the ſun while he is above the horizon; but there are few of them who can gueſs at them, when he is below it, by the ſtars.

Numbers. In numeration they proceed from one to ten, the number of fingers on both hands; and though they have for each number a different name, they generally take hold of their fingers one by one, ſhifting from one hand to the other till they come to the number they want to expreſs. And in other inſtances, we obſerved that, when they were converſing with each other, they joined ſigns to their words, which were ſo expreſſive that a ſtranger might eaſily apprehend their meaning.

In counting from ten they repeat the name of that number, and add the word *more*; ten, and one more,

1769. is eleven; ten, and two more, twelve; and ſo of the reſt, as we ſay one and twenty, two and twenty. When they come to ten and ten more, they have a new denomination, as we ſay a ſcore; and by theſe ſcores they count till they get ten of them, when they have a denomination for two hundred; and we never could diſcover that they had any denomination to expreſs a greater number: neither, indeed, do they ſeem to want any; for ten of theſe amount to two thouſand, a greater number than they can ever apply.

In meaſuring diſtance they are much more deficient than in computing numbers, having but one term which anſwers to fathom; when they ſpeak of diſtances from place to place, they expreſs it, like the Aſiatics, by the time that is required to paſs it.

Language. Their language is ſoft and melodious; it abounds with vowels, and we eaſily learned to pronounce it: but found it exceedingly difficult to teach them to pronounce a ſingle word of ours; probably not only from its abounding in conſonants, but from ſome peculiarity in its ſtructure; for Spaniſh and Italian words, if ending in a vowel, they pronounced with great facility.

Whether it is copious, we were not ſufficiently acquainted with it to know; but it is certainly very imperfect, for it is almoſt totally without inflexion, both of nouns and verbs. Few of the nouns have more than one caſe, and few of the verbs more than one tenſe; yet we found no great difficulty in making ourſelves mutually underſtood, however ſtrange it may appear in ſpeculation.

They have, however, certain *affixa*, which, though but few in number, are very uſeful to them, and puzzled us extremely. One aſks another, *Harre bea*? "Where are you going?" the other anſwers, *Ivabinra*, "To my wives;" upon which the firſt repeating the anſwer interrogatively, "To your wives?" is anſwered, *Ivabinereira*; "Yes, I am going to my wives." Here the ſuffixa *era* and *eira* ſave ſeveral words to both parties.

I have inſerted a few of their words, from which, perhaps, ſome idea may be formed of their language.

Pupa

1769.

upo, *the head.*
hewh, *the nose.*
oourou, *the hair.*
utou, *the mouth.*
iheo, *the teeth.*
rrero, *the tongue.*
eu-eumi, *the beard.*
iaraboa, *the throat.*
uamo, *the shoulders.*
uah, *the back.*
ama, *the breast.*
u, *the nipples.*
boo, *the belly.*
ma, *the arm.*
porema, *the hand.*
anneo, *the fingers.*
ien, *the nails.*
buhe, *the buttocks.*
bouhah, *the thighs.*
ia, *the legs.*
poa, *the feet.*
oa, *a bog.*
oa, *a fowl.*
ree, *a dog.*
re-eure, *iron.*
roo, *bread-fruit.*
aree, *cocoa-nuts.*
a, *bananas.*
ee, *wild plantains.*
e, *beads.*
e matawewwe, *pearls.*
ou, *a garment.*
ee, *a fruit like apples.*
ee, *another like chestnuts.*
harre, *a house.*
hennua, *a high island.*
otu, *a low island.*
to, *blood.*
ve, *bone.*
o, *flesh.*
e, *fat.*
ea, *lean.*
ruhuru, *hair.*

Eraow, *a tree.*
Ama, *a branch.*
Tiale, *a flower.*
Huero, *fruit.*
Etummoo, *the stem.*
Aaa, *the root.*
Eiherre, *herbaceous plants.*
Ooopa, *a pigeon.*
Avigne, *a paroquet.*
A-a, *another species.*
Mannu, *a bird.*
Mora, *a duck.*
Mattow, *a fish-hook.*
Toura, *a rope.*
Mow, *a shark.*
Mahi-mahi, *a dolphin.*
Mattera, *a fishing-rod.*
Eupea, *a net.*
Mahanna, *the sun.*
Malama, *the moon.*
Whettu, *a star.*
Whettu-euphe, *a comet.*
Erai, *the sky.*
Eatta, *a cloud.*
Miti, *good.*
Eno, *bad.*
A, *yes.*
Ima, *no.*
Paree, *ugly.*
Paroree, *hungry.*
Pia, *full.*
Timahah, *heavy.*
Mama, *light.*
Poto, *short.*
Roa, *tall.*
Nehenne, *sweet.*
Mala-mala, *bitter.*
Whanno, *to go far.*
Harre, *to go.*
Arrea, *to stay.*
Enoho, *to remain.*
Rohe-rohe, *to be tired.*
Maa, *to eat.*

Inoo,

1769. Inoo, *to drink.* Worridde, *to be angry.*
Ete, *to underſtand.* Teparahi, *to beat.*
Warrido, *to ſteal.*

Diſeaſes. Among people whoſe food is ſo ſimple, and who, in general, are ſeldom drunk, it is ſcarcely neceſſary to ſay, that there are but few diſeaſes; we ſaw no critical diſeaſe during our ſtay upon the iſland, and but few inſtances of ſickneſs, which were accidental fits of the cholic. The natives, however, are afflicted with the eryſipelas, and cutaneous eruptions of the ſcaly kind, very nearly approaching to a leproſy. Thoſe in whom this diſtemper was far advanced, lived in a ſtate of ſecluſion from all ſociety, each in a ſmall houſe built upon ſome unfrequented ſpot, where they were ſupplied with proviſions; but whether they had any hope of relief, or languiſhed out the remainder of their lives in ſolitude and deſpair, we could not learn. We obſerved alſo a few who had ulcers upon different parts of their bodies, ſome of which had a very virulent appearance; yet they ſeemed not much to be regarded by thoſe who were afflicted with them, for they were left intirely without application, even to keep off the flies.

Where intemperance produces no diſeaſes, there will be no phyſicians by profeſſion; yet where there is ſufferance, there will always be attempts to relieve; and where the cauſe of the miſchief and the remedy are alike unknown, theſe will naturally be directed by ſuperſtition: thus it happens, that in this country, and in all others which are not further injured by luxury, or improved by knowledge, the management of the ſick falls to the lot of the prieſt. The method of cure that is practiſed by the prieſts of Otaheite, conſiſts chiefly of prayers and ceremonies. When he viſits his patient, he repeats certain ſentences, which appear to be ſet forms contrived for the occaſion, and at the ſame time plaits the leaves of the cocoa-nut into different figures very neatly; ſome of theſe he faſtens to the fingers and toes of the ſick, and often leaves behind him a few branches of the *theſpecia populnea*, which they call *E' midho*; theſe ceremonies are repeated till the patient recovers or dies. If he recovers, they ſay the remedies

cured

ured him; if he dies, they ſay the diſeaſe was incur- 1769.
ble; in which, perhaps, they do not much differ from
he cuſtom of other countries.

If we had judged of their ſkill in ſurgery from the readful ſcars which we ſometimes ſaw, we ſhould have ppoſed it to be much ſuperior to the art not only of heir phyſicians, but of ours. We ſaw one man whoſe ace was almoſt intirely deſtroyed: his noſe, including he bone, was perfectly flat, and one cheek and one eye were ſo beaten in, that the hollow would almoſt receive man's fiſt, yet no ulcer remained: and our compa- ion, Tupia, had been pierced quite through his body y a ſpear, headed with the bone of a ſting-ray, the eapon having entered his back, and come out juſt under is breaſt; but, except in reducing diſlocations and actures, the beſt ſurgeon can contribute very little to he cure of a wound; the blood itſelf is the beſt vulne- ary balſam, and when the juices of the body are pure, nd the patient is temperate, nothing more is neceſſary, s an aid to Nature, in the cure of the worſt wound, han the keeping it clean.

Their commerce with the inhabitants of Europe has, owever, already entailed upon them that dreadful curſe hich avenged the inhumanities committed by the Spa- iards in America, the venereal diſeaſe. As it is certain hat no European veſſel, beſides our own, except the olphin, and the two that were under the command of Monſ. Bougainville, ever viſited this iſland, it muſt ither have been brought by one of them, or by us. hat it was brought by the Dolphin, Captain Wallis as demonſtrated, in the account of her voyage, in the rſt volume, and nothing is more certain, than that hen we arrived it had made moſt dreadful ravages in he iſland. One of our people contracted it within five ays after we went on ſhore, and by the enquiries mong the natives, which this occaſioned, we learned, hen we came to underſtand a little of their language, hat it had been brought by the veſſels which had been here about fifteen months before us, and had lain on he eaſt ſide of the iſland. They diſtinguiſhed it by a ame of the ſame import with *rottenneſs*, but of a more extenſive

1769. extenſive ſignification, and deſcribed, in the moſt pathetic terms, the ſufferings of the firſt victims to its rage, and told us, that it cauſed the hair and the nails to fall off, and the fleſh to rot from the bones; that it ſpread a univerſal terror and conſternation among them, ſo that the ſick were abandoned by their neareſt relations, leſt the calamity ſhould ſpread by contagion, and left to periſh alone in ſuch miſery as till then had never been known among them. We had ſome reaſon, however, to hope that they had found out a ſpecific to cure it. During our ſtay upon the iſland we ſaw none in whom it had made a great progreſs; and one who went from us infected, returned after a ſhort time in perfect health; and by this it appeared, either that the diſeaſe had cured itſelf, or that they were not unacquainted with the virtues of ſimples, nor implicit dupes to the ſuperſtitious follies of their prieſts. We endeavoured to learn the medical qualities which they imputed to their plants, but our knowledge of their language was too imperfect for us to ſucceed. If we could have learned their ſpecific for the venereal diſeaſe, if ſuch they have, it would have been of great advantage to us, for when we left the iſland it had been contracted by more than half the people on board the ſhip.

It is impoſſible but that, in relating incidents, many particulars with reſpect to the cuſtoms, opinions, and works of theſe people ſhould be anticipated; to avoid repetition, therefore, I ſhall only ſupply deficiencies. Of the manner of diſpoſing of their dead, much has been ſaid already. I muſt more explicitly obſerve, that there are two places in which the dead are depoſited; one a kind of ſhed, where the fleſh is ſuffered to putrify, the other an encloſure, with erections of ſtone, where the bones are afterwards buried. The ſheds are called TUPAPOW, and the encloſures Morai. The Morais are alſo places of worſhip.

Diſpoſal of dead.

As ſoon as a native of Otaheite is known to be dead, the houſe is filled with relations, who deplore their loſs, ſome by loud lamentations, and ſome by leſs clamorous, but more genuine expreſſions of grief. Thoſe who are in the neareſt degree of kindred, and are really affected by the event, are ſilent; the reſt are one moment uttering

tering paſſionate exclamations in a chorus, and the 1769.
ext laughing and talking, without the leaſt appearance
concern. In this manner the remainder of the day
which they aſſemble is ſpent, and all the ſucceeding
ght. On the next morning the body is ſhrouded in
eir cloth, and conveyed to the ſea ſide upon a bier,
hich the bearers ſupport upon their ſhoulders, attend-
by the prieſt, who having prayed over the body, re-
ats his ſentences during the proceſſion; when it ar-
es at the water's edge, it is ſet down upon the beach;
prieſt renews his prayers, and taking up ſome of the
ter in his hands, ſprinkles it towards the body, but
t upon it; it is then carried back forty or fifty yards,
d ſoon after brought again to the beach, where the
yers and ſprinkling are repeated. It is thus removed
ckwards and forwards ſeveral times; and while theſe
emonies have been performing a houſe has been built,
d a ſmall ſpace of ground railed in. In the centre of
s houſe, or Tupapow, poſts are ſet up to ſupport the
r, which is at length conveyed thither, and placed
on it, and here the body remains to putrify till the
ſh is wholly waſted from the bones.

Theſe houſes of corruption are of a ſize proportioned
the rank of the perſon whoſe body they are to contain;
ſe allotted to the lower claſs are juſt ſufficient to cover
bier, and have no railing round them. The largeſt
ever ſaw was eleven yards long, and ſuch as theſe
ornamented according to the abilities and inclination
the ſurviving kindred, who never fail to lay a profu-
n of good cloth about the body, and ſometimes almoſt
er the outſide of the houſe. Garlands of the fruit of
palm-nut, or *pandanus*, and cocoa leaves, twiſted by
prieſts in myſterious knots, with a plant called by
m *Etbee no Morai*, which is particularly conſecrated
funeral ſolemnities, are depoſited about the place;
viſion and water are alſo left at a little diſtance, of
ich, and of other decorations, a more particular
cription has been given already.

As ſoon as the body is depoſited in the Tupapow,
mourning is renewed. The women aſſemble, and
led to the door by the neareſt relation, who ſtrikes
a ſhark's

1769. a ſhark's tooth ſeveral times into the crown of her head; the blood copiouſly follows, and is carefully received upon pieces of linen, which are thrown under the bier. The reſt of the women follow this example, and the ceremony is repeated at the interval of two or three days, as long as the zeal and ſorrow of the parties hold out. The tears alſo which are ſhed upon theſe occaſions, are received upon pieces of cloth, and offered as oblations to the dead: ſome of the young people cut off their hair, and that is thrown under the bier with other offerings. This cuſtom is founded upon a notion that the ſoul of the deceaſed, which they believe to exiſt in a ſeparate ſtate, is hovering about the place where the body is depoſited: that it obſerves the actions of the ſurvivors, and is gratified by ſuch teſtimonies of their affection and grief.

Two or three days after theſe ceremonies have been commenced by the women, during which the men ſeem to be wholly inſenſible of their loſs, they alſo begin to perform their part. The neareſt relations take it in turn to aſſume the dreſs, and perform the offices which have already been particularly deſcribed in the account of Tubourai Tamaide's having acted as chief mourner to an old woman, his relation, who died while we were in the iſland. One part of the ceremony, however, which accounts for the running away of the people as ſoon as this proceſſion is in ſight, has not been mentioned. The chief mourner carries in his hand a long flat ſtick, the edge of which is ſet with ſharks teeth, and in a phrenzy, which his grief is ſuppoſed to have inſpired, he runs at all he ſees, and if any of them happen to be overtaken, he ſtrikes them moſt unmercifully with this indented cudgel, which cannot fail to wound them in a dangerous manner.

Theſe proceſſions continue at certain intervals for five moons, but are leſs and leſs frequent, by a gradual diminution, as the end of that time approaches. When it is expired, what remains of the body is taken down from the bier, and the bones having been ſcraped and waſhed very clean, are buried, according to the rank of the perſon, either within or without a Morai: if the deceaſed was an Earee, or Chief, his ſkull is not buried with the reſt of the bones, but is wrapped up in fine cloth, and put up in a kind of box made for

hat purpoſe, which is alſo placed in the Morai. This 1769.
offer is called *Ewbarre no te Orometua*, the houſe of
teacher or maſter. After this the mourning ceaſes,
xcept ſome of the women continue to be really afflicted
r the loſs, and in that caſe they will ſometimes ſuddenly
ound themſelves with the ſhark's tooth wherever they
appen to be: this perhaps will account for the paſſion
grief in which Terapo wounded herſelf at the fort;
me accidental circumſtance might forcibly revive the
membrance of a friend or relation whom ſhe had loſt,
ith a pungency of regret and tenderneſs which forced
vent by tears, and prompted her to a repetition of the
neral rite.

The ceremonies, however, do not ceaſe with the
ourning: prayers are ſtill ſaid by the prieſt, who is
ell paid by the ſurviving relations, and offerings made
the Morai. Some of the things, which from time
time are depoſited there, are emblematical: a young
antain repreſents the deceaſed, and the bunch of fea-
ers the deity who is invoked. The prieſt places him-
f over-againſt the ſymbol of the God, accompanied
ſome of the relations, who are furniſhed with ſmall
fering, and repeats his oraiſon in a ſet form, conſiſting
ſeparate ſentences; at the ſame time weaving the
ves of the cocoa-nut into different forms, which he
erwards depoſits upon the ground where the bones
ve been interred; the deity is then addreſſed by a
ill ſcreech, which is uſed only upon that occaſion.
hen the prieſt retires, the tuft of feathers is removed,
d the proviſions left to putrify, or be devoured by the
s.

Of the religion of theſe people, we were not able to Religion.
quire any clear and conſiſtent knowledge: we found
ike the religion of moſt other countries, involved in
ſtery, and perplexed with apparent inconſiſtences.
he religious language is alſo here, as it is in China,
ferent from that which is uſed in common; ſo that
upia, who took great pains to inſtruct us, having no
rds to expreſs his meaning which we underſtood,
ve us lectures to very little purpoſe: what we learnt,
wever, I will relate with as much perſpicuity as I can.

Nothing is more obvious to a rational being, however
norant or ſtupid, than that the univerſe and its various
rts, as far as they fall under his notice, were pro-

duced

1769. duced by ſome agent inconceivably more powerful than himſelf; and nothing is more difficult to be conceived, even by the moſt ſagacious and knowing, than the production of them from nothing, which among us is expreſſed by the word Creation. It is natural therefore, as no Being apparently capable of producing the univerſe is to be ſeen, that he ſhould be ſuppoſed to reſide in ſome diſtant part of it, or to be in his nature inviſible, and that he ſhould have originally produced all that now exiſts in a manner ſimilar to that in which nature is renovated by the ſucceſſion of one generation to another: but the idea of procreation includes in it that of two perſons, and from the conjunction of two perſons theſe people imagine every thing in the univerſe either originally or derivatively to proceed.

The Supreme Deity, one of theſe two firſt beings, they call TAROATAIHETOOMOO, and the other, whom they ſuppoſe to have been a rock, TEPAPA. A daughter of theſe was TETTOWMATATAYO, the year, or thirteen months collectively, which they never name but upon this occaſion, and ſhe, by the common father, produced the months, and the months, by conjunction with each other, the days: the ſtars they ſuppoſe partly to be the immediate offſpring of the firſt pair, and partly to have increaſed among themſelves: and they have the ſame notion with reſpect to the different ſpecies of plants. Among other progeny of Taroataihetoomoo and Tepapa, they ſuppoſe an inferior race of deities whom they call EATUAS. Two of theſe Eatuas, they ſay, at ſome remote period of time, inhabited the earth, and were the parents of the firſt man. When this man, their common anceſtor, was born, they ſay that he was round like a ball, but that his mother, with great care, drew out his limbs, and having at length moulded him into his preſent form, ſhe called him EOTHE, which ſignifies *finiſhed*. That being prompted by the univerſal inſtinct to propagate his kind, and being able to find no female but his mother, he begot upon her a daughter, and upon the daughter other daughters for ſeveral generations, before there was a ſon: a ſon, however, being at length born, he, by the aſſiſtance of his ſiſters, peopled the world.

Beſides

Beſides their daughter Tettowmatatayo, the firſt pro- 1769.
nitors of nature had a ſon, whom they called TANE.
aroataihetoomoo, the Supreme Deity, they emphati-
lly ſtyle the Cauſer of Earthquakes; but their prayers
e more generally addreſſed to Tane, whom they ſup-
ſe to take a greater part in the affairs of mankind.
The ſubordinate deities, or Eatuas, which are nu-
rous, are of both ſexes; the male are worſhipped by
e men, and the female by the women: and each have
orais to which the other ſex are not admitted, though
y have alſo Morais common to both. Men perform
e office of prieſt to both ſexes, but each ſex has its
eſts, for thoſe who officiate for one ſex, do not offi-
te for the other.
They believe the immortality of the ſoul, at leaſt its
ſtence in a ſeparate ſtate; and that there are two ſi-
tions of different degrees of happineſs, ſomewhat
logous to our heaven and hell: the ſuperior ſituation
y call Tavirua l'erai, the other Tiahoboo. They do
, however, conſider them as places of reward and
iſhment, but as receptacles for different claſſes; the
, for their chiefs and principal people, the other for
ſe of inferior rank, for they do not ſuppoſe that their
ions here in the leaſt influence their future ſtate, or
eed that they come under the cognizance of their
ies at all. Their religion, therefore, if it has no in-
nce upon their morals, is at leaſt diſintereſted; and
ir expreſſions of adoration and reverence, whether
words or actions, ariſe only from an humble ſenſe of
r own inferiority, and the ineffable excellence of
ne perfection.
The character of the prieſt or Tahowa is hereditary:
claſs is numerous, and conſiſts of all ranks of people;
chief, however, is generally the younger brother of
od family, and is reſpected in a degree next to their
gs. Of the little knowledge that is poſſeſſed in this
ntry, the prieſts have the greateſt ſhare; but it con-
principally in an acquaintance with the names and
s of the different Eatuas or ſubordinate divinities,
the opinions concerning the origin of things, which
e been traditionally preſerved among the order in
ched ſentences, of which ſome will repeat an in-

1769. credible number, tho' but very few of the words that are uſed in their common dialect occur in them.

The prieſts, however, are ſuperior to the reſt of the people in the knowledge of navigation and aſtronomy, and indeed the name Tahowa ſignifies nothing more than a man of knowledge. As there are prieſts of every claſs, they officiate only among that claſs to which they belong: the prieſt of the inferior claſs is never called upon by thoſe of ſuperior rank, nor will the prieſt of the ſuperior rank officiate for any of the inferior claſs.

Marriage in this iſland, as appeared to us, is nothing more than an agreement between the man and woman with which the prieſt has no concern. Where it is contracted it appears to be pretty well kept, tho' ſometimes the parties ſeparate by mutual conſent, and in that caſe divorce takes place with as little trouble as the marriage.

But tho' the prieſthood has laid the people under no tax for a nuptial benediction, there are two operations which it has appropriated, and from which it derives conſiderable advantages. One is tattowing, and the other circumciſion, tho' neither of them have any connection with religion. The tattowing has been deſcribed already. Circumciſion has been adopted merely from motives of cleanlineſs; it cannot indeed properly be called circumciſion, becauſe the prepuce is not mutilated by a circular wound, but only ſlit thro' the upper part, to prevent its contracting over the glans. As neither of theſe can be performed by any but a prieſt, and as to be without either is the greateſt diſgrace, they may be conſidered as a claim to ſurplice fees, like our marriages and chriſtenings which are chearfully and liberally paid, not according to any ſettled ſtipend, but the rank and ability of the parties or their friends.

The Morai, as has been already obſerved, is at once a burying ground and a place of worſhip, and in this particular our churches too much reſemble it. The Indian, however, approaches his Morai with a reverence and humility that diſgraces the Chriſtian, not because he holds any thing ſacred that is there, but becauſe he there worſhips an inviſible divinity, from whom, tho' he neither hopes for reward, nor fears puniſhment, his hand, he always expreſſes the profoundeſt hom-

nd moſt humble adoration. I have already given a very particular deſcription both of the Morais and the ltars that are placed near them. When an Indian is bout to worſhip at the Morai, or brings his offering o the altar, he always uncovers his body to the waiſt, nd his looks and attitude are ſuch as ſufficiently expreſs correſponding diſpoſition of mind. 1769.

It did not appear to us that theſe people are, in any nſtance, guilty of idolatry; at leaſt they do not worſhip ny thing that is the work of their hands, nor any viſible art of the creation. This iſland, indeed, and the reſt hat lie near it, have a particular bird, ſome a heron, nd others a king's-fiſher, to which they pay a peculiar gard, and concerning which they have ſome ſuperſti- ous notions, with reſpect to good and bad fortune, as e have of the ſwallow and robin-red-breaſt, giving em the name of EATUA, and by no means killing or oleſting them; yet they never addreſs a petition to em, or approach them with any act of adoration.

Tho' I dare not aſſert that theſe people, to whom the t of writing, and conſequently the recording of laws, e utterly unknown, live under a regular form of go- rnment; yet a ſubordination is eſtabliſhed among em, that greatly reſembles the early ſtate of every tion in Europe under the feudal ſyſtem, which ſecured perty to the moſt licentious exceſs to a few, and en- ſled the moſt abject ſlavery upon the reſt. Government.

Their orders are, Earee rahie, which anſwers to the ng; Earee, baron; Manahouni, vaſſal; and Toutou, llain. The Earee rahie, of which there are two in is iſland, one being the ſovereign of each of the pe- nſulas of which it conſiſts, is treated with great re- ct by all ranks, but it did not appear to us to be in- ſted with ſo much power as was exerciſed by the rees in their own diſtricts; nor indeed did we, as I ve before obſerved, once ſee the ſovereign of Obe- noo, while we were in the iſland. The Earees are rds of one or more of the diſtricts into which each the peninſulas is divided, of which there may be out an hundred in the whole iſland; and they par- out their territories to the Manahounies, who cul- ate each his part which he holds under the baron.

1769. The loweſt claſs, called Toutous, ſeem to be nearly under the ſame circumſtances as the villains in feudal governments; theſe do all the laborious work, they cultivate the land under the Manahounies, who are only nominal cultivators for the lord; they fetch wood and water, and, under the direction of the miſtreſs of the family, dreſs the victuals; they alſo catch the fiſh.

Each of the Earees keeps a kind of court, and has a great number of attendants, chiefly the younger brothers of their own tribe; and among thoſe ſome hold particular offices, but of what nature exactly we could not tell. One was called the Eowa no l'Earee, and another the Whanno no l'Earee, and theſe were frequently diſpatched to us with meſſages. Of all the courts of theſe Earees, that of Tootahah was the moſt ſplendid, as indeed might reaſonably be expected, becauſe he adminiſtered the government for Outou, his nephew, who was Earee rahie of Obereonoo, and lived upon his eſtate. The child of the baron, or Earee, as well as of the ſovereign, or Earee rahie, ſucceeds to the title and honours of the father, as ſoon as it is born; ſo that a baron, who was yeſterday called Earee, and was approached with the ceremony of lowering the garments, ſo as to uncover the upper part of the body, is to-day, if his wife was laſt night delivered of a child, reduced to the rank of a private man, all marks of reſpect being transferred to the child, if it is ſuffered to live, though the father ſtill continues poſſeſſor and adminiſtrator of his eſtate: probably this cuſtom has its ſhare, among other inducements, in forming the ſocieties called Arreoy.

War. If a general attack happens to be made upon the iſland, every diſtrict, under the command of an Earee, is obliged to furniſh its proportion of ſoldiers for the common defence. The number furniſhed by the principal diſtricts, which Tupia recollected, when added together, amounted, as I have obſerved before, to 6680.

Upon ſuch occaſions, the united force of the whole iſland is commanded in chief by the Earee rahie. Private differences between two Earees, are decided by their

their own people, without at all disturbing the general tranquillity. 1769.

Their weapons are slings, which they use with great dexterity; pikes headed with the stings of sting-rays, and clubs of about six or seven feet long, made of a very hard heavy wood. Thus armed, they are said to fight with great obstinacy, which is the more likely to be true, as it is certain that they give no quarter to either man, woman, or child, who is so unfortunate as to fall into their hands during the battle, or for some hours afterwards, till their passion, which is always violent, though not lasting, has subsided. Weapons.

The Earee rahie of Obereonoo, while we were here, was in perfect amity with the Earee rahie of Tiarreboo, the other peninsula, tho' he took to himself the title of king of the whole island; this, however, produced no more jealousy in the other sovereign, than the title of King of France, assumed by our Sovereign does in his Most Christian Majesty.

In a government so rude, it cannot be expected that distributive justice should be regularly administered; and indeed where there is so little opposition of interest, in consequence of the facility with which every appetite and passion is gratified, there can be but few crimes. There is nothing like money, the common medium by which every want and every wish is supposed to be gratified, by those who do not possess it; where is no apparently permanent good, which either fraud or force can unlawfully obtain; and when all the crimes that are committed by the inhabitants of civilized countries to get money, are set out of the account, not many will remain; add to this, that where the commerce with women is restrained by no law, men will seldom be under any temptation to commit adultery, especially as one woman is always less preferred to another, where they are less distinguished by personal decorations, and the adventitious circumstances which are produced by the varieties of art, and the refinements of sentiment. That they are thieves is true; but as among these people no man can be much injured or benefitted by theft, it is not necessary to restrain it by such punishments, as in other countries

1769. are abſolutely neceſſary to the very exiſtence of civil ſociety. Tupia, however, tells us, that adultery is ſometimes committed as well as theft. In all caſes where an injury has been committed, the puniſhment of the offender lies with the ſufferer. Adultery, if the parties are caught in the fact, is ſometimes puniſhed with death, in the firſt ardour of reſentment; but, without circumſtances of immediate provocation, the female ſinner ſeldom ſuffers more than a beating. As puniſhment, however, is enforced by no law, nor taken into the hand of any magiſtrate, it is not often inflicted, unleſs the injured party is the ſtrongeſt; tho' the chiefs do ſometimes puniſh their immediate dependents, for faults committed againſt each other, and even the dependents of others, if they are accuſed of any offence committed in their diſtrict.

Having now given the beſt deſcription that I can of the iſland in its preſent ſtate, and of the people, with their cuſtoms and manners, language and arts, I ſhall only add a few general obſervations, which may be of uſe to future navigators, if any of the ſhips of Great Britain ſhould receive orders to viſit it. As it produces nothing that appears to be convertible into an article of trade, and can be uſeful only by affording refreſhments to ſhipping in their paſſage thro' theſe ſeas, it might be made to anſwer this purpoſe in a much greater degree, by tranſporting thither ſheep, goats, and horned cattle, with European garden-ſtuff, and other uſeful vegetables, which there is the greateſt reaſon to ſuppoſe will flouriſh in ſo fine a climate, and ſo rich a ſoil.

Though this and the neighbouring iſlands lie within the tropic of Capricorn, yet the heat is not troubleſome, nor did the winds blow conſtantly from the eaſt. We had frequently a freſh gale from the S. W. for two or three days, and ſometimes, though very ſeldom, from the N. W. Tupia reported, that ſouth-weſterly winds prevail in October, November, and December, and we have no doubt of the fact. When the winds are variable, they are always accompanied by a ſwell from the S. W. or W. S. W. there is alſo a ſwell from the ſame points when it is calm, and the atmoſphere loaded with clouds, which is a ſure indi-

cation

tion that the winds are variable, or weſterly out at 1769.
; for with the ſettled trade-wind the weather is
ar.

The meeting with weſterly winds, within the gene- limits of the eaſtern trade, has induced ſome navi- tors to ſuppoſe that they were near ſome large tract land, of which, however, I think they are no in- cation.

It has been found, both by us and the Dolphin, that e trade-wind, in theſe parts, does not extend farther the ſouth than twenty degrees, beyond which, we nerally found a gale from the weſtward; and it is ſonable to ſuppoſe, that when theſe winds blow ong they will drive back the eaſterly wind, and con- quently incroach upon the limits within which they nſtantly blow, and thus neceſſarily produce variable nds, as either happens to prevail, and a ſouth weſt- ly ſwell. This ſuppoſition is the more probable, as is well known that the trade-winds blow but faintly r ſome diſtance within their limits, and therefore may e more eaſily ſtopped or repelled by a wind in the con- ary direction: it is alſo well known, that the limits the trade winds vary, not only at different ſeaſons the year, but ſometimes at the ſame ſeaſon in differ- t years.

There is therefore no reaſon to ſuppoſe, that ſouth eſterly winds, within theſe limits, are cauſed by the cinity of large tracts of land, eſpecially as they are ways accompanied with a large ſwell, in the ſame di- ction in which they blow; and we find a much reater ſurf beating upon the ſhores of the ſouth-weſt de of the iſlands that are ſituated juſt within the li- its of the trade-wind, than upon any other part of hem.

The tides about theſe iſlands are perhaps as inconſi- erable as in any part of the world. A ſouth or S. by W. moon makes high water in the bay of Matavai, at Otaheite; but the water very ſeldom riſes perpendicu- arly above ten or twelve inches.

The variation of the compaſs I found to be 4° 46′ aſterly, this being the reſult of a great number of rials made with four of Dr. Knight's needles, adapt-

1769. ed to azimuth compaſſes. Theſe compaſſes I thought the beſt that could be produced, yet, when applied to the meridian line, I found them to differ, not only one from another, ſometimes a degree and an half, but the ſame needle, half a degree from itſelf, in different trials made on the ſame day; and I do not remember that I have ever found two needles which exactly agreed at the ſame time and place, though I have often found the ſame needle agree with itſelf, in ſeveral trials made one after the other. This imperfection of the needle, however, is of no conſequence to navigation, as the variation can always be found to a degree of accuracy more than ſufficient for all nautical purpoſes.

CHAP. VII.

A Deſcription of ſeveral other Iſlands in the Neighbourhood of Otaheite, with various Incidents; a dramatic Entertainment; and many Particulars relative to the Cuſtoms and Manners of the Inhabitants.

July. Thurſ. 13. AFTER parting with our friends, we made an eaſy ſail, with gentle breezes and clear weather, and were informed by Tupia, that four of the neighbouring iſlands, which he diſtinguiſhed by the names of HUAHEINE, ULIETEA, OTAHA, and BOLABOLA, lay at the diſtance of between one and two days ſail from Otaheite; and that hogs, fowls, and other refreſhments, with which we had of late been but ſparingly ſupplied, were there to be procured in great plenty; but having diſcovered, from the hills of Otaheite, an iſland lying to the northward, which he called TETHUROA, I determined firſt to ſtand that way, to take a nearer view of it. It lies N. $\frac{1}{2}$ W. diſtant eight leagues from the northern extremity of Otaheite, upon which we had obſerved the tranſit, and to which we had, for that reaſon, given the name of POINT VENUS. We found it to be a ſmall low iſland, and were told by Tupia, that it had no ſettled inhabitants, but was occaſionally viſited by the inhabitants of Otaheite,

eite, who ſometimes went thither for a few days to ſh; we therefore determined to ſpend no more time a farther examination of it, but to go in ſearch of uaheine and Ulietea, which he deſcribed to be well eopled, and as large as Otaheite. 1769. July.

At ſix o'clock in the morning of the 14th, the weſter- Friday 14.
oſt part of EIMEO, or York Iſland, bore S. E. ½ S. nd the body of Otaheite E. ½ S. At noon, the body York Iſland bore E. by S. ½ S. and Port-Royal bay, Otaheite, S. 70° 45′ E. diſtant 61 miles, and an and which we took to be Saunders's Iſland, called by e natives TAPOAMANAO, bore S. S. W. We alſo w land bearing N. W. ½ N. which Tupia ſaid was uaheine.

On the 15th, it was hazy, with light breezes and Saturd. 15.
lms ſucceeding each other, ſo that we could ſee no nd, and made but little way. Our Indian, Tupia, ten prayed for a wind to his god, Tane, and as of- n boaſted of his ſucceſs, which indeed he took a ry effectual method to ſecure; for he never began addreſs to Tane, till he ſaw a breeze ſo near that knew it muſt reach the ſhip before his oraiſon was ll over.

On the 16th, we had a gentle breeze; and in the Sunday 16.
rning about eight o'clock, being cloſe in with the rth-weſt part of the iſland Huaheine, we ſounded, Huaheine.
had no bottom with 80 fathom. Some canoes y ſoon came off; but the people ſeemed afraid, kept at a diſtance till they diſcovered Tupia, and n they ventured nearer. In one of the canoes, that me up to the ſhip's ſide, was the king of the iſland his wife. Upon aſſurances of friendſhip, fre- ently and earneſtly repeated, their majeſties and ne others came on board. At firſt they were ſtruck h aſtoniſhment, and wondered at every thing that s ſhewn them, yet they made no enquiries; and, ming to be ſatisfied with what was offered to their ice, they made no ſearch after other objects of cu- ſity, with which, it was natural to ſuppoſe, a lding of ſuch novelty and magnitude as the ſhip ſt abound. After ſome time they became more fa- liar. I was given to underſtand, that the name the king was OREE; and he propoſed, as a mark of

1769. July. of amity, that we ſhould exchange names. To this I readily conſented; and he was Cookee, for ſo he pronounced my name, and I was Oree, for the reſt of the time we were together. We found theſe people to be very nearly the ſame with thoſe of Otaheite, in perſon, dreſs, language, and every other circumſtance, except, if Tupia might be believed, that they would not ſteal.

Soon after dinner we came to an anchor, in a ſmall but excellent harbour on the weſt ſide of the iſland, which the natives call OWHAREE, in eighteen fathom water, clear ground, and ſecure from all winds. I went immediately a-ſhore, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Mr. Monkhouſe, Tupia, King Cookee, and ſome other of the natives, who had been on board ever ſince the morning. The moment we landed, Tupia ſtripped himſelf as low as the waiſt, and deſired Mr. Monkhouſe to do the ſame; he then ſat down before a great number of the natives, who were collected together in a large houſe, or ſhed; for here, as well as at Otaheite, a houſe conſiſts only of a roof ſupported upon poles; the reſt of us, by his deſire, ſtanding behind. He then began a ſpeech, or prayer, which laſted about a quarter of an hour, the king, who ſtood over-againſt him, every now and then anſwering, in what appeared to be ſet reſponſes. In the courſe of this harangue, he delivered at different times two handkerchiefs, a black ſilk neckcloth, ſome beads, two ſmall bunches of feathers, and ſome plantains, as preſents to their Eatua, or God. In return for theſe, he received for our Eatua, a hog, ſome young plantains, and two ſmall bunches of feathers, which he ordered to be carried on board the ſhip. After theſe ceremonies, which were ſuppoſed to be the ratification of a treaty between us, every one was diſmiſſed, to go whither he pleaſed; and Tupia immediately repaired to offer his oblations at one of the Morais.

Mond 17. The next morning, we went on ſhore again, and walked up the hills, where the productions were exactly the ſame as thoſe of Otaheite, except that the rocks and clay appeared to be more burnt. The houſes were

re neat, and the boat-houſes remarkably large; one 1769. July.
t we meaſured was fifty paces long, ten broad, and
enty-four feet high; the whole formed a pointed
h, like thoſe of our old cathedrals, which was ſup-
rted on one ſide by twenty-ſix, and on the other by
rty pillars, or rather poſts, about two feet high, and
thick, upon moſt of which were rudely carved the
ds of men, and ſeveral fanciful devices, not altoge-
r unlike thoſe which we ſometimes ſee printed from
oden blocks, at the beginning and end of old books.
e plains, or flat part of the country, abounded in
ad-fruit, and cocoa-nut trees; in ſome places, how-
r, there were ſalt ſwamps and lagoons, which would
duce neither.

We went again a-ſhore on the 18th, and would have Tueſd. 18.
en the advantage of Tupia's company, in our per-
bulation; but he was too much engaged with his
nds: we took however his boy, whoſe name was
YETO, and Mr. Banks went to take a farther view
what had much engaged his attention before; it was
nd of cheſt or ark, the lid of which was nicely ſew-
on, and thatched very neatly with palm-nut leaves:
was fixed upon two poles, and ſupported on little
nes of wood, very neatly carved; the uſe of the
s ſeemed to be to remove it from place to place, in
manner of our ſedan chairs: in one end of it was
quare hole, in the middle of which was a ring
ching the ſides, and leaving the angles open ſo as to
n a round hole within a ſquare one. The firſt time
Banks ſaw this coffer, the aperture at the end
ſtopped with a piece of cloth, which, leſt he
uld give offence, he left untouched; probably there
then ſomething within, but now the cloth was
en away, and, upon looking into it, it was found
pty. The general reſemblance between this repo-
y and the Ark of the Lord among the Jews is re-
kable; but it is ſtill more remarkable, that upon
uiring of the boy what it was called, he ſaid,
harre no Eatua, the houſe of the God: he could how-
r give no account of its ſignification or uſe. We had
menced a kind of trade with the natives, but it
t on ſlowly; for when any thing was offered, not
of them would take it upon his own judgment,
but

1769. July. but collected the opinions of twenty or thirty people, which could not be done without great loſs of time. We got, however, eleven pigs, and determined to try for more the next day.

Wedneſ. 19. The next day, therefore, we brought out ſome hatchets, for which we hoped we ſhould have had no occaſion, upon an iſland which no European had ever viſited before. Theſe procured us three very large hogs; and as we propoſed to ſail in the afternoon, King Oree and ſeveral others came on board to take their leave. To the King I gave a ſmall plate of pewter, on which was ſtamped this inſcription, "His Britannic Majeſty's ſhip, Endeavour, Lieutenant Cook, Commander, 16th July, 1769, Huaheine." I gave him alſo ſome medals or counters, reſembling the coin of England, ſtruck in the year 1761, with ſome other preſents; and he promiſed that with none of them, particularly the plate, he would ever part. I thought it as laſting a teſtimony of our having firſt diſcovered this iſland, as any we could leave behind; and having diſmiſſed our viſitors well ſatisfied, and in great good humour, we ſet ſail about half an hour after two in the afternoon.

The iſland of Huaheine, or Huahene, is ſituated in the latitude of 16° 43′ S. and longitude 150° 52′ W. from Greenwich; it is diſtant from Otaheite about thirty-one leagues, in the direction of N. 58 W. and is about ſeven leagues in compaſs. Its ſurface is hilly and uneven, and it has a ſafe and commodious harbour. The harbour, which is called by the natives OWALLE or OWHARRE, lies on the weſt ſide, under the northermoſt high land; and within the north end of the reef which lies along that ſide of the iſland, there are two inlets, or openings, by which it may be entered through the reef, about a mile and a half diſtant from each other; the ſouthermoſt is the wideſt, and on the ſouth ſide of it lies a very ſmall ſandy iſland.

Huaheine ſeems to be a month forwarder in its productions than Otaheite, as we found the cocoa-nuts full of kernel, and ſome of the new bread-fruit fit to eat. Of the cocoa-nuts the inhabitants make a food which they call Poe, by mixing them with yams: they ſcrape both fine, and having incorporated the powder they put it into a wooden trough, with a number

ſtones, by which an oily kind of haſty pudding is de, that our people reliſhed very well, eſpecially en it was fried. Mr. Banks found not more than ven or twelve new plants; but he obſerved ſome in- ts, and a ſpecies of ſcorpion which he had not ſeen ore. 1769. July.

The inhabitants ſeem to be larger made, and more t, than thoſe of Otaheite. Mr. Banks meaſured of the men, and found him to be ſix feet three hes and an half high; yet they are ſo lazy, that he ld not perſuade any of them to go up the hills with ; they ſaid, if they were to attempt it, the fatigue ld kill them. The women were very fair, more han thoſe of Otaheite; and in general we thought m more handſome, though none that were equal ome individuals. Both ſexes ſeemed to be leſs ti- , and leſs curious. It has been obſerved, that made no enquiries on board the ſhip; and when fired a gun, they were frighted indeed, but they not fall down, as our friends at Otaheite conſtant- id when we firſt came among them. For this dif- nce, however, we can eaſily account upon other ciples; the people at Huaheine had not ſeen the phin, thoſe at Otaheite had. In one, the report gun was connected with the idea of inſtant de- ction; to the other, there was nothing dreadful in ut the appearance and the ſound, as they had ne- experienced its power of diſpenſing death.

While we were on ſhore, we found that Tupia had mended them beyond their merit, when he ſaid, they would not ſteal; for one of them was detect- n the fact. But when he was ſeized by the hair, reſt, inſtead of running away, as the people at heite would have done, gathered round, and en- red what provocation had been given; but this alſo be accounted for, without giving them credit for r ſuperior courage; they had no experience of the ſequence of European reſentment, which the peo- at Otaheite had in many inſtances purchaſed with . It muſt, however, be acknowledged, to their our, that when they underſtood what had happen- they ſhewed ſtrong ſigns of diſapprobation, and

preſcribed

1769. July. prefcribed a good beating for the thief, which was immediately adminiſtered.

Ulietea. We now made ſail for the iſland of ULIETEA, which lies S. W. by W. diſtant ſeven or eight leagues from Huaheine, and at half an hour after ſix in the evening we were within three leagues of the ſhore, on the eaſtern ſide. We ſtood off and on all night, and when the day broke the next morning, we ſtood in for

Thurſd. 20 the ſhore. We ſoon after diſcovered an opening in the reef which lies before the iſland, within which Tupia told us, there was a good harbour. I did not however, implicitly take his word, but ſent the maſter out in the pinnace to examine it: he ſoon made the ſignal for the ſhip to follow; we accordingly ſtood in, and anchored in two and twenty fathom, with ſoft ground.

The natives ſoon came off to us in two canoes, each of which brought a woman and a pig. The woman, we ſuppoſed, was a mark of confidence, and the pig was a preſent; we received both with proper acknowledgments, and complimented each of the ladies with a ſpike nail and ſome beads, much to their ſatisfaction. We were told by Tupia, who had always expreſſed much fear of the men of Bolabola, that they had made a conqueſt of this iſland, and that, if we remained here, they would certainly come down to-morrow and fight us. We determined, therefore, to go on ſhore without delay, while the day was our own.

I landed, in company with Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and the other gentlemen, Tupia being alſo of the party. He introduced us, by repeating the ceremonies which he had performed at Huaheine; after which I hoiſted an Engliſh Jack, and took poſſeſſion of this and the three neighbouring iſlands, Huaheine, Otaha, and Bolabola, which were all in ſight, in the name of his Britannic Majeſty. After this, we took a walk to a great Morai, called TAPODEBOATEA. We found it very different from thoſe of Otaheite, for it conſiſted only of four walls, about eight feet high, of coral ſtones, ſome of which were of an immenſe ſize, inclo-ſing an area of about five and twenty yards ſquare, which was filled up with ſmaller ſtones; upon the top of it many planks were ſet up on end, which were carved

rved in their whole length; at a little diſtance we und an altar, or Ewhatta, upon which lay the laſt lation or ſacrifice, a hog of about eighty pounds eight, which had been offered whole, and very nice- roaſted. Here were alſo four or five Ewharre-no- tua, or houſes of God, to which carriage poles were ted, like that which we had ſeen at Huaheine. One theſe Mr. Banks examined, by putting his hand into and found a parcel about five feet long and one ck, wrapped up in mats; he broke a way through eral of theſe mats with his fingers, but at length me to one which was made of the fibres of the cocoa- , ſo firmly plaited together that he found it impoſſi- to tear it, and therefore was forced to deſiſt: eſpe- lly as he perceived, that what he had done already e great offence to our new friends. From hence we nt to a long houſe, not far diſtant, where, among s of cloth and ſeveral other things, we ſaw the mo- of a canoe, about three feet long, to which were eight human jaw-bones: we had already learned t theſe, like ſcalps among the Indians of North Ame- , were trophies of war. Tupia affirmed, that they e the jaw-bones of the natives of this iſland; if ſo, y might have been hung up, with the model of a oe, as a ſymbol of invaſion, by the warriors of Bola- , as a memorial of their conqueſt.

1769. July.

Night now came on apace, but Mr. Banks and Dr. nder continued their walk along the ſhore, and at tle diſtance ſaw another Ewharre-no-Eatua, and a of the fig kind, the ſame as that which Mr. Green ſeen at Otaheite, in great perfection; the trunk, ather congeries of the roots of which was forty-two es in circumference.

On the 21ſt, having diſpatched the maſter in the g-boat, to examine the coaſt of the ſouth part of the nd, and one of the mates in the yawl, to ſound the bour where the ſhip lay, I went myſelf in the pin- e, to ſurvey that part of the iſland which lies to the h. Mr. Banks and the gentlemen were again on re, trading with the natives, and examining the ducts and curioſities of the country; they ſaw no- g, however, worthy notice, but ſome more jaw-

Friday 21.

bones,

1769. July. bones, of which they made no doubt but that the account they had heard was true.

Saturd. 22. Sunday 23 Monday 24. On the 22d and 23d, having ſtrong gales and hazy weather, I did not think it ſafe to put to ſea; but on the 24th, though the wind was ſtill variable, I got under ſail, and plied to the northward within the reef with a view to go out at a wider opening than that by which I had entered: in doing this, however, I was unexpectedly in the moſt imminent danger of ſtriking on the rock; the maſter, whom I had ordered to keep continually ſounding in the chains, ſuddenly called out "two fathom." This alarmed me; for though I knew the ſhip drew at leaſt fourteen feet, and that therefore it was impoſſible ſuch a ſhoal ſhould be under her keel, yet the maſter was either miſtaken, or ſhe went along the edge of a coral rock, many of which, in the neighbourhood of theſe iſlands, are as ſteep as a wall.

This harbour or bay is called by the natives Oopoa, and, taken in its greateſt extent, it is capable of holding any number of ſhipping. It extends almoſt the whole length of the eaſt ſide of the iſland, and is defended from the ſea by the reef of coral rocks. The ſouthermoſt opening of this reef or channel into the harbour, by which we entered, is little more than a cable's length wide; it lies off the eaſtermoſt point of the iſland, and may be known by another ſmall wooded iſland, which lies a little to the ſouth-eaſt of it, called by the people here OATARA. Between three and four miles north-weſt from this iſland lie two other iſlets in the ſame direction as the reef, of which they are part, called OPURURU and TAMOU; between them lies the other channel into the harbour, through which I went out, and which is a full quarter of a mile wide. Still farther to the north-weſt are ſome other ſmall iſlands, near which, I am told, there is another ſmall channel into the harbour: but this I knew only by report.

The principal refreſhments that are to be procured at this part of the iſland are plantains, cocoa-nuts, yams, hogs, and fowls; the hogs and fowls, however, are ſcarce, and the country, where we ſaw it, is neither ſo populous nor ſo rich in produce as Otaheite

even Huaheine. Wood and water may alſo be pro- 1769. July.
red here, but the water cannot conveniently be
t at.

We were now again at ſea, without having received
y interruption from the hoſtile inhabitants of Bola-
a, whom, notwithſtanding the fears of Tupia, we
ended to viſit. At four o'clock in the afternoon of Tueſd. 25.
25th, we were within a league of Otaha, which
re N. 77 W. To the northward of the ſouth end
that iſland, on the eaſt ſide of it, and ſomething
re than a mile from the ſhore, lie two ſmall iſlands,
led TOAHOUTU and WHENNUAIA, between which, Toahoutu.
pia ſays, there is a channel into a very good har- When-
ur, which lies within the reef, and appearances con- nuaia.
med his report.

As I diſcovered a broad channel between Otaha and
labola, I determined rather to go through it, than
to the northward of all; but the wind being right
ead, I got no ground.

Between five and ſix in the evening of the 26th, as Wedn. 26.
as ſtanding to the northward, I diſcovered a ſmall
iſland lying N. by W. or N. N. W. diſtant four or
leagues from Bolabola. We were told by Tupia,
t the name of this iſland is TUBAI, that it produces Tubai.
hing but cocoa-nuts, and is inhabited only by three
nilies; though it is viſited by the inhabitants of the
hbouring iſlands, who reſort thither to catch fiſh,
th which the coaſt abounds.

On the 27th, about noon, the Peak of Bolabola bore Thurſd. 27.
25 W. and the north end of Otaha N. 80 W. di-
nt three leagues. The wind continued contrary all
s day, and the night following. On the 28th, at Friday 28.
in the morning, we were near the entrance of the
bour on the eaſt ſide of OTAHA, which has been Otaha.
t mentioned; and finding that it might be examin-
without loſing time, I ſent away the maſter in the
g-boat, with orders to ſound it; and, if the wind
not ſhift in our favour, to land upon the iſland,
d traffic with the natives for ſuch refreſhments as
re to be had. In this boat went Mr. Banks and Dr.
lander, who landed upon the iſland, and before night
rchaſed three hogs, twenty-one fowls, and as many
ns and plantains as the boat would hold. Plantains

1769. July. we thought a more uſeful refreſhment even than por
for they were boiled, and ſerved to the ſhip's compa
as bread; and were now the more acceptable, as o
bread was ſo full of vermin, that notwithſtanding a
poſſible care, we had ſometimes twenty of them in o
mouths at a time, every one of which taſted as hot a
muſtard. The iſland ſeemed to be more barren tha
Ulietea, but the produce was of the ſame kind. Th
people alſo exactly reſembled thoſe we had ſeen at th
other iſlands; they were not numerous, but they flock
ed about the boat wherever ſhe went, from all qua
ters, bringing with them whatever they had to ſe
They paid the ſtrangers, of whom they had receiv
an account from Tupia, the ſame compliment whic
they uſed towards their own Kings, uncovering the
ſhoulders, and wrapping their garments round the
breaſts; and were ſo ſolicitous to prevent its being n
glected by any of their people, that a man was ſe
with them, who called out to every one he met, telli
him what they were, and what he was to do.

In the mean time, I kept plying off and on, wai
ing for the boat's return. At half an hour after fi
not ſeeing any thing of her, I fired a gun, and after
was dark hoiſted a light. At half an hour after eig
we heard the report of a muſquet, which we anſwer
with a gun, and ſoon after the boat came on boar
The maſter reported, that the harbour was ſafe an
commodious, with good anchorage from twenty-fi
feet to ſixteen fathom water, clear ground.

As ſoon as the boat was hoiſted in, I made ſail t
the northward, and at eight o'clock in the morning o
Saturd. 29. the 29th, we were cloſe under the Peak of Bolabol
which was high, rude, and craggy. As the iſland tha
altogether inacceſſible in this part, and we found it im
poſſible to weather it, we tacked and ſtood off, the
tacked again, and after many trips did not weather th
Sunday 30. ſouth end of it till twelve o'clock at night. At eigh
o'clock the next morning we diſcovered an iſland, which
bore from us N. 63° W. diſtant about eight leagues: a
the ſame time the Peak of Bolabola bore N. ½ E. diſtan
three or four leagues. This iſland Tupia called Ma
Maurua. RUA, and ſaid that it was ſmall, wholly ſurrounded
by a reef, and without any harbour for ſhipping; but
inhabited,

inhabited, and bearing the ſame produce as the neighbouring iſlands. The middle of it riſes in a high round hill, that may be ſeen at the diſtance of ten leagues. 1769. July.

When we were off Bolabola we ſaw but few people on the ſhore, and were told by Tupia, that many of the inhabitants were gone to Ulietea. In the afternoon we found ourſelves nearly the length of the ſouth end of Ulietea, and to windward of ſome harbours that lay on the weſt ſide of this iſland. Into one of theſe harbours, though we had before been aſhore on the other ſide of the iſland, I intended to put, in order to ſtop a leak which we had ſprung in the powder-room, and to take in more ballaſt, as I found the ſhip too light to carry ſail upon a wind. As the wind was right againſt us, we plied off one of the harbours, and about three o'clock in the afternoon, on the 1ſt of Auguſt, we came to an anchor in the entrance of the channel leading into it, in fourteen fathom water, being prevented from working in by a tide which ſet very ſtrong out. We then carried out the kedge-anchor, in order to warp into the harbour; but when this was done we could not trip the bower-anchor with all the purchaſe we could make; we were therefore obliged to lie ſtill all night, and in the morning, when the tide turned, the ſhip going over the anchor, it tripped of itſelf, and we warped the ſhip into a proper birth with eaſe, and moored in twenty-eight fathom, with a ſandy bottom. While this was doing, many of the natives came off to us with hogs, fowls, and plantains, which they parted with at an eaſy rate. Auguſt. Tueſday 1. Wedneſd. 2.

When the ſhip was ſecured, I went on ſhore to look for a proper place to get ballaſt and water, both which I found in a very convenient ſituation.

This day Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander ſpent on ſhore very much to their ſatisfaction; every body ſeemed to fear and reſpect them, placing in them, at the ſame time, the utmoſt confidence; behaving as if conſcious that they poſſeſſed the power of doing them miſchiefs without any propenſity to make uſe of it. Men, women, and children crouded round them, and followed them wherever they went; but none of them were guilty of the leaſt incivility; on the contrary, whenever

1769. August. ever there happened to be dirt or water in the way, the men vied with each other to carry them over on their backs. They were conducted to the houſes of the principal people, and were received in a manner altogether new: the people who followed them while they were on their way, ruſhed forward as ſoon as they came to a houſe, and went haſtily in before them, leaving, however, a lane ſufficiently wide for them to paſs. When they entered, they found thoſe who had preceded them ranged on each ſide of a long mat, which was ſpread upon the ground, and at the farther end of which ſat the family. In the firſt houſe they entered they found ſome very young women, or children, dreſſed with the utmoſt neatneſs, who kept their ſtation expecting the ſtrangers to come up to them and make them preſents, which they did with the greateſt pleaſure; for prettier children or better dreſſed they had never ſeen. One of them was a girl about ſix years old; her gown, or upper garment, was red, a large quantity of plaited hair was wound round her head the ornament to which they give the name of Tamou and which they value more than any thing they poſſeſs She ſat at the upper end of a mat thirty feet long, upon which none of the ſpectators preſumed to ſet a foot notwithſtanding the croud; and ſhe leaned upon the arm of a well-looking woman about thirty, who was probably her nurſe. Our gentlemen walked up to her and, as ſoon as they approached, ſhe ſtretched out her hand to receive the beads which they offered, and no princeſs in Europe could have done it with better grace.

The people were ſo much gratified by the preſents which were made to theſe girls, that when Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander returned, they ſeemed attentive to nothing but how to oblige them; and in one of the houſes they were, by order of the maſter, entertained with a dance, different from any that they had ſeen. It was performed by one man, who put upon his head a large cylindrical piece of wicker-work, or baſket about four feet long, and eight inches in diameter, which was faced with feathers, placed perpendicularly, with the tops bending forwards, and edged round with Shark's teeth, and the tail feathers of the tropic bird

birds: when he had put on this head-dreſs, which is called a Whow, he began to dance, moving ſlowly, and often turning his head, ſo as that the top of his high wicker cap deſcribed a circle, and ſometimes throwing it ſo near the faces of the ſpectators as to make them ſtart back; this was held among them as a very good joke, and never failed to produce a peal of laughter, eſpecially when it was played off upon one of the ſtrangers. 1769. Auguſt.

On the 3d, we went along the ſhore to the northward, which was in a direction oppoſite to that of the route Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander had taken the day before, with a deſign to purchaſe ſtock, which we always found the people more ready to part with, and at a more eaſy price, at their houſes than at the market. In the courſe of our walk we met with a company of dancers, who detained us two hours, and during all that time afforded us great entertainment. The company conſiſted of two women dancers, and ſix men, with three drums; we were informed by Tupia, that they were ſome of the moſt conſiderable people of the iſland, and that though they were continually going from place to place, they did not, like the little ſtrolling companies of Otaheite, take any gratuity from the ſpectators. The women had upon their heads a conſiderable quantity of Tamou, or plaited hair, which was brought ſeveral times round the head, and adorned in many parts with the flowers of the cape jeſſamine, which were ſtuck in with much taſte, and made a head-dreſs truly elegant. Their necks, ſhoulders, and arms were naked; ſo were their breaſts alſo, as low as the parting of the arm; below that they were covered with black cloth, which ſet cloſe to the body; on the ſide of each breaſt, next the arm, was placed a ſmall plume of black feathers, much in the ſame manner as our ladies now wear their noſegays, or Bouquets; from their hips reſted a quantity of cloth, plaited very full, which reached up to the breaſt, and fell down below into long petticoats, which quite concealed their feet, and which they managed with as much dexterity as our opera dancers could have done; the plaits above the waiſt were brown and white alternately, the petticoats below were all white. Thurſd. 3.

1769. August. In this dreſs they advanced ſideways in a meaſured ſtep, keeping excellent time to the drums, which beat briſkly and loud; ſoon after they began to ſhake their hips, giving the folds of cloth that lay upon them a very quick motion, which was in ſome degree continued through the whole dance, though the body was thrown into various poſtures, ſometimes ſtanding, ſometimes ſitting, and ſometimes reſting on their knees and elbows, the fingers alſo being moved at the ſame time with a quickneſs ſcarcely to be imagined. Much of the dexterity of the dancers, however, and the entertainment of the ſpectators, conſiſted in the wantonneſs of their attitudes and geſtures, which was, indeed, ſuch as exceeds all deſcription.

One of theſe girls had in her ear three pearls; one of them was very large, but ſo foul that it was of little value: the other two were as big as a middling pea; theſe were clear, and of a good colour and ſhape, though ſpoiled by the drilling. Mr. Banks would fain have purchaſed them, and offered the owner any thing ſhe would aſk for them, but ſhe could not be perſuaded to part with them at any price: he tempted her with the value of four hogs, and whatever elſe ſhe ſhould chuſe, but without ſucceſs; and indeed they ſet a value upon their pearls very nearly equal to what they would fetch among us, except they could be procured before they are drilled.

Between the dances of the women, the men performed a kind of dramatic interlude, in which there was a dialogue as well as dancing; but we were not ſufficiently acquainted with their language to underſtand the ſubject.

Friday 4. On the 4th, ſome of our gentlemen ſaw a much more regular entertainment of the dramatic kind, which was divided into four acts.

Tupia had often told us that he had large poſſeſſions in this iſland, which had been taken away from him by the inhabitants of Bolabola, and he now pointed them out in the very bay where the ſhip was at anchor. Upon our going on ſhore, this was confirmed by the inhabitants, who ſhewed us ſeveral diſtricts or Whennuas, which they acknowledged to be his right.

On

On the 5th, I received a preſent of three hogs, ſome fowls, ſeveral pieces of cloth, the largeſt we had ſeen, being 50 yards long, which they unfolded and diſplayed ſo as to make the greateſt ſhow poſſible; and a conſiderable quantity of plantains, cocoa-nuts, and other refreſhments, from Opoony, the formidable King, or, in the language of the country, Earee rahie of Bolabola, with a meſſage that he was at this time upon the iſland, and that the next day he intended to pay me a viſit. 1769. Auguſt. Satur. 5.

In the mean time Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went upon the hills, accompanied by ſeveral of the Indians, who conducted them, by excellent paths, to ſuch a height, that they plainly ſaw the other ſide of the iſland, and the paſſage through which the ſhip had paſſed the reef between the little iſlands of Opururu and Tamou, when we landed upon it the firſt time. As they were returning, they ſaw the Indians exerciſing themſelves at what they call Erowhaw, which is nothing more than pitching a kind of lance, headed with a hard wood, at a mark: in this amuſement, though they ſeem very fond of it, they do not excel, for not above one in twelve ſtruck the mark, which was the bole of a plantain tree, at about twenty yards diſtance.

On the 6th, we all ſtaid at home, expecting the viſit of the great King, but we were diſappointed; we had, however, much more agreeable company, for he ſent three very pretty girls to demand ſomething in return for his preſent: perhaps he was unwilling to truſt himſelf on board the ſhip, or perhaps he thought his meſſengers would procure a more valuable return for his hogs and poultry than he could himſelf; be that as it may, we did not regret his abſence, nor his meſſengers their viſit. Sunday 6.

In the afternoon, as the great King would not come to us, we determined to go to the great King. As he was lord of the Bolabola men, the conquerors of this, and the terror of all the other iſlands, we expected to ſee a Chief young and vigorous, with an intelligent countenance, and an enterprizing ſpirit: we found, however, a poor feeble wretch, withered and decrepid, half blind with age, and ſo ſluggiſh and ſtupid,

1769. August. that he appeared ſcarcely to have underſtanding enough left to know that it was probable we ſhould be gratified either by hogs or women. He did not receive us ſitting, or with any ſtate or formality, as the other Chiefs had done: we made him our preſent, which he accepted, and gave a hog in return. We had learnt that his principal reſidence was at Otaha; and upon our telling him that we intended to go thither in our boats the next morning, and that we ſhould be glad to have him along with us, he promiſed to be of the party.

Mond. 7. Early in the morning, therefore, I ſet out both with the pinnace and long-boat for Otaha, having ſome of the gentlemen with me, and in our way we called upon Opoony, who was in his canoe, ready to join us. As ſoon as we landed at Otaha, I made him a preſent of an axe, which I thought might induce him to encourage his ſubjects to bring us ſuch proviſion as we wanted; but in this we found ourſelves ſadly diſappointed, for after ſtaying with him till noon, we left him without being able to procure a ſingle article. I then proceeded to the north point of the iſland, in the pinnace, having ſent the long-boat another way. As I went along I picked up half a dozen hogs, as many fowls, and ſome plantains and yams. Having viewed and ſketched the harbour on this ſide of the iſland, I made the beſt of my way back, with the long-boat which joined me ſoon after it was dark; and about ten o'clock at night we got on board the ſhip.

In this excurſion Mr. Banks was not with us; he ſpent the morning on board the ſhip, trading with the natives, who came off in their canoes, for proviſions and curioſities; and in the afternoon he went on ſhore with his draughtſman, to ſketch the dreſſes of the dancers which he had ſeen a day or two before. He found the company exactly the ſame, except that another woman had been added to it: the dancing alſo of the women was the ſame, but the interludes of the men were ſomewhat varied; he ſaw five or ſix performed, which were different from each other, and very much

Tueſ. 8. reſembled the drama of our ſtage dances. The next day he went aſhore again, with Dr. Solander, and they directed

ected their courſe towards the dancing company, 1769. August.
hich, from the time of our ſecond landing, had gra-
ally moved about two leagues in their courſes
nd the iſland. They ſaw more dancing and
re interludes, the interludes ſtill varying from
h other: in one of them the performers, who
re all men, were divided into two parties, which
re diſtinguiſhed from each other by the co-
r of their clothes, one being brown, and the
er white. The brown party repreſented a maſter
d ſervants, and the white party a company of
eves: the maſter gave a baſket of meat to the reſt
his party, with a charge to take care of it: the
ce of the white party conſiſted of ſeveral expedi-
s to ſteal it, and that of the brown party in pre-
ting their ſucceſs. After ſome time, thoſe who had
rge of the baſket placed themſelves round it, upon
ground, and leaning upon it, appeared to go to
ep; the others, improving this opportunity, came
tly upon them, and lifting them up from the baſ-
, carried off their prize: the ſleepers ſoon after
aking, miſſed their baſket, but preſently fell a danc-
, without any farther regarding their loſs; ſo that
dramatic action of this dance was, according to
ſevereſt laws of criticiſm, one, and our lovers of
plicity would here have been gratified with an en-
ainment perfectly ſuited to the chaſtity of their
e.

On the 9th, having ſpent the morning in trading Wedneſd. 6.
h the canoes, we took the opportunity of a breeze,
ich ſprung up at eaſt, and having ſtopped our leak,
got the freſh ſtock which we had purchaſed on
rd, we ſailed out of the harbour. When we were
ng away, Tupia ſtrongly urged me to fire a ſhot
ards Bolabola, poſſibly as a mark of his reſent-
nt, and to ſhew the power of his new allies: in this
ought proper to gratify him, though we were ſeven
gues diſtant.

While we were about theſe iſlands, we expended ve-
little of the ſhip's proviſions, and were plentifully
plied with hogs, fowls, plantains, and yams, which
hoped would have been of great uſe to us in our
courſe

1769. August. courſe to the ſouthward; but the hogs would not eat European grain of any kind, pulſe, or bread-duſt, ſo that we could not preſerve them alive; and the fowls were all very ſoon ſeized with a diſeaſe that affected the head ſo, that they continued to hold it down between their legs till they died: much dependance therefore muſt not be placed in live ſtock taken on board at theſe places, at leaſt not till a diſcovery is made of ſome food that the hogs will eat, and ſome remedy for the diſeaſe of the poultry.

Having been neceſſarily detained at Ulietea ſo long by the carpenters in ſtopping our leak, we determined to give up our deſign of going on ſhore at Bolabola, eſpecially as it appeared to be difficult of acceſs.

To theſe ſix iſlands, Ulietea, Otaha, Bolabola, Huaheine, Tubai, and Maurua, as they lie contiguous to each other, I gave the names of SOCIETY ISLANDS, but did not think it proper to diſtinguiſh them ſeparately by any other names than thoſe by which they were known to the natives. Society Iſlands.

They are ſituated between the latitude of 16° 1' and 16° 55' S. and between the longitude of 150° 17' and 152° W. from the meridian of Greenwich. Ulietea and Otaha lie within about two miles of each other, and are both incloſed within one reef of coral rocks, ſo that there is no paſſage for ſhipping between them. This reef forms ſeveral excellent harbours; the entrances into them, indeed, are but narrow, yet when a ſhip is once in, nothing can hurt her. The harbours on the eaſt ſide have been deſcribed already; and on the weſt ſide of Ulietea, which is the largeſt of the two, there are three. The northermoſt, in which we lay, is called OHAMANENO: the channel leading into it is about a quarter of a mile wide, and lies between two low ſandy iſlands, which are the northermoſt on this ſide; between, or juſt within the two iſlands, there is good anchorage in twenty-eight fathom, ſoft ground. This harbour, though ſmall, is preferable to the others, becauſe it is ſituated in the moſt fertile part of the iſland, and where freſh water is eaſily to be got. The other two harbours lie to the ſouthward of this, and not far from the ſouth end of the iſland: in both of them there is good anchorage, with ten, twelve

fourteen fathom. They are eaſily known by three l woody iſlands at their entrance. The ſouther- of theſe two harbours lies within, and to the hward of the ſouthermoſt of theſe iſlands; and the r lies between the two northermoſt. I was told there were more harbours at the ſouth end of this d, but I did not examine whether the report was 1769. Auguſt.

taha affords two very good harbours, one on the ſide, and the other on the weſt. That on the eaſt s called Ohamene, and has been mentioned alrea- the other is called OHERURUA, and lies about the lle of the ſouth-weſt ſide of the iſland; it is pretty , and affords good anchorage in twenty and twen- ve fathom, nor is there any want of freſh water. breach in the reef, that forms a channel into this our, is about a quarter of a mile broad, and like e reſt is very ſteep on both ſides; in general there danger here but what is viſible.

he iſland of Bolabola lies N. W. and by W. from a, diſtant about four leagues; it is ſurrounded by f of rocks, and ſeveral ſmall iſlands, in compaſs her about eight leagues. I was told, that on the -weſt ſide of the iſland there is a channel through eef into a very good harbour, but I did not think rth while to examine it, for the reaſons that have juſt aſſigned. This iſland is rendered very re- able by a high craggy hill, which appears to be ſt perpendicular, and terminates at the top in two s, one higher than the other.

he land of Ulieta and Otaha is hilly, broken, and ular, except on the ſea coaſt, yet the hills look and pleaſant, and are in many places clothed wood. The ſeveral particulars in which theſe ds and their inhabitants differ from what we had ob- d at Otaheite, have been mentioned in the courſe e narrative.

e purſued our courſe without any event worthy of till the 13th, about noon, when we ſaw land Sunday 13. ng S. E. which Tupia told us was an iſland called TEROA. About ſix in the evening, we were Oheteroa. n two or three leagues of it, upon which I ſhort- ſail, and ſtood off and on all night: the next Monday 14. morning

1769. August. morning ſtood in for the land. We ran to the leeward of the iſland, keeping cloſe in ſhore, and ſaw ſeveral of the natives, tho' in no great numbers, upon the beach. At nine o'clock I ſent Mr. Gore, one of my lieutenants, in the pinnace, to endeavour to land upon the iſland, and learn from the natives whether there was anchorage in a bay then in ſight, and what land lay further to the ſouthward. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander accompanied Mr. Gore in this expedition, and as they thought Tupia might be uſeful, they took him with them.

As the boat approached the ſhore, thoſe on board perceived the natives to be armed with long lances; and they did not intend to land until they got round a point which ran out a little diſtance, they ſtood along the coaſt, and the natives therefore very probably thought they were afraid of them. They had now got together to the number of about ſixty, and all of them ſat down upon the ſhore, except two, who were dispatched forward to obſerve the motions of thoſe in the boat. Theſe men, after walking a-breaſt of her for ſome time, at length leaped into the water, and ſwam towards her, but were ſoon left behind; two more then appeared, and attempted to board her in the ſame manner, but they alſo were ſoon left behind; a fifth man then ran forward alone, and having got a good way a-head of the boat, before he took to the water, eaſily reached her. Mr. Banks urged the officer to take him in, thinking it a good opportunity to get the confidence and good will of a people, who then certainly looked upon them as enemies, but he obſtinately refuſed; this man therefore was left behind like the others, and there was a ſixth, who followed him.

When the boat had got round the point, ſhe perceived that all her followers had deſiſted from the purſuit: ſhe now opened a large bay, at the bottom of which appeared another body of men, armed with long lances like the firſt. Here our people prepared to land, and puſhed towards the ſhore, a canoe at the ſame time putting off to meet them. As ſoon as it came near them, they lay upon their oars, and calling out to them, told them that they were friends, and that if they would come up they would give them nails, which

e held up for them to ſee: after ſome heſitation 1769. Auguſt.
came up to the boat's ſtern, and took ſome nails
were offered them, with great ſeeming ſatisfacti-
but in leſs than a minute they appeared to have
ned a deſign of boarding the boat, and making her
r prize: three of them ſuddenly leaped into it, and
others brought up the canoe, which the motion in
ting her had thrown off a little, manifeſtly with a
gn to follow their aſſociates, and ſupport them in
r attempt. The firſt that boarded the boat, en-
d cloſe to Mr. Banks, and inſtantly ſnatched his
der-horn out of his pocket; Mr. Banks ſeized it,
with ſome difficulty wrenched it out of his hand,
he ſame time preſſing againſt his breaſt, in order to
e him over-board, but he was too ſtrong for him,
kept his place; the officer then ſnapped his piece,
t miſſed fire, upon which he ordered ſome of the
le to fire over their heads; two pieces were ac-
ingly diſcharged, upon which they all inſtantly
ed into the water; one of the people, either from
ardice or cruelty, or both, levelled a third piece at
of them as he was ſwimming away, and the ball
ed his forehead; happily, however, the wound
very ſlight, for he recovered the canoe, and ſtood
n her, as active and vigorous as the reſt. The ca-
immediately ſtood in for the ſhore, where a great
ber of people, not leſs than two hundred, were
aſſembled. The boat alſo puſhed in, but found
land guarded all round with a ſhoal, upon which
ſea broke with a conſiderable ſurf; it was therefore
ght adviſable by the officer to proceed along the
e in ſearch of a more convenient landing-place: in
mean time the people on board ſaw the canoe go
hore, and the natives gather eagerly round her to
uire the particulars of what had happened. Soon
r, a ſingle man ran along the ſhore, armed with
lance, and when he came a-breaſt of the boat, he
n to dance, brandiſh his weapon, and call out in
ry ſhrill tone, which Tupia ſaid was a defiance
n the people. The boat continued to row along
ſhore, and the champion followed it, repeating his
ance by his voice and his geſtures; but no better
ing-place being found than that where the canoe
had

1769. August. had put the natives on ſhore, the officer turned b with a view to attempt it there, hoping, that if ſhould not be practicable, the people would come t conference, either on the ſhoals or in their canoes, that a treaty of peace might be concluded with th

As the boat rowed ſlowly along the ſhore back ag another champion came down, ſhouting defiance, brandiſhing his lance; his appearance was more f midable than that of the other, for he wore a large c made of the tail-feathers of the tropic bird, and body was covered with ſtripes of different colo cloth, yellow, red, and brown. This gentleman danced, but with much more nimbleneſs and dexte than the firſt; our people therefore, conſidering agility and his dreſs, diſtinguiſhed him by the n of HARLEQUIN. Soon after a more grave and eld man came down to the beach, and haling the pe in the boat, enquired who they were, and from wh they came? Tupia anſwered in their own langua "from Otaheite." The three natives then walked pea ably along the ſhore till they came to a ſhoal, u which a few people were collected; here they ſtopp and after a ſhort conference, they all began to p very loud: Tupia made his reſponſes, but contin to tell us that they were not our friends. When th prayer, or, as they call it, their Poorah, was o our people entered into a parley with them, te them, that if they would lay by their lances and t clubs, for ſome had one and ſome the other, t would come on ſhore, and trade with them for wh ever they would bring: they agreed, but it was o upon condition that we would leave behind us muſquets: this was a condition which, however eq table it might appear, could not be complied with, indeed would it have put the two parties upon an eq lity, except their numbers had been equal. Here th the negociation ſeemed to be at an end; but in a ſh time they ventured to come nearer to the boat, and laſt came near enough to trade, which they did ve fairly, for a ſmall quantity of their cloth, and ſome their weapons; but as they gave our people no ho of proviſions, nor indeed any thing elſe, except th would venture through a narrow channel to the ſho

which

ich, all circumſtances conſidered, they did not think rudent to do, they put off the boat and left them. 1769. Auguſt.

With the ſhip and the boat we had now made the uit of the iſland, and finding that there was nei- r harbour nor anchorage about it, and that the hoſ- diſpoſition of the people would render landing im- ticable, without bloodſhed, I determined not to mpt it, having no motive that could juſtify the riſk life.

The bay which the boat entered lies on the weſt ſide he iſland, the bottom was foul and rocky, but the er ſo clear that it could plainly be ſeen at the depth ive and twenty fathom, which is one hundred and feet.

This iſland is ſituated in the latitude of 22° 27′ S. in the longitude of 150° 47′ W. from the meri- of Greenwich. It is thirteen miles in circuit, and er high than low, but neither populous nor fertile, roportion to the other iſlands that we had ſeen in e ſeas. The chief produce ſeems to be the tree of h they make their weapons, called in their language ; many plantations of it were ſeen along the ſhore, h is not ſurrounded, like the neighbouring iſlands, reef.

The people ſeemed to be luſty and well-made, rather yner than thoſe we had left: under their arm-pits had black marks about as broad as the hand, the s of which formed not a ſtrait but an indented line; had alſo circles of the ſame colour, but not ſo d, round their arms and legs, but were not mark- n any other part of the body.

heir dreſs was very different from any that we had before, as well as the cloth of which it was made. cloth was of the ſame materials as that which is in the other iſlands, and moſt of that which was by our people was dyed of a bright but deep yel- and covered on the outſide with a compoſition like ſh, which was either red, or of a dark lead-colour; this ground it was again painted in ſtripes of many ent patterns, with wonderful regularity, in the er of our ſtriped ſilks in England; the cloth was ed red, and ſtriped with black, and that which was

1769. August. was painted lead-colour with white. Their habit wa a ſhort jacket of this cloth, which reached about a low as their knees; it was of one piece, and had n other making than a hole in the middle of it, ſtitche round with long ſtitches, in which it differed from t that we had ſeen before; through this hole the he was put, and what hung down was confined to the bodies by a piece of yellow cloth or ſaſh, which paſſi round the neck behind, was croſſed upon the breaſt, an then collected round the waiſt like a belt, which paſſe over another belt of red cloth, ſo that they made a ve gay and warlike appearance. Some had caps of th feathers of the tropic bird, which have been before de ſcribed, and ſome had a piece of white or lead-colou ed cloth wound about the head, like a ſmall turba which our people thought more becoming.

Their arms were long lances, made of the Etoa, th wood of which is very hard; they were well poliſhe and ſharpened at one end; ſome were near twenty fe long, though not more than three fingers thick. Th had alſo a weapon which was both club and pike, ma of the ſame wood, about ſeven feet long; this al was well poliſhed, and ſharpened at one end into broad point. As a guard againſt theſe weapons, wh they attack each other, they have mats folded up ma times, which they place under their clothes from t neck to the waiſt; the weapons themſelves indeed a capable of much leſs miſchief than thoſe of the ſa kind which we ſaw at the other iſlands, for the lan were there pointed with the ſharp bone of the ſti ray that is called the ſting, and the pikes were of ma greater weight. The other things that we ſaw he were all ſuperior in their kind to any we had ſeen b fore; the cloth was of a better colour in the dye, a painted with greater neatneſs and taſte; the clubs we better cut and poliſhed, and the canoe, though a ſm one, was very rich in ornament, and the carving w executed in a better manner; among other decorati peculiar to this canoe was a line of ſmall white feathe which hung from the head and ſtern on the outſi and which, when we ſaw them, were thoroughly we by the ſpray.

Tu

Tupia told us, that there were ſeveral iſlands lying different diſtances and in different directions from s, between the ſouth and the north-weſt; and that the diſtance of three days ſail to the north-eaſt there s an iſland called MANUA, Bird-iſland: he ſeemed, wever, moſt deſirous that we ſhould ſail to the weſt- rd, and deſcribed ſeveral iſlands in that direction, ich he ſaid he had viſited: he told us that he had n ten or twelve days in going thither, and thirty in ning back, and that the Pahie in which he had made voyage, ſailed much faſter than the ſhip: reckon- his Pahie therefore to go at the rate of forty leagues ay, which, from my own obſervation, I have great ſon to think theſe boats will do, it would make four dred leagues in ten days, which I compute to be the ance of Boſcawen and Keppel's Iſlands, diſcovered Captain Wallis, weſtward of Ulietea, and therefore k it very probable that they were the iſlands he had ed. The fartheſt iſland that he knew any thing of he ſouthward, he ſaid, lay at the diſtance of about days ſail from Oteroah, and was called MOUTOU; he ſaid that his father had told him there were nds to the ſouthward of that: upon the whole, I determined to ſtand ſouthward in ſearch of a con- nt, but to ſpend no time in ſearching for iſlands, if did not happen to fall in with them during our rſe.

1769. Auguſt.

AN

ACCOUNT

OF A

VOYAGE round the WORLD.

BOOK II.

CHAP. I.

The Paſſage from Oteroab to New Zealand; Incide which happened on going a-ſhore there, and wh the Ship lay in Poverty-Bay.

1769. Auguſt. Tueſday 15. Friday 25. WE ſailed from Oteroah on the 15th of Augu and on Friday the 25th we celebrated the a niverſary of our leaving England, by taking a Cheſhi cheeſe from a locker, where it had been carefully tre ſured up for this occaſion, and tapping a caſk of port which proved to be very good, and in excellent ord On the 29th, one of the ſailors got ſo drunk, that t next morning he died: we thought at firſt that he co not have come honeſtly by the liquor, but we aft wards learned that the boatſwain, whoſe mate he w had, in mere good-nature, given him part of a bo of rum.

Wedneſ. 30. On the 30th we ſaw the comet; at one o'clock the morning it was a little above the horizon in eaſtern part of the heavens; at about half an hour a four it paſſed the meridian, and its tail ſubtended an

gle of forty-two degrees. Our latitude was 38° 20′ S. 1769. August.
r longitude, by log, 147° 6′ W. and the variation
the needle, by the azimuth, 7° 9′ E. Among others
at obſerved the comet was Tupia, who inſtantly cried
t, that as ſoon as it ſhould be ſeen by the people of
labola, they would kill the inhabitants of Ulietea,
ho would with the utmoſt precipitation fly to the
ountains.

On the 1ſt of September, being in the latitude of September. Friday 1.
° 22′ S. and longitude 174° 29′ W. and there not
ing any ſigns of land, with a heavy ſea from the weſt-
ard, and ſtrong gales, I wore, and ſtood back to the
rthward, fearing that we might receive ſuch damage
our ſails and rigging, as would hinder the proſecu-
n of the voyage.

On the next day, there being ſtrong gales to the weſt- Saturday 2.
ard, I brought to, with the ſhip's head to the north-
ard; but in the morning of the 3d, the wind being Sunday 3.
ore moderate, we looſened the reef of the main-ſail,
the top-ſails, and plied to the weſtward.

We continued our courſe till the 19th, when our Tueſd. 19.
itude being 29° and our longitude 159° 29′, we ob-
ved the variation to be 8° 32′ E. On the 24th, being Sunday 24.
latitude 33° 18′, longitude 162° 51′, we obſerved a
all piece of ſea-weed, and a piece of wood covered
th barnacles: the variation here was 10° 48′ E.

On the 27th, being in latitude 28° 59′, longitude Wed. 27.
9° 5, we ſaw a ſeal aſleep upon the water, and ſe-
al bunches of ſea-weed. The next day we ſaw more Thurſd. 28.
-weed in bunches, and on the 29th, a bird, which Friday 29.
thought a land-bird; it ſomewhat reſembled a ſnipe,
t had a ſhort bill. On the 1ſt of October, we ſaw October. Sunday 1.
ds innumerable, and another ſeal aſleep upon the
ter; it is a general opinion that ſeals never go out
ſoundings, or far from land, but thoſe that we ſaw
theſe ſeas prove the contrary. Rock-weed is, how-
r, a certain indication that land is not far diſtant.

e next day, it being calm, we hoiſted out the boat, Mond. 2.
try whether there was a current, but found none.
r latitude was 37° 10′, longitude 172° 54′ W. On
3d, being in latitude 36° 56′, longitude 173° 27′, we Tueſ. 3.
k up more ſea-weed, and another piece of wood co-

1769. October. Wed. 4. vered with barnacles. The next day we ſaw two more ſeals, and a brown bird, about as big as a raven, with ſome white feathers under the wing. Mr. Gore told us, that birds of this kind were ſeen in great numbers about Falkland's Iſlands, and our people gave them the name of Port-Egmont hens.

Thurſd. 5. On the 5th, we thought the water changed colour, but, upon caſting the lead, had no ground with 180 fathom. In the evening of this day, the variation was 12° 50′ E. and while we were going nine leagues it encreaſed to 14° 2′.

Friday 6. On the next day, Friday, October 6th, we ſaw land from the maſt-head, bearing W. by N. and ſtood directly for it; in the evening it could juſt be diſcerned from the deck, and appeared large. The variation this day was, by azimuth and amplitude, 15° 4½ E. and, by obſervation made of the ſun and moon, the longitude of the ſhip appeared to be 180° 55′ W. and by the medium of this and ſubſequent obſervations, there appeared to be an error in the ſhip's account of longitude, during her run from Otaheite, of 3° 16′, ſhe being ſo much to the weſtward of the longitude reſulting from the log. At midnight, I brought to and ſounded, but had no ground with one hundred and ſeventy fathom.

Saturday 7. On the 7th, it fell calm, we therefore approached the land ſlowly; and in the afternoon, when a breeze ſprung up, we were ſtill diſtant ſeven or eight leagues. It appeared ſtill larger as it was more diſtinctly ſeen, with four or five ranges of hills riſing one over the other, and a chain of mountains above all, which appeared to be of an enormous height. This land became the ſubject of much eager converſation; but the general opinion ſeemed to be, that we had found the Terra auſtralis incognita. About five o'clock, we ſaw the opening of a bay, which ſeemed to run pretty far inland, upon which we hauled our wind and ſtood in for it; we alſo ſaw ſmoke aſcending from different places on ſhore. When night came on, however, we kept plying off and on till day-light, when we found ourſelves to the leeward of the bay, the wind being at north. We could now perceive that the hills were clothed

othed with wood, and that ſome of the trees in the 1769.
llies were very large. By noon, we fetched in with October.
e ſouth-weſt point, but not being able to weather it,
cked and ſtood off: at this time we ſaw ſeveral ca-
es ſtanding croſs the bay, which, in a little time,
ade to ſhore, without ſeeming to take the leaſt notice
the ſhip; we alſo ſaw ſome houſes, which appeared
be ſmall, but neat; and near one of them a conſide-
ble number of the people collected together, who
re ſitting upon the beach, and who, we thought,
re the ſame that we had ſeen in the canoes. Upon a
all peninſula, at the north-eaſt head, we could plainly
rceive a pretty high and regular paling, which in-
ſed the whole top of a hill; this was alſo the ſubject
much ſpeculation, ſome ſuppoſing it to be a park of
r, others an incloſure for oxen and ſheep. About
r o'clock in the afternoon, we anchored on the north-
ſt ſide of the bay, before the entrance of a ſmall river,
ten fathom water, with a fine ſandy bottom, and at
out half a league from the ſhore. The ſides of the
y are white cliffs, of a great height; the middle is
w land, with hills gradually riſing behind, one tower-
g above another, and terminating in the chain of
ountains, which appeared to be far inland.

In the evening I went on ſhore, accompanied by
r. Banks and Dr. Solander, with the pinnace and
wl, and a party of men. We landed a-breaſt of the
p, on the eaſt ſide of the river, which was here
out forty yards broad; but ſeeing ſome natives on
weſt ſide, whom I wiſhed to ſpeak with, and find-
g the river not fordable, I ordered the yawl in to
ry us over, and left the pinnace at the entrance.
hen we came near the place where the people were
embled, they all ran away; however, we landed,
d leaving four boys to take care of the yawl, we
lked up to ſome huts which were about two or three
ndred yards from the water-ſide. When we had
t ſome diſtance from the boat, four men, armed
th long lances, ruſhed out of the woods, and run-
g up to attack the boat, would certainly have cut
r off, if the people in the pinnace had not diſcover-
them, and called to the boys to drop down the

1769. October. ſtream: the boys inſtantly obeyed; but being cloſe purſued by the Indians, the cockſwain of the pinnace who had the charge of the boats, fired a muſquet over their heads; at this they ſtopped and looked round them, but in a few minutes renewed the purſuit, brandiſhing their lances in a threatening manner; the cockſwain then fired a ſecond muſquet over their heads, but of this they took no notice; and one of them lifting up his ſpear to dart it at the boat, another piece was fired which ſhot him dead. When he fell, the other three ſtood motionleſs for ſome minutes, as if petrified with aſtoniſhment; as ſoon as they recovered they went back, dragging after them the dead body, which, however, they ſoon left, that it might not incumber their flight. At the report of the firſt muſquet we drew together, having ſtraggled to a little diſtance from each other, and made the beſt of our way back to the boat and, croſſing the river, we ſoon ſaw the Indian lying dead upon the ground. Upon examining the body we found that he had been ſhot through the heart. He was a man of middle ſize and ſtature, his complexion was brown, but not very dark, and one ſide of his face was tattowed in ſpiral lines of a very regular figure; he was covered with a fine cloth, of a manufacture altogether new to us, and it was tied on exactly according to the repreſentation in Valentyn's account of Abel Taſman's Voyage, hereafter given; his hair alſo was tied in a knot on the top of his head, but had no feather in it. We returned immediately to the ſhip, where we could hear the people on ſhore talking with great earneſtneſs, and in a very loud tone, probably about what had happened, and what ſhould be done.

Mond. 9. In the morning, we ſaw ſeveral of the natives where they had been ſeen the night before, and ſome walking with a quick pace towards the place where we had landed, moſt of them unarmed, but three or four with long pikes in their hands. As I was deſirous to eſtabliſh an intercourſe with them, I ordered three boats to be manned with ſeamen and marines, and proceeded towards the ſhore, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, the other gentlemen, and Tupia; about fifty of them ſeemed to wait for our landing, on the oppo-

ppoſite ſide of the river, which we thought a ſign of ar, and ſeated themſelves upon the ground. At firſt, erefore, myſelf, with only Mr. Banks, Dr. Solan- r, and Tupia, landed from the little boat, and ad- nced towards them; but we had not proceeded ma- paces before they all ſtarted up, and every man pro- ced either a long pike, or a ſmall weapon of green lc, extremely well poliſhed, about a foot long, and ick enough to weigh four or five pounds. Tu- a called to them in the language of Otaheite, but ey anſwered only by flouriſhing their weapons, and aking ſigns to us to depart. A muſquet was then ed wide of them, and the ball ſtruk the water, the er being ſtill between us; they ſaw the effect, and iſted from their threats, but we thought it prudent retreat till the marines could be landed: this was n done, and they marched, with a jack carried be- e them, to a little bank, about fifty yards from the ter ſide; here they were drawn up, and I again ad- nced, with Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander; Tupia, r. Green, and Mr. Monkhouſe being with us. Tu- was again directed to ſpeak with them, and it was th great pleaſure that we perceived he was perfectly derſtood, he and the natives ſpeaking only different lects of the ſame language. He told them that we nted proviſion and water, and would give them iron exchange, the properties of which he explained as ll as he was able. They were willing to trade, and ired that we would come over to them for that pur- ſe; to this we conſented, provided they would lay their arms, which, however, they could by no ans be perſuaded to do. During this converſation, upia warned us to be upon our guard, for that they re not our friends. We then preſſed them, in our rn, to come over to us; and at laſt one of them pped himſelf, and ſwam over without his arms; he s almoſt immediately followed by two more, and n after by moſt of the reſt, to the number of twenty thirty; but theſe brought their arms with them. We ade them all preſents of iron and beads, but they med to ſet little value upon either, particularly the n, not having the leaſt idea of its uſe; ſo that we t nothing in return but a few feathers. They offer-

1769. October.

1769. October. ed, indeed, to exchange their arms for ours, and when we refuſed, made many attempts to ſnatch them out of our hands. As ſoon as they came over, Tupia repeated his declaration, that they were not our friends, and again warned us to be upon our guard. Their attempts to ſnatch our weapons, therefore, did not ſucceed; and we gave them to underſtand by Tupia, that we ſhould be obliged to kill them if they offered any farther violence. In a few minutes, however, Mr. Green happening to turn about, one of them ſnatched away his hanger, and, retiring to a little diſtance, waved it round his head, with a ſhout of exultation: the reſt now began to be extremely inſolent, and we ſaw more coming to join them from the oppoſite ſide of the river. It was therefore become neceſſary to repreſs them, and Mr. Banks fired at the man who had taken the hanger with ſmall ſhot, at the diſtance of about fifteen yards: when the ſhot ſtruck him he ceaſed his cry; but, inſtead of returning the hanger, continued to flouriſh it over his head, at the ſame time ſlowly retreating to a greater diſtance. Mr. Monkhouſe ſeeing this, fired at him with ball, and he inſtantly dropped. Upon this the main body, who had retired to a rock in the middle of the river upon the firſt diſcharge, began to return; two that were near to the man who had been killed, ran up to the body, one ſeized his weapon of green talc, and the other endeavoured to ſecure the hanger, which Mr. Monkhouſe had but juſt time to prevent. As all that had retired to the rock were now advancing, three of us diſcharged our pieces, loaded only with ſmall ſhot, upon which they ſwam back for the ſhore; and we perceived, upon their landing, that two or three of them were wounded. They retired ſlowly up the country, and we re-embarked in our boats.

As we had unhappily experienced that nothing was to be done with theſe people at this place, and finding the water in the river to be ſalt, I proceeded in the boats round the head of the bay, in ſearch of freſh water, and with a deſign, if poſſible, to ſurpriſe ſome of the natives, and take them on board, where, by kind treatment and preſents, I might obtain their friendſhip,

d by their means eſtabliſh an amicable correſpondence ith their countrymen. 1769. October.

To my great regret, I found no place where I could nd, a dangerous ſurf every where beating upon the ore; but I ſaw two canoes coming in from the ſea, e under ſail, and the other worked with paddles. I ought this a favourable opportunity to get ſome of e people into my poſſeſſion without miſchief, as thoſe the canoes were probably fiſhermen, and without ms, and I had three boats full of men. I therefore ſpoſed the boats ſo, as moſt effectually to intercept em in their way to the ſhore. The people in the noe that was paddled perceived us ſo ſoon, that by aking to the neareſt land with their utmoſt ſtrength, ey eſcaped us; the other ſailed on till ſhe was in the idſt of us, without diſcerning what we were; but e moment ſhe diſcovered us, the people on board ruck their ſail, and took to their paddles, which they ied ſo briſkly that ſhe out-ran the boat. They were, owever, within hearing, and Tupia called out to em to come along ſide, and promiſed for us that they ould come to no hurt; they choſe, however, rather truſt to their paddles than our promiſes, and conti- ued to make from us with all their power. I then rdered a muſquet to be fired over their heads, as the aſt exceptionable expedient to accompliſh my deſign, oping it would either make them ſurrender or leap to the water. Upon the diſcharge of the piece they eaſed paddling, and all of them, being ſeven in num- er, began to ſtrip, as we imagined to jump over oard; but it happened otherwiſe. They immediate- formed a reſolution not to fly, but to fight; and, hen the boat came up, they began the attack with eir paddles, and with ſtones and other offenſive wea- ons that were in the canoe, ſo vigorouſly, that we ere obliged to fire upon them in our own defence; ur were unhappily killed, and the other three, who ere boys, the eldeſt about nineteen, and the youngeſt bout eleven, inſtantly leaped into the water; the eld- ſt ſwam with great vigour, and reſiſted the attempts our people to take him into the boat, by every ef- rt that he could make; he was, however, at laſt overpowered,

1769. October. overpowered, and the other two were taken up wi
leſs difficulty. I am conſcious that the feeling of eve
reader of humanity will cenſure me, for having fir
upon theſe unhappy people; and it is impoſſible tha
upon a calm review, I ſhould approve it myſelf. The
certainly did not deſerve death, for not chooſing to co
fide in my promiſes, or not conſenting to come on boa
my boat, even if they had apprehended no danger; bu
the nature of my ſervice required me to obtain a know
ledge of their country, which I could no otherwiſe e
fect than by forcing my way into it in a hoſtile manne
or gaining admiſſion through the confidence and good
will of the people. I had already tried the power o
preſents without effect; and I was now prompted, b
my deſire to avoid further hoſtilities, to get ſome o
them on board, as the only method left of convincing
them that we intended them no harm, and had it i
our power to contribute to their gratification and con
venience. Thus far my intentions certainly were no
criminal; and though in the conteſt, which I had no
the leaſt reaſon to expect, our victory might have bee
complete without ſo great an expence of life, yet in
ſuch ſituations, when the command to fire has bee
given, no man can reſtrain its exceſs, or preſcribe it
effect.

As ſoon as the poor wretches whom we had take
out of the water were in the boat, they ſquatted down,
expecting, no doubt, inſtantly to be put to death: we
made haſte to convince them of the contrary, by every
method in our power; we furniſhed them with clothes,
and gave them every other teſtimony of kindneſs, that
could remove their fears and engage their good-will.
Thoſe who are acquainted with human nature will not
wonder, that the ſudden joy of theſe young ſavages, at
being unexpectly delivered from the fear of death,
and kindly treated by thoſe whom they ſuppoſed would
have been their inſtant executioners, ſurmounted their
concern for their friends they had loſt, and was ſtrong-
ly expreſſed in their countenances and behaviour. Be-
fore we reached the ſhip, their ſuſpicions and fears be-
ing wholly removed, they appeared to be not only re-
conciled to their ſituation but in high ſpirits; and
upon being offered ſome bread when they came on
board,

ard, they devoured it with a voracious appetite. 1769. October.
hey anſwered and aſked many queſtions, with great
pearance of pleaſure and curioſity, and when our
nner came, they expreſſed an inclination to taſte every
ing that they ſaw; they ſeemed beſt pleaſed with the
t pork, though we had other proviſions upon the ta-
e. At ſun-ſet they eat another meal with great eager-
ſs, each devouring a large quantity of bread, and
inking above a quart of water. We then made them
ds upon the lockers, and they went to ſleep with
eat ſeeming content. In the night, however, the tu-
ult of their minds having ſubſided, and given way to
flection, they ſighed often and loud. Tupia, who
as always upon the watch to comfort them, got up,
d, by ſoothing and encouragement, made them not
ly eaſy but cheerful; their cheerfulneſs was encou-
ged ſo that they ſung a ſong with a degree of taſte
at ſurpriſed us; the tune was ſolemn and ſlow, like
oſe of our Pſalms, containing many notes and ſemi-
nes. Their countenances were intelligent and ex-
reſſive, and the middlemoſt, who ſeemed to be about
teen, had an openneſs in his aſpect, and an eaſe in his
portment, which were very ſtriking: we found that
e two eldeſt were brothers, and that their names were
TAAHOURANGE and KOIKERANGE; the name of the
oungeſt was MARAGOVETE. As we were returning
the ſhip, after having taken theſe boys into the boat,
e picked up a large piece of pumice-ſtone floating up-
n the water; a ſure ſign that there either is or has
en a volcano in this neighbourhood.

In the morning, they all ſeemed to be cheerful, and Tueſday 10.
t another enormous meal; after this we dreſſed
em, and adorned them with bracelets, anclets, and
cklaces, after their own faſhion, and the boat being
iſted out, they were told that we were going to ſet
em a-ſhore; this produced a tranſport of joy; but
on perceiving that we made towards our firſt land-
g place, near the river, their countenances changed,
d they entreated with great earneſtneſs that they
ight not be ſet a-ſhore at that place, becauſe, they
id, it was inhabited by their enemies, who would
ll them and eat them. This was a great diſappoint-
ment

1769. October. ment to me, becauſe I hoped the report and appearance of the boys would procure a favourable reception for ourſelves. I had already ſent an officer on ſhore with the marines and a party of men to cut wood, and I was determined to land near the place; not, however, to abandon the boys, if when we got aſhore they ſhould be unwilling to leave us, but to ſend a boat with them in the evening to that part of the bay to which they pointed, and which they called their home. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia were with me, and upon our landing with the boys, and croſſing the river, they ſeemed at firſt to be unwilling to leave us, but at length they ſuddenly changed their minds, and though not without a manifeſt ſtruggle and ſome tears, they took their leave. When they were gone, we proceeded along a ſwamp, with a deſign to ſhoot ſome ducks, of which we ſaw great plenty, and four of the marines attended us, walking a-breaſt of us upon a bank that overlooked the country. After we had advanced about a mile, theſe men called out to us, and told us, that a large body of the Indians was in ſight, and advancing at a great rate. Upon receiving this intelligence, we drew together, and reſolved to make the beſt of our way to the boats. We had ſcarcely begun to put this into execution when the three Indian boys ſtarted ſuddenly from ſome buſhes, where they had concealed themſelves, and again claimed our protection; we readily received them, and repairing to the beach as the cleareſt place, we walked briſkly towards the boats. The Indians were in two bodies, one ran along the bank, which had been quitted by the marines, the other fetched a compaſs by the ſwamp, ſo that we could not ſee them. When they perceived that we had formed into one body they ſlackened their pace, but ſtill followed us in a gentle walk. That they ſlackened their pace, was for us, as well as for them, a fortunate circumſtance; for when we came to the ſide of the river, where we expected to find the boats that were to carry us over to the wooders, we found the pinnace at leaſt a mile from her ſtation, having been ſent to pick up a bird, which had been ſhot by the officer on ſhore; and the little boat was obliged to make three trips before we could all get over to the

ſt of the party. As ſoon as we were drawn up on e other ſide, the Indians came down, not in a body we expected, but by two or three at a time, all med, and in a ſhort time their number increaſed to out two hundred. As we now deſpaired of making ace with them, ſeeing that the dread of our ſmall ms did not keep them at a diſtance, and that the p was too far off to reach the place with a ſhot, we olved to re-embark, leſt our ſtay ſhould embroil us another quarrel, and coſt more of the Indians their es; we therefore advanced towards the pinnace, ich was now returning, when one of the boys ſud-nly cried out, that his uncle was among the people o had marched down to us, and deſired us to ſtay d talk with them. We complied, and a parley im-diately commenced between them and Tupia; dur-g which the boys held up every thing we had given em, as tokens of our kindneſs and liberality; but ither would either of the boys ſwim over to them, any of them to the boys. The body of the man, o had been killed the day before, ſtill lay expoſed on the beach; the boys ſeeing it lie very near us, nt up to it, and covered it with ſome of the clothes t we had given them; and ſoon after a ſingle man, armed, who proved to be the uncle of Maragovete, youngeſt of the boys, ſwam over to us, bringing his hand a green branch, which we ſuppoſed, as ll here as at Otaheite, to be an emblem of peace. e received his branch by the hands of Tupia, to om he gave it, and made him many preſents; we o invited him to go on board the ſhip, but he declined we therefore left him, and expected that his ne-ew and the two other young Indians would have yed with him, but, to our great ſurprize, they choſe her to go with us. As ſoon as we had retired, he nt and gathered another green branch, and with s in his hand he approached the dead body which youth had covered with part of his clothes, walk-g ſideways, with many ceremonies, and then throw-g it towards him; when this was done, he returned his companions, who had ſat down upon the ſand obſerve the iſſue of his negociation. They immedi-ly gathered round him, and continued in a body

1769. October.

above

1769. October. above an hour, without ſeeming to take any farther notice of us. We were more curious than they, and obſerving them with our glaſſes from on board the ſhip, we ſaw ſome of them croſs the river upon a kind of raft, or catamarine, and four of them carry off the dead body which had been covered by the boy, and over which his uncle had performed the ceremony of the branch, upon a kind of bier, between four men; the other body was ſtill ſuffered to remain where it had been firſt left.

After dinner, I directed Tupia to aſk the boys, if they had now any objection to going aſhore where we had left their uncle, the body having been carried off which we underſtood was a ratification of peace? They ſaid they had not: and the boat being ordered, they went into it with great alacrity. When the boat, in which I had ſent two midſhipmen, came to land, they went willingly aſhore; but ſoon after ſhe put off they ran turned to the rocks, and, wading into the water, earneſtly entreated to be taken on board again; but the people in the boat, having poſitive orders to leave them, could not comply. We were very attentive to what happened on ſhore, and keeping a conſtant watch with our glaſſes, we ſaw a man paſs the river upon another raft, and fetch them to a place where forty or fifty of the natives were aſſembled, who cloſed round them, and continued in the ſame place till ſun-ſet: upon looking again, when we ſaw them in motion, we could plainly diſtinguiſh our three priſoners, who ſeparated themſelves from the reſt, came down to the beach, having waved their hands three times towards the ſhip, ran nimbly back and joined their companions, who walked leiſurely away towards that part which the boys had pointed to as their dwelling-place; we had therefore the greateſt reaſon to believe that no miſchief would happen to them, eſpecially as we perceived that they went off in the clothes we had given them.

After it was dark, loud voices were heard on ſhore in the bottom of the bay, as uſual, of which we could never learn the meaning.

CHAP.

1769.
October.

CHAP. II.

Description of Poverty-Bay, and the Face of the adjacent Country. The Range from thence to Cape Turnagain, and back to Tolaga; with some Account of the People and the Country, and several Incidents that happened on that Part of the Coast.

THE next morning, at six o'clock, we weighed, and stood away from this unfortunate and inhospitable place, to which I gave the name of POVERTY-BAY, and which by the natives is called TAONEROA, Long Sand, as it did not afford us a single article that we wanted, except a little wood. It lies in latitude 38° 42′ S. and longitude 181° 36′ W. it is in the form of an horse shoe, and is known by an island lying close under the north-east point. The two points which form the entrance are high, with steep white cliffs, and lie a league and a half or two leagues from each other, N. E. by E. and S. W. by W. the depth of water in the bay is from twelve to five fathom, with a sandy bottom and good anchorage; but the situation is open to the wind between the south and east; boats may go in and out of the river at any time of the tide in fine weather; but as there is a bar at the entrance, no boat can go either in or out when the sea runs high. The best place to attempt it is on the north-east side, and it is there practicable when it is not so in any other part. The shore of the bay, a little within its entrance, is a low flat sand, behind which, at a small distance, the face of the country is finely diversified by hills and vallies, all clothed with wood and covered with verdure. The country also appears to be well inhabited, especially in the vallies leading up from the bay, where we daily saw smoke rising in clouds one behind another to a great distance, till the view terminated in mountains of stupendous height. Wedneſ. 11.

The south-west point of the bay I named YOUNG NICK'S HEAD, after Nicholas Young, the boy who first saw the land: at noon it bore N. W. by W. distant about three or four leagues, and we were then about three miles from the shore. The main land extended

1769. October. extended from N. E. by N. to S. and I propoſed to follow the direction of the coaſt to the ſouthward as far as the latitude of 40 or 41, and then, if I met with no encouragement to proceed farther, to return to the northward.

In the afternoon we lay becalmed, which the people on ſhore perceiving, ſeveral canoes put off, and came within leſs than a quarter of a mile of the veſſel, but could not be perſuaded to come nearer, though Tupia exerted all the powers of his lungs and his eloquence upon the occaſion, ſhouting, and promiſing that they ſhould not be hurt. Another canoe was now ſeen coming from Poverty-Bay, with only four people on board, one of whom we well remembered to have ſeen in our firſt interview upon the rock. This canoe, without ſtopping, or taking the leaſt notice of the others, came directly along ſide of the ſhip, and with very little perſuaſion we got the Indians on board. Their example was ſoon followed by the reſt, and we had about us ſeven canoes, and about fifty men. We made them all preſents with a liberal hand, notwithſtanding which they were ſo deſirous to have more of our commodities, that they ſold us every thing they had, even the clothes from their backs, and the paddles from their boats. There were but two weapons among them, theſe were the inſtruments of green talc, which were ſhaped ſomewhat like a pointed battledore, with a ſhort handle and ſharp edges; they were called Patoo-Patoo, and were well contrived for cloſe fighting, as they would certainly ſplit the thickeſt ſcull at a ſingle blow.

When theſe people had recovered from the firſt impreſſions of fear, which notwithſtanding their reſolution in coming on board, had manifeſtly thrown them into ſome confuſion, we enquired after our poor boys. The man who firſt came on board immediately anſwered, that they were unhurt and at home; adding, that he had been induced to venture on board, by the account which they had given him of the kindneſs with which they had been treated, and the wonders that were in the ſhip.

While they were on board they ſhewed every ſign of friendſhip, and invited us very cordially to go back

ck to our old bay, or to a ſmall cove which they 1769. October.
inted out, that was not quite ſo far off; but I choſe
ther to proſecute my diſcoveries than go back, hav-
g reaſon to hope that I ſhould find a better harbour
an any I had yet ſeen.

About an hour before ſun-ſet, the canoes put off from
e ſhip with the few paddles they had reſerved, which
ere ſcarcely ſufficient to ſet them on ſhore; but by
me means or other three of their people were left be-
nd. As ſoon as we diſcovered it we hailed them, but
t one of them would return to take them on board;
s greatly ſurprized us; but we were ſurprized ſtill
ore to obſerve, that the deſerted Indians did not ſeem
all uneaſy at their ſituation, but entertained us with
ncing and ſinging after their manner, eat their ſup-
rs, and went quietly to bed.

A light breeze ſpringing up ſoon after it was dark,
ſteered along the ſhore under an eaſy ſail till mid-
ght, and then brought to, ſoon after which it fell
m. We were now ſome leagues diſtant from the
ce where the canoes had left us, and at day-break,
en the Indians perceived it, they were ſeized with
niſternation and terror, and lamented their ſituation
loud complaints, with geſtures of deſpair and many
rs. Tupia, with great difficulty, pacified them;
d about ſeven o'clock in the morning, a light breeze Thurſ. 12.
inging up, we continued to ſtand ſouth-weſt along
ſhore. Fortunately for our poor Indians, two ca-
es came off about this time, and made towards the
p; they ſtopped, however, at a little diſtance, and
med unwilling to truſt themſelves nearer. Our In-
ns were greatly agitated in this ſtate of uncertainty,
d urged their fellows to come along-ſide of the ſhip,
th by their voice and geſtures, with the utmoſt eager-
s and impatience. Tupia interpreted what they
d, and we were much ſurprized to find, that, among
er arguments, they aſſured the people in the canoe,
did not eat men. We now began ſeriouſly to be-
ve, that this horrid cuſtom prevailed among them;
what the boys had ſaid, we conſidered as a mere
perbolical expreſſion of their fear. One of the ca-
es, at length, ventured to come under the ſhip's ſide;
d an old man came on board, who ſeemed to be a

1769. October. Chief, from the finery of his garment, and the ſuperiority of his weapon, which was a Patoo-Patoo made of bone, that, as he ſaid, had belonged to a whale. He ſtayed on board but a ſhort time, and when he went away he took with him our gueſts, very much to the ſatisfaction both of them and us.

At the time when we ſailed we were a-breaſt of a point, from which the land trends S. S. W. and which, on account of its figure, I called CAPE TABLE. This point lies ſeven leagues to the ſouthward of Poverty-Bay, in latitude 39° 7′ S. and longitude 181° 36′ W. It is of a conſiderable height, makes in a ſharp angle, and appears to be quite flat at the top.

In ſteering along the ſhore to the ſouthward of the Cape, at the diſtance of two or three miles, our ſoundings were from twenty to thirty fathom, having a chain of rocks between us and the ſhore, which appeared at different heights above the water.

At noon, Cape Table bore N. 20 E. diſtant about four leagues, and a ſmall iſland, which was the ſouthermoſt land in ſight, bore S. 70 W. at the diſtance of about three miles. This iſland, which the natives call TEAHOWRAY, I named the ISLAND OF PORTLAND, from its very great reſemblance to Portland in the Engliſh channel; it lies about a mile from a point on the main, but there appears to be a ridge of rocks, extending nearly, if not quite, from one to the other. N. 5° E. two miles from the ſouth point of Portland, lies a ſunken rock, upon which the ſea breaks with great violence. We paſſed between this rock and the land, having from ſeventeen to twenty fathom.

Portland Iſland.

In ſailing along the ſhore, we ſaw the natives aſſembled in great numbers, as well upon Portland Iſland as the main. We could alſo diſtinguiſh ſeveral ſpots of ground that were cultivated; ſome ſeemed to be freſh turned up, and lay in furrows like ploughed land, and ſome had plants upon them in different ſtages of their growth. We ſaw alſo, in two places, high rails upon the ridges of hills, like what we had ſeen upon the peninſula at the north-eaſt head of Poverty-Bay; but they were ranged in lines only, and not ſo as to include an area, we could not gueſs at their uſe, and therefore ſuppoſed they might be the work of ſuperſtition.

About noon, another canoe appeared, in which were 1769. October.
r men; ſhe came within about a quarter of a mile
us, where the people on board ſeemed to perform
ers ceremonies. One of them, who was in the bow,
netimes ſeemed to aſk and to offer peace, and ſome-
es to threaten war, by brandiſhing a weapon that
held in his hand; ſometimes alſo he danced, and
netimes he ſung. Tupia talked much to him, but
ld not perſuade him to come to the ſhip.

Between one and two o'clock, we diſcovered land to
weſtward of Portland, extending to the ſouthward
ar as we could ſee; and as the ſhip was hauling
nd the ſouth end of the iſland, ſhe ſuddenly fell into
l water and broken ground; we had indeed always
n fathom or more, but the ſoundings were never
e the ſame, jumping at once from ſeven fathom to
en; in a ſhort time, however, we got clear of all
ger, and had again deep water under us.

t this time the iſland lay within a mile of us, mak-
n white cliffs, and a long ſpit of low land running
it towards the main. On the ſides of theſe cliffs
reat numbers of people, looking at us with a fix-
ttention; and, it is probable, that they perceived
appearance of hurry and confuſion on board, and
irregularity in the working of the ſhip, while we
getting clear of the ſhallow water and broken
nd, from which they might infer that we were
ned or in diſtreſs; we thought that they wiſhed to
advantage of our ſituation, for five canoes were put
ith the utmoſt expedition, full of men, and well
d; they came ſo near, and ſhewed ſo hoſtile a diſ-
on, by ſhouting, brandiſhing their lances, and uſ-
hreatening geſtures, that we were in ſome pain for
mall boat, which was ſtill employed in ſounding;
ſket was therefore fired over them, but finding it
em no harm, they ſeemed rather to be provoked
intimidated, and I therefore fired a four pounder,
ed with grape-ſhot, wide of them. This had a
effect. Upon the report of the piece, they all
up and ſhouted; but inſtead of continuing the
, drew all together, and after a ſhort conſultation
quietly away.

1769. October. Having got round Portland, we hauled in for the land N. W. having a gentle breeze at N. E. which about five o'clock died away, and obliged us to anchor. We had one and twenty fathom, with a fine ſandy bottom: the ſouth point of Portland bore S. E. ½ S. diſtant about two leagues; and a low point on the main bore N. ½ E. In the ſame direction with this low point there runs a deep bay, behind the land of which Cape Table is the extremity, ſo as to make this land a peninſula, leaving only a low narrow neck between it and the main. Of this peninſula, which the natives call TERAKAKO, Cape Table is the north point, and Portland the ſouth.

While we lay at anchor, two more canoes came off to us, one armed, and the other a ſmall fiſhing-boat with only four men in her. They came ſo near that they entered into converſation with Tupia. They anſwered all the queſtions that he aſked them with great civility, but could not be perſuaded to come on board: they came near enough, however, to receive ſeveral preſents that were thrown to them from the ſhip, with which they ſeemed much pleaſed, and went away. During the night many fires were kept on ſhore, probably to ſhew us that the inhabitants were too many upon their guard to be ſurprized.

Friday 13. About five o'clock in the morning of the 13th, a breeze ſpringing up northerly, we weighed, and ſtood in for the land. The ſhore here forms a large bay, of which Portland is the north-eaſt point, and the bay that runs behind Cape Table an arm. This arm I had a great inclination to examine, becauſe there appeared to be ſafe anchorage in it; but not being ſure of that, and the wind being right aft, I was unwilling to ſpare the time. Four and twenty fathom was the greateſt depth with Portland, but the ground was every where clear. The land near the ſhore is of a moderate height, with white cliffs and ſandy beaches; within it riſes into mountains; but upon the whole, the ſurface is hilly, for the moſt part covered with wood, and to appearance pleaſant and fertile. In the morning nine canoes came after

ip, but whether with peaceable or hoſtile intentions 1769. October.
e could not tell, for we ſoon left them behind us.
In the evening we ſtood in for a place that had the ppearance of an opening, but found no harbour; we erefore ſtood out again, and were ſoon followed by a rge canoe, with eighteen or twenty men all armed, ho, though they could not reach us, ſhouted defiance, d brandiſhed their weapons, with many geſtures of enace and inſult.
In the morning, we had a view of the mountains Satur. 14.
land, upon which the ſnow was ſtill lying: the coun- near the ſhore was low and unfit for culture, but one place we perceived a patch of ſomewhat yellow, hich had greatly the appearance of a corn field, yet s probably nothing more than ſome dead flags, which e not uncommon in ſwampy places: at ſome diſtance e ſaw groves of trees, which appeared high and ta- ring, and being not above two leagues from the uth-weſt cod of the great bay, in which we had been aſting for the two laſt days, I hoiſted out the pin- ce and long-boat to ſearch for freſh water; but juſt they were about to put off, we ſaw ſeveral boats full people coming from the ſhore, and therefore I did t think it ſafe for them to leave the ſhip. About ten clock, five of theſe boats having drawn together, as to hold a conſultation, made towards the ſhip, hav- g on board between eighty and ninety men, and four ore followed at ſome diſtance, as if to ſuſtain the at- k. When the firſt five came within about a hun- d yards of the ſhip, they began to ſing their war g, and, brandiſhing their pikes, prepared for an en- gement. We had now no time to loſe, for if we uld not prevent the attack, we ſhould come under e unhappy neceſſity of uſing our fire arms againſt em, which we were very deſirous to avoid. Tupia s therefore ordered to acquaint them, that we had eapons which, like thunder, would deſtroy them in moment; that we would immediately convince them their power, by directing their effect ſo that they ould not be hurt; but that if they perſiſted in any ſtile attempts, we ſhould be obliged to uſe them for r defence. A four pounder, loaded with grape-ſhot,

1769. October. was then discharged wide of them, which produced the desired effect; the report, the flash, and above all, the shot, which spread very far in the water, so intimidated them, that they began to paddle away with all their might: Tupia, however, calling after them, and assuring them that if they would come un-armed, they should be kindly received, the people in one of the boats put their arms on board of another, and came under the ship's stern: we made them several presents, and should certainly have prevailed upon them to come on board, if the other canoes had not come up, and again threatened us, by shouting and brandishing their weapons: at this the people who had come to the ship unarmed, expressed great displeasure, and soon after they all went away.

In the afternoon we stood over to the south point of the bay, but not reaching it before it was dark, we Sunday 15. stood off and on all night. At eight the next morning, being a-breast of the point, several fishing boats came off to us, and sold us some stinking fish: it was the best they had, and we were willing to trade with them upon any terms: these people behaved very well, and should have parted good friends if it had not been for a large canoe, with two and twenty armed men on board, which came boldly up along-side of the ship. We soon saw that this boat had nothing for traffick, yet we gave them two or three pieces of cloth, an article which they seemed very fond of. I observed that one man had a black skin thrown over him, somewhat resembling that of a bear, and being desirous to know what animal was its first owner, I offered him for it a piece of red baize, and he seemed greatly pleased with the bargain, immediately pulling off the skin, and holding it up in the boat; he would not, however, part with it till he had the cloth in his possession, and as there could be no transfer of property, if with equal caution I had insisted upon the same condition, I ordered the cloth to be handed down to him, upon which, with amazing coolness, instead of sending up the skin, he began to pack up both that and the baize, which he had received as the purchase of it, in a basket, without paying the least regard to my demand or remonstrances, and soon after, with the fishing boats, put off

ff from the ſhip; when they were at ſome diſtance, hey drew together, and after a ſhort conſultation re- arned; the fiſhermen offered more fiſh, which, though ood for nothing, was purchaſed, and trade was again enewed. Among others who were placed over the hip's ſide to hand up what we bought, was little ayeto, Tupia's boy; and one of the Indians, watch- g his opportunity, ſuddenly ſeized him, and dragged im down into the canoe; two of them held him own in the fore-part of it, and the others, with great ctivity, paddled her off, the reſt of the canoes fol- owing as faſt as they could: upon this the marines ho were under arms upon deck, were ordered to fire. he ſhot was directed to that part of the canoe which as fartheſt from the boy, and rather wide of her, be- g willing rather to miſs the rowers than to hurt him: happened, however, that one man dropped, upon hich the others quitted their hold of the boy, who nſtantly leaped into the water, and ſwam towards the hip; the large canoe immediately pulled round and ollowed him, but ſome muſquets, and a great gun be- g fired at her, ſhe deſiſted from the purſuit. The hip being brought to, a boat was lowered, and the oor boy taken up unhurt, though ſo terrified that for time he ſeemed to be deprived of his ſenſes. Some f the gentlemen who traced the canoes to ſhore with heir glaſſes, ſaid, that they ſaw three men carried up he beach, who appeared to be either dead or wholly iſabled by their wounds.

1769. October.

To the cape off which this unhappy tranſaction hap- ened, I gave the name of CAPE KIDNAPPERS. It ies in latitude 39° 43′, and longitude 182° 24′ W. and s rendered remarkable by two white rocks like hay tacks, and the high white cliffs on each ſide. It ies S. W. by W. diſtant thirteen leagues from the ſle of Portland; and between them is the bay of which it is the ſouth point, and which, in honour of Sir Edward Hawke, then firſt Lord of the Admiralty, I called HAWKE'S BAY. We found in it from twenty- four to ſeven fathom, and good anchorage. From Cape Kidnappers the land trends S. S. W. and in this direction we made our run along the ſhore, keeping at

Hawke's Bay.

1769. October. about a league diſtance, with a ſteady breeze and clear weather.

As ſoon as Tayeto recovered from his fright, he brought a fiſh to Tupia, and told him, that he intended it as an offering to his Eatua, or god, in gratitude for his eſcape. Tupia commended his piety, and ordered him to throw the fiſh into the ſea, which was accordingly done.

About two o'clock in the afternoon, we paſſed a ſmall but high white iſland, lying cloſe to the ſhore, upon which we ſaw many houſes, boats, and people. The people were concluded to be fiſhers, becauſe the iſland was totally barren; we ſaw ſeveral people alſo on ſhore,

Monday 16. in a ſmall bay upon the main, within the iſland. At eleven, we brought to till day light, and then made ſail to the ſouthward, along the ſhore. About ſeven o'clock we paſt a high point of land, which lies S. S. W. twelve leagues from Cape Kidnappers: from this point the land trends three fourths of a point more to the weſtward: at ten, we ſaw more land open to the ſouthward, and at noon, the ſouthermoſt land that was in ſight bore S. 39 W. diſtant eight or ten leagues, and a high bluff head, with yellowiſh cliffs, bore W. diſtant about two miles: the depth of water was thirty two fathom.

Tueſday 17. In the afternoon we had a freſh breeze at weſt, and during the night variable light airs and calms: in the morning a gentle breeze ſprung up between the N. W. and N. E. and having till now ſtood to the ſouthward, without ſeeing any probability of meeting with a harbour, and the country manifeſtly altering for the worſe, I thought that ſtanding farther in that direction would be attended with no advantage, but on the contrary would be a loſs of time that might be employed with a better proſpect of ſucceſs in examining the coaſt to the northward; about one, therefore, in the afternoon, I tacked, and ſtood north, with a freſh breeze at weſt. The high bluff head, with yellowiſh cliffs, which we were a-breaſt of at noon, I called CAPE TURNAGAIN, becauſe here we turned back. It lies in latitude 40° 34′ S. longitude 182° 55′ W. diſtant eighteen leagues S. S. W. ½ W. from Cape Kidnappers. The land between them is of a very unequal height; in ſome

places

laces it is lofty next the ſea with white cliffs, in others ow, with ſandy beaches: the face of the country is ot ſo well clothed with wood as it is about Hawke's ay, but looks more like our high downs in Eng- nd: it is, however, to all appearance, well inhabit- d, for as we ſtood along the ſhore, we ſaw ſeveral illages, not only in the vallies, but on the tops and des of the hills, and ſmoke in many other places. The ridge of mountains, which has been mentioned efore, extends to the ſouthward farther than we could e, and was then every where chequered with ſnow. t night we ſaw two fires inland, ſo very large, that e concluded they muſt have been made to clear the nd for tillage; but however that be, they are a de- onſtration that the part of the country where they peared is inhabited. 1769. October.

On the 18th, at four o'clock in the morning, Cape idnappers bore N. 32 W. diſtant two leagues: in is ſituation we had ſixty-two fathom, and when the ape bore W. by N. diſtant three or four leagues, we d forty five fathom: in the mid-way between the e of Portland and the Cape we had ſixty-five fathom. the evening, being a-breaſt of the peninſula within rtland iſland, called TERAKAKO, a canoe came off om that ſhore, and with much difficulty overtook the p; there were on board five people, two of whom peared to be Chiefs, and the other three ſervants: e Chiefs, with very little invitation, came on board, d ordered the reſt to remain in their canoe. We ated them with great kindneſs, and they were not ckward in expreſſing their ſatisfaction; they went wn into the cabin, and after a ſhort time told us t they had determined not to go on ſhore till the xt morning. As the ſleeping on board was an ho- ur which we neither expected nor deſired, I remon- ated ſtrongly againſt it, and told them, that on their count it would not be proper, as the ſhip would pro- bly be at a great diſtance from where ſhe was then, next morning: they perſiſted, however, in their olution, and as I found it impoſſible to get rid of m without turning them by force out of the ſhip, I nplied: as a proper precaution, however, I propoſed ake their ſervants alſo on board, and hoiſt their canoe Wedneſ. 18. Terakako.

1769. October. canoe into the ſhip; they made no objection, and this was accordingly done. The countenance of one of theſe Chiefs was the moſt open and ingenuous of all I have ever ſeen, and I very ſoon gave up every ſuſpicion of his having any ſiniſter deſign: they both examined every thing they ſaw with great curioſity and attention, and received very thankfully ſuch little preſents as we made them; neither of them, however, could be perſuaded, either to eat or drink, but their ſervants devoured every thing they could get with great voracity. We found that theſe men had heard of our kindneſs and liberality to the natives who had been on board before, yet we thought the confidence they placed in us, an extraordinary inſtance of their fortitude. At night I brought to till day-light, and then
Thurſd. 19. made ſail; at ſeven in the morning, I brought to again under Cape Table, and ſent away our gueſts with their canoe, who expreſſed ſome ſurpriſe at ſeeing themſelves ſo far from home, but landed a-breaſt of the ſhip. At this time I ſaw other canoes putting off from the ſhore, but I ſtood away to the northward without waiting for their coming up.

About three I paſſed a remarkable head-land, which I called GABLE-END FORELAND, from the very great likeneſs of the white cliff at the point to the gable-end of a houſe: it is not more remarkable for its figure than for a rock which aiſes like a ſpire at a little diſtance. It lies from Cape Table N. 24 E. diſtant about twelve leagues. The ſhore between them forms a bay, within in which lies Poverty Bay, at the diſtance of four leagues from the head-land, and eight from the Cape. At this place three canoes came off to us, and one man came on board; we gave him ſome trifles, and he ſoon returned to his boat, which, with all the reſt, dropped a-ſtern.

Friday 20. In the morning I made ſail in ſhore, in order to look into two bays, which appeared about two leagues to the northward of the Foreland; the ſouthermoſt I could not fetch, but I anchored in the other about eleven o'clock.

Into this bay we were invited by the people on board many canoes, who pointed to a place where they ſaid there was plenty of freſh water: I did not find it good

1769. October.

ood a ſhelter from the ſea as I expected, but the na-
ives who came about us, appearing to be of a friendly
iſpoſition, I was determined to try whether I could
ot get ſome knowledge of the country here before I
roceeded farther to the northward.

In one of the canoes that came about us as ſoon as
e anchored, we ſaw two men, who, by their habits,
ppeared to be Chiefs: one of them was dreſſed in a
acket, which was ornamented, after their manner, with
og's ſkin; the jacket of the other was almoſt covered
ith ſmall tufts of red feathers. Theſe men I invited
n board, and they entered the ſhip with very little he-
tation: I gave each of them about four yards of linen
nd a ſpike-nail; with the linen they were much pleaſ-
d, but ſeemed to ſet no value upon the nail. We per-
eived that they knew what had happened in Poverty-
ay, and we had therefore no reaſon to doubt but that
ey would behave peaceably; however, for further
curity, Tupia was ordered to tell them for what pur-
oſe we came thither, and to aſſure them that we would
ffer them no injury, if they offered none to us. In the
ean time thoſe who remained in the canoes traded with
ur people very fairly for what they happened to have
ith them: the Chiefs, who were old men, ſtaid with
till we had dined, and about two o'clock I put off with
e boats, manned and armed, in order to go on ſhore in
arch of water, and the two Chiefs went into the boat
ith me. The afternoon was tempeſtuous, with much
in, and the ſurf every where ran ſo high, that altho'
e rowed almoſt round the bay, we found no place where
e could land: I determined therefore to return to the
ip, which being intimated to the Chiefs, they called
o the people on ſhore, and ordered a canoe to be ſent off
r themſelves; this was accordingly done, and they
ft us, promiſing to come on board again in the morn-
g, and bring us ſome fiſh and ſweet potatoes.

In the evening, the weather having become fair and
oderate, the boats were again ordered out, and I
nded, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander.
We were received with great expreſſions of friendſhip by
e natives, who behaved with a ſcrupulous attention not
give offence. In particular, they took care not to ap-

pear

1769. October. pear in great bodies: one family, or the inhabitants of two or three houſes only, were generally placed together, to the number of fifteen or twenty, conſiſting of men, women, and children. Theſe little companies ſat upon the ground, not advancing towards us, but inviting us to them, by a kind of beckon, moving one hand towards the breaſt. We made them ſeveral little preſents; and in our walk round the bay found two ſmall ſtreams of freſh water. This convenience, and the friendly behaviour of the people, determined me to ſtay at leaſt a day, that I might fill ſome of my empty caſks, and give Mr. Banks an opportunity of examining the natural produce of the country.

Saturd. 21. In the morning of the 21ſt, I ſent Lieutenant Gore on ſhore, to ſuperintend the watering, with a ſtrong party of men; and they were ſoon followed by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, with Tupia, Tayeto, and four others.

The natives ſat by our people, and ſeemed pleaſed to obſerve them; but did not intermix with them: they traded, however, chiefly for cloth, and after a ſhort time applied to their ordinary occupations, as if no ſtranger had been among them. In the forenoon ſeveral of their boats went out a-fiſhing, and at dinner-time every one repaired to his reſpective dwelling; from which, after a certain time, he returned. Theſe fair appearances encouraged Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander to range the bay with very little precaution, where they found many plants, and ſhot ſome birds of exquiſite beauty. In their walk, they viſited ſeveral houſes of the natives, and ſaw ſomething of their manner of life; for they ſhewed, without any reſerve, every thing which the gentlemen deſired to ſee. They were ſometimes found at their meals, which the approach of the ſtrangers never interrupted. Their food at this ſeaſon conſiſted of fiſh, with which, inſtead of bread, they eat the root of a kind of fern, very like that which grows upon our commons in England. Theſe roots they ſcorch over the fire, and then beat with a ſtick, till the bark and dry outſide fall off, what remains is a ſoft ſubſtance, ſomewhat clammy and ſweet, not unpleaſing to the taſte, but mixed with three or four times its quantity of ſtrings and fibres, which are very diſagreeable; theſe were

were ſwallowed by ſome, but ſpit out by the far greater number, who had baſkets under them to receive the rejected part of what had been chewed, which had an appearance very like that of tobacco in the ſame ſtate. In other ſeaſons they have certainly plenty of excellent vegetables; but no tame animals were ſeen among them, except dogs, which were very ſmall and ugly. Mr. Banks ſaw ſome of their plantations, where the ground was as well broken down and tilled as even in the gardens of the moſt curious people among us: in theſe ſpots were ſweet potatoes, coccos or eddas, which are well known and much eſteemed both in the Eaſt and Weſt-Indies, and ſome gourds: the ſweet potatoes were planted in ſmall hills, ſome ranged in rows, and others in quincunx, all laid by a line with the greateſt regularity: the coccos were planted upon flat land, but none of them yet appeared above ground; and the gourds were ſet in ſmall hollows, or diſhes, much as in England. Theſe plantations were of different extent, from one or two acres to ten: taken together, there appeared to be from 150 to 200 acres in cultivation in the whole bay, tho' we never ſaw an hundred people. Each diſtrict was fenced in, generally with reeds, which were placed ſo cloſe together, that there was ſcarcely room for a mouſe to creep between. 1769. October.

The women were plain, and made themſelves more ſo by painting their faces with red ocre and oil, which being generally freſh, and wet upon their cheeks and foreheads, was eaſily transferred to the noſes of thoſe who thought fit to ſalute them; and that they were not wholly averſe to ſuch familiarity, the noſes of ſeveral of our people ſtrongly teſtified: they were, however, as great coquets as any of the moſt faſhionable ladies in Europe, and the young ones as ſkittiſh as any unbroken filly: each of them wore a petticoat, under which there was a girdle, made of the blades of graſs, highly perfumed, and to the girdle was faſtened a ſmall bunch of the leaves of ſome fragrant plant, which ſerved their modeſty as its innermoſt veil. The faces of the men were not ſo generally painted, yet we ſaw one whoſe whole body, and even his garments, were rubbed over with dry ocre, of which he kept a piece conſtantly in his

1769. October. his hand, and was every minute renewing the decoration in one part or another, where he ſuppoſed it was become deficient. In perſonal delicacy they were not equal to our friends at Otaheite, for the coldneſs of the climate did not invite them ſo often to bathe; but we ſaw among them one inſtance of cleanlineſs in which they exceeded them, and of which perhaps there is no example in any other Indian nation. Every houſe, or every little cluſter of three or four houſes, was furniſhed with a privy, ſo that the ground was every where clean. The offals of their food, and other litter, were alſo piled up in regular dunghills, which probably they made uſe of at a proper time for manure.

In this decent article of civil œconomy they were beforehand with one of the moſt conſiderable nations of Europe; for I am credibly informed, that, till the year 1760, there was no ſuch thing as a privy in Madrid, the metropolis of Spain, though it is plentifully ſupplied with water. Before that time it was the univerſal practice to throw the ordure out of the windows, during the night, into the ſtreet, where numbers of men were employed to remove it, with ſhovels, from the upper parts of the city to the lower, where it lay till it was dry, and was then carried away in carts, and depoſited without the gates. His preſent Catholic Majeſty, having determined to free his capital from ſo groſs a nuiſance, ordered, by proclamation, that the proprietor of every houſe ſhould build a privy, and that ſinks, drains, and common-ſewers ſhould be made at the public expence. The Spaniards, tho' long acouſtomed to an arbitrary government, reſented this proclamation with great ſpirit, as an infringement of the common rights of mankind, and made a vigorous ſtruggle againſt its being carried into execution. Every claſs deviſed ſome objection againſt it; but the phyſicians bid the faireſt to intereſt the king in the preſervation of the ancient privileges of his people; for they remonſtrated that if the filth was not, as uſual, thrown into the ſtreets, a fatal ſickneſs would probably enſue, becauſe the putreſcent particles of the air, which ſuch filth attracted, would then be imbibed by the human body. But this expedient, with every other that could be thought of,

proved

ved unſucceſsful, and the popular diſcontent then ran 1769. October.
igh, that it was very near producing an inſurrection; Majeſty, however, at length prevailed, and Madrid ow as clear as moſt of the conſiderable cities in Eue. But many of the citizens, probably upon the prinles advanced by their phyſicians, that heaps of filth vent deleterious particles of air from fixing upon ghbouring ſubſtances, have, to keep their food wholee, conſtructed their privies by the kitchen fire.

n the evening, all our boats being employed in carg the water on board, and Mr. Banks and his comy finding it probable that they ſhould be left on re after it was dark, by which much time would be , which they were impatient to employ in putting plants they had gathered in order, they applied to Indians for a paſſage in one of their canoes: they nediately conſented, and a canoe was launched for r uſe. They went all on board, being eight in num- but not being uſed to a veſſel that required ſo even lance, they unfortunately overſet her in the ſurf: ife however was loſt, and it was thought adviſable half of them ſhould wait for another turn. Mr. ks, Dr. Solander, Tupia, and Tayeto embarked n, and without any further accident arrived ſafely he ſhip, well pleaſed with the good-nature of their an friends, who chearfully undertook to carry them cond time, after having experienced how unfit a ght they were for ſuch a veſſel.

While theſe gentlemen were on ſhore, ſeveral of the ves went off to the ſhip, and trafficked, by exchangtheir cloth for that of Otaheite: of this barter they e for ſome time very fond, preferring the Indian h to that of Europe; but before night it decreaſed s value five hundred per cent. Many of theſe Indi- I took on board, and ſhewed them the ſhip and her aratus, at which they expreſſed equal ſatisfaction aſtoniſhment.

s I found it exceedingly difficult to get water on d, on account of the ſurf, I determined to ſtay onger at this place; on the next morning there- Sund. 22. about five o'clock, I weighed anchor and put to

This

1769. October. This bay, which is called by the natives TEGADOO, lies in the latitude of 38° 10′ S. but as it has nothing to recommend it, a deſcription of it is unneceſſary.

From this bay I intended to ſtand on to the northward, but the wind being hard againſt me, I could make no way. While I was beating about to windward, ſome of the natives came on board, and told me, that in a bay which lay a little to the ſouthward, being the ſame that I could not fetch the day I put into Tegadoo, there was excellent water, where the boats might land without a ſurf. I thought it better therefore to put into this bay, where I might compleat my water, and form farther connections with the Indians than to keep the ſea. With this view I bore up for it, and ſent in two boats, manned and armed, to examine the watering-place, who confirming the report of the Indians at their return, I came to an anchor about one o'clock, in eleven fathom water, with a fine ſandy bottom, the north point of the bay N. by E. and the ſouth point S. E. The watering-place which was in a ſmall cove a little within the ſouth point of the bay, bore S. by E. diſtant about a mile. Many canoes came immediately off from the ſhore, and all traded very honeſtly for Otaheite cloth and glaſs bottles, of which they were immoderately fond.

Mond. 13. In the afternoon of the 23d, as ſoon as the ſhip was moored, I went on ſhore to examine the watering-place, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander; the boat landed in the cove, without the leaſt ſurf; the water was excellent, and conveniently ſituated; there was plenty of wood cloſe to high-water mark, and the diſpoſition of the people was in every reſpect ſuch as we could wiſh.

Having, with Mr. Green, taken ſeveral obſervations of the ſun and moon, the mean reſult of them gave 180° 47′ W. longitude; but, as all the obſervations made before exceeded theſe, I have laid down the coaſt from the mean of the whole. At noon, I took the ſun's meridian altitude with an aſtronomical quadrant, which was ſet up at the watering-place, and found the latitude to be 38° 22′ 14″.

1769. October. Tuesday 24.

On the 24th, early in the morning, I ſent lieutenant ore on ſhore, to ſuperintend the cutting of wood and ling of water, with a ſufficient number of men for th purpoſes, and all the marines as a guard. After eakfaſt, I went on ſhore myſelf, and continued there e whole day.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander alſo went on ſhore to her plants, and in their walks ſaw ſeveral things rthy of notice. They met with many houſes in the lies that ſeemed to be wholly deſerted, the people ng on the ridges of the hills in a kind of ſheds very htly built. As they were advancing in one of theſe lies, the hills on each ſide of which were very ſteep, y were ſuddenly ſtruck with the ſight of a very ex- rdinary natural curioſity. It was a rock, perforated ough its whole ſubſtance, ſo as to form a rude but endous arch or cavern, opening directly to the ſea; aperture was ſeventy-five feet long, twenty-ſeven ad, and five-and-forty high, commanding a view of bay and the hills on the other ſide, which were through it, and, opening at once upon the view, duced an effect far ſuperior to any of the contri- ces of art.

s they were returning to the watering-place in the ning, they met an old man, who detained them e time by ſhewing them the military exerciſes of the ntry with the lance and Patoo-Patoo, which are all weapons in uſe. The lance is from ten to fourteen long, made of a very hard wood, and ſharp at both : the Patoo-Patoo has been deſcribed already; it out a foot long, made of talc or bone, with ſharp s, and uſed as a battle-axe. A poſt or ſtake was p as his enemy, to which he advanced with a moſt us aſpect, brandiſhing his lance, which he graſped great firmneſs; when it was ſuppoſed to have been ed by his lance, he ran at it with his Patoo-Patoo, falling upon the upper end of it, which was to re- nt his adverſary's head, he laid on with great ve- ence, ſtriking many blows, any one of which d probably have ſplit the ſcull of an ox. From champion's falling upon his mock enemy with the o-Patoo, after he was ſuppoſed to have been pierc-

1769. October. ed with the lance, our gentlemen inferred, that in the battles of this country there is no quarter.

This afternoon, we ſet up the armourer's forge, to repair the braces of the tiller which had been broken, and went on getting our wood and water, without ſuffering the leaſt moleſtation from the natives; who came down with different ſorts of fiſh, which we purchaſed with cloth, beads, and glaſs bottles, as uſual.

Wedneſ. 25. On the 25th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went again on ſhore; and while they were ſearching for plants, Tupia ſtaid with the waterers: among other Indians who came down to them, was a prieſt, with whom Tupia entered into a very learned converſation. In their notions of religion they ſeemed to agree very well, which is not often the caſe between learned divines on our ſide of the ocean: Tupia, however, ſeemed to have the moſt knowledge, and was liſtened to with great deference and attention by the other. In the courſe of this converſation, after the important points of divinity had been ſettled, Tupia enquired if it was their practice to eat men, to which they anſwered in the affirmative; but ſaid that they eat only their enemies who were ſlain in battle.

Thurſd. 26. On the 26th, it rained all day, ſo that none of us could go a-ſhore; and very few of the Indians came either to the watering-place or the ſhip.

Friday 27. On the 27th, I went with Dr. Solander to examine the bottom of the bay; but though we went a-ſhore at two places, we met with little worth notice. The people behaved very civilly, ſhewing us every thing that we expreſſed a deſire to ſee. Among other trifling curioſities which Dr. Solander purchaſed of them, was a boy's top, ſhaped exactly like thoſe which children play with in England; and they made ſigns that to make it ſpin it was to be whipped. Mr. Banks in the mean time went aſhore at the watering-place, and climbed a hill which ſtood at a little diſtance to ſee a fence of poles, which we had obſerved from the ſhip, and which had been much the ſubject of ſpeculation. The hill was extremely ſteep, and rendered almoſt inacceſſible by wood; yet he reached the place, near which he found many houſes that for ſome reaſon had been deſerted by their inhabitants. The poles appear-

ed to be about ſixteen feet high; they were placed in two rows, with a ſpace of about ſix feet between them, and the poles in each row were about ten feet diſtant from each other. The lane between them was covered by ſticks, that were ſet up ſloping towards each other from the top of the poles on each ſide, like the roof of a houſe. This rail-work, with a ditch that was parallel to it, was carried about a hundred yards down the hill in a kind of curve; but for what purpoſe we could not gueſs. 1769. October.

The Indians, at the watering-place, at our requeſt, entertained us with their war-ſong, in which the women joined, with the moſt horrid diſtortions of countenance, rolling their eyes, thruſting out their tongues, and often heaving loud and deep ſighs; though all was done in very good time.

On the 28th we went aſhore upon an iſland that lies to the left hand of the entrance of the bay, where we ſaw the largeſt canoe that we had yet met with: ſhe was ſixty eight feet and a half long, five broad, and three feet ſix high; ſhe had a ſharp bottom, conſiſting of three trunks of trees hollowed, of which that in the middle was the longeſt: the ſide planks were ſixty-two feet long in one piece, and were not deſpicably carved in baſs relief: the head alſo was adorned with carving ſtill more richly. Upon this iſland there was a larger houſe than any we had yet ſeen; but it ſeemed unfiniſhed and was full of chips. The wood work was ſquared ſo even and ſmooth, that we made no doubt of their having among them very ſharp tools. The ſides of the poſts were carved in a maſterly ſtile, though after their whimſical taſte, which ſeems to prefer ſpiral lines and diſtorted faces: as theſe carved poſts appeared to have been brought from ſome other place, ſuch work is probably of great value among them. Saturd. 28.

At four o'clock in the morning of the 29th, having got on board our wood and water, and a large ſupply of excellent celery, with which the country abounds, and which proved a powerful antiſcorbutic, I unmoored and put to ſea. Sunday 29.

This bay is called by the natives TOLAGA; it is moderately large, and has from ſeven to thirteen fathom,

1769. October. with a clean ſandy bottom and good anchorage; and is ſheltered from all winds except the north-eaſt. It lies in latitude 38° 22′ S. and four leagues and an half to the north of Gable-end Foreland. On the ſouth point lies a ſmall but high iſland, ſo near the main as not to be diſtinguiſhed from it. Cloſe to the north end of the iſland, at the entrance into the bay, are two high rocks; one is round like a corn-ſtack, but the other is long, and perforated in ſeveral places, ſo that the openings appear like the arches of a bridge. Within theſe rocks is the cove where we cut wood, and filled our water caſks. Off the north point of the bay is a pretty high rocky iſland; and about a mile without it, are ſome rocks and breakers. The variation of the compaſs here is 14° 31′ E. and the tide flows at the full and change of the moon, about ſix o'clock, and riſes and falls perpendicularly from five to ſix feet: whether the flood comes from the ſouthward or the northward, I have not been able to determine.

We got nothing here by traffic but a few fiſh, and ſome ſweet potatoes, except a few trifles, which we conſidered merely as curioſities. We ſaw no four-footed animals, nor the appearance of any, either tame or wild, except dogs and rats, and theſe were very ſcarce; the people eat the dogs, like our friends at Otaheite; and adorn their garments with the ſkins, as we do ours with fur and ermine. I climbed many of the hills, hoping to get a view of the country, but I could ſee nothing from the top except higher hills, in a boundleſs ſucceſſion. The ridges of theſe hills produce little beſides fern; but the ſides are moſt luxuriantly clothed with wood, and verdure of various kinds, with little plantations intermixed; in the woods we found trees of above twenty different ſorts, and carried ſpecimens of each on board; but there was no body among us to whom they were not altogether unknown. The tree which we cut for firing was ſomewhat like our maple, and yielded a whitiſh gum. We found another ſort of it of a deep yellow, which we thought might be uſed in dying. We found alſo one cabbage-tree, which we cut down for the cabbages. The country abounds with plants, and the woods with birds, in an endleſs variety, exquiſitely beautiful, and of which none of us had the leaſt

leaſt knowledge. The ſoil both of the hills and vallies is light and ſandy, and very fit for the production of all kinds of roots; though we ſaw none except ſweet potatoes and yams. 1769. October.

CHAP. III.

The Range from Tolaga to Mercury-Bay, with an Account of many Incidents that happened both on board and a-ſhore. A Deſcription of ſeveral Views exhibited by the Country, and of the Heppahs, or forfeited Villages of the Inhabitants.

ON Monday the 30th, about half an hour after one o'clock, having made ſail again to the northward for about ten hours, with a light breeze, I hauled round a ſmall iſland, which lay eaſt one mile from the north-eaſt point of the land: from this place I found the land trend away N. W. by W. and W. N. W. as far as I could ſee. This point being the eaſtermoſt land on the whole coaſt, I gave it the name of EAST CAPE, and I called the iſland that lies off it the EAST ISLAND; it is of a ſmall circuit, high and round, and appears white and barren; the Cape is high with white cliffs, and lies in latitude 37° 42′ 30″ S. and longitude 181° W. The land from Tolaga Bay to Eaſt Cape is of a moderate, but unequal height, forming ſeveral ſmall bays, in which are ſandy beaches: of the inland country we could not ſee much, the weather being cloudy and hazy. The ſoundings were from twenty to thirty fathom at the diſtance of about a league from the ſhore. After we had rounded the Cape, we ſaw in our run along the ſhore a great number of villages, and much cultivated land; the country in general appeared more fertile than before, and was low near the ſea, but hilly within. At ſix in the evening, being four leagues to the weſtward of Eaſt Cape, we paſſed a bay which was firſt diſcovered by Lieutenant Hicks, and which therefore I called HICKS's BAY. At eight in the evening, being eight leagues to the weſtward of the Cape, and three or four miles from the ſhore, I ſhortened ſail and brought to for the night, having at this time Monday 30.

1769. October. Tueſd. 31. a freſh gale at S. S. E. and ſqually; but it ſoon became moderate, and at two in the morning, we made ſail again to the S. W. as the land now trended; and at eight o'clock in the morning ſaw land, which made like an iſland, bearing weſt, the ſouth-weſtermoſt part of the main bearing ſouth-weſt; and about nine no leſs than five canoes came off, in which were more than forty men, all armed with their country pikes and battle-axes, ſhouting, and threatening an attack: this gave us great uneaſineſs, and was indeed what we did not expect; for we hoped, that the report both of our power and clemency had ſpread to a greater extent. When one of theſe canoes had almoſt reached the ſhip, another, of an immenſe ſize, the largeſt we had yet ſeen, crowded with people who were alſo armed, put off from the ſhore, and came up at a great rate; as it approached it received ſignals from the canoe that was neareſt to the ſhip, and we could ſee that it had ſixteen paddles on a ſide, beſide people that ſat, and others that ſtood in a row from ſtem to ſtern, being in all about ſixty men: as they made directly to the ſhip, we were deſirous of preventing an attack, by ſhewing what we could do; and therefore fired a gun, loaded with grape ſhot, a-head of them; this made them ſtop, but not retreat; a round ſhot was then fired over them, and upon ſeeing it fall, they ſeized their paddles and made towards the ſhore with ſuch precipitation, that they ſeemed ſcarcely to allow themſelves time to breathe. In the evening, three or four more canoes came off unarmed; but they would not venture within a muſquet ſhot of the veſſel. The cape, off which we had been threatened with hoſtilities, I called, from the haſty retreat of the enemy, CAPE RUNAWAY. It lies in latitude 37° 32′; longitude 181° 48′. In this day's run, we found that the land, which made like an iſland in the morning, bearing weſt, was ſo; and we gave it the name of WHITE ISLAND.

November. Wedneſd. 1. At day-break, on the firſt of Nov. we counted no leſs than five and forty canoes that were coming from the ſhore towards the ſhip: ſeven of them came up with us, and after ſome converſation with Tupia, ſold us ſome lobſters and muſcles, and two conger-eels. Theſe people traded pretty fairly: but when they were gone, ſome

ome others came off from another place, who began lſo to trade fairly; but after ſome time they took what was handed down to them, without making any eturn; one of them who had done ſo, upon being hreatened, began to laugh, and with many marks of eriſion ſet us at defiance, at the ſame time putting off he canoe from the ſhip: a muſquet was then fired ver his head, which brought him back in a more ſe- ious mood, and trade went on with great regularity. t length, when the cabin and gun room had got as uch as they wanted, the men were allowed to come o the gang-way, and trade for themſelves. Unhappily he ſame care was not taken to prevent frauds as had een taken before, ſo that the Indians, finding that hey could cheat with impunity, grew inſolent again, nd proceeded to take greater liberties. One of the anoes, having ſold every thing on board, pulled for- ard, and the people that were in her ſeeing ſome linen ang over the ſhip's ſide to dry, one of them, without ny ceremony, untied it, and put it up in his bundle: e was immediately called to, and required to return ; inſtead of which, he let his canoe drop a-ſtern, nd laughed at us: a muſquet was fired over his head, hich did not put a ſtop to his mirth; another was hen fired at him with ſmall ſhot, which ſtruck him pon the back; he ſhrunk a little when the ſhot hit im, but did not regard it more than one of our men ould have done the ſtroke of a rattan; he continued ith great compoſure to pack up the linen that he had olen. All the canoes now dropped a-ſtern about a undred yards, and all ſet up their ſong of defiance, hich they continued till the ſhip was diſtant from hem about four hundred yards. As they ſeemed to ave no deſign to attack us, I was not willing to do hem any hurt; yet I thought their going off in a bra- ado might have a bad effect when it ſhould be re- orted a-ſhore. To ſhew them therefore that they ere ſtill in our power, though very much beyond the each of any miſſile weapon with which they were ac- uainted, I gave the ſhip a yaw, and fired a four ounder ſo as to paſs near them. The ſhot happened o ſtrike the water, and riſe ſeveral times at a great diſ- ance beyond the canoes: this ſtruck them with ter-

1769. November.

1769. November. ror, and they paddled away without once looking behind them.

About two in the afternoon, we ſaw a pretty high iſland, bearing weſt from us; and at five, ſaw more iſlands and rocks to the weſtward of that. We hauled our wind in order to go with them, but could not weather them before it was dark. I therefore bore up, and ran between them and the main. At ſeven, I was cloſe under the firſt, from which a large double canoe, or rather two canoes laſhed together at the diſtance of about a foot, and covered with boards ſo as to make a deck, put off, and made ſail for the ſhip: this was the firſt veſſel of the kind that we had ſeen ſince we left the South Sea iſlands. When ſhe came near, the people on board entered very freely into converſation with Tupia, and we thought ſhewed a friendly diſpoſition; but when it was juſt dark, they ran their canoe cloſe to the ſhip's ſide, and threw in a volley of ſtones, after which they paddled a-ſhore.

We learnt from Tupia, that the people in the canoe called the iſland which we were under MOWTOHORA: it is but of a ſmall circuit, though high, and lies ſix miles from the main: on the ſouth ſide is anchorage in fourteen fathom water. Upon the main land S. W. by W. of this iſland, and apparently at no great diſtance from the ſea, is a high, round mountain, which I called MOUNT EDGECOMBE: it ſtands in the middle of a large plain, and is therefore the more conſpicuous; latitude 37° 59′, longitude 193° 7′.

In ſtanding weſtward, we ſuddenly ſhoaled our water from ſeventeen to ten fathom; and knowing that we were not far from the ſmall iſlands and rocks which we had ſeen before dark, and which I intended to have paſſed before I brought to for the night, I thought it more prudent to tack, and ſpend the night under Mowtohora, where I knew there was no danger. It was indeed happy for us that we did ſo; for in the morning, after we had made ſail to the weſtward, we diſcovered, a-head of us, ſeveral rocks, ſome of which were level with the ſurface of the water, and ſome below it: they lay N. N. E. from Mount Edgecombe, one league and a half diſtant from the iſland Mowtohora, and about nine miles from the main. We paſſed between

Thurſ. 2.

theſe

ſe rocks and the main, having from ten to ſeven hom water. 1769. November.

This morning, many canoes and much people were n along the ſhore; ſeveral of the canoes followed us, t none of them could reach us, except one with a , which proved to be the ſame that had pelted us night before. The people on board again entered o a converſation with Tupia; but we expected an- er volley of their ammunition, which was not in- d dangerous to any thing but the cabin windows. ey continued a-breaſt of the ſhip about an hour, d behaved very peaceably; but at laſt the ſalute ich we expected was given; we returned it by fir- a muſquet over them, and they immediately drop- d a-ſtern and left us, perhaps rather ſatisfied with ving given a teſt of their courage, by twice inſulting eſſel ſo much ſuperior to their own, than intimidat- by the ſhot.

At half an hour after ten, we paſſed between a low t iſland and the main: the diſtance from one to the er was about four miles, and the depth of water m ten to twelve fathom. The main land between s flat iſland and Mowtohora is of a moderate height, t level, pretty clear of wood, and full of plantations d villages. The villages, which were larger than y we had yet ſeen, were built upon eminences near e ſea, and fortified on the land ſide by a bank and ch, with a high paling within it, which was carri- all round; beſide a bank, ditch, and palliſadoes, ne of them appeared to have out-works. Tupia had notion that the ſmall incloſures of palliſadoes, and a ch that we had ſeen before, were Morais, or places worſhip; but were of opinion that they were ts, and concluded that theſe people had neighbour- enemies, and were always expoſed to hoſtile at- ks.

At two o'clock, we paſſed a ſmall high iſland, lying r miles from a high round head upon the main. om this head the land trends N. W. as far as can ſeen, and has a rugged and hilly appearance. As e weather was hazy, and the wind blew freſh on the re, we hauled off for the weathermoſt iſland in ſight

1769. November. ſight, which bore from us N. N. E. diſtant about ſix or ſeven leagues.

Friday 3. Under this iſland, which I have called the MAYOR, we ſpent the night. At ſeven in the morning it bore S. 47 E. diſtant ſix leagues, and a cluſter of ſmall iſlands and rocks bore N. ½ E. diſtant one league, to which I gave the name of the COURT OF ALDERMEN. They lie in the compaſs of about half a league every way, and five leagues from the main, between which and them lie other iſlands, moſt of them barren rocks, of which there is great variety; ſome of them are as ſmall in compaſs as the Monument of London, but riſe to a much greater height, and ſome of them are inhabited. They lie in latitude 36° 57′, and at noon bore S. 60 E. diſtant three or four leagues, and a rock like a caſtle, lying not far from the main, bore N. W. at the diſtance of one league. The country, that we paſſed the night before, appeared to be well inhabited, many towns were in ſight, and ſome hundreds of large canoes lay under them upon the beach; but this day, after having ſailed about fifteen leagues, it appeared to be barren and deſolate. As far as we had yet coaſted this country, from Cape Turnagain, the people acknowledged one Chief, whom they call TERATU, and to whoſe reſidence they pointed, in a direction that we thought to be very far inland, but afterwards found to be otherwiſe.

About one o'clock, three canoes came off to us from the main, with one-and-twenty men on board. The conſtruction of theſe veſſels appeared to be more ſimple than that of any we had ſeen, they being nothing more than trunks of a ſingle tree hollowed by fire, without any convenience or ornament. The people on board were almoſt naked, and appeared to be of a brown complexion; yet, naked and deſpicable as they were, they ſung their ſong of defiance, and ſeemed to denounce againſt us inevitable deſtruction. They remained, however, ſome time out of ſtones-throw, and then venturing nearer, with leſs appearance of hoſtility, one of our men went to the ſhip's ſide, and was about to hand them a rope; this courteſy, however, they thought fit to return by throwing a lance at him, which having

ing miſſed him, they immediately threw another 1769. November.
the ſhip; upon this a muſquet was fired over them,
ch at once ſent them away.

About two, we ſaw a large opening, or inlet, for
ch we bore up: we had now forty-one fathom wa-
which gradually decreaſed to nine, at which time
were one mile and an half diſtant from a high tow-
rock, which lay near the ſouth point of the inlet;
rock, and the northermoſt of the Court of Alder-
being in one, bearing S. 61 E.

About ſeven in the evening, we anchored in ſeven
om, a little within the ſouth entrance of the bay.
this place we were accompanied by ſeveral canoes,
the people like thoſe we had ſeen laſt, and for
e time they behaved very civilly. While they were
ering about us, a bird was ſhot from the ſhip, as it
ſwimming upon the water: at this they ſhewed
ſurprize than we expected, and taking up the bird
tied it to a fiſhing-line, that was towing a-ſtern;
n acknowledgment for this favour we gave them a
e of cloth. But notwithſtanding this effect of our
arms, and this interchange of civilities, as ſoon as
ew dark they ſung their war ſong, and attempted
w away the buoy of the anchor. Two or three
kets were then fired over them, but this ſeemed ra-
to make them angry than afraid, and they went
y, threatening that to-morrow they would return
more force, and be the death of us all; at the
time ſending off a boat, which they told us was
g to another part of the bay for aſſiſtance.

There was ſome appearance of generoſity, as well
urage, in acquainting us with the time when they
nded to make their attack; but they forfeited all
t which this procured them, by coming ſecretly
us in the night, when they certainly hoped to
us aſleep: upon approaching the ſhip they found
ſelves miſtaken, and therefore retired without
ing a word, ſuppoſing that they were too early;
ſome time they came a ſecond time, and being
diſappointed, they retired as ſilently as before.

the morning, at day-break, they prepared to ef- Satur. 4.
by force what they had in vain attempted by ſtealth
rtifice; no leſs than twelve canoes came againſt
us,

1769. November. us, with about a hundred and fifty men, all armed wi pikes, lances, and ſtones. As they could do nothi till they came very near the ſhip, Tupia was order to expoſtulate with them, and, if poſſible, divert th from their purpoſe. During the converſation, th appeared to be ſometimes friendly, and ſometimes other wiſe; at length, however, they began to trade, a we offered to purchaſe their weapons, which ſome them conſented to ſell. They ſold two very fairly, b having received what had been agreed upon for t purchaſe of a third, they refuſed to ſend it up, but o fered it for a ſecond price; a ſecond was ſent down, b the weapon was ſtill detained, and a demand made o third; this being refuſed, with ſome expreſſions of d pleaſure and reſentment, the offender, with many lu crous tokens of contempt and defiance, paddled his ca off a few yards from the ſhip. As I intended to co tinue in this place five or ſix days, in order to ma an obſervation of the tranſit of Mercury, it was abſ lutely neceſſary, in order to prevent future miſchief, ſhew theſe people that we were not to be treated with impunity; ſome ſmall ſhot were therefore fired the thief, and a muſket ball through the bottom of h boat; upon this it was paddled to about a hundred ya diſtance, and, to our great ſurprize, the people in t other canoes took not the leaſt notice of their wounde companion, though he bled very much, but return to the ſhip, and continued to trade with the moſt pe fect indifference and unconcern. They ſold us ma more of their weapons, without making any other a tempt to defraud us for a conſiderable time; at la however, one of them thought fit to paddle away wi two different pieces of cloth, which had been given f the ſame weapon; when he had got about an hundr yards diſtance, and thought himſelf ſecure of his pri a muſket was fired after him, which fortunately ſtru the boat juſt at the water's edge, and made two hol in her ſide; this only incited them to ply their padd with greater activity, and the reſt of the canoes a made off with the utmoſt expedition. As the laſt pro of our ſuperiority, therefore, we fired a round ſh over them, and not a boat ſtopped till they got ſhore.

Abo

bout ten o'clock, I went with two boats to ſound 1769. November.
ay, and look out for a more convenient anchoring
, the maſter being in one boat, and myſelf in the
. We pulled firſt over to the north ſhore, from
h ſome canoes came out to meet us; as we advanc-
owever, they retired, inviting us to follow them;
ſeeing them well armed, I did not think it proper
mply, but went towards the head of the bay,
e I obſerved a village upon a very high point, for-
in the manner that has been already deſcribed,
having fixed upon an anchoring-place not far from
e the ſhip lay, I returned on board.
three o'clock in the afternoon I weighed, run in
r to the ſhore, and anchored in four fathom and
lf water, with a ſoft ſandy bottom, the ſouth point
e bay bearing E. diſtant one mile, and a river
h the boats can enter at low-water S. S.E. diſtant
mile and an half.
the morning, the natives came off again to the Sunday 5.
and we had the ſatisfaction to obſerve that their
viour was very different from what it had been ye-
ay. Among them was an old man, whom we had
e remarked for his prudence and honeſty; his
e was TOIAVA, and he ſeemed to be a perſon of
erior rank. In the tranſactions of yeſterday morn-
he had behaved with greater propriety and good
, lying in a ſmall canoe, always near the ſhip,
reating thoſe on board as if he neither intended a
nor ſuſpected an injury: with ſome perſuaſion
man and another came on board, and ventured in-
e cabin, where I preſented each of them with a
of Engliſh cloth and ſome ſpike-nails. They told
hat the Indians were now very much afraid of us;
on our part, we promiſed friendſhip if they would
ve peaceably, deſiring only to purchaſe what they
o ſell upon their own terms.
ter the natives had left us, I went with the pinnace
ong-boat into the river with a deſign to haul the
, and ſent the maſter in the yawl to ſound the bay,
redge for fiſh. The Indians who were on one ſide
e river, expreſſed their friendſhip by all the ſigns
could deviſe, beckoning us to land among them;
ve choſe to go a-ſhore on the other ſide, as the
ſituation

1769. November. ſituation was more convenient for hauling the ſeine a ſhooting birds, of which they ſaw great numbers of various kinds. The Indians, with much perſuaſion abo noon ventured over to us. With the ſeine we had ve little ſucceſs, catching only a few mullets; neither d we get any thing by the trawl or the dredge, except few ſhells; but we ſhot ſeveral birds, moſt of the reſembling ſea-pies, except that they had black p mage and red bills and feet. While we were abſe with our guns, the people who ſtayed with the boa ſaw two of the Indians quarrel and fight; they beg the battle with their lances, but ſome old men inte poſed and took them away, leaving them to decide t difference, like Engliſhmen, with their fiſts. The boxed with great vigour and obſtinacy for ſome ti but by degrees all retired behind a little hill, ſo th our people could not ſee the event of the combat.

Monday 6 In the morning, the long-boat was ſent again trawl in the bay, and an officer, with the marines a party of men, to cut wood and haul the ſeine. T Indians on ſhore appeared very peaceable and ſubm ſive, and we had reaſon to believe that their habitati were at a conſiderable diſtance, for we ſaw no hou and found that they ſlept under the buſhes. The is probably a place to which they frequently reſort parties to gather ſhell-fiſh, of which it affords incre ble plenty; for wherever we went, whether upon t hills or in the vallies, the woods or the plains, we vaſt heaps of ſhells, often many waggon-loads to ther, ſome appearing to be very old, and others rece We ſaw no cultivation in this place, which had a ſolate and barren appearance; the tops of the hills w green, but nothing grew there except a large kind fern, the roots of which the natives had got toget in large quantities, in order to carry away with th In the evening Mr. Banks walked up the river, wh at the mouth looked fine and broad, but at the diſta of about two miles was not broad enough to cover foot, and the country inland was ſtill more barren th at the ſea-ſide. The ſeine and dredge were not more ceſsful to-day than yeſterday; but the Indians in ſo meaſure compenſated for the diſappointment, by bri

us ſeveral baſkets of fiſh, ſome dry, and ſome 1769. November.
ſh dreſſed; it was not indeed of the beſt, but I order-
it all to be bought, for the encouragement of trade.
On the 7th, the weather was ſo bad that none of us Tueſd. 7.
t the ſhip, nor did any of the Indians come on board.
On the 8th, I ſent a party of men on ſhore to wood Wedneſd. 8.
d water; and in the mean time many canoes came
, in one of which was our friend Toiava; ſoon af-
he was along-ſide of the ſhip, he ſaw two canoes
ming from the oppoſite ſide of the bay, upon which
haſted back again to the ſhore with all his canoes,
ing us that he was afraid of the people who were
ming. This was a further proof that the people of
s country were continually committing hoſtilities
inſt each other. In a ſhort time, however, he re-
ned, having diſcovered that the people who had
rmed him were not the ſame that he had ſuppoſed.
e natives that came to the ſhip this morning ſold
for a few pieces of cloth, as much fiſh, of the mac-
el kind, as ſerved the whole ſhip's company, and
y were as good as ever were eaten. At noon, this
, I obſerved the ſun's meridional zenith diſtance by
aſtronomical quadrant, which gave the latitude
° 47′ 43″ within the ſouth entrance of the bay.
Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on ſhore and col-
ted a great variety of plants, altogether unknown,
, not returning till the evening, had an opportunity
obſerving in what manner the Indians diſpoſed them-
es to paſs the night. They had no ſhelter but a
ſhrubs; the women and the children were ranged
ermoſt, or fartheſt from the ſea; the men lay in a
d of half circle round them, and their arms were ſet
againſt the trees cloſe by them, in a manner which
wed that they were afraid of an attack by ſome ene-
not far diſtant. It was alſo diſcovered, that they ac-
wledged neither Teratu, nor any other perſon as
r king. As in this particular they differed from all
people that we had ſeen upon other parts of the
t, we thought it poſſible that they might be a ſet of
aws, in a ſtate of rebellion againſt Teratu, and in
caſe they might have no ſettled habitations, or cul-
ted land in any part of the country.

On

1769. November. Thurſd. 9. On the 9th, at day-break, a great number of canoes came on board, loaded with mackerel of two ſorts, one exactly the ſame with thoſe caught in England, and the other ſomewhat different. We imagined the people had taken a large ſhoal, and brought us the overplus which they could not conſume, for they ſold them at a very low rate. They were, however, very welcome to us, ; at eight o'clock the ſhip had more fish on board than all her people could eat in three days, and before night the quantity was ſo much increaſed that every man who could get ſalt cured as many as would laſt him a month.

After an early breakfaſt, I went a-ſhore, with Mr. Green and proper inſtruments, to obſerve the tranſit of Mercury, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander being of the party. The weather had for ſome time been very thick, with much rain; but this day was ſo favourable, that not a cloud intervened during the whole tranſit. The obſervation of the ingreſs was made by Mr. Green alone, while I was employed in taking the ſun's altitude to aſcertain the time. It came on at $7^h\ 20'\ 5''$ apparent time; according to Mr. Green's obſervation the internal contact was at $12^h\ 8'\ 58''$, the external at 12^h $9\ 55''$ P. M. and according to mine, the internal contact was at $12^h\ 8'\ 54''$, and the external at $12^h\ 9'\ 48''$; the latitude of the place of obſervation was $30^\circ\ 48'\ 5''$. The latitude obſerved at noon was $36^\circ\ 48'\ 28''$. The mean of this and yeſterday's obſervation gives 36° $5\frac{1}{2}''$ S. the latitude of the place of obſervation; the variation of the compaſs was $11^\circ\ 0'$ E.

About noon, we were alarmed by the firing of a great gun from the ſhip; Mr. Gore, my ſecond lieutenant, was at this time commanding officer on board, and the account that he gave was this: While ſome ſmall canoes were trading with the people, two very large ones came up, full of men, one of them having on board forty-ſeven, all armed with pikes, darts, and ſtones, and apparently with a hoſtile intention. They appeared to be ſtrangers, and to be rather conſcious of ſuperiority over us by their numbers, than afraid of any weapons which could give us the ſuperiority over them. No attack, however, was made, probably because they learned from the people in the other canoes

h whom they immediately entered into conference, 1769. November.
at kind of an enemy they had to deal with. After
ttle time they began to trade, ſome of them offer-
their arms, and one of them a ſquare piece of cloth,
ch makes a part of their dreſs, called a Haahow;
ral of their weapons were purchaſed, and Mr. Gore
ing agreed for a Haahow, ſent down the price,
ch was a piece of Britiſh cloth, and expected his
haſe; but the Indian, as ſoon as he had got Mr.
e's cloth in his poſſeſſion, refuſed to part with his
, and put off the canoe: upon being threatened for
fraud, he and his companions began to ſing their
ſong in defiance, and ſhook their paddles; ſtill,
ever, they began no attack, only defying Mr. Gore
ke any remedy in his power, which ſo provoked
, that he levelled a muſquet, loaded with ball, at
offender, while he was holding the cloth in his
, and ſhot him dead. It would have been happy
e effect of a few ſmall ſhot had been tried upon
occaſion, which upon ſome others had been ſuc-
ul.

hen the Indian dropped, all the canoes put off to
diſtance; but as they did not go away, it was
ght they might ſtill meditate an attack. To ſe-
therefore a ſafe paſſage for the boat, which it was
ſſary to ſend on ſhore, a round ſhot was fired over
heads, which effectually anſwered their purpoſe,
ut them all to flight. When an account of what
happened was brought a-ſhore, our Indians were
ned, and drawing all together retreated in a body.
r a ſhort time, however, they returned, having
a more particular account of the affair, and inti-
d, that they thought the man who had been killed
ved his fate.

little before ſunſet the Indians retired to eat their
r, and we went with them to be ſpectators of the
t: it conſiſted of fiſh of different kinds, among
h were lobſters, and ſome birds of a ſpecies un-
n to us; theſe were either roaſted or baked. To
them, they faſtened them upon a ſmall ſtick,
h was ſtuck up in the ground, inclining towards
fire; and to bake them, they put them into a hole

1769. November. in the ground with hot ſtones, in the ſame manner as the people of Otaheite.

Among the natives that were aſſembled upon this occaſion, we ſaw a woman who, after their manner, was mourning for the death of her relation: ſhe ſat upon the ground near the reſt, who, one only excepted, ſeemed not at all to regard her. The tears conſtantly trickled down her cheeks, and ſhe repeated in a low, but very mournful voice, words which even Tupia did not attempt to underſtand: at the end of every ſentence ſhe cut her arms, her face, or her breaſt, with a ſhell that ſhe held in her hand, ſo that ſhe was almoſt covered with blood, and was indeed one of the moſt affecting ſpectacles that can be conceived. The cuts, however, did not appear to be ſo deep as are ſometimes made upon ſimilar occaſions, if we may judge by the ſcars which we ſaw upon the arms, thighs, breaſts, and cheeks of many of them, which, we were told, were the remains of wounds which they had inflicted upon themſelves, as teſtimonies of their affection and ſorrow.

Friday 10. The next day I went with two boats, accompanied by Mr. Banks and the other gentlemen, to examine a large river that empties itſelf into the head of the bay. We rowed about four or five miles up, and could have gone much farther if the weather had been favourable. It was here wider than at the mouth, and divided into many ſtreams by ſmall flat iſlands, which are covered with mangroves, and overflowed at high water. From theſe trees exudes a viſcous ſubſtance, which very much reſembles reſin: we found it firſt in ſmall lumps upon the ſea beach, and now ſaw it ſticking to the trees, by which we knew whence it came. We landed on the eaſt ſide of the river, where we ſaw a tree upon which ſeveral ſhags had built their neſts, and here therefore we determined to dine; twenty of the ſhags were killed, and, being broiled upon the ſpot, afforded an excellent meal. We then went upon the hills, from whence I thought I ſaw the head of the river. The ſhore on each ſide, as well as the iſlands in the middle, were covered with mangroves, and the ſand-banks abounded in cocklets and clams; in many places there were rock oyſters, and every where plenty of wild fowl, principally

ncipally ſhags, ducks, curlieus, and the ſea-pie, that been deſcribed before. We alſo ſaw fiſh in the ri- but of what kind we could not diſcover. The ntry on the eaſt ſide of this river is for the moſt part ren, and deſtitute of wood; but on the weſt it has etter aſpect, and in ſome places is adorned with s, but has in no part the appearance of cultivation. he entrance of the river, and for two or three miles there is good anchoring in four and five fathoms er, and places very convenient for laying a veſſel on e, where the tide riſes and falls ſeven feet at the full change of the moon. We could not determine ther any conſiderable ſtream of freſh water came this river out of the country, but we ſaw a number mall rivulets iſſue from the adjacent hills. Near the th of this river, on the eaſt ſide, we found a little an village, conſiſting of ſmall temporary ſheds, where anded, and were received by the people with the oſt kindneſs and hoſpitality: they treated us with a hell-fiſh of a moſt delicious taſte, ſomewhat like a le, which we eat hot from the coals. Near this e is a high point or peninſula, projecting into the , and upon it are the remains of a fort, which they Eppah or Heppah. The beſt engineer in Europe d not have choſen a ſituation better adapted to en- a ſmall number to defend themſelves againſt a er. The ſteepneſs of the cliffs renders it wholly ceſſible from the water, which incloſes it on three ; and, to the land, it is fortified by a ditch, and k raiſed on the inſide: from the top of the bank e bottom of the ditch is two-and-twenty feet; the on the outſide is fourteen feet deep, and its breadth proportion. The whole ſeemed to have been exe- with great judgment; and there had been a row ckets, or palliſadoes, both on the top of the bank long the brink of the ditch on the outſide; thoſe he outſide had been driven very deep into the nd, and were inclined towards the ditch, ſo as to ſt over it; but of theſe the thickeſt poſts only left, and upon them were evident marks of ſo that the place had probably been taken and de- ed by an enemy. If any occaſion ſhould make it ſſary for a ſhip to winter here, or ſtay any time,

1769. November.

1769. November. tents might be built in this place, which is sufficient spacious, with great convenience, and might easily made impregnable to the whole country.

Saturd. 11. On the eleventh, there was so much wind and that no canoe came off; but the long-boat was sent fetch oysters from one of the beds which had been covered the day before: the boat soon returned, deep laden, and the oysters, which were as good as e came from Colchester, and about the same size, w laid under the booms, and the ship's company did thing but eat them from the time they came on bo till night, when, as may reasonably be supposed, g part of them were expended; this, however, gave no concern, as we knew that not the boat only, the ship, might have been loaded almost in one tide, the beds are dry at half ebb.

Sunday 12. In the morning of Sunday the 12th, two ca came off full of people whom we had never seen bef but who appeared to have heard of us, by the ca which they used in approaching us. As we inv them to come along-side, with all the tokens of fri ship that we could shew, they ventured up, and of them came on board; the rest traded very fairly what they had; a small canoe also came from the o side of the bay, and sold us some very large fish, w they gave us to understand, they would have bro yesterday, having caught them the day before, but the wind was so high they could not venture to sea.

After breakfast I went with the pinnace and y accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, ove the north side of the bay, to take a view of the co try, and two fortified villages which we had disco ed at a distance. We landed near the smallest of th the situation of which was the most beautifully ro tic that can be imagined; it was built upon a s rock, detached from the main, and surrounded at h water. The whole body of this rock was perfor by an hollower arch, which possessed much the larg part of it; the top of the arch was above sixty feet p pendicular above the sea, which at high water flow through the bottom of it; the whole summit of rock above the arch was fenced round, after their

; but the area was not large enough to contain re than five or ſix houſes: it was acceſſible only by very narrow and ſteep path, by which the inha- nts, at our approach, came down, and invited us the place; but we refuſed, intending to viſit a ch more conſiderable ſort of the ſame kind at about ile's diſtance. We made ſome preſents, however, he women, and in the mean time we ſaw the inha- nts of the town, which we were going to, coming ards us in a body, men, women, and children, the number of about one hundred: when they e near enough to be heard, they waved their hands called out Horomai, after which they ſat down ong the buſhes near the beach. Theſe ceremonies, were told, were certain ſigns of their friendly diſpo- n. We advanced to the place where they were ng, and when we came up made them a few pre- s, and aſked leave to viſit their Heppah; they con- ed, with joy in their countenances, and immedi- y led the way. It is called WHARRETOUWA, and tuated upon a high promontory, or point, which jects into the ſea on the north ſide, and near the d of the bay. Two ſides of it are waſhed by the and theſe are altogether inacceſſible; two other s are to the land; up one of them, which is very p, lies the avenue from the beach, the other is flat open to the country upon the hill, which is a nar- ridge; the whole is incloſed by a palliſade about feet high, conſiſting of ſtrong pales bound toge- r with withes. The weak ſide next the land is alſo nded by a double ditch, the innermoſt of which a bank and an additional palliſade; the inner pal- des are upon the bank next the town, but at ſuch iſtance from the top of the bank, as to leave room men to walk and uſe their arms between them the inner ditch. The outermoſt palliſades are ween the two ditches, and driven obliquely into ground, ſo that their upper ends incline over the er ditch: the depth of this ditch, from the bottom he top, or crown of the bank, is four-and-twenty t. Cloſe within the innermoſt palliſade is a ſtage nty feet high, forty feet long, and ſix broad; it is ported by ſtrong poſts, and is intended as a ſtation

1769. November.

1769. November. for thoſe who defend the place, from which they may annoy the aſſailants by darts and ſtones, heaps of which lay ready for uſe. Another ſtage of the ſame kind commands the ſteep avenue from the beach, and ſtands alſo within the palliſade: On this ſide of the hill there are ſome little out-works and huts, not intended as advanced poſts, but as the habitations of people who for want of room could not be accommodated within the works, but who were, notwithſtanding, deſirous of placing themſelves under their protection. The palliſades, as has been obſerved already, run round the whole brow of the hill, as well towards the ſea as towards the land; but the ground within having originally been a mount, they have reduced it not to one level, but to ſeveral, riſing in ſtages one above the other, like an amphitheatre, each of which is incloſed within its ſeparate palliſade: they communicate with each other by narrow lanes, which might eaſily be ſtopped up; ſo that if an enemy ſhould force the outward palliſade, he would have others to carry before the place could be wholly reduced, ſuppoſing theſe places to be obſtinately defended one after the other. The only entrance is by a narrow paſſage, about twelve feet long, communicating with the ſteep aſcent from the beach: it paſſes under one of the fighting ſtages, and though we ſaw nothing like a door or gate-way, it may be eaſily barricaded in a manner that will make the forcing it a very dangerous and difficult undertaking. Upon the whole, this muſt be conſidered as a place of great ſtrength, in which a ſmall number of reſolute men may defend themſelves againſt all the force which a people with no other arms than thoſe that are in uſe here could bring againſt it. It ſeemed to be well furniſhed for a ſiege with every thing but water; we ſaw great quantities of fern-root, which they eat as bread, and dried fiſh piled up in heaps; but we could not perceive that they had any freſh water nearer than a brook, which runs cloſe under the foot of the hill: whether they have any means of getting it from this place during a ſiege, or whether they have any method of ſtoring it within the works in gourds or other veſſels, we could not learn; ſome reſource they certainly have with reſpect to this article, an indiſpenſable

iſpenſable neceſſary of life, for otherwiſe the laying dry proviſions could anſwer no purpoſe. Upon expreſſing a deſire to ſee their method of attack defence, one of the young men mounted a fight- ſtage, which they call Porava, and another went o the ditch: both he that was to defend the place, he that was to aſſault it, ſung the war ſong, and nced with the ſame frightful geſticulations that we ſeen uſed in more ſerious circumſtances, to work emſelves up into a degree of that mechanical fury, ich, among all uncivilized nations, is the neceſſary lude to a battle; for diſpaſſionate courage, a ngth of mind that can ſurmount the ſenſe of dan- , without a flow of animal ſpirits by which it is ex- guiſhed, ſeems to be the prerogative of thoſe who ve projects of more laſting importance, and a keener ſe of honour and diſgrace, than can be formed or t by men who have few pains or pleaſures beſides oſe of mere animal life, and ſcarcely any purpoſe but provide for the day that is paſſing over them, to ob- n plunder, or revenge an inſult: they will march ainſt each other indeed in cool blood, though they d it neceſſary to work themſelvs into paſſion before ey engage; as among us there have been many in- nces of people who have deliberately made them- lves drunk, that they might execute a project which ey formed when they were ſober, but which, while ey continued ſo, they did not dare to undertake.

1769. November.

On the ſide of the hill, near this incloſure, we ſaw out half an acre planted with gourds and ſweet po- toes, which was the only cultivation in the bay: un- r the foot of the point upon which this fortification ands, are two rocks, one juſt broken off from the ain, and the other not perfectly detached from it: ey are both ſmall, and ſeem more proper for the ha- tations of birds than men; yet there are houſes and laces of defence upon each of them. And we ſaw any other works of the ſame kind upon ſmall iſlands, cks, and ridges of hills, on different parts of the oaſt, beſides many fortified towns, which appeared to e much ſuperior to this.

The perpetual hoſtility in which theſe poor ſavages, ho have made every village a fort, muſt neceſſarily

1769. November. live, will account for there being ſo little of their land in a ſtate of cultivation; and, as miſchiefs very often reciprocally produce each other, it may perhaps appear, that there being ſo little land in a ſtate of cultivation, will account for their living in perpetual hoſtility. But it is very ſtrange, that the ſame invention and diligence which have been uſed in the conſtruction of places ſo admirably adapted to defence, almoſt without tools, ſhould not, when urged by the ſame neceſſity, have furniſhed them with a ſingle miſſile weapon except the lance, which is thrown by hand: they have no contrivance like a bow to diſcharge a dart, nor any thing like a ſling to aſſiſt them in throwing a ſtone; which is the more ſurpriſing, as the invention of ſlings, and bows and arrows, is much more obvious than of the works which theſe people conſtruct, and both theſe weapons are found among much ruder nations, and in almoſt every other part of the world. Beſides the long lance and Patoo-Patoo, which have been mentioned already; they have a ſtaff about five feet long, ſometimes pointed, like a Serjeant's halberd, ſometimes only tapering to a point at one end, and having the other end broad, and ſhaped ſomewhat like the blade of an oar. They have alſo another weapon, about a foot ſhorter than theſe, pointed at one end, and at the other ſhaped like an axe. The points of their long lances are barbed, and they handle them with ſuch ſtrength and agility, that we can match them with no weapon but a loaded muſquet.

After taking a ſlight view of the country, and loading both the boats with celery, which we found in great plenty near the beach, we returned from our excurſion, and about five o'clock in the evening got on board the ſhip.

Wedneſ. 15. On the 15th, I ſailed out of the bay, and at the ſame time had ſeveral canoes on board, in one of which was our friend Toiava, who ſaid, that as ſoon as we were gone he muſt repair to his Heppah or fort, becauſe the friends of the man who had been ſhot by Mr. Gore on the 9th, had threatened to revenge his death upon him, whom they had reproached as being our friend. Off the north point of the bay, I ſaw a great number of iſlands, of various extent, which lay

ſcattered

attered to the north-weſt, in a direction parallel with 1769. November.
e main as far as I could ſee. I ſteered north-eaſt for
e north-eaſtermoſt of theſe iſlands; but the wind
ming to the north-weſt, I was obliged to ſtand out
ſea.

To the bay which we had now left I gave the
me of MERCURY BAY, on account of the obſerva-
n which we had made there of the tranſit of that
anet over the ſun. It lies in latitude 36° 47′ S.
d in the longitude of 184° 4′ W. there are ſeveral
ands lying both to the ſouthward and northward of
and a ſmall iſland or rock in the middle of the en-
nce: within this iſland the depth of water no where
ceeds nine fathom: the beſt anchoring is in a ſandy
y, which lies juſt within the ſouth head, in five and
r fathom, bringing a high tower or rock, which
s without the head, in one with the head, or juſt
t in behind it. This place is very convenient both
r wooding and watering, and in the river there is an
menſe quantity of oyſters and other ſhell-fiſh: I
ve for this reaſon given it the name of OYSTER RI-
R. But for a ſhip that wants to ſtay here any time,
e beſt and ſafeſt place is in the river at the head of
e bay; which, from the number of mangrove trees
out it, I have called MANGROVE RIVER. To ſail
o this river, the ſouth ſhore muſt be kept all the
y on board. The country on the eaſt ſide of the
er and bay is very barren, its only produce being
n, and a few other plants that will grow in a poor
l. The land on the north-weſt ſide is covered with
od, and the ſoil being much more fertile, would
ubtleſs produce all the neceſſaries of life with proper
ltivation: it is not however ſo fertile as the lands
at we have ſeen to the ſouthward; nor do the inha-
ants, though numerous, make ſo good an appear-
ce: they have no plantations; their canoes are mean
d without ornament; they ſleep in the open air;
d ſay, that Teratu, whoſe ſovereignty they do not
knowledge, if he was to come among them, would
l them. This favoured our opinion of their being
tlaws; yet they told us, that they had Heppahs or
ong holds, to which they retired in time of immi-
nt danger.

We

1769. November. We found, thrown upon the ſhore, in ſeveral parts of this bay, great quantities of iron ſand, which is brought down by every little rivulet of freſh water that finds its way from the country; which is a demonſtration that there is ore of that metal not far inland: yet neither the inhabitants of this place not any other part of the coaſt that we have ſeen, know the uſe of iron, or ſet the leaſt value upon it; all of them preferring the moſt worthleſs and uſeleſs trifle, not only to a nail, but to any tool of that metal.

Before we left the bay, we cut upon one of the trees near the watering-place the ſhip's name, and that of the Commander, with the date of the year and month when we were there; and, after diſplaying the Engliſh colours, I took a formal poſſeſſion of it in the name of his Britannic Majeſty King George the Third.

CHAP. IV.

The Range from Mercury Bay to the Bay of Iſlands. An Expedition up the River Thames: Some Account of the Indians who inhabit its Banks, and the fine Timber that grows there. Several interviews with the Natives on different Parts of the Coaſt, and a Skirmiſh with them upon an Iſland.

Satur. 18. I Continued plying to windward two days to get under the land, and on the 18th, about ſeven in the morning, we were a-breaſt of a very conſpicuous promontory, being then in latitude 36° 26′, and in the direction of N. 48 W. from the north head of Mercury Bay or Point Mercury, which was diſtant nine leagues. upon this point ſtood many people, who ſeemed to take little notice of us, but talked together with great earneſtneſs. In about half an hour, ſeveral canoes put off from different places, and came towards the ſhip upon which the people on the point alſo launched a canoe, and about twenty of them came in her up with the others. When two of theſe canoes, in which there might be about ſixty men, came near enough to make themſelves heard, they ſung their war-ſong; but ſeeing

ng that we took little notice of it, they threw a few ones at us, and then rowed off towards the ſhore. We hoped that we had now done with them, but in a hort time they returned, as if with a fixed reſolution o provoke us into a battle, animating themſelves by heir ſong as they had done before. Tupia, without ny directions from us, went to the poop, and began o expoſtulate: he told them, that we had weapons hich would deſtroy them in a moment: and that, if ey ventured to attack us, we ſhould be obliged to uſe em. Upon this, they flouriſhed their weapons and ied out in their language, "Come on ſhore, and we will kill you all:" Well, ſaid Tupia, but why ould you moleſt us while we are at ſea? As we do ot wiſh to fight, we ſhall not accept your challenge come on ſhore; and here is no pretence for a quar-l, the ſea being no more your property than the ſhip. his eloquence of Tupia, though it greatly ſurprized , having given him no hints for the arguments he ed, had no effect upon our enemies, who very ſoon newed their battery: a muſquet was then fired rough one of their boats, and this was an argument ſufficient weight, for they immediately fell a-ſtern nd left us. 1769. November.

From the point, of which we were now a-breaſt, the nd trends W. ½ S. near a league, and then S. S. E. as r as we could ſee; and, beſides the iſlands that lay ithout us, we could ſee land round by the S. W. as r as the N. W. but whether this was the main or lands, we could not then determine: the fear of loſing e main, however, made me reſolve to follow its direc-n. With this view, I hauled round the point and eered to the ſouthward, but there being light airs all und the compaſs, we made but little progreſs.

About one o'clock, a breeze ſprung up at eaſt, which terwards came to N. E. and we ſteered along the ſhore by E. and S. S. E. having from twenty-five to eighteen thom.

At about half an hour after ſeven in the evening, ving run ſeven or eight leagues ſince noon, I anchor-in twenty-three fathom, not chuſing to run any far-er in the dark, as I had now land on both ſides, form-

ing

1769. November. ing the entrance of a ſtreight, bay, or river, lying S. by E. for on that point we could ſee no land.

Sunday 19. At day-break, on the 19th, the wind being ſtill favourable, we weighed and ſtood with an eaſy ſail up the inlet, keeping neareſt to the eaſt ſide. In a ſhort time two large canoes came off to us from the ſhore; the people on board ſaid, that they knew Toiava very well, and called Tupia by his name. I invited ſome of them on board; and as they knew they had nothing to fear from us, while they behaved honeſtly and peaceably, they immediately complied: I made each of them ſome preſents, and diſmiſſed them much gratified. Other canoes afterwards came up to us from a different ſide of the bay; and the people on board of theſe alſo mentioned the name of Toiava, and ſent a young man into the ſhip, who told us he was his grandſon, and he alſo was diſmiſſed with a preſent.

After having run about five leagues from the place where we had anchored the night before, our depth of water gradually decreaſed to ſix fathom; and not chooſing to go into leſs, as it was tide of flood, and the wind blew right up the inlet, I came to an anchor about the middle of the channel, which is near eleven miles over; after which I ſent two boats out to ſound, one on one ſide, and the other on the other.

The boats not having found above three feet more water than we were now in, I determined to go no farther with the ſhip, but to examine the head of the bay in the boats; for, as it appeared to run a good way inland, I thought this a favourable opportunity to examine the interior part of the country and its produce.

Monday 20. At day-break, therefore, I ſet out in the pinnace and long-boat, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia; and we found the inlet end in a river, about nine miles above the ſhip: into this river we entered with the firſt of the flood, and within three miles found the water perfectly freſh. Before we had proceeded more than one third of that diſtance, we found an Indian town, which was built upon a ſmall bank of dry ſand, but intirely ſurrounded by a deep mud, which poſſibly the inhabitants might conſider as a defence. Theſe people, as ſoon as they ſaw us, thronged to

to the banks, and invited us on ſhore. We accepted the invitation, and made them a viſit, notwithſtanding the mud. They received us with open arms, having heard of us from our good old friend Toiava; but our ſtay could not be long, as we had other objects of curioſity in view. We proceeded up the river till near noon, when we were fourteen miles within its entrance; and then, finding the face of the country to continue nearly the ſame, without any alteration in the courſe of the ſtream, which we had no hopes of tracing to its ſource, we landed on the weſt ſide, to take a view of the lofty trees which every where adorned its banks. They were of a kind that we had ſeen before, though only at a diſtance, both in Poverty-Bay and Hawke's-Bay. Before we had walked an hundred yards into the wood, we met with one of them which was nineteen feet eight inches in the girt, at the height of ſix feet above the ground: having a quadrant with me, I meaſured its height from the root to the firſt branch, and found it to be eighty-nine feet: it was as ſtrait as an arrow, and tapered but very little in proportion to its height, ſo that I judged there were three hundred and fifty-ſix feet of ſolid timber in it, excluſive of the branches. As we advanced, we ſaw many others that were ſtill larger; we cut down a young one, and the wood proved heavy and ſolid, not fit for maſts, but ſuch as would make the fineſt plank in the world. Our carpenter, who was with us, ſaid that the timber reſembled that of the pitch-pine, which is lightened by tapping; and poſſibly ſome ſuch method might be found to lighten theſe, and they would then be ſuch maſts as no country in Europe can produce. As the wood was ſwampy, we could not range far; but found many ſtout trees of other kinds, all of them utterly unknown to us, ſpecimens of which we brought away.

1769. November.

The river at this height is as broad as the Thames at Greenwich, and the tide of flood as ſtrong; it is not indeed quite ſo deep, but has water enough for veſſels of more than a middle ſize, and a bottom of mud, ſo ſoft that nothing could take damage by running a-ſhore.

About

1769. November. About three o'clock, we re-embarked, in order to return with the firſt of the ebb, and named the river the THAMES, it having ſome reſemblance to our own river of that name. In our return, the inhabitants of the village where we had been aſhore, ſeeing us take another channel, came off to us in their canoes, and trafficked with us in the moſt friendly manner, till they had diſpoſed of the few trifles they had. The tide of ebb juſt carried us out of the narrow part of the river, into the channel that ran up from the ſea, before it was dark; and we pulled hard to reach the ſhip, but meeting the flood, and a ſtrong breeze at N. N. W. with ſhowers of rain, we were obliged to deſiſt; and about midnight, we ran under the land, and came to a grappling, where we took ſuch reſt as our ſituation

Tueſday 21. would admit. At break of day, we ſet forward again, and it was paſt ſeven o'clock before we reached the ſhip. We were all extremely tired, but thought ourſelves happy to be on board; for before nine it blew ſo hard that the boat could not have rowed a-head, and muſt therefore either have gone a-ſhore, or taken ſhelter under it.

About three o'clock, having the tide of ebb, we took up our anchor, and made ſail, and plied down the river till eight in the evening, when we came to an anchor

Wedneſ. 22 again; early in the morning we made ſail with the firſt ebb, and kept plying till the flood obliged us once more to come to an anchor. As we had now only a light breeze, I went in the pinnace, accompanied by Dr. Solander, to the weſtern ſhore; but I ſaw nothing worthy of notice.

When I left the ſhip, many canoes were about it; Mr. Banks therefore choſe to ſtay on board, and traffic with the natives: they bartered their clothes and arms, chiefly for paper, and behaved with great friendſhip and honeſty. But while ſome of them were below with Mr. Banks, a young man who was upon the deck ſtole a half-minute glaſs which was in the binnacle, and was detected juſt as he was carrying it off. Mr. Hicks, who was commanding officer on board, took it into his head to puniſh him, by giving him twelve laſhes with a cat-o'nine-tails; and accordingly ordered him to be taken to the gang-way, and tied up

to

to the ſhrouds. When the other Indians who were on board ſaw him ſeized, they attempted to reſcue him; and being reſiſted, called for their arms, which were handed up from the canoes, and the people of one of them attempted to come up the ſhip's ſide. The tumult was heard by Mr. Banks, who, with Tupia, came haſtily upon the deck to ſee what had happened. The Indians immediately ran up to Tupia, who, finding Mr. Hicks inexorable, could only aſſure them, that nothing was intended againſt the life of their companion; but that it was neceſſary he ſhould ſuffer ſome puniſhment for his offence, which being explained to them, they ſeemed to be ſatisfied. The puniſhment was then inflicted, and as ſoon as the criminal was unbound, an old man among the ſpectators, who was ſuppoſed to be his father, gave him a hearty beating, and ſent him down into his canoe. All the canoes then dropped aſtern, and the people ſaid that they were afraid to come any more near the ſhip: after much perſuaſion, however, they ventured back again: but their chearful confidence was at an end, and their ſtay was ſhort; they promiſed indeed, at their departure, to return with ſome fiſh, but we ſaw no more of them. 1769. November.

On the 23d, the wind being contrary, we kept plying down the river, and at ſeven in the evening, got without the N. W. point of the iſlands lying on the weſt ſide of it. The weather being bad, night coming on, and having land on every ſide of us, I thought it moſt adviſable to tack, and ſtretch in under the point, where we anchored in nineteen fathom. At five in the morning of the 24th, we weighed, and made ſail to the N. W. under our courſes and double-reefed top-ſails, the wind being at S. W. by W. and W. S. W. a ſtrong gale and ſqually. As the gale would not permit us to come near the land, we had but a ſlight and diſtant view of it from the time when we got under ſail till noon, during a run of twelve leagues, but we never once loſt ſight of it. At this time, our latitude, by obſervation, was 36° 15′ 20″, we were not above two miles from a point of land on the main, and three leagues and an half from a very high iſland, which bore N. E. by E. in this ſituation we had twenty-ſix fathom water: the fartheſt point on the main that we could Thurſd. 23. Friday 24.

1769. November could ſee bore N. W. but we could perceive ſeveral ſmall iſlands lying to the north of that direction. The point of land of which we were now a-reaſt, and which I called POINT RODNEY, is the N. W. extremity of the river Thames; for under that name I comprehend the deep bay which terminates in the freſh-water ſtream, and the N. E. extremity is the promontory which we paſſed when we entered it, and which I called CAPE COLVILLE, in honour of the Right Hon. Lord Colville.

Cape Colville lies in latitude 36° 26′, longitude 194° 27′; it riſes directly from the ſea to a conſiderable height, and is remarkable for a lofty rock, which ſtands to the pitch of the point, and may be diſtinguiſhed at a very great diſtance. From the ſouth point of this Cape the river runs in a direct line S. by E. and is no where leſs than three leagues broad for the diſtance of fourteen leagues above the Cape, and there it is contracted to a narrow ſtream, but continues the ſame courſe through a low flat country, or broad valley, which lies parallel with the ſea-coaſt, and the end of which we could not ſee. On the eaſt ſide of the broad part of this river the land is tolerably high and hilly; on the weſt ſide it is rather low, but the whole is covered with verdure and wood, and has the appearance of great fertility, though there were but a few ſmall ſpots which had been cultivated. At the entrance of the narrow part of the river the land is covered with mangroves and other ſhrubs; but farther there are immenſe woods of perhaps the fineſt timber in the world, of which ſome account has already been given: in ſeveral places the wood extends to the very edge of the water, and where it is at a little diſtance, the intermediate ſpace is marſhy, like ſome part of the banks of the Thames in England: it is probable that the river contains plenty of fiſh, for we ſaw poles ſtuck up in many places to ſet nets for catching them, but of what kinds I do not know. The greateſt depth of water that we found in this river was ſix-and-twenty fathom, which gradually decreaſed to one fathom and an half: in the mouth of the freſh-water ſtream it is from four to three fathom, but there are large flats and ſand banks lying before it. A

ſhip

of moderate draught may, notwithſtanding, go a 1769. November.
g way up this river with a flowing tide, for it riſes
pendicularly near ten feet, and at the full and change
the moon, it is high water about nine o'clock.

Six leagues within Cape Colville, under the eaſtern
re, are ſeveral ſmall iſlands, which, together with
main, ſeem to form good harbours; and oppoſite
theſe iſlands, under the weſtern ſhore, lie other
nds, by which it is alſo probable that good harbours
y be formed: but if there are no harbours about
river, there is good anchoring in every part of it
ere the depth of water is ſufficient, for it is defended
m the ſea by a chain of iſlands of different extent,
ich lie croſs the mouth of it, and which I have, for
t reaſon, called BARRIER ISLANDS: they ſtretch
W. and S. E. ten leagues. The ſouth end of the
in lies N. E. between two and three leagues from
pe Colville; and the north end lies N. E. four leagues
a half from Point Rodney. Point Rodney lies
N. W. nine leagues from Cape Colville, in latitude
1′ S. longitude 184° 53′ W.

The natives reſiding about this river do not appear
be numerous, conſidering the great extent of the
ntry. But they are a ſtrong, well-made, and active
ple, and all of them paint their bodies with red
re and oil from head to foot, which we had not ſeen
ore. Their canoes were large and well-built, and
rned with carving, in as good a taſte as any that we
ſeen upon the coaſt.

We continued to ſtand along the ſhore till night,
h the main land on one ſide, and the iſlands on the
er, and then anchored in a bay, with fourteen fathoms
a ſandy bottom. We had no ſooner come to an an-
or, than we tried our lines, and, in a ſhort time
ght near one hundred fiſh, which the people called
-bream; they weighed from ſix to eight pounds
iece, and conſequently would ſupply the whole ſhip's
mpany with food for two days. From the ſucceſs of
lines here, we called the place BREAM BAY: the
o points that form it lie north and ſouth, five leagues
m each other; it is every where of a good breadth,
between three and four leagues deep: at the bot-
n of it there appears to be a river of freſh water.

1769. November. The north head of the bay called BREAM HEAD, is high land, and remarkable for ſeveral pointed rocks, which ſtand in a range upon the top of it: it may alſo be known by ſome ſmall iſlands which lie before it, called the HEN AND CHICKENS, one of which is high, and terminates in two peaks. It lies in latitude 35° 46′ S. and at the diſtance of ſeventeen leagues and an half from Cape Colville, in the direction of N. 41 W.

The land between Point Rodney and Bream Head, an extent of ten leagues, is low, and wooded in tufts, with white ſand-banks between the ſea and the firm land. We ſaw no inhabitants, but many fires in the night; and where there are fires, there are always people.

Saturday 25. At day-break, on the 25th, we left the bay, and ſteered along ſhore to the northward: we found the variation of the compaſs to be 12° 42′ E. At noon, our latitude was 36° 36′ S. Bream Head bore ſouth, diſtant ten miles; and we ſaw ſome ſmall iſlands, to which I gave the name of the POOR KNIGHTS, at N. E. by N. diſtant three leagues: the northermoſt land in ſight bore N. N. W. we were in this place at the diſtance of two miles from the ſhore, and had twenty-ſix fathoms water.

The country appeared low, but well covered with wood: we ſaw ſome ſtraggling houſes, three or four fortified towns, and near them a large quantity of cultivated land.

In the evening, ſeven large canoes came off to us, with about two hundred men: ſome of them came on board, and ſaid that they had heard of us. To two of them, who appeared to be Chiefs, I gave preſents; but when theſe were gone out of the ſhip, the others became exceedingly troubleſome. Some of thoſe in the canoes began to trade, and, according to their cuſtom, to cheat, by refuſing to deliver what had been bought after they had received the price: among theſe was one who had received an old pair of black breeches, which upon a few ſmall ſhot, being fired at him, he threw into the ſea. All the boats ſoon after paddled off to ſome diſtance, and when they thought they were out of reach, they began to defy us, by ſinging their ſongs and brandiſhing their weapons. We thought it adviſe-

able

able to intimidate them, as well for their ſake as our own, and therefore fired firſt ſome ſmall arms, and then round ſhot over their heads: the laſt put them in a terrible fright, though they received no damage, except by over-heating themſelves in paddling away, which they did with aſtoniſhing expedition. 1769. November.

In the night we had variable light airs; but towards the morning a breeze ſprung up at S. and afterwards at S. E. with which we proceeded ſlowly to the northward, along the ſhore. Sund. 26.

Between ſix and ſeven o'clock two canoes came off, and told us that they had heard of yeſterday's adventure; notwithſtanding which the people came on board, and traded very quietly and honeſtly for whatever they had: ſoon after two canoes came off from a more diſtant part of the ſhore; theſe were of a much larger ſize, and full of people: when they came near, they called off the other canoes which were along-ſide of the ſhip, and after a ſhort conference they all came up together. The ſtrangers appeared to be perſons of a ſuperior rank; their canoes were well carved with many ornaments, and they had with them a great variety of weapons: they had patoo-patoos both of ſtone and whalebone, upon which they appeared to ſet a great value; they had alſo ribs of whale, of which we had before ſeen imitations in wood, carved and adorned with tufts of dog's hair. Their complexions were browner than thoſe of the people we had ſeen to the ſouthward, and their bodies and faces were more marked with the black ſtains which they call Amoco: they had a broad ſpiral on each buttock; and the thighs of many of them were almoſt intirely black, ſome narrow lines only being left untouched, ſo that at firſt ſight they appeared to wear ſtriped breeches. With reſpect to the Amoco, every different tribe ſeemed to have a different cuſtom; for all the men, in ſome canoes, ſeemed to be almoſt covered with it, and thoſe in others had ſcarcely a ſtain except on the lips, which were black in all of them without a ſingle exception. Theſe gentlemen, for a long time, refuſed to part with any of their weapons, whatever was offered for them; at laſt, however, one of them produced a piece of

1769. November. talc, wrought into the ſhape of an axe, and agreed to ſell it for a piece of cloth: the cloth was handed over the ſhip's ſide, but his honour immediately put off his canoe with the axe. We had recourſe to our uſual expedient, and fired a muſket ball over the canoe, upon which it put back to the ſhip, and the piece of cloth was returned; all the boats then went a-ſhore, without offering any further intercourſe.

At noon, the main land extended from S. by E. to N. W. by W. a remarkable point of land bearing W. diſtant four or five miles; at three we paſſed it, and I gave it the name of CAPE BRET, in honour of Sir Piercy. The land of this Cape is conſiderably higher than any part of the adjacent coaſt: at the point of it is a high round hillock, and N. E. by N. at the diſtance of about a mile, is a ſmall high iſland or rock, which, like ſeveral that have already been deſcribed, was perforated quite through, ſo as to appear like the arch of a bridge. This Cape, or at leaſt ſome part of it, is by the natives called MOTUGOGOGO, and it lies in latitude 35° 10′ 30′ S. longitude 185° 25′ W. On the weſt ſide of it is a large and pretty deep bay, lying S. W. by W. in which there appeared to be ſeveral ſmall iſlands: the point that forms the N. W. entrance lies W. ¼ N. at the diſtance of three or four leagues from Cape Bret, and I diſtinguiſhed it by the name of POINT POCOCKE. On the weſt ſide of the bay we ſaw ſeveral villages, both upon iſlands and the main, and ſeveral very large canoes came off to us, full of people, who made a better appearance than any we had ſeen yet: they were all ſtout and well-made; their hair, which was black, was tied up in a bunch on the crown of their heads, and ſtuck with white feathers. In each of the canoes, were two or three Chiefs, whoſe habits were of the beſt ſort of cloth, and covered with dog's ſkin, ſo as to make an agreeable appearance; moſt of theſe people were marked with the Amoco, like those who had been along-ſide of us before: their manner of trading was alſo equally fraudulent; and the officers neglecting either to puniſh or fright them, one of the ſhipmen, who had been defrauded in his bargain, had recourſe, for revenge, to an expedient which was equally ludicrous

ridicrous and ſevere; he got a fiſhing-line, and when he man who had cheated him was cloſe under the ſhip's de in his canoe, he heaved the lead with ſo good an im, that the hook caught him by the back-ſide; he hen pulled the line, and the man holding back, the ook broke in the ſhank, and the beard was left ſtick- g in the fleſh. 1769. November.

During the courſe of this day, though we did not nge more than ſix or eight leagues of the coaſt, we d along-ſide and on board the ſhip between four and ve hundred of the natives, which is a proof that this rt of the country is well inhabited.

At eight o'clock the next morning, we were within mile of a group of iſlands, which lie cloſe under the ain, at the diſtance of two-and-twenty miles from ape Bret, in the direction of N. W. by W. ½ W. t this place, having but little wind, we lay about two ours, during which time ſeveral canoes came off, and ld us ſome fiſh, which we called Cavalles, and for at reaſon I gave the ſame name to the iſlands. Theſe eople were very inſolent, frequently threatening us, ven while they were ſelling their fiſh; and when ſome ore canoes came up, they began to pelt us with ſtones. ome ſmall ſhot were then fired, and hit one of them hile he had a ſtone in his hand, in the very action of rowing it into the ſhip; they did not, however, de- ſt, till ſome others had been wounded, and then they ent away, and we ſtood off to ſea. Mond. 27.

The wind being directly againſt us, we kept plying windward till the 29th, when we had rather loſt an gained ground; I therefore bore up for a bay hich lies to the weſtward of Cape Bret; at this time was about two leagues to leeward of us; and at out eleven o'clock we anchored under the ſouth-weſt de of one of the many iſlands which line it on the uth-eaſt, in four fathoms and a half water; we ſhoal- our water to this depth all at once, and if this had t happened, I ſhould not have come to an anchor ſo on. The maſter was immediately ſent out with two ats to ſound, and he ſoon diſcovered that we had got on a bank, which runs out from the north-weſt end Wedneſ. 29.

1769. November. of the iſland, and that on the outſide of it there was from eight to ten fathoms.

In the mean time the natives, to the number of near four hundred, crowded upon us in their canoes, and ſome of them were admitted on board. To one, who ſeemed to be a Chief, I gave a piece of broad-cloth, and diſtributed ſome trifling preſents among the reſt. I perceived that ſome of theſe people had been about the ſhip when ſhe was off at ſea, and that they knew the power of our fire-arms, for the very ſight of a gun threw them into manifeſt confuſion: under this impreſſion they traded very fairly; but the people in one of the canoes took the opportunity of our being at dinner to tow away our buoy. A muſquet was fired over them without effect; we then endeavoured to reach them with ſome ſmall ſhot, but they were too far off. By this time they had got the buoy into their canoe, and we were obliged to fire a muſket at them with ball; this hit one of them, and they immediately threw the buoy over-board; a round ſhot was then fired over them, which ſtruck the water and went a-ſhore. Two or three of the canoes immediately landed their people, who ran about the beach, as we imagined, in ſearch of the ball. Tupia called to them, and aſſured them, that while they were honeſt they ſhould be ſafe, and with a little perſuaſion many of them returned to the ſhip, and their behaviour was ſuch, as left us no reaſon to ſuſpect that they intended to give us any farther trouble.

After the ſhip was removed into deeper water, and properly ſecured, I went with the pinnace and yawl, manned and armed, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, and landed upon the iſland, which was about three quarters of a mile diſtant. We obſerved that the canoes which were about the ſhip, did not follow us upon our leaving her, which we thought a good ſign; but we had no ſooner landed than they crowded to different parts of the iſland, and came on ſhore. We were in a little cove, and in a few minutes were ſurrounded by two or three hundred people, ſome ruſhing from behind the heads of the cove, and others appearing on the tops of the hills: they were

were all armed, but they came on in ſo confuſed and ſtraggling a manner, that we ſcarcely ſuſpected they meant us any harm, and we were determined that hoſtilities ſhould not begin on our part. We marched towards them, and then drew a line upon the ſand between them and us, which we gave them to underſtand they were not to paſs. At firſt they continued quiet, but their weapons were held ready to ſtrike, and they ſeemed to be rather irreſolute than peaceable. While we remained in this ſtate of ſuſpenſe, another party of Indians came up, and now growing more bold as their number increaſed, they began the dance and ſong, which are their preludes to a battle; ſtill, however, they delayed the attack, but a party ran to each of our boats, and attempted to draw them on ſhore: this ſeemed to be the ſignal, for the people about us at the ſame time began to preſs in upon our line. Our ſituation was now become too critical for us to remain longer inactive; I therefore diſcharged my muſket, which was loaded with ſmall ſhot, at one of the forwardeſt, and Mr. Banks and two of the men fired immediately afterwards. This made them fall back in ſome confuſion; but one of the Chiefs, who was at the diſtance of about twenty yards, rallied them, and running forward waving his patoo-patoo, and calling loudly to his companions, led him to the charge. Dr. Solander, whoſe piece was not yet diſcharged, fired at this champion, who ſtopped ſhort upon feeling the ſhot, and then ran away with the reſt. They did not, however, diſperſe, but got together upon a riſing ground, and ſeemed only to want ſome leader of reſolution to renew their attack. As they were now beyond the reach of ſmall-ſhot, we fired with ball; but as none of them took place, they ſtill continued in a body, and in this ſituation we remained about a quarter of an hour. In the mean time the ſhip, from whence a much greater number of Indians were ſeen than could be diſcovered in our ſituation, brought her broad-ſide to bear, and intirely diſperſed them, by firing a few ſhot over their heads. In this ſkirmiſh only two of the Indians were hurt with the ſmall-ſhot, and not a ſingle life was loſt, which would not have been the caſe if I had not reſtrained the men, who, either from fear or a love of miſchief,

1769. November.

1769. November. ſhewed as much impatience to deſtroy them as a ſportſman to kill his game. When we were in quiet poſſeſſion of our cove we laid down our arms, and began to gather celery, which grew here in great plenty. After a little time, we recollected to have ſeen ſome of the people hide themſelves in a cave of one of the rocks, we therefore went towards the place, when an old Indian, who proved to be the Chief that I had preſented with a piece of broad-cloth in the morning, came out with his wife and his brother, and, in a ſupplicating poſture, put themſelves under our protection. We ſpoke kindly to them, and the old man then told us that he had another brother, who was one of thoſe that had been wounded by the ſmall-ſhot, and inquired, with much ſolicitude and concern, if he would die. We aſſured him that he would not, and at the ſame time put into his hand both a muſket-ball and ſome ſmall-ſhot, telling him, that thoſe only who were wounded with the ball would die, and that the others would recover; at the ſame time aſſuring him, that if we were attacked again we ſhould certainly defend ourſelves with the ball, which would wound them mortally. Having now taken courage, they came and ſat down by us; and, as tokens of our perfect amity, we made them preſents of ſuch trifles as we happened to have about us.

Soon after we re-embarked in our boats, and having rowed to another cove in the ſame iſland, climbed a neighbouring hill, which commanded the country to a conſiderable diſtance. The proſpect was very uncommon and romantic, conſiſting of innumerable iſlands, which formed as many harbours, where the water was as ſmooth as a mill-pool. We ſaw alſo many towns, ſcattered houſes, and plantations, the country being much more populous than any we had ſeen. One of the towns was very near us, from which many of the Indians advanced, taking great pains to ſhew us that they were unarmed, and in their geſtures and countenances expreſſing great meekneſs and humility. In the mean time ſome of our people, who, when the Indians were to be puniſhed for a fraud, aſſumed the inexorable juſtice of a Lycurgus, thought fit to break into one of their plantations and dig up ſome potatoes.

For

or this offence I ordered each of them to be punished with twelve lashes, after which two of them were discharged; but the third, insisting that it was no crime in an Englishman to plunder an Indian plantation, though it was a crime in an Indian to defraud an Englishman of a nail, I ordered him back into his confinement, from which I would not release him till he had received six lashes more. 1769. November.

On the 30th, there being a dead calm, and no probability of our getting to sea, I sent the master with two boats to sound the harbour; and all the forenoon several canoes about the ship, who traded in a very fair and friendly manner. In the evening we went ashore upon the main, where the people received us very cordially; but we found nothing worthy of notice. Thursd. 30.

In this bay we were detained by contrary winds and calms several days, during which time our intercourse with the natives was continued in the most peaceable and friendly manner, they being frequently about the ship, and we a-shore, both upon the islands and the main. In one of our visits to the continent, an old man shewed us the instrument they use in staining their bodies, which exactly resembled those that were employed for the same purpose at Otaheite. We saw also the man who was wounded in attempting to steal our buoy: the ball had passed through the fleshy part of his arm, and grazed his breast; but the wound, under the care of Nature, the best surgeon, and a simple diet, the best nurse, was in a good state, and seemed to give the patient neither pain nor apprehension. We saw also the brother of our old Chief, who had been wounded with small-shot in our skirmish: they had struck his thigh obliquely, and though several of them were still in the flesh, the wound seemed to be attended with neither danger nor pain. We found among their plantations the morus papyrifera, of which the people, as well as those of Otaheite, make cloth; but here the plant seems to be rare, and we saw no pieces of the cloth large enough for any use, but to wear by way of ornament in their ears.

Having

1769. November. Having one day landed in a very diſtant part of the bay, the people immediately fled, except one old man, who accompanied us wherever we went, and ſeemed much pleaſed with the little preſents we made him. We came at laſt to a little fort, built upon a ſmall rock, which at high water was ſurrounded by the ſea, and acceſſible only by a ladder. We perceived that he eyed us with a kind of reſtleſs ſolicitude as we approached it, and upon our expreſſing a deſire to enter it, he told us that his wife was there. He ſaw that our curioſity was not diminiſhed by this intelligence, and, after ſome heſitation, he ſaid, if we would promiſe to offer no indecency he would accompany us: our promiſe was readily given, and he immediately led the way. The ladder conſiſted of ſteps faſtened to a pole, but we found the aſcent both difficult and dangerous. When we entered we found three women, who, the moment they ſaw us, burſt into tears of terror and ſurprize; ſome kind words, and a few preſents, ſoon removed their apprehenſions, and put them into good humour. We examined the houſe of our old friend, and by his intereſt two others, which were all that the fortification contained, and having diſtributed a few more preſents, we parted with mutual ſatisfaction.

December. Tueſday 5. At four o'clock in the morning of the 5th of December, we weighed with a light breeze; but it being variable, with frequent calms, we made little way. We kept turning out of the bay till the afternoon, and about ten o'clock we were ſuddenly becalmed, ſo that the ſhip would neither wear nor ſtay; and the tide or current ſetting ſtrong, ſhe drove towards land ſo faſt, that before any meaſures could be taken for her ſecurity, ſhe was within a cable's length of the breakers; we had thirteen fathoms water, but the ground was ſo foul that we did not dare to drop our anchor; the pinnace therefore was immediately hoiſted out to take the ſhip in tow, and the men, ſenſible of their danger, exerting themſelves to the utmoſt, and a faint breeze ſpringing up off the land, we perceived with unſpeakable joy that ſhe made head way, after having been ſo near the ſhore that Tupia, who was not ſenſible of our hair's breadth eſcape, was at this very time converſing with the people upon the beach, whoſe voices

oices were diſtinctly heard, notwithſtanding the roar of the breakers. We now thought all danger was over, but about an hour afterwards, juſt as the man in the chains had cried "ſeventeen fathom," the ſhip ſtruck. The ſhock threw us all into the utmoſt conſternation; Mr. Banks, who had undreſſed himſelf and was ſtepping into bed, ran haſtily up to the deck, and the man in the chains called out "five fathom;" by this time, the rock on which we had ſtruck being to windward, the ſhip went off without having received the leaſt damage, and the water very ſoon deepened to twenty fathom. 1769. December.

This rock lies half a mile W. N. W. of the northermoſt or outermoſt iſland on the ſouth-eaſt ſide of the bay. We had light airs from the land, with calms, till one o'clock the next morning, when we got out of the bay, and a breeze ſpringing up at N.N. W. we ſtood out to ſea. Wedneſ. 6.

This bay, as I have before obſerved, lies on the eaſt ſide of Cape Bret, and I named it the BAY OF ISLANDS, from the great number of iſlands which line its ſhores, and form ſeveral harbours equally ſafe and commodious, where there is room and depth for any number of ſhipping. That in which we lay is on the ſouth-weſt ſide of the ſouth-weſtermoſt iſland, called MATUARO, on the ſouth-eaſt ſide of the bay. I have made no accurate ſurvey of this bay, being diſcouraged by the time it would coſt me; I thought alſo that it was ſufficient to be able to affirm that it afforded us good anchorage, and refreſhment of every kind. It was not the ſeaſon for roots, but we had plenty of fiſh, moſt of which, however, we purchaſed of the natives, as we could catch very little ourſelves either with net or line. When we ſhewed the natives our ſeine, which ſuch as the King's ſhips are generally furniſhed with, they laughed at it, and in triumph produced their own, which was indeed of an enormous ſize, and made of the rind of graſs, which is very ſtrong: it was five fathoms deep, and by the room it took up, it could not be leſs than three or four hundred fathoms long. Fiſhing ſeems indeed to be the chief buſineſs of life in this part of the country; we ſaw about all their towns a great number of nets, laid in heaps like hay-cocks, and

1769. December. and covered with a thatch to keep them from the weather, and we ſcarcely entered a houſe where ſome of the people were not employed in making them. The fiſh we procured here were ſharks, ſting-rays, ſea-bream, mullet, mackrel, and ſome others.

The inhabitants in this bay are far more numerous than in any other part of the country that we had before viſited; it did not appear to us that they were united under one head, and tho' their towns were fortified, they ſeemed to live together in perfect amity.

It is high-water in this bay, at the full and change of the moon, about eight o'clock, and the tide then riſes from ſix to eight feet perpendicularly. It appears, from ſuch obſervations as I was able to make of the tides upon the ſea-coaſt, that the flood comes from the ſouthward; and I have reaſon to think that there is a current which comes from the weſtward, and ſets along the ſhore to S. E. or S. S. E. as the land happens to lie.

CHAP. V.

Range from the Bay of Iſlands, round North-Cape to Queen Charlotte's Sound; and a Deſcription of that Part of the Coaſt.

Thurſ. 7. ON Thurſday the 7th of December, at noon, Cape Bret bore S. S. E. ½ E. diſtant ten miles, and our latitude, by obſervation, was 34° 59′ S. Soon after we made ſeveral obſervations of the ſun and moon, the reſult of which made our longitude 185° 36′ W. The wind being againſt us, we had made but little way. In the afternoon we ſtood in-ſhore, and fetched cloſe under the Cavalles, from which iſlands the main trends W. by N. ſeveral canoes put off and followed us, but a light breeze ſpringing up, I did not chooſe to wait for them. I kept ſtanding to the W. N. W. and

Friday 8. N. W. till the next morning ten o'clock, when I tacked and ſtood in for the ſhore, from which we were about five leagues diſtant. At noon, the weſtermoſt land in ſight bore W. by S. and was about four leagues diſtant. In the afternoon, we had a gentle breeze to the weſt-

ich in the evening came to the ſouth, and continu- 1769.
ſo all night, by day-light brought us pretty well in December.
h the land, ſeven leagues to the weſtward of the Saturd. 9.
valles, where we found a deep bay running in S.W.
W. and W. S. W. the bottom of which we could
juſt ſee, and there the land appeared to be low and
el. To this bay, which I called DOUBTLESS BAY,
entrance is formed by two points, which lie W.N.W.
E. S. E and are five miles diſtant from each other.
e wind not permitting us to look in here, we ſteered
the weſtermoſt land in ſight, which bore from us
N. W. about three leagues, but before we got the
gth of it, it fell calm.

While we lay becalmed, ſeveral canoes came off to
but the people having heard of our guns, it was
without great difficulty that they were perſuaded
ome under our ſtern: after having bought ſome of
ir cloaths, as well as their fiſh, we began to make
uiries concerning their country, and learned, by
help of Tupia, that, at the diſtance of three days
ing in their canoes, at a place called MOORE-
ENNUA, the land would take a ſhort turn to the
thward, and from thence extend more to the weſt.
is place we concluded to be the land diſcovered by
ſman, which he called CAPE MARIA VAN DIE-
N, and finding theſe people ſo intelligent, we in-
red farther, if they knew of any country beſides
ir own? They anſwered, that they never had viſited
other, but that their anceſtors had told them, that
he N. W. by N. or N. N. W. there was a country
great extent, called ULIMAROA, to which ſome
ple had ſailed in a very large canoe; that only
t of them returned, and reported, that, after a paſ-
e of a month, they had ſeen a country where the
ple eat hogs. Tupia then inquired whether theſe
enturers brought any hogs with them when they
rned? they ſaid, No. Then, replied Tupia, your
y is certainly falſe, for it cannot be believed that men
o came back from an expedition without hogs, had
r viſited a country where hogs were to be procured,
s however remarkable, notwithſtanding the ſhrewd-
s of Tupia's objection, that when they mentioned
hogs,

1769. December. hogs, it was not by deſcription but by name, calling them Booah, the name which is given them in the South-Sea iſlands; but if the animal had been wholly unknown to them, and they had had no communication with people to whom it was known, they could not poſſibly have been acquainted with the name.

About ten o'clock at night, a breeze ſprung up at W. N. W. with which we ſtood off north; and at

Sunday 10. noon the next day, the Cavalles bore S. E. by E. diſtant eight leagues; the entrance of Doubtleſs Bay S. by W. diſtant three leagues; and the north-weſt extremity of the land in ſight, which we judged to be the main, bore N. W. by W. our latitude by obſervation was 34° 44′ S. In the evening, we found the variation to be 12° 41′ E. by the azimuth, and 12° 40′ by the amplitude.

Monday 11. Early in the morning, we ſtood in with the land ſeven leagues to the weſtward of Doubtleſs Bay, the bottom of which is not far diſtant from the bottom of another large bay, which the ſhore forms at this place, being ſeparated only by a low neck of land, which juts out into a peninſula that I have called KNUCKLE POINT. About the middle of this bay, which we called SANDY BAY, is a high mountain, ſtanding upon a diſtant ſhore, to which I gave the name of MOUNT CAMEL. The latitude here is 34° 51′ S. and longitude 186° 50′. We had twenty-four and twenty-five fathom water, with a good bottom; but there ſeems to be nothing in this bay that can induce a ſhip to put into it; for the land about it is utterly barren and deſolate, and, except Mount Camel, the ſituation is low, the ſoil appears to be nothing but white ſand, thrown up in low irregular hills and narrow ridges, lying parallel with the ſhore. But barren and deſolate as this place is, it is not without inhabitants: we ſaw one village on the weſt ſide of Mount Camel, and another on the eaſt ſide; we ſaw alſo five canoes full of people who pulled after the ſhip, but could not come up with us. At nine o'clock, we tacked and ſtood to the northward; and at noon the Cavalles bore S. E. by E. diſtant thirteen leagues; the north extremity of the land in ſight making like an iſland, bore N. W. ½ N. diſtant

ſtant nine leagues, and Mount Camel bore S. W. by diſtance ſix leagues. 1769. December.

The wind being contrary, we kept plying north- rd till five o'clock in the evening of the 12th, when Tueſd. 12. ving made very little way, we tacked and ſtood to e north-eaſt, being two leagues to the northward of ount Camel, and about a mile and an half from the re, in which ſituation we had two-and-twenty fa- oms water.

At ten it began to blow and rain, which brought Wedneſ. 13. nder double-reefed top-ſails; at twelve we tacked, ſtood to the weſtward till ſeven the next morning, en we tacked and ſtood again to the N. E. being ut a mile to the windward of the place where we ked laſt night. Soon after it blew very hard at N. W. with heavy ſqualls and much rain, which ught us under our courſes, and ſplit the main-top- ſo that we were obliged to unbend it, and bend ther. At ten it became more moderate, and we ſet top-ſails double reefed. At noon, having ſtrong gales heavy weather, we tacked and ſtood to the weſt- d, and had no land in ſight for the firſt time ſince had been upon this coaſt.

We had now ſtrong gales at W. and W. S. W. and alf an hour paſt three we tacked and ſtood to the thward. Soon after a ſmall iſland, lying off Knuckle nt, bore S. ½ W. diſtant half a league. In the ning, having ſplit the fore and mizen top-ſails, we ught the ſhip under her courſes; and at midnight wore, and ſtood to the ſouthward till five in the rning, when we tacked and ſtood to the N. W. and Thurſd. 14. land bearing ſouth, at the diſtance of eight or nine gues; by this we diſcovered that we had fallen ch to the leeward ſince yeſterday morning. At n, our latitude by obſervation was 34° 6 S. and ſame land which we had ſeen before to the N. W. bore S. W. and appeared to be the northern ex- nity of the country. We had a large ſwell rolling rom the weſtward, and therefore concluded that were not covered by any land in that quarter. At t in the evening we tacked and ſtood to the weſt- d, with as much ſail as we could bear; and at noon next day we were in latitude 134° 10', longitude Friday 15.

185°

1769. December. 185° 45′ W. and by eſtimation about ſeventeen leagues from the land, notwithſtanding our utmoſt endeavours to keep in with it.

Saturd. 16. On the 16th, at ſix in the morning, we ſaw land from the maſt-head, bearing S. S. W. and at noon it bore S. by W. diſtant fourteen leagues. While we were ſtanding in for the ſhore, we ſounded ſeveral times, but had no ground with ninety fathoms. At eight we tacked in a hundred and eight fathoms, at about three or four miles from the ſhore, which was the ſame point of land that we had to N. W. before we were blown off. At noon it bore S. W. diſtant about three miles: Mount Camel bore S. by E. diſtant about eleven leagues, and the weſtermoſt land in ſight bore S. 75 W. the latitude by obſervation was 34° 20′ S. At four o'clock we tacked and ſtood in ſhore, in doing which we met with a ſtrong ripplin, and the ſhip fell faſt to leeward, which we imputed to a current ſetting eaſt. At eight we tacked and ſtood

Sunday 17. off till eight the next morning, when we tacked and ſtood in, being about ten leagues from the land. At noon, the point of land which we were near the day before, bore S. S. W. diſtant five leagues. The wind ſtill continued at weſt; and at ſeven o'clock we tacked in thirty-five fathoms, when the point of land which has been mentioned before bore N. W. by N. diſtant four or five miles; ſo that we had not gained one inch to windward the laſt twenty-four hours, which confirmed our opinion that there was a current to the eaſtward. The point of land I called North Cape, it being the northern extremity of this country. It lies in latitude 34° 22′ S. longitude 186° 55′ W. and thirty-one leagues diſtant from Cape Bret, in the direction of N. 63 W. It forms the north point of Sandy Bay, and is a peninſula jetting out N. E. about two miles, and terminating in a bluff head that is high at the top. The iſthmus which joins this head to the main land is very low, and for that reaſon the land of the Cape, from ſeveral ſituations, has the appearance of an iſland. It is ſtill more remarkable when it is ſeen from the ſouthward, by the appearance of a high round iſland at the S. E. point of the Cape; but this is alſo a deception; for what appears to be an iſland is a round

ound hill, joined to the Cape by a low narrow neck 1769.
land. Upon the Cape we ſaw a Hippah, or village, December.
a few inhabitants; and on the ſouth-eaſt ſide of it
e appears to be anchorage, and good ſhelter from
ſouth-weſt and north-weſt winds.

We continued to ſtand off and on, making N. W. Thurſd. 21.
noon on the 21ſt, when North Cape bore S. 39 E.
nt thirty-eight leagues. Our ſituation varied only
w leagues till the 23d, when, about ſeven o'clock Satur. 23.
he evening, we ſaw land from the maſt-head bear-
S. ½ E. At eleven the next morning we ſaw it Sunday 24.
in, bearing S. S. E. at the diſtance of eight leagues.
now ſtood to the S. W. and at four o'clock the land
S. E. by S. diſtant four leagues, and proved to be
all iſland, with other iſlands or rocks ſtill ſmaller,
g off the ſouth-weſt end of it, and another lying off
north-eaſt end, which were diſcovered by Taſman,
called the Three Kings. The principal iſland lies
titude 34° 12′ S. longitude 187° 48′ W. and diſtant
teen or fifteen leagues from North Cape, in the
ction of W. 14 N. At midnight we tacked, and
d to the N. E. till ſix the next morning, which was
riſtmas-day, when we tacked and ſtood to the ſouth- Monday 25.
d. At noon, the Three Kings bore E. 8 N. diſtant
or ſix leagues. The variation this morning by the
nuth was 11° 25′ E.

On the 26th, we ſtood to the ſouthward cloſe upon Tueſday 26.
ind, and at noon were in latitude 35° 10′ S. longi-
e 180° 20′ W. the Three Kings bearing N. 26 W.
nt twenty-two leagues. In this ſituation we had
and in ſight; and yet, by obſervation, we were in
latitude of the Bay of Iſlands, and by my reckon-
but twenty leagues to the weſtward of North Cape;
n whence it appears, that the northern part of this
d is very narrow; for otherwiſe we muſt have ſeen
e part of the weſt ſide of it. We ſtood to the
hward till twelve at night, and then tacked and
d to the northward.

t four o'clock in the morning the wind freſhened, Wedneſ. 27.
at nine blew a ſtorm, ſo that we were obliged to
g the ſhip to under her main-ſail. Our courſe
e good between noon this day and yeſterday

1769. December. was S. S. W. ½ W. distance eleven miles. The Three Kings bore N. 27 E. distant seventy-seven miles. The
Thurs. 28. gale continued all this day, and till two the next morning, when it fell, and began to veer to the southward and S. W. where it fixed about four, when we made sail, and steered east in for the land, under the fore-sail and main-sail; but the wind then rising, and by eight o'clock being increased to a hurricane, with a prodigious sea, we were obliged to take in the main-sail; we then wore the ship, and brought her to with her head to the north-west. At noon the gale was somewhat abated, but we had still heavy squalls. Our course made good this day was north, a little easterly, twenty-nine miles; latitude by account 34° 50′ S. longitude 188° 27′ W. the Three Kings bore N. 41 E. distant fifty-two miles. At seven o'clock in the evening, the wind being at S. W. and S. W. by W. with hard squalls, we wore and lay on the other tack, and at six
Friday 29. the next morning spread more sail. Our course and distance since yesterday was E. by N. twenty-nine miles. In the afternoon we had hard squalls at S. W. and at eight in the evening wore and stood to the N. W. till
Saturd. 30. five the next morning, and then wore and stood to the S. E. At six we saw the land bearing N. E. distant about six leagues, which we judged to be Cape Maria Van Diemen, and which corresponded with the account that had been given of it by the Indians. At
Sunday 31. on the next day, at noon, Cape Maria Van Diemen bore N. E. by N. distant about five leagues. At seven in the evening, we tacked and stood to the westward with a moderate breeze at S. W. by S. and S. W. Mount Camel then bore N. 83 E. and the northermost land, or Cape Maria Van Diemen, N. by W. We were now distant from the nearest land about three leagues, where we had something more than forty fathoms water; and it must be remarked, that Mount Camel, which when seen on the other side did not seem to be more than one mile from the sea, seemed to be but little more when seen from this side; which is a demonstration that the land here cannot be more than two or three miles broad, or from sea to sea.

At six o'clock in the morning of January the 1st, 1770, being New-year's-day, we tacked and stood to the eastward, the Three Kings bearing N. W. by N. At noon we tacked again, and stood to the westward, being in latitude 34° 37′ S. the Three Kings bearing N. W. by N. at the distance of ten or eleven leagues, and Cape Maria Van Diemen N. 31 E. distant about four leagues and an half; in this situation we had fifty-four fathoms water. 1770. January. Monday 1.

During this part of our navigation two particulars are very remarkable; in latitude 35° S. and in the midst of summer, I met with a gale of wind, which for its strength and continuance was such as I had scarcely ever been in before, and we were three weeks in getting ten leagues to the westward, and five weeks in getting fifty leagues; for at this time it was so long since we passed Cape Bret. During the gale, we were happily at a great distance from the land, otherwise it is highly probable, that we should never have returned to relate our adventures.

At five o'clock in the evening, having a fresh breeze to the westward, we tacked and stood to southward: at this time North Cape bore E. ¾ N. and just open of a point that lies three leagues W. by N. from it.

The Cape, as I have observed before, is the northermost extremity of this country, and the easternmost point of a peninsula, which runs out N. W. and N. W. by N. seventeen or eighteen leagues, and of which Cape Maria Van Diemen is the westermost point. Cape Maria lies in latitude 34° 30′ S. longitude 187° 18′ W. and from this point the land trends away S. E. by S. and S. E. beyond Mount Camel, and is every where a barren shore, consisting of banks of white sand.

On the 2d, at noon, we were in latitude 35° 17′ S and Cape Maria bore N. distant about sixteen leagues, as near as we could guess; for we had no land in sight, and did not dare to go nearer, as a fresh gale blew right on shore, with a rolling sea. The wind continued at W. S. W. with frequent squalls. In the evening we shortened sail, and at midnight tacked, and made a trip to the N. W. till two in the morning, when we wore Tuesday 2.

1770. January. and ſtood to the ſouthward. At break of day we made ſail, and edged away, in order to make land: and at

Weddeſ. 3. ten o'clock we ſaw it, bearing N. W. It appeared to be high, and at noon extended from N. to E. N. E. diſtant by eſtimation eight or ten leagues. Cape Maria then bore N. 2° 30′ W. diſtant thirty-three leagues: our latitude by obſervation was 36° 2′ S. About ſeven o'clock in the evening we were within ſix leagues of it; but having a freſh gale upon it, with a rolling ſea, we hauled our wind to the S. E. and kept on that courſe cloſe upon the wind all night, ſounding ſeveral times, but having no ground with one hundred and ten fathoms.

Thurſ. 4. At eight o'clock the next morning we were about five leagues from the land, and off a place which lies in latitude 36° 25′, and had the appearance of a bay or inlet. It bore eaſt; and in order to ſee more of it we kept on our courſe till eleven o'clock, when we were not more than three leagues from it, and then diſcovered that it was neither inlet nor bay, but a track of low land, bounded by higher lands on each ſide which produced the deception. At this time we tacked, and ſtood to the N. W. and at noon the land was not diſtant more than three or four leagues. We were now in latitude 36° 31′ S. longitude 185° 50′ W. Cape Maria bore N. 25 W. diſtant forty-four leagues and a half; ſo that the coaſt muſt be almoſt ſtraight in the direction of S. S. E. ¼ E. and N. N. W. ¼ W. nearly. In about latitude 35° 45′ is ſome high land adjoining to the ſea; to the ſouthward of which the ſhore is also high, and has the moſt deſolate and inhoſpitable appearance that can be imagined. Nothing is to be ſeen but hills of ſand, on which there is ſcarcely a blade of verdure; and a vaſt ſea, impelled by the weſterly winds, breaking upon it in a dreadful ſurf, renders it not only forlorn but frightful; complicating the idea of danger with deſolation, and impreſſing the mind at once with a ſenſe of miſery and death. From this place I ſteered to the northward, reſolving never more to come within the ſame diſtance of the coaſt, except the wind ſhould be very favourable indeed. I ſtood under a freſh ſail all the day, hoping to get an offing

he next noon, and we made good a courſe of an hun- 1770. January.
red and two miles N. 38 W. Our latitude by obſer-
ation was 35° 10′ S. and Cape Maria bore N. 10 E.
iſtance forty-one miles. In the night, the wind ſhift-
d from S. W. by S. to S. and blew freſh. Our courſe
o the noon of the 5th was N. 75 W. diſtance eight Friday 5.
niles.

At day-break, on the 6th, we ſaw land, which we Saturday 6.
ook to be Cape Maria, bearing N. N. E. diſtant
ight or nine leagues. And on the 7th, in the after- Sunday 7.
oon, the land bore eaſt; and ſome time after we diſ-
overed a turtle upon the water, but, being awake, it
ived inſtantly, ſo that we could not take it. At
oon the high land, which has juſt been mentioned,
xtended from N. to E. at the diſtance of five or ſix
eagues; and in two places, a flat gave it the appear-
nce of a bay or inlet. The courſe that we made good
he laſt four-and-twenty hours was S. 33 E. fifty-three
niles, Cape Maria bearing N. 25 W. diſtant thirty
eagues.

We ſailed within ſight of land all this day, with
entle gales between the N. E. and N. W. and by the
ext noon had ſailed ſixty-nine miles, in the direction Monday 8.
f S. 37 E. our latitude by obſervation was 36° 39′ S.
The land which on the 4th we had taken for a bay,
ow bore N. E. by N. diſtant five leagues and an half,
nd Cape Maria N. 29 W. forty-ſeven-leagues.

On the 9th, we continued a ſouth-eaſt courſe till Tueſday 9.
ight o'clock in the evening, having run ſeven leagues
ince noon, with the wind at N. N. E. and N. and
eing within three or four leagues of the land, which
ppeared to be low and ſandy. I then ſteered S. E. by
. in a direction parallel with the coaſt, having from
orty-eight to thirty-four fathoms water, with a black
andy bottom. At day-break, the next morning, we Wedneſ. 10.
ound ourſelves between two and three leagues from
he land, which began to have a better appearance,
iſing in gentle ſlopes, and being covered with trees
nd herbage. We ſaw a ſmoke and a few houſes,
ut it appeared to be but thinly inhabited. At
even o'clock we ſteered S. by E. and afterwards S.

1770. January. by W. the land lying in that direction. At nine, we were a-breaſt of a point which riſes with an eaſy aſcent from the ſea to a conſiderable height; this point, which lies in latitude 37° 43′, I named WOODY HEAD. About eleven miles from this head, in the direction of S. W. ½ W. lies a very ſmall iſland, upon which we ſaw a great number of gannets, and which we therefore called GANNET ISLAND. At noon, a high craggy point bore E. N. E. diſtant about a league and a half, to which I gave the name of ALBETROSS POINT; it lies in latitude 38° 4′ S. longitude 184° 42′ W. and is diſtant ſeven leagues in the direction of S. 17 W. from Woody Head. On the north ſide of this point the ſhore forms a bay, in which there appears to be anchorage and ſhelter for ſhipping. Our courſe and diſtance for the laſt twenty-four hours was S. 37 E. ſixty-nine miles; and at noon this day Cape Maria bore N. 30 W. diſtant eighty-two leagues. Between twelve and one, the wind ſhifted at once from N. N. E. to S. S. W. with which we ſtood to the weſtward till four o'clock in the afternoon, and then tacked, and ſtood again in ſhore till ſeven, when we tacked again and ſtood to the weſtward, having but little wind. At this time Albetroſs Point bore N. E. diſtant near two leagues, and the ſouthermoſt land in ſight bore S. S. W. ½ W. being a very high mountain, and in appearance greatly reſembling the Peak of Teneriffe. In this ſituation we had thirty fathoms water, and having but little wind all night, we tacked about four in
Thurſd. 11. the morning, and ſtood in for the ſhore. Soon after it fell calm, and, being in forty-two fathoms water, the people caught a few ſea-bream. At eleven a light breeze ſprung up from the weſt, and we made ſail to the ſouthward. We continued to ſteer S. by W. and S. S. W. along the ſhore, at the diſtance of about four leagues, with gentle breezes from between N. W. and N. N. E. At ſeven in the evening, we ſaw the top of the Peak to the ſouthward, above the clouds which concealed it below; and at this time the ſouthermoſt land in ſight bore S. by W. the variation, by ſeveral azimuths, which were taken both in the morning and the evening, appeared to be 14° 15′ eaſterly.

A

At noon, on the 12th, we were distant about three leagues from the shore which lies under the Peak, but the Peak itself was wholly concealed by clouds; we judged it to bear about S. S. E. and some very remarkable peaked islands, which lay under the shore, more E. S. E. distant three or four leagues. At seven in the evening we sounded, and had forty-two fathoms, being distant from the shore between two and three leagues; we judged the Peak to bear east, and after it was dark we saw fires upon the shore. 1770. January. Friday 12.

At five o'clock in the morning we saw, for a few minutes, the summit of the Peak, towering above the clouds, and covered with snow; it now bore N. E. it lies in latitude 39° 16′ S. longitude 185° 15′ W. and I named it MOUNT EGMONT, in honour of the Earl; it seems to have a large base, and to rise with a gradual ascent. It lies near the sea, and is surrounded by a flat country of a pleasant appearance, being clothed with verdure and wood, which renders it the more conspicuous, and the shore under it forms a large cape, which I have named CAPE EGMONT. It lies S. S. W. ½ W. twenty-seven leagues distant from Altetros Point, and on the north side of it are two small islands, which lie near a remarkable point on the main, that rises to a considerable height in the form of a sugar-loaf. To the southward of the Cape, the land trends away S. E. by E. and S. S. E. and seems to be every where a bold shore. At noon Cape Egmont bore about N. E. and in this direction, at about four leagues from the shore, we had forty fathoms of water. The wind, during the rest of the day, was from W. to N. W. by W. and we continued to steer along the shore S. S. E. and S. E. by E. keeping at the distance of between two and three leagues. At half an hour after seven we had another transient view of Mount Egmont, which bore N. 17 W. distant about ten leagues. Saturd. 13.

At five the next morning we steered S. E. by S. the east inclining more southerly; and in about half an hour we saw land bearing S. W. by S. for which we hauled up. At noon the north-west extremity of the land in sight bore S. 63 W. and some high land, which had the appearance of an island lying under the Sunday 14.

1770. January. main, bore S. S. E. distant five leagues. We were now in a bay, the bottom of which bearing south we could not see, though it was clear in that quarter. Our latitude by observation was 40° 27′ S. longitude 184° 39′ W. At eight in the evening, we were within two leagues of the land which we had discovered in the morning, having run ten leagues since noon: the land which then bore S. 63 W. now bore N. 59 W. at the distance of seven or eight leagues, and had the appearance of an island. Between this land and CAPE EGMONT lies the bay, the west side of which was our situation at this time, and the land here is of a considerable height, and diversified by hill and valley.

CHAP. VI.

Transactions in Queen Charlotte's Sound. Passage through the Streight which divides the two Islands, and back to Cape Turnagain. Horrid Custom of the Inhabitants. Remarkable Melody of Birds. A Visit to a Hippah, and many other Particulars.

THE shore at this place seemed to form several bays, into one of which I proposed to carry the ship, which was very foul, in order to careen her, and at the same time repair some defects, and recruit our wood and water.

With this view, I kept plying on and off all night, having from eighty to sixty-three fathoms. At daybreak, the next morning, I stood for an inlet which runs in S. W. and at eight I got within the entrance, which may be known by a reef of rocks, stretching from the north-west point, and some rocky islands which lie off the south-east point. At nine o'clock, there being little wind, and what there was being variable, we were carried by the tide or current within two cables length of the north-west shore, where we had fifty-four fathoms water, but by the help of our boats we got clear. Just at this time we saw a sea-lion rise twice near the shore, the head of which exactly resembled that of the male, which has been described in the Account of Lord Anson's Voyage. We also saw some of the natives in a canoe cross the bay, and a village

Monday 15.

village ſituated upon the point of an iſland which lies ſeven or eight miles within the entrance. At noon, we were the length of this iſland, but there being little wind, the boats were ordered a-head to row. About one o'clock, we hauled cloſe round the ſouth-weſt end of the iſland; and the inhabitants of the village which was built upon it, were immediately up in arms. About two, we anchored in a very ſafe and convenient cove, on the north-weſt ſide of the bay, and facing the ſouth-weſt end of the iſland, in eleven fathoms water, with ſoft ground, and moored with the ſtream anchor. 1770. January.

We were about four long cannon ſhot diſtant from the village or Hippah, from which four canoes were immediately diſpatched, as we imagined, to reconnoitre, and if they ſhould find themſelves able, to take us. The men were all well armed, and dreſſed nearly as they are repreſented in the figure publiſhed by Taſman; two corners of the cloth which they wrapped round the body were paſſed over the ſhoulders from behind, and being brought down to the upper edge of it before, were made faſt to it juſt under the breaſt; but few, or none, had feathers in their hair. They rowed round the ſhip ſeveral times, with their uſual tokens of menace and defiance, and at laſt began the aſſault by throwing ſome ſtones. Tupia expoſtulated with them, but apparently to very little purpoſe; and we began to fear that they would oblige us to fire at them, when a very old man in one of the boats expreſſed a deſire of coming on board. We gladly encouraged him in his deſign, a rope was thrown into his canoe, and ſhe was immediately along-ſide of the ſhip: the old man roſe up, and prepared to come up the ſhip's ſide, upon which all the reſt expoſtulated with great vehemence againſt the attempt, and at laſt laid hold of him, and held him back: he adhered however to his purpoſe, with a calm but ſteady perſeverance, and having at length diſengaged himſelf, he came on board. We received him with all poſſible expreſſions of friendſhip and kindneſs, and after ſome time diſmiſſed him, with many preſents to his companions. As ſoon as he was returned on board his canoe, the people in all the reſt began to dance, but whether

1770. January. whether as a token of enmity or friendſhip, we could not certainly determine, for we had ſeen them dance in a diſpoſition both for peace and war. In a ſhort time, however, they retired to their fort, and ſoon after I went on ſhore, with moſt of the gentlemen, at the bottom of the cove, a-breaſt of the ſhip.

We found a fine ſtream of excellent water, and wood in the greateſt plenty, for the land here was one foreſt, of vaſt extent. As we brought the ſeine with us, we hauled it once or twice, and with ſuch ſucceſs that we caught near three hundred weight of fiſh of different ſorts, which was equally diſtributed among the ſhip's company.

Tueſday 16. At day-break, while we were buſy in careening the ſhip, three canoes came off to us, having on board above an hundred men, beſides ſeveral of their women, which we were pleaſed to ſee, as in general it is a ſign of peace; but they ſoon afterwards became very troubleſome, and gave us reaſon to apprehend ſome miſchief from them to the people that were in our boats along-ſide the ſhip. While we were in this ſituation the long-boat was ſent aſhore with ſome water caſks, and ſome of the canoes attempting to follow her, we found it neceſſary to intimidate them by firing ſome ſmall ſhot: we were at ſuch a diſtance that it was impoſſible to hurt them, yet our reproof had its effect, and they deſiſted from the purſuit. They had ſome fiſh in their canoes which they now offered to ſell, and which, though it ſtunk, we conſented to buy: for this purpoſe a man in a ſmall boat was ſent among them, and they traded for ſome time very fairly. At length however, one of them watching his opportunity, ſnatched at ſome paper which our marketman held in his hand, and miſſing it, immediately put himſelf in a poſture of defence, flouriſhing his patoo-patoo, and making ſhow as if he was about to ſtrike; ſome ſmall ſhot were then fired at him from the ſhip, a few of which ſtruck him upon the knee: this put an end to our trade, but the Indians ſtill continued near the ſhip, rowing round her many times, and converſing with Tupia, chiefly concerning the traditions they had among them with reſpect to the antiquities of their country. To this ſubject they were led by the inquiries

1770. January.

nquiries which Tupia had been directed to make, whether they had ever ſeen ſuch a veſſel as ours, or had eard that any ſuch had been upon their coaſt? Theſe nquiries were all anſwered in the negative, ſo that tradition has preſerved among them no memorial of Taſman; though, by an obſervation made this day, we nd that we are only fifteen miles ſouth of Murderer's ay, our latitude being 41° 5′ 32″, and Murderer's bay, ccording to his account, being 40° 50″.

The women in theſe canoes, and ſome of the men, ad a head-dreſs which we had not ſeen before. It conſted of a bunch of black feathers, made up in a round rm, and tied upon the top of the head, which is enrely covered, and made it twice as high, to appearnce, as it was in reality.

After dinner I went in the pinnace with Mr. Banks, r. Solander, Tupia, and ſome others, into another ve, about two miles diſtant from that in which the ip lay: in our way we ſaw ſomething floating upon e water, which we took for a dead ſeal, but upon wing up to it, found it to be the body of a woman, hich to all appearance had been dead ſome days. We roceeded to our cove, where we went on ſhore, and und a ſmall family of Indians, who appeared to be reatly terrified at our approach, and all ran away exept one. A converſation between this perſon and Tupia on brought back the reſt, except an old man and a ild, who ſtill kept aloof, but ſtood peeping at us from e woods. Of theſe people, our curioſity naturally led to enquire after the body of the woman which we d ſeen floating upon the water: and they acquaintus, by Tupia, that ſhe was a relation, who had died natural death; and that, according to their cuſtom, ey had tied a ſtone to the body, and thrown it into e ſea, which ſtone, they ſuppoſed, had by ſome acdent been diſengaged.

This family, when we came on ſhore, was employin dreſſing ſome proviſions: the body of a dog was this time buried in their oven, and many proviin baſkets ſtood near it. Having caſt our eyes careſly into one of theſe, as we paſſed it, we ſaw two nes pretty nearly picked, which did not ſeem to be

the

1770. January. the bones of a dog, and which, upon a nearer examination, we diſcovered to be thoſe of a human body. At this ſight we were ſtruck with horror, though it was only a confirmation of what we had heard many times ſince we arrived upon this coaſt. As we could have no doubt but the bones were human, neither could we have any doubt but that the fleſh which covered them had been eaten. They were found in a proviſion-basket; the fleſh that remained appeared manifeſtly to have been dreſſed by fire, and in the griſtles at the ends were the marks of the teeth which had gnawed them: to put an end however to conjecture, founded upon circumſtances and appearances, we directed Tupia to aſk what bones they were; and the Indians, without the leaſt heſitation, anſwered, the bones of a man. They were then aſked what was become of the fleſh? and they replied that they had eaten it. But, ſaid Tupia, why did you not eat the body of the woman which we ſaw floating upon the water? The woman, ſaid they, died of diſeaſe; beſides, ſhe was our relation, and we eat only the bodies of our enemies, who are killed in battle. Upon enquiry who the man was whoſe bones we had found, they told us, that about five days before, a boat belonging to their enemies came into the bay, with many perſons on board, and that this man was one of ſeven whom they had killed. Tho' ſtronger evidence of this horrid practice prevailing among the inhabitants of this coaſt will ſcarcely be required, we have ſtill ſtronger to give. One of us aſked if they had any human bones with the fleſh remaining upon them; and upon their anſwering us that all had been eaten, we affected to diſbelieve that the bones were human, and ſaid that they were the bones of a dog; upon which one of the Indians with ſome eagerneſs took hold of his own fore-arm, and thruſting it towards us, ſaid, that the bone which Mr. Banks held in his hand had belonged to that part of the human body; at the ſame time, to convince us that the fleſh had been eaten, he took hold of his own arm with his teeth, and made ſhew of eating: he alſo bit and gnawed the bone which Mr. Banks had taken, drawing it through his mouth, and ſhewing by ſigns, that it had afforded a delicious repaſt: the bone was then returned to Mr. Banks, and he brought

away with him. Among the perſons of this family, 1770. January.
ere was a woman who had her arms, legs, and thighs
ghtfully cut in ſeveral places; and we were told that
e had inflicted the wounds upon herſelf, in token of
r grief for the loſs of her huſband, who had been
ely killed and eaten by their enemies, who had come
om ſome place to the eaſtward, towards which the In-
ans pointed.

The ſhip lay at the diſtance of ſomewhat leſs than a
arter of a mile from the ſhore, and in the morning Wedneſ. 17.
e were awakened by the ſinging of the birds: the
mber was incredible, and they ſeemed to ſtrain their
roats in emulation of each other. This wild melody
as infinitely ſuperior to any that we had ever heard of
e ſame kind; it ſeemed to be like ſmall bells, moſt
quiſitely tuned, and perhaps the diſtance, and the wa-
r between, might be no ſmall advantage to the ſound.
pon inquiry, we were informed that the birds here al-
ays began to ſing about two hours after midnight,
d continuing their muſic till ſun-riſe, were, like our
ightingales, ſilent the reſt of the day. In the fore-
oon, a ſmall canoe came off from the Indian village to
e ſhip, and among thoſe that were in it, was the old
an who had firſt come on board at our arrival in the
ay. As ſoon as it came along-ſide, Tupia renewed
e converſation that had paſſed the day before, con-
erning their practice of eating human fleſh, during
hich they repeated what they had told us already:
ut, ſaid Tupia, where are the heads? do you eat them
o? Of theſe heads, ſaid the old man, we eat only
e brains, and the next time I come I will bring ſome
f them to convince you that what we have told you is
ruth. After ſome farther converſation between theſe
eople and Tupia, they told him that they expected
eir enemies to come very ſhortly, to revenge the
eath of the ſeven men whom they had killed and eaten.

On the 18th, the Indians were more quiet than uſual, Thurſd. 18.
o canoe came near the ſhip, nor did we ſee one of them
oving on the ſhore, their fiſhing, and other uſual oc-
upations being totally ſuſpended. We thought they
xpected an attack on this day, and therefore attended
nore diligently to what paſſed on ſhore; but we ſaw
othing to gratify our curioſity.

After

1770. January. After breakfaſt we went out in the pinnce, to take a view of the bay, which was of vaſt extent, and conſiſted of numberleſs ſmall harbours and coves in every direction. We confined our excurſion, however, to the weſtern ſide, and the country being an impenetrable foreſt where we landed, we could ſee nothing worthy of notice: we killed, however, a good number of ſhaggs, which we ſaw ſitting upon their neſts in the trees, which, whether roaſted or ſtewed, we conſidered as very good proviſion. As we were returning, we ſaw a ſingle man in a canoe fiſhing; we rowed up to him, and, to our great ſurprize, he took not the leaſt notice of us, but, even when we were along-ſide of him, continued to follow his occupation, without advertiſing to us any more than if we had been inviſible. He did not, however, appear to be either ſullen or ſtupid. We requeſted him to draw up his net, that we might examine it, and he readily complied. It was of a circular form, extended by two hoops, and about ſeven or eight feet in diameter; the top was open, and ſeveral ears were faſtened to the bottom as a bait; this he let down ſo low as to lie upon the ground, and when he thought fiſh enough were aſſembled over it, he drew it up by a very gentle and even motion, ſo that the fiſh roſe with it, ſcarcely ſenſible that they were lifted, till they came very near the ſurface of the water, and then were brought out in the net by a ſudden jerk. By this ſimple method he had caught abundance of fiſh, and indeed they are ſo plenty in this bay, that the catching them requires neither much labour nor art.

This day, ſome of our people found in the ſkirts of the wood, near a hole or oven, three human hip-bones, which they brought on board; a farther proof that theſe people eat human fleſh. Mr. Monkhouſe, our Surgeon, alſo brought on board, from a place where he ſaw many deſerted houſes, the hair of a man's head, which he had found, among many other things, tied up to the branches of trees.

Friday 19. In the morning of the 19th, we ſet up the armourer's forge, to repair the braces of the tiller, and other iron-work, all hands on board being ſtill buſy in careening, and other neceſſary operations about the ſhip

1770. January.

. This day ſome Indians came on board from ano- er part of the bay, where they ſaid there was a town hich we had not ſeen: they brought plenty of fiſh, hich they ſold for nails, having now acquired ſome otion of their uſe; and in this traffic no unfair practice as attempted.

In the morning of the 29th, our old man kept his Saturd. 20. omiſe, and brought on board four of the heads of the ven people who had been ſo much the ſubject of our quiries: the hair and fleſh were entire, but we per- ived that the brains had been extracted; the fleſh as ſoft, but had by ſome method been preſerved from trefaction, for it had no diſagreeable ſmell. Mr. nks purchaſed one of them, but they ſold it with eat reluctance, and could not by any means be pre- iled upon to part with a ſecond; probably they may preſerved as trophies, like the ſcalps in America, and jaw-bones in the iſlands of the South-Seas. Upon amining the head which had been bought by Mr. nks, we perceived that it had received a blow upon temple, which had fractured the ſkull. This day made another excurſion in the pinnace, to ſurvey the y, but we found no flat large enough for a potatoe- rden, nor could we diſcover the leaſt proſpect of cul- ation: we met not a ſingle Indian, but found an ex- lent harbour, and about eight o'clock in the evening urned on board the ſhip.

On the 21ſt, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went out Sunday 21. ing with hook and line, and caught an immenſe antity every where upon the rocks, in between four five fathoms water: the ſeine was hauled every ht, and ſeldom failed to ſupply the whole ſhip's mpany with as much fiſh as they could eat This all the people had leave to go on ſhore at the wa- ng-place, and divert themſelves as they ſhould think per.

In the morning of the 22d, I ſet out again in the Monday 22. nace, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, h a deſign to examine the head of the inlet; but r rowing about four or five leagues, without ſo ch as coming within ſight of it, the wind being trary, and the day half-ſpent, we went on ſhore

on

1770. January. on the ſouth-eaſt ſide, to try what might be diſcovered from the hills.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander immediately employed themſelves in botanizing near the beach; and I, taking a ſeaman with me, aſcended one of the hills. When I reached the ſummit, I found a view of the inlet intercepted by hills, which in that direction roſe ſtill higher, and which was rendered inacceſſible by impenetrable woods: I was, however, abundantly compenſated for my labour, for I ſaw the ſea on the eaſtern ſide of the country, and a paſſage leading from it to that on the weſt, a little to the eaſtward of the entrance of the inlet where the ſhip now lay. The main land, which lay on the ſouth-eaſt ſide of this inlet, appeared to be a narrow ridge of very high hills, and to form part of the ſouth-weſt ſide of the ſtreight; the land on the oppoſite ſide appeared to trend away eaſt as far as the eye could reach; and to the ſouth-eaſt there appeared to be an opening to the ſea, which waſhed the eaſtern coaſt: on the eaſt ſide of the inlet alſo I ſaw ſome iſlands, which I had before taken to be part of the main land. Having made this diſcovery, I deſcended the hill, and as ſoon as we had taken ſome refreſhment, we ſet out on our return to the ſhip. In our way, we examined the harbours and coves which lie behind the iſlands that I had diſcovered from the hill; and in this route we ſaw an old village, in which there were many houſes that ſeemed to have been long deſerted: we alſo ſaw another village which was inhabited, but the day was too far ſpent for us to viſit it, and we therefore made the beſt of our way to the ſhip, which we reached between eight and nine o'clock at night.

Tueſday 23. The 23d I employed in carrying on a ſurvey of the place; and, upon one of the iſlands where I landed, I ſaw many houſes, which ſeemed to have been long deſerted, and no appearance of any inhabitant.

Wedn. 24. On the 24th, we went to viſit our friends at the Hippah, or village, on the point of the iſland, near the ſhip's ſtation, who had come off to us on our firſt arrival in the bay. They received us with the utmoſt confidence and civility, ſhewing us every part of their habitations, which were commodious and neat. The iſland

land, or rock, on which this town is ſituated, is di- 1770.
ided from the main by a breach or fiſſure, ſo narrow January.
hat a man might almoſt leap from one to the other:
he ſides of it are every where ſo ſteep, as to render the
rtificial fortification of theſe people almoſt unneceſſa-
y: there was, however, one ſlight palliſade, and one
mall fighting-ſtage towards that part of the rock where
cceſs was leaſt difficult.

The people here brought us out ſeveral human bones,
he fleſh of which they had eaten, and offered them to
le, for the curioſity of thoſe among us who had pur-
haſed them, as memorials of the horrid practice which
any, notwithſtanding the reports of travellers, have
rofeſſed not to believe, has rendered them a kind of
rticle of trade. In one part of this village we obſerved,
ot without ſome ſurprize, a croſs exactly like that of
crucifix; it was adorned with feathers; and upon our
quiring for what purpoſe it had been ſet up, we were
old that it was a monument for a man that was dead.
We had before underſtood, that their dead were not
uried, but thrown into the ſea; but to our inquiry how
he body of the man had been diſpoſed of, to whoſe me-
ory this croſs had been erected, they refuſed to anſwer.

When we left theſe people, we went to the other end
f the iſland, and there, taking water, croſſed over to
he main, where we ſaw ſeveral houſes, but no inhabi-
nts, except a few in ſome ſtraggling canoes, that ſeem-
d to be fiſhing. After viewing this place, we return-
d on board the ſhip to dinner.

During our viſit to the Indians this day, Tupia be-
g always of our party, they had been obſerved to be
ontinually talking of guns, and ſhooting people; for
is ſubject of their converſation we could not at all
ccount, and it had ſo much engaged our attention,
hat we talked of it all the way back, and even after
e got on board the ſhip. We had perplexed our-
lves with various conjectures, which were all given
p in their turn; but now we learned, that on the
rſt one of our officers, upon pretence of going out to
ſh, had rowed up to the Hippah, and that two or
hree canoes coming off towards his boat, his fears
uggeſted that an attack was intended, in conſequence

1770. January. of which three muſkets were fired, one with ſmall ſhot, and two with ball, at the Indians, who retired with the utmoſt precipitation, having probably come out with friendly intentions, for ſuch their behaviour both before and after expreſſed, and having no reaſon to expect ſuch treatment from people who had always behaved to them not only with humanity but kindneſs, and to whom they were not conſcious of having given offence.

Thurſd. 25. On the 25th, I made another excurſion along the coaſt in the pinnace, towards the mouth of the inlet, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, and going on ſhore at a little cove, to ſhoot ſhaggs, we fell in with a large family of Indians, whoſe cuſtom it is to diſperſe themſelves among the different creeks and coves, where fiſh is to be procured in the greateſt plenty, leaving a few only in the Hippah, to which the reſt repair in times of danger: ſome of theſe people came out a good way to meet us, and gave us an invitation to go with them to the reſt of their party, which we readily accepted. We found a company of about thirty, men, women, and children, who received us with all poſſible demonſtrations of friendſhip: we diſtributed among them a few ribands and beads, and, in return, received the kiſſes and embraces of both ſexes, both young and old: they gave us alſo ſome fiſh, and after a little time we returned, much pleaſed with our new acquaintance.

Friday 26. In the morning of the 26th, I went out again in the boat, with Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, and entered one of the bays, which lie on the eaſt ſide of the inlet, in order to get another ſight of the ſtreight, which paſſed between the eaſtern and weſtern ſeas. For this purpoſe, having landed at a convenient place, we climbed a hill of very conſiderable height, from which we had a full view of it, with the land on the oppoſite ſhore, which we judged to be about four leagues diſtant; but, as it was in the hazy horizon, we could not ſee far to the ſouth-eaſt; I reſolved, however, to ſearch the paſſage with the ſhip, as ſoon as I ſhould put to ſea. Upon the top of this hill we found a parcel of looſe ſtones, with which we erected a pyramid, and left in it ſome muſket-balls, ſmall-ſhot, beads,

nd other things, which we happened to have about us, 1770. January.
at were likely to ſtand the teſt of time, and not being
Indian workmanſhip, would convince any European,
ho ſhould come to the place and pull it down, that
her natives of Europe had been there before him.
hen this was done, we deſcended the hill, and made
comfortable meal of the ſhaggs and fiſh which our
ns and lines had procured us, and which were dreſſed
the boat's crew in a place that we had appointed. In
s place we found another Indian family, who receiv-
us, as uſual, with ſtrong expreſſions of kindneſs and
eaſure, ſhewing us where to procure water, and do-
g us ſuch other good offices as were in their power.
om this place we went to the town, of which the
dians had told us, who viſited us on the 19th. This,
e that which we had ſeen before, was built upon a
all iſland or rock, ſo difficult of acceſs, that we gra-
ied our curioſity at the riſk of our necks. The Indi-
s here alſo received us with open arms, carried us to
ery part of the place, and ſhewed us all that it con-
ned. This town, like the other, conſiſted of between
hty and an hundred houſes, and had only one fight-
g-ſtage. We happened to have with us a few nails and
ands, and ſome paper, with which our gueſts were
gratified, that at our coming away they filled our
at with dried fiſh, of which we perceived they had
d up great quantities.

The 27th and 28th were ſpent in refitting the ſhip Saturd. 27.
the ſea, fixing a tranſom for the tiller, getting ſtones Sunday 28.
board to put into the bottom of the bread-room, to
ng the ſhip more by the ſtern, in repairing the caſks,
d catching fiſh.

On the 29th, we received a viſit from our old man, Monday 29.
oſe name we found to be TOPAA, and three other
ives, with whom Tupia had much converſation.
e old man told us, that one of the men who had
n fired upon by the officer who had viſited their
ppah, under pretence of fiſhing, was dead; but, to
great comfort, I afterwards diſcovered that this re-
t was not true, and that if Topaa's diſcourſes were
en literally, they would frequently lead us into miſ-
es. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were ſeveral times

1770. January. on ſhore during the laſt two or three days, not without ſucceſs, but greatly circumſcribed in their walks by climbers of a moſt luxuriant growth, which were ſo interwoven together, as to fill up the ſpace between the trees about which they grew, and render the woods altogether impaſſable. This day alſo I went on ſhore again myſelf, upon the weſtern point of the inlet, and, from a hill of conſiderable height, I had a view of the coaſt to the N. W. The fartheſt land I could ſee in that quarter was an iſland which has been mentioned before, at the diſtance of about ten leagues, lying not far from the main. Between this iſland and the place where I ſtood, I diſcovered, cloſe under the ſhore, ſeveral other iſlands, forming many bays, in which there appeared to be good anchorage for ſhipping. After I had ſet off the different points for my ſurvey, I erected another pile of ſtones, in which I left a piece of ſilver coin, with ſome muſket balls and beads, and a piece of an old pendant flying at the top. In my return to the ſhip, I made a viſit to ſeveral of the natives, whom I ſaw along the ſhore, and purchaſed a ſmall quantity of fiſh.

Tueſday 30. On the 30th, early in the morning, I ſent a boat to one of the iſlands for celery, and while the people were gathering it, about twenty of the natives, men, women, and children, landed near ſome empty huts: as ſoon as they were on ſhore, five or ſix of the women ſat down upon the ground together, and began to cut their legs, arms, and faces, with ſhells, and ſharp pieces of talc, or jaſper, in a terrible manner. Our people underſtood that their huſbands had lately been killed by their enemies: but while they were performing this horrid ceremony, the men ſet about repairing the huts, with the utmoſt negligence and unconcern.

The Carpenter having prepared two poſts, to be left as memorials of our having viſited this place, I ordered them to be inſcribed with the ſhip's name, and the year and month; one of them I ſet up at the watering-place, hoiſting the Union flag upon the top of it, and the other I carried over to the iſland that lies neareſt to the ſea, called by the natives MOTUARA. I went firſt to the village, or Hippah, accompanied by Mr. Monk-

houſe

houſe and Tupia, where I met with our old man, and told him and ſeveral others by means of Tupia, that we were come to ſet up a mark upon the iſland, in order to ſhow to any other ſhip which ſhould happen to come thither, that we had been there before. To this they readily conſented, and promiſed that they never would pull it down: I then gave ſomething to every one preſent, and to the old man I gave a ſilver three-pence, dated 1736, and ſome ſpike-nails, with the king's broad arrow cut deep upon them; things which I thought moſt likely to remain among them: I then took the poſt to the higheſt part of the iſland, and after fixing it firmly in the ground, I hoiſted upon it the Union flag, and honoured this inlet with the name of QUEEN CHARLOTTE'S SOUND, at the ſame time taking formal poſſeſſion of this and the adjacent country, in the name and for the uſe of his Majeſty King George the Third. We then drank a bottle of wine to her Majeſty's health, and gave the bottle to the old man, who had attended us up the hill, and who was mightily delighted with his preſent. 1770. January.

While the poſt was ſetting up, we enquired of the old man concerning the paſſage into the eaſtern ſea, the exiſtence of which he confirmed; and then aſked him about the land to the S. W. of the ſtreight, where we were then ſituated. This land, he ſaid, conſiſted of two Whennuas, or iſlands, which might be circumnavigated in a few days, and which he called TOVY POENAMMOO; the literal tranſlation of the word is, "the water of green talc:" and probably, if we had underſtood him better, we ſhould have found that Tovy Poenammoo was the name of ſome particular place where they got the green talc, or ſtone, of which they make their ornaments and tools, and not a general name for the whole ſouthern diſtrict. He ſaid, there was alſo a third Whennua on the eaſt ſide of the ſtreight, the circumnavigation of which would take up many moons: this he called EAHEINOMAUWE, and to the land on the borders of the ſtreight, he gave the name of TIERA WITTE. Having ſet up our poſt, and procured this intelligence, we returned on board the ſhip, and brought the old man with us, who was attended by his canoe, in which, after dinner, he returned home.

1770. January. Wedneſ. 31. On the 31ſt, having completed our wooding, and filled all our water-caſks, I ſent out two parties, one to cut and make brooms, and another to catch fiſh. In the evening we had a ſtrong gale from the N. W. with ſuch a heavy rain, that our little wild muſicians on ſhore ſuſpended their ſong, which till now we had conſtantly heard during the night, with a pleaſure which it was impoſſible to loſe without regret.

February. Thurſ. 1. On the 1ſt the gale increaſed to a ſtorm, with heavy guſts from the high land, one of which broke the hawſer that we had faſtened to the ſhore, and obliged us to let go another anchor. Towards midnight the gale became more moderate, but the rain continued with ſuch violence, that the brook which had ſupplied us with water, overflowed its banks, and carried away ten ſmall caſks, which had been left there full of water, and, notwithſtanding we ſearched the whole cove, we could never recover one of them.

Saturday 3. On the 3d, as I intended to ſail the firſt opportunity, I went over to the Hippah on the eaſt ſide of the Sound, and purchaſed a conſiderable quantity of ſplit and half-dried fiſh, for ſea-ſtores. The people here confirmed all that the old man had told us concerning the ſtreights and the country, and about noon I took leave of them: ſome of them ſeemed to be ſorry, and others glad, that we were going. The fiſh which I had bought, they ſold freely, but there were ſome who ſhewed manifeſt ſigns of diſapprobation. As we returned to the ſhip, ſome of us made an excurſion along the ſhore to the northward, to traffick with the natives for a farther ſupply of fiſh, in which, however, they had no great ſucceſs. In the evening we got every thing off from the ſhore, as I intended to ſail in the morning, but the wind would not permit.

Sunday 4. On the 4th, while we were waiting for a wind, we amuſed ourſelves by fiſhing, and gathering ſhells and ſeeds of various kinds; and early in the morning, the

Monday 5. 5th, we caſt off the hawſer, hove ſhort on the bower, and carried the kedge-anchor out, in order to warp the ſhip out of the cove; which having done about two o'clock in the afternoon, we hove up the anchor, and got under ſail; but the wind ſoon failing, we were obliged to come to an anchor again a little above Motuara.

Whe

1770. February.

When we were under ſail, our old man Topaa came n board, to take his leave of us; and as we were ſtill eſirous of making farther inquiries, whether any me- ory of Taſman had been preſerved among theſe peo- le, Tupia was directed to aſk him, whether he had ver heard that ſuch a veſſel as ours had before viſited he country. To this he replied in the negative, but id, that his anceſtors had told him, there had once ome to this place a ſmall veſſel, from a diſtant coun- y, called ULIMAROA, in which were four men, who, pon their coming on ſhore, were all killed. Upon eing aſked, where this diſtant land lay, he pointed to the orthward. Of Ulimaroa we had heard ſomething before om the people about the Bay of Iſlands, who ſaid that eir anceſtors had viſited it; and Tupia had alſo talk- d to us of Ulimaroa, concerning which he had ſome onfuſed traditionary notions, not very different from oſe of our old man, ſo that we could draw no certain onclusion from the accounts of either.

Soon after the ſhip came to an anchor the ſecond me, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on ſhore, to e if any gleanings of natural knowledge remained, d by accident fell in with the moſt agreeable Indian mily they had ſeen, which afforded them a better pportunity of remarking the perſonal ſubordination mong theſe people, than had before offered. The incipal perſons were a widow, and a pretty boy out ten years old: the widow was mourning for her uſband with tears of blood, according to their cuſtom, d the child, by the death of its father, was become oprietor of the land where we had cut our wood. he mother and the ſon were ſitting upon mats, and e reſt of the family, to the number of ſixteen or ſe- nteen, of both ſexes, ſat round them in the open , for they did not appear to have any houſe, or other elter from the weather, the inclemencies of which, uſtom has probably enabled them to endure without y laſting inconvenience. Their whole behaviour was fable, obliging, and unſuſpicious; they preſented ch perſon with fiſh, and a brand of fire to dreſs it, d preſſed them many times to ſtay till the morning, hich they would certainly have done if they had not pected the ſhip to ſail, greatly regretting that they

1770. February. had not been acquainted with them ſooner, as they made no doubt but that more knowledge of the manners and diſpoſition of the inhabitants of this country would have been obtained from them in a day, than they had yet been able to acquire during our whole ſtay upon the coaſt.

Tueſday 6. On the 6th, about ſix o'clock in the morning, a light breeze ſprung up at north, and we again got under ſail; but the wind proving variable, we reached no farther than juſt without Motuara. In the afternoon, however, a more ſteady gale at N. by W. ſet us clear of the ſound, which I ſhall now deſcribe.

The entrance of Queen Charlotte's Sound is ſituated in latitude 41° S. longitude 184° 45′ W. and near the middle of the ſouth-weſt ſide of the ſtreight in which it lies. The land of the ſouth-eaſt head of the Sound, called by the natives KOAMAROO, off which lie two ſmall iſlands and ſome rocks, makes the narroweſt part of the ſtreight: From the north-weſt head a reef of rocks runs out about two miles, in the direction of N. E. by N. part of which is above the water, and part below. By this account of the heads, the Sound will be ſufficiently known. At the entrance, it is three leagues broad, and lies in S. W. by S. S. W. and W. S. W. at leaſt ten leagues, and is a collection of ſome of the fineſt harbours in the world. The land forming the harbour or cove in which we lay, is called by the natives TOTARRANUE: the harbour itſelf, which I called SHIP COVE, is not inferior to any in the Sound, either for convenience or ſafety; it lies on the weſt ſide of the Sound, and is the ſouthermoſt of three coves, that are ſituated within the iſland of Motuara, which bears eaſt of it. Ship Cove may be entered, either between Motuara and a long iſland, called by the natives HAMOTE, or between Motuara and the weſtern ſhore. In the laſt of theſe channels are two ledges of rock, three fathoms under water, which may eaſily be known by the ſea weed that grows upon them. In ſailing either in or out of the Sound, with little wind, attention muſt be had to the tides, which flow about nine or ten o'clock at the full and change of the moon, and riſe and fall between ſeven and eight feet perpendicularly. The flood comes in through the

ſtreight

eight from the S. E. and ſets ſtrongly over upon the rth-weſt head, and the reef that lies off it: the ebb s with ſtill greater rapidity to the S. E. over upon the cks and iſlands that lie off the ſouth-eaſt head. The riation of the compaſs we found from good obſerva- on, to be 13° 5′ E. 1770. January.

The land about this Sound, which is of ſuch a ight that we ſaw it at the diſtance of twenty leagues, nſiſts wholly of high hills and deep vallies, well ſtor- with a variety of excellent timber, fit for all pur- ſes except maſts, for which it is too hard and heavy. he ſea abounds with a variety of fiſh, ſo that, with- t going out of the cove where we lay, we caught ery day, with the ſeine and hooks and lines, a quan- y ſufficient to ſerve the whole ſhip's company: and ong the ſhore we found plenty of ſhaggs, and a few her ſpecies of wild fowl, which thoſe who have long ed upon ſalt proviſions will not think deſpicable od.

The number of inhabitants ſcarcely exceeds four hun- d, and they live diſperſed along the ſhores, where ir food, conſiſting of fiſh and fern roots, is moſt ily procured, for we ſaw no cultivated ground. on any appearance of danger, they retire to their ppahs, or forts; in this ſituation we found them, d in this ſituation they continued for ſome time after r arrival. In compariſon of the inhabitants of other rts of this country, they are poor, and their canoes e without ornament. The little traffic we had with em was wholly for fiſh, and indeed they had ſcarcely y thing elſe to diſpoſe of. They ſeemed, how- er, to have ſome knowledge of iron, which the in- bitants of ſome other parts had not; for they wil- gly took nails for their fiſh, and ſometimes ſeemed to efer them to every thing elſe that we could offer, which d not always been the caſe. They were at firſt very d of paper, but when they found that it was ſpoil- by being wet, they would not take it; neither did y ſet much value upon the cloth of Otaheite; but gliſh broad-cloth, and red-kerſey, were in high eſti- tion; which ſhewed that they had ſenſe enough to pretiate the commodities which we offered by their ; which is more than could be ſaid of ſome of their neighbours,

1770. January. neighbours, who made a much better appearance. Their dreſs has been mentioned already, particularly their large round head-dreſſes of feathers, which were far from being unbecoming.

As ſoon as we got out of the Sound, I ſtood over to the eaſtward, in order to get the ſtreight well open before the tide of ebb came on. At ſeven in the evening, the two ſmall iſlands which lie off Cape Koamaroo, the ſouth-eaſt head of Queen Charlotte's Sound, bore eaſt, diſtant about four miles. At this time it was nearly calm, and the tide of ebb ſetting out, we were, in a very ſhort time, carried by the rapidity of the ſtream cloſe upon one of the iſlands, which was a rock riſing almoſt perpendicularly out of the ſea. We perceived our danger increaſe every moment, and had but one expedient to prevent our being daſhed to pieces, the ſucceſs of which a few minutes would determine. We were now within little more than a cable's length of the rock, and had more than ſeventy-five fathoms water; but upon dropping an anchor, and veering about one hundred and fifty fathoms of cable, the ſhip was happily brought up. This, however, would not have ſaved us, if the tide, which ſet S. by E. had not upon meeting with the iſland, changed its direction to S. E. and carried us beyond the firſt point. In this ſituation, we were not above two cables length from the rocks; and here we remained in the ſtrength of the tide, which ſet to the S. E. after the rate of at leaſt five miles an hour, from a little after ſeven till near midnight, when the tide abated, and we began to

Wedneſ. 7. heave. By three in the morning the anchor was at the bows, and having a light breeze at N. W. we made ſail for the eaſtern ſhore; but the tide being against us, we made but little way. The wind, however, afterwards freſhened, and came to N. and N. E. with which, and the tide of ebb, we were in a ſhort time hurried through the narroweſt part of the ſtreight, and then ſtood away for the ſouthermoſt land, we had in ſight, which bore from us S. by W. Over this land appeared a mountain of ſtupendous height, which was covered with ſnow.

The narroweſt part of the ſtreight, through which 1770.
e had been driven with ſuch rapidity, lies between February.
pe Tierawitte, on the coaſt of Eaheinomauwe and
pe Koamaroo: the diſtance between them I judged
be between four and five leagues, and, notwith-
nding the tide, now its ſtrength is known, may be
ſſed without much danger. It is ſafeſt, however,
keep on the north-eaſt ſhore, for on that ſide there
peared to be nothing to fear; but on the other ſhore
ere are not only the iſlands and rocks which lie off
pe Koamaroo; but a reef of rocks ſtretching from
eſe iſlands ſix or ſeven miles to the ſouthward, at
e diſtance of two or three miles from the ſhore,
ich I had diſcovered from the hill, when I took my
ond view of the ſtreight from the eaſt to the weſtern

About nine leagues north from Cape Tierawitte,
d under the ſame ſhore, is a high and remarkable
nd, which may be diſtinctly ſeen from Queen Char-
te's Sound, from which it is diſtant between ſix or
en leagues. This iſland, which was noticed when
e paſſed it on the 14th of January, I have called ENDY ISLE.

On the eaſt ſide of Cape Tierawitte, the land trends
ay S. E. by E. about eight leagues, where it ends
a point, and is the ſouthermoſt land on Eaheino-
uwe. To this point I have given the name of CAPE
LLISER, in honour of my worthy friend Captain
lliſer. It lies in latitude 41° 37′ S. longitude 183°
′ W. and bore from us this day at noon S. 79 E. di-
nt about thirteen leagues, the ſhip being then in the
itude of 41° 27′ S. Koamaroo at the ſame time
aring N. ½ E. diſtant ſeven or eight leagues. The
uthermoſt land in ſight bore S. 16 W. and the ſnowy
ountains S. W. At this time we were about three
gues from the ſhore, and a-breaſt of a deep bay or
et, to which I gave the name of CLOUDY BAY, and
the bottom of which there appeared low land cover-
with tall trees.

At three o'clock in the afternoon, we were a-breaſt
the ſouthermoſt point of land that we had ſeen at
on, which I called CAPE CAMPBELL; it lies S. by
. diſtant between twelve and thirteen leagues from
Cape

1770. February. Cape Coamaroo, in latitude 41° 44′ S. longitude 18° 45′ W. and with Cape Palmer forms the ſouthern entrance of the ſtreight, the diſtance between them being between thirteen and fourteen leagues W. by S. and E. by N.

From the Cape we ſteered along the ſhore S. W. by S. till eight o'clock in the evening, when the wind died away. About half an hour afterwards, however, a freſh breeze ſprung up at S. W. and I put the ſhip right before it. My reaſon for this, was a notion which ſome of the officers had juſt ſtarted, that Eaheinomauwe was not an iſland, and that the land might ſtretch away to the S. E. from between Cape Turnagain and Cape Palliſer, there being a ſpace of between twelve and fifteen leagues that we had not ſeen. I had indeed the ſtrongeſt conviction that they were miſtaken not only from what I had ſeen the firſt time I diſcovered the ſtreight, but from many other concurrent teſtimonies, that the land in queſtion was an iſland; but being reſolved to leave no poſſibility of doubt, with reſpect to an object of ſuch importance, I took the opportunity of the wind's ſhifting to ſtand eaſtward, and accordingly ſteered N. E. by E. all the night. At nine Thurſd. 8. o'clock in the morning we were a-breaſt of Cape Palliſer, and found the land trend away N. E. towards Cape Turnagain, which I reckoned to be diſtant about twenty-ſix leagues: however, as the weather was hazy ſo as to prevent our ſeeing above four or five leagues, I ſtill kept ſtanding to the N. E. with a light breeze at ſouth; and at noon Cape Palliſer bore N. 72 W. diſtant about three leagues.

About three o'clock in the afternoon three canoes came up to the ſhip, with between thirty and forty people on board, who had been pulling after us with great labour and perſeverance for ſome time. They appeared to be more cleanly, and a better claſs, than any we had met with ſince we left the Bay of Iſlands, and their canoes were alſo diſtinguiſhed by the ſame ornaments which we had ſeen upon the northerly part of the coaſt. They came on board with very little invitation, and their behaviour was courteous and friendly: upon receiving preſents from us, they made us preſents in return, which had not been done by any of the natives

hat we had ſeen before. We ſoon perceived that our 1770. February.
neſts had heard of us, for as ſoon as they came on
oard, they aſked for Whow, the name by which nails
ere known among the people with whom we had traf-
cked: but though they had heard of nails, it was
ain they had ſeen none: for when nails were given
em, they aſked Tupia what they were. The term
Vhow, indeed, conveyed to them the idea not of their
ality, but only of their uſe; for it is the ſame by
hich they diſtinguiſh a tool, commonly made of bone,
hich they uſe both as an augur and a chiſſel. How-
er, their knowing that we had Whow to ſell, was a
oof that their connections extended as far north as
ape Kidnappers, which was diſtant no leſs than forty-
e leagues: for that was the ſouthermoſt place on this
e the coaſt where he had any traffic with the natives.
is alſo probable, that the little knowledge which the
abitants of Queen Charlotte's Sound had of iron,
y obtained from their neighbours at Tierawitte; for
had no reaſon to think that the inhabitants of any
t of this coaſt had the leaſt knowledge of iron or its
before we came among them, eſpecially as when
was firſt offered they ſeemed to diſregard it as of no
ue. We thought it probable, that we were now
e more in the territories of Teratu; but upon in-
iring of theſe people, they ſaid that he was not their
g. After a ſhort time, they went away, much gra-
ed with the preſents that we had made them; and
purſued our courſe along the ſhore to the N. E. till
ven o'clock the next morning. About this time,
weather happening to clear up, we ſaw Cape Turn- Friday 9.
in, bearing N. by E. ½ E. at the diſtance of about
en leagues: I then called the officers upon deck, and
ed them, whether they were not now ſatisfied, that
heinomauwe was an iſland; they readily anſwered
he affirmative, and all doubts being now removed,
hauled our wind to the eaſtward.

AN

AN

ACCOUNT

OF A

VOYAGE round the WORLD.

BOOK II.

CHAP. VII.

Range from Cape Turnagain ſouthward along the eaſtern Coaſt of Poenammoo, round Cape South, and back to the weſtern Entrance of Cooke's Streight, which completed the Circumnavigation of this Country: with a Deſcription of the Coaſt, and of Admiralty Bay. The Departure from New Zealand, and various Particulars.

1770. February. Friday 9. Sund. 11. AT four o'clock in the afternoon of Friday the 9th of February, having tacked, we ſtood S. W. and continued to make ſail to the ſouthward till ſunſet on the 11th, when a freſh breeze at N. E. had carried us back again the length of Cape Palliſer, of which as the weather was clear we had a good view. Between the foot of the high land and the ſea there is a low flat border, of which there are ſome rocks that appear above water. Between this Cape and Cape Turnagain, the land near the ſhore is, in many places, low and flat, and has a green and pleaſant appearance; but farther from the ſea it riſes into hills. The land between Cape Palliſer and Cape Tierawitte is high and makes in table-points; it alſo ſeemed to form two bays, but we were at too great a diſtance from this part of the coaſt, to judge accurately from appearances. The wind having been variable, with calms

ns, we had advanced no farther by the 12th at noon 1770. February.
latitude 41° 52′, Cape Palliſer then bearing north, Monday 12.
nt about five leagues; and the ſnowy mountains
3 W.

t noon on the 13th, we found ourſelves in the la- Tueſd. 13.
de of 42° 2′ S. Cape Palliſer bearing N. 20 E. di-
t eight leagues. In the afternoon, a freſh gale
ng up at N. E. and we ſteered S. W. by W. for
ſouthermoſt land in ſight, which at ſunſet bore
n us S. 74 W. At this time the variation was 15°

t eight o'clock in the morning of the 14th, having Wedneſ. 14
one and twenty leagues S. 58 W. ſince the pre-
ng noon, it fell calm. We were then a-breaſt of
ſnowy mountain which bore from us N. W. and in
direction lay behind a mountainous ridge of nearly
ſame height, which riſes directly from the ſea, and
parallel with the ſhore, which lies N. E. ½ N.
S. W. ½ S. The north-weſt end of the ridge riſes
nd, not far from Cape Campbell; and both the
ntain, and the ridge are diſtinctly ſeen as well
Cape Koamaroo as Cape Palliſer: from Koama-
they are diſtant two and twenty leagues S. W. ½ S.
from Cape Palliſer thirty leagues W. S. W. and
of a height ſufficient to be ſeen at a much greater
nce. At noon this day, we were in latitude 42°
S. The ſouthermoſt land in ſight bore S. W. ½
and ſome low land that appeared like an iſland, and
cloſe under the foot of the ridge, bore N. W. by N.
t five or ſix leagues.

n the afternoon when Mr. Banks was out in the
a ſhooting, we ſaw, with our glaſſes, four double
es, having on board fifty-ſeven men, put off from
ſhore, and made towards him: we immediately
e ſignals for him to come on board; but the ſhip,
n reſpect to him, being right in the wake of the
he did not ſee them. We were at a conſiderable
nce from the ſhore, and he was at a conſiderable
nce from the ſhip, which was between him and
ſhore; ſo that it being a dead calm, I began to be
me pain for him, fearing that he might not ſee the
es time enough to reach the ſhip before they
ld get up with him: ſoon after, however we ſaw
oat in motion, and had the pleaſure to take him

on

1770. February. on board before the Indians came up, who probab had not ſeen him, as their attention ſeemed to be wh ly fixed upon the ſhip. They came within about ſtone's caſt, and then ſtopped, gazing at us with a lo of vacant aſtoniſhment: Tupia exerted all his eloquen to prevail upon them to come nearer, but without a effect. After ſurveying us for ſome time, they left u and made towards the ſhore; but had not meaſure more than half the diſtance between that and the ſh before it was dark. We imagined that theſe people h heard nothing of us, and could not but remark the di ferent behaviour and diſpoſitions of the inhabitants the different parts of this coaſt upon their firſt a proaching the veſſel. Theſe kept aloof with a mixt of timidity and wonder; others had immediately co menced hoſtilities, by pelting us with ſtones: the ge tleman whom we had found alone, fiſhing in his b ſeemed to think us entirely unworthy of his notice; a ſome, almoſt without invitation, had come on bo with an air of perfect confidence and good-will. Fr the behaviour of our laſt viſitors, I gave the land fr which they had put off, and which, as I have be obſerved, had the appearance of an iſland, the na of LOOKERS-ON.

At eight o'clock in the evening, a breeze ſprung at S. S. W. with which I ſtretched off ſouth-eaſt, cauſe ſome on board thought they ſaw land in quarter. In this courſe we continued till ſix o'cl Thurſ. 15. the next morning, when we had run eleven leag but ſaw no land, except that which we had left. H ing ſtood to the S. E. with a light breeze, which ve from the weſt to the north, till noon, our latitude obſervation was 42° 56′ S. and the high land that were a-breaſt of the preceding noon bore N. N. W. In the afternoon we had a light breeze at N. E. which we ſteered weſt, edging for the land, wh was diſtant about eight leagues. At ſeven in evening we were about ſix leagues from the ſh and the ſouthermoſt extremity of the land in ſight W. S. W.

Friday 16. At day-break on the 16th, we diſcovered land b ing S. by W. and ſeemingly detached from the c we were upon. About eight a breeze ſprung up

. by E. and we ſteered directly for it. At noon, we were in latitude 43° 19′ S. the peak on the ſnowy ountain bore N. 20 E. diſtant twenty ſeven leagues; e ſouthern extremity of the land we could ſee bore eſt, and the land which had been diſcovered in the orning appeared like an iſland extending from S. W. to S. W. by W. ½ W. diſtant about eight gues. In the afternoon, we ſtood to the ſouthward it, with a freſh breeze at north: at eight in the ening, we had run eleven leagues, and the land then tended from S. W. by W. to N. by W. We were en diſtant about three leagues from the neareſt ſhore, d in this ſituation had fifty fathoms water, with a e ſandy bottom. The variation of the compaſs by is morning's amplitude was 14° 39′ E. 1770. February.

At ſun-riſe, the next morning, our opinion that the nd we had been ſtanding for was an iſland, was con- med, by our ſeeing part of the land of Tovy Poen- nmoo open to the weſtward of it, extending as far as . by S. At eight in the morning, the extremes of e iſland bore N. 76 W. and N. N. E. ½ E. and an ening near the ſouth point, which had the appear- ce of a bay or harbour, N. 20 W. diſtant between ree and four leagues: in this ſituation we had thirty- ht fathoms water with a brown ſandy bottom. Satur. 17.

This iſland, which I named after Mr. Banks, lies out five leagues from the coaſt of Tovy Poenammoo; e ſouth point bears S. 21 W. from the higheſt k on the ſnowy mountain, and lies in latitude 53° ′ S. and in longitude 186° 30′ W. by an obſervation the ſun and moon which was made this morning: is of a circular figure, and about twenty-four leagues compaſs: it is ſufficiently high to be ſeen at the tance of twelve or fifteen leagues, and the land has roken irregular ſurface, with the appearance rather barrenneſs than fertility: yet it was inhabited, for ſaw ſmoke in one place, and a few ſtraggling na- es in another. Banks's Iſland.

When this iſland was firſt diſcovered in the direction S. by W. ſome perſons on board were of opinion t they alſo ſaw land bearing S. S. E. and S. E. by I was myſelf upon the deck at the time, and told them,

1770. February. them, that in my opinion it was no more than a cloud, and that as the ſun roſe, it would diſſipate and vaniſh. However, as I was determined to leave no ſubject for diſputation which experiment could remove, I ordered the ſhip to be wore, and ſteered E. S. E. by compaſs in the direction which the land was ſaid to bear from us at that time. At noon we were in latitude 44° 7′ S. the ſouth point of Banks's iſland bearing north, diſtant five leagues. By ſeven o'clock at night we had run eight and twenty miles, when ſeeing no land, nor any ſigns of any, but that which we had left, we bore away S. by W. and continued upon that courſe till the Sunday 18. next day at noon, when we were in latitude 45° 16′ the ſouth point of Banks's Iſland bearing N. 6° 30′ W. diſtant twenty-eight leagues. The variation by the azimuth this morning was 15° 30′ E. As no ſigns of land had yet appeared to the ſouthward, and as I thought that we had ſtood far enough in that direction to weather all the land we had left, judging from the report of the natives in Queen Charlotte's Sound, I hauled to the weſtward.

We had a moderate breeze at N. N. W. and N. till eight in the evening, when it became unſettled; and at ten fixed at ſouth: during the night it blew with ſuch violence that it brought us under our cloſe reefed Monday 19. topſails. At eight the next morning, having run twenty-eight leagues upon a W. by N. ½ N. courſe, and judging ourſelves to be to the weſtward of the land of Tovy Poenammoo, we bore away N. W. with a freſh gale at ſouth. At ten having run eleven miles upon this courſe, we ſaw land extending from the S. W. to the N. W. at the diſtance of about ten leagues, which we hauled up for. At noon, our latitude by obſervation was 44° 38′, the ſouth-eaſt point of Banks's iſland bore N. 58° 30′ E. diſtant thirty leagues, and the main body of the land in ſight W. by N. A hard ſea prevented us from making much way to the ſouthward; at ſeven in the evening the extremes of the land ſtretched from S. W. by S. to N. by W. and at ſix leagues from the ſhore we had thirty-two fathoms water. Tueſday 20. At four o'clock the next morning, we ſtood in for the ſhore W. by S. and during a courſe of four leagues, our depth of water was from thirty-two to thirteen

teen fathoms. When it was thirteen fathoms we re but three miles diſtant from the ſhore, and there- ſtood off; its direction is here nearly N. and S. e ſurface, to the diſtance of about five miles from ſea, is low and flat; but it then riſes into hills of a ſiderable height. It appeared to be totally barren, we ſaw no ſigns of its being inhabited. Our la- de, at noon, was 44° 44′; and the longitude which made from Banks's Iſland to this place was 2° 22′ During the laſt twenty-four hours, though we ied as much ſail as the ſhip would bear, we were en three leagues to the leeward. 1770. February.

We continued to ſtand off and on all this day and the t, keeping at the diſtance of between four and lve leagues from the ſhore, and having water from ty-five to fifty-three fathoms. On the 22d, at noon, had no obſervation, but by the land judged our- es to be about three leagues farther north than we been the day before. At ſun-ſet, the weather, ich had been hazy, clearing up, we ſaw a moun- which roſe in a high peak, bearing N. W. by N. at the ſame time, we ſaw the land more diſtinctly n before, extending from N. to S. W. by S. which, ome diſtance within the coaſt, had a lofty and untainous appearance. We ſoon found that the ounts which had been given us by the Indians in een Charlotte's Sound of the land to the ſouthward e not true; for they had told us that it might be cumnavigated in four days. Wedneſ. 21. Thurſd. 22.

On the 23d, having a hollow ſwell from the S. E. expecting wind from the ſame quarter, we kept ng between ſeven and fifteen leagues from the ſhore, ing from ſeventy to forty-four fathoms. At noon, latitude by obſervation was 44° 40′ S. and our lon- ude from Banks's Iſland 1° 31′ W. From this time ix in the evening it was calm; but a light breeze ſpringing up at E. N. E. we ſteered S. S. E. all ht, edging off from the land, the hollow ſwell ſtill tinuing; our depth of water was from ſixty to ſe- ty-five fathoms. While we were becalmed, Mr. nks, being out in the boat, ſhot two Port Egmont s, which were in every reſpect the ſame as thoſe t are found in great numbers upon the iſland of Friday 23.

1770. February. Faro, and were the first of the kind we had seen upon this coast, though we fell in with some a few days before we made land.

Saturday 24. At day-break, the wind freshened, and before noon we had a strong gale at N. N. E. At eight in the morning we saw the land extending as far as S. W. by S. and steered directly for it. At noon, we were in latitude 45° 22′ S. and the land which now stretched from S. W. ½ S. to N. N. W. appeared to be rather diversified by hill and valley; in the afternoon we steered S. W. by S. edging in for the land with a fresh gale at north; but though we were at no great distance, the weather was so hazy that we could see nothing distinctly upon it, except a ridge of high hills lying not far from the sea, and parallel to the coast, which in this place stretches S. by W. and N. by E. and seems to end in a high bluff point to the southward. At eight in the evening we were a-breast of this point, but it being then dark, and I not knowing which way the land trended, we brought to for the night. At this time the point bore west, and was distant about five miles: our depth of water was thirty-seven fathoms, and the bottom consisted of small pebbles.

Sunday 25. At day-break, having made sail, the point bore north, distant three leagues, and we now found that the land trended from S. W. by W. as far as we could see. This point I named Cape Saunders, in honour of Sir Charles. Our latitude was 45° 35 S. and longitude 189° 4. W. By the latitude, and the angles that are made by the coast, this point will be sufficiently known: there is, however, about three or four leagues to the south-west of it, and very near the shore, a remarkable saddle-hill, which is a good direction to it on that quarter. From one league to four leagues north of Cape Saunders, the shore forms two or three bays, in which there appeared to be good anchorage, and perfectual shelter from the S. W. westerly, and N. westerly winds; but my desire of getting to the southward in order to ascertain whether this country was an island or a continent, prevented my putting into any of them.

We kept at a small distance from the shore this morning, with the wind at S. W. and

distinct view of it: it is of a moderate height, the ſurface is broken by many hills, which are n and woody; but we ſaw no appearance of inha- nts. At noon, Cape Saunders bore N. 30 W. di- t about four leagues. We had variable winds and ns till five o'clock in the evening, when it fixed at S. W. and ſoon blew ſo hard that it put us paſt our ſails, and ſplit the fore-ſail all to pieces: after get- another to the yard, we continued to ſtand to the hward under two courſes; and at ſix the next ning, the ſouthermoſt land in ſight bore W. by N. Cape Saunders N. by W. diſtant eight leagues: at , it bore N. 20 W. fourteen leagues; and our la- de by obſervation was 46° 36′. The gale continu- with heavy ſqualls and a large hollow ſea all the rnoon; and at ſeven in the evening we lay to un- our fore-ſail, with the ſhip's head to the ſouthward: oon on the 27th our latitude was 46° 54′, and our itude from Cape Saunders 1° 24 E. At ſeven in evening, we made ſail under our courſes; and at the next morning ſet the top-ſails cloſe reefed. At , our latitude was 47° 43′, and our longitude eaſt Cape Saunders 2° 10′. At this time we wore, ſtood to the northward; in the afternoon, we found variation to be 16° 34′ E. At eight in the evening, acked and ſtood to the ſouthward, with the wind eſt.

1770. February.

Mond. 26.

Tueſd. 27.

Wedneſ. 28.

t noon this day, our latitude by account was 47° and our longitude from Cape Saunders 1° 8′ E. ſtood to the ſouthward till half an hour paſt three e afternoon: and then, being in latitude 48° S. longitude 188° W. and ſeeing no appearance of , we tacked and ſtood to the northward, having a ſwell from the S. W. by W. At noon the next our latitude was 46° 42′ S. and Cape Saunders N. 46 W. diſtant eighty-ſix miles. The ſouth- ſwell continuing till the third, confirmed our opi- , that there was no land in that quarter. At four in afternoon, we ſtood to the weſtward with all the we could make. In the morning of the 4th, we d the variation to be 16° 16′ E. This day we ſaw

March. Thurſd. 1.

Friday 2.

Saturd. 3.

Sunday 4.

1770 March. ſome whales and ſeals, as we had done ſeveral times after our having paſſed the ſtreight; but we ſaw ſeals while we were upon the coaſt of Eahienomauwe. We ſounded both in the night and this morning, but had no ground with one hundred and fifty fathoms. At noon we ſaw Cape Saunders bearing N. ½ W. our latitude, by obſervation, was 46° 31′ S. At half an hour paſt one o'clock we ſaw land bearing W. by S. which we ſteered for, and before it was dark were within three or four miles of it: during the whole night

Monday 5. ſaw fires upon it, and at ſeven in the morning were within about three leagues of the ſhore, which appeared to be high, but level. At three o'clock in the afternoon, we ſaw the land extending from N. E. by E. to N. W. ½ N. and ſoon after we diſcovered ſome low land, which appeared like an iſland, bearing S. We continued our courſe to the W. by S. and in two hours we ſaw high land over the low land, extending to the ſouthward as far as S. W. by S. but it did not appear to be joined to the land to the northward, ſo that there is either water, a deep bay, or low land between them.

Tueſday 6. At noon, on the 6th, we were nearly in the ſame ſituation as at noon on the day before. In the afternoon we found the variation, by ſeveral azimuths and

Wedneſ. 7. the amplitude, to be 15° 10° E. On the 7th, at noon, we were in latitude 47° 6′ S. and had made ſeven miles eaſting during the laſt twenty-four hours. We ſtood to the weſtward the remainder of this day, and

Thurſd. 8. all the next till ſun-ſet, when the extremes of the land bore from N. by E. to W. diſtant about ſeven or eight leagues: in this ſituation our depth of water was ſoundings five fathoms, and the variation, by amplitude, 29′ E. The wind now veered from the N. to the W. and as we had fine weather, and moon-light, we kept ſtanding cloſe upon the wind to the S. W. all night.

Friday 9. At four in the morning we had ſixty fathoms water, and at day-light we diſcovered under our bow a ledge of rocks, extending from S. by W. to W. by S. upon which the ſea broke very high; they were not more than three quarters of a mile diſtant, yet we had forty-and-forty fathoms water. As the wind was at N. W. we could not now weather them; and as I was

ling to run to leeward, I tacked and made a trip to eastward; the wind, however, ſoon after coming the northward, enabled us to get clear of all. Our ndings, while we were paſſing within the ledge, e from thirty-five to forty-ſeven fathoms, with a ky bottom. 1770. March.

This ledge lies S. E. ſix leagues from the ſouther- t part of the land, and S. E. by E. from ſome re- kable hills which ſtand near the ſhore: about three gues to the northward of it, there is another ledge, ich lies full three leagues from the ſhore, and on ich the ſea broke in a dreadful ſurf. As we paſſed ſe rocks to the north in the night, and diſcovered others under our bow at break of day, it is mani- that our danger was imminent, and our eſcape cri- l in the higheſt degree: from the ſituation of theſe ks, ſo well adapted to catch unwary ſtrangers, I ed them the TRAPS. Our latitude at noon was 26 S. The land in ſight, which had the appear- e of an iſland, extended from N. E. by N. to N. by W. and ſeemed to be about five leagues diſtant m the main; the eaſtermoſt ledge of rocks bore S. E. diſtant one league and an half, and the norther- ſt N. E. ½ E. diſtant about three leagues. This d is high and barren, with nothing upon it but a ſtraggling ſhrubs, for not a ſingle tree was to be n; it was, however, remarkable for a number of ite patches, which I took to be marble, as they re- ted the ſun's rays very ſtrongly: other patches of ſame kind, we had obſerved in different parts of country, particularly in Mercury Bay, we conti- ued to ſtand cloſe upon a wind to the weſtward, and ſun-ſet the ſouthermoſt point of land bore N. 38 E. ant four leagues, and the weſtermoſt land in ſight e N. 2 E. The point which lies in latitude 47° S. longitude 192° 12′ W. I named SOUTH CAPE; weſtermoſt land was a ſmall iſland, lying off the nt of the main.

Suppoſing South Cape to be the ſouthern extremity this country, as indeed it proved to be, I hoped to round it by the weſt; for a large hollow ſwell from ſouth-weſt, ever ſince our laſt hard gale, had con- ced me that there was no land in that direction.

1770. March. In the night we had a hard gale at N. E. by N. and N. which brought us under our courſes; but about
Saturday 10. eight in the morning it became moderate; and at noon, ſteering to the weſt, we tacked and ſtood to the northward, having no land in ſight. Our latitude, by obſervation, was 47° 33′, our longitude, weſt from the South Cape, 59′. We ſtood away N. N. E. cloſe upon a wind, without ſeeing any land, till two the
Sunday 11. next morning, when we diſcovered an iſland bearing N. W. by N. diſtant about five leagues. About two hours afterwards we ſaw land a-head, upon which we tacked and ſtood off till ſix, when we ſtood in to take a nearer view of it. At eleven we were within three leagues of it, but the wind ſeeming to incline upon the ſhore, I tacked and ſtood off to the ſouthward. We had now ſailed round the land which we had diſcovered on the 5th, and which then did not appear to be joined to the main which lay north of it; and being now come to the other ſide of what we ſuppoſed to be water, a bay, or low land, it had the ſame appearance; but when I came to lay it down upon paper, I ſaw no reaſon to ſuppoſe it to be an iſland; on the contrary, I was clearly of opinion, that it made part of the main. At noon, the weſtern extremity of the main bore N. 59 W. and the iſland which we had ſeen in the morning S. 59 W. diſtant about five leagues. It lies in latitude 46° 31′ S. longitude 192° 49′ W. and is nothing but a barren rock, about a mile in circuit, remarkably high, and lies full five leagues diſtant from the main. This iſland I named after Dr. Solander, and called it SOLANDER's ISLAND. The ſhore of the main lies neareſt E. by S. and W. by N. and forms a large open bay, in which there is no appearance of any harbour or ſhelter for ſhipping againſt S. W. and ſoutherly winds. The ſurface of the country is broken into craggy hills of a great height, on the ſummits of which are ſeveral patches of ſnow; it is not, however, wholly barren, for we could ſee wood not only in the vallies, but upon the higheſt ground, yet we ſaw no appearance of its being inhabited.

Monday 12. We continued to ſtand to the S. W. by S. till eleven o'clock the next morning, when the wind ſhifted to the S. W. by W. upon which we wore, and ſtood

o the N. N. W. being then in latitude 47° 40′ S. lon- 1770. March.
itude 193° 50′ W. and having a hollow ſea from the
. W.

During the night, we ſteered N. N. W. till ſix in Tueſday 13.
he morning, when, ſeeing no land, we ſteered N. by
. till eight, when we ſteered N. E. by E. ½ E. to
ake the land, which at ten we ſaw bearing E. N. E.
ut it being hazy, we could diſtinguiſh nothing upon
. At noon our latitude, by obſervation, was 46° S.
bout two it cleared up, and the land appeared to be
igh, rude, and mountainous. About half an hour
ter three I hauled in for a bay, in which there ap-
eared to be good anchorage; but in about an hour,
nding the diſtance too great to run before it would
e dark, and the wind blowing too hard to make
e attempt ſafe in the night, I bore away along the
ore.

This bay, which I called DUSKY BAY, lies in lati-
de 45° 47′ S. it is between three and four miles broad
the entrance, and ſeems to be full as deep as it is
oad: it contains ſeveral iſlands, behind which there
uſt be ſhelter from all winds, though poſſibly there
ay not be ſufficient depth of water. The north point
this bay, when it bears S. E. by S. is rendered very
markable, by five high-peaked rocks which lie off it,
d have the appearance of the four fingers and thumb
a man's hand, for which reaſon I called it POINT
VE FINGERS. The land of this Point is farther re-
arkable, for being the only level land within a con-
derable diſtance. It extends near two leagues to the
rthward, is lofty, and covered with wood; the land
hind it is very different, conſiſting wholly of moun-
ins, totally barren and rocky; and this difference
ves the Cape the appearance of an iſland.

At ſun-ſet, the ſouthermoſt land in ſight bore due
uth, diſtant about five or ſix leagues; and as this is
e weſtermoſt point of land upon the whole coaſt, I
lled it WEST CAPE. It lies about three leagues to
e ſouthward of Duſky Bay, in the latitude of 45°
′ S. and in the longitude of 193° 17′ W. The land
this Cape is of a moderate height next the ſea, and
s nothing remarkable about it, except a very white
ff, two or three leagues to the ſouthward of it; to
the

1770. March. the ſouthward of it alſo the land trends away to the S. E. and to the northward it trends N. N. E.

Having brought to for the night, we made ſail along
Wedneſ. 14. the ſhore at four in the morning, in the direction of N. E. ½ N. with a moderate breeze at S. S. E. At noon our latitude, by obſervation, was 45° 13′ S. At this time, being about a league and an half from the ſhore, we ſounded, but had no ground with ſeventy fathoms. We had juſt paſſed a ſmall narrow opening in land, where there ſeemed to be a very ſafe and convenient harbour, formed by an iſland which lay in the middle of the opening at eaſt. The opening lies in latitude 45° 16′ S. and on the land behind it are mountains, the ſummits of which were covered with ſnow that appeared to have been recently fallen; and indeed for two days paſt we had found the weather very cold. On each ſide the entrance of the opening, the land riſes almoſt perpendicularly from the ſea to a ſtupendous height, and this indeed was the reaſon why I did not carry the ſhip into it, for no wind could blow there but right in or right out, in the direction of either eaſt or weſt, and I thought it by no means adviſeable to put into a place whence I could not have got out but with a wind, which, experience had taught me, did not blow more than one day in a month. In this, however, I acted contrary to the opinion of ſome perſons on board, who, in very ſtrong terms, expreſſed their deſire to harbour for preſent convenience, without any regard to future diſadvantages.

In the evening, being about two leagues from the ſhore, we ſounded, and had no ground at 108 fathoms; the variation of the needle, by azimuth, was 14° E. and by amplitude 15° 2′. We made the beſt of our way along the ſhore, with what wind we had, keeping at the diſtance of between two and three leagues. At noon we were in latitude 44° 47′ having run only twelve leagues upon a N. E. ½ N. courſe, during the laſt four and twenty hours.

We continued to ſteer along the ſhore, in the direc-
Thurſ. 15. tion of N. E. ¼ E. till ſix o'clock in the evening, when we brought to for the night. At four in the morning we ſtood in for the land, and when the day broke we ſaw what appeared to be an inlet; but, upon a nearer approach,

approach, proved to be only a deep valley between two high lands: we proceeded therefore in the ſame courſe, keeping the ſhore at the diſtance of between four and five miles. At noon, on the 16th, the northermoſt point of land in ſight bore N. 60 E. at the diſtance of ten miles, and our latitude, by obſervation, was 44° 5′, our longitude, from Cape Weſt 2° 8′ E. About two we paſſed the point, which at noon had been diſtant ten miles, and found it to conſiſt of red high cliffs, down which there fell a caſcade of water in four ſmall ſtreams, and I therefore gave it the name of CASCADE POINT. From this point the land trends firſt N. 76 E. and afterwards more to the northward. At the diſtance of eight leagues from Caſcade Point, in the direction of E. N. E. and at a little diſtance from the ſhore, lies a ſmall low iſland, which bore from us S. by E. at the diſtance of about a league and a half. 1770. May. Friday 16.

At ſeven in the evening we brought to, in thirty-three fathoms, with a fine ſandy bottom; at ten we had fifty fathoms, and at twelve wore in ſixty-five fathoms, having driven ſeveral miles N. N. W. after our having brought to. At two in the morning we had no ground with 140 fathoms, by which it appears that the ſoundings extend but a little way from the ſhore. About this time it fell calm; at eight a breeze ſprung up at S. W. with which we ſteered along the ſhore, in the direction of N. E. by E. ½ E. at the diſtance of about three leagues. At ſix in the evening, being about one league from the ſhore, we had ſeventeen fathoms, and at eight, being about three leagues from the ſhore, we had forty-four; we now ſhortened ſail and brought to, having run ten leagues N. E. by E. ſince noon. Saturd. 17.

It was calm moſt part of the night; but at ten in the morning a light breeze ſprung up at S. W. by W. when we made ſail again along the ſhore N. E. by N. having a large ſwell from the W. S. W. which had riſen in the night. At noon our latitude, by obſervation, was 43° 4′ S. and our longitude from Cape Weſt 4° 12′ E. We obſerved that the vallies, as well as the mountains, were this morning covered with ſnow, part of which we ſuppoſed to have fallen during the night, when we had rain. At ſix in the evening we ſhortened ſail, and at ten brought to, at the diſtance of about five Sunday 18.

1770. March. five leagues from the ſhore, where we had 115 fathoms. At midnight, there being little wind, we made ſail,
Monday 19. and at eight in the morning we ſtood to the N. E. cloſe upon a wind till noon, when we tacked, being about three leagues from the land, and, by obſervation, in latitude 42° 8′, and longitude from Cape Weſt 5° 5′ E.

Tueſd. 20. We continued to ſtand weſtward till two in the morning, when we made a trip to the eaſtward, and afterwards ſtood weſtward till noon, when, by our reckoning, we were in the latitude of 42° 23′, and longitude from Cape Weſt 5° 35′ E. We now tacked and ſtood eaſtward, with a freſh gale at N. by W. till ſix in the evening, when the wind ſhifted to the S. and S. S. W.

Wedneſ. 21. with which we ſteered N. E. by N. till ſix in the morning, when we hauled in E. by N. to make the land, which we ſaw ſoon afterwards. At noon our latitude, by account, was 41° 37′, and our longitude from Cape Weſt 5° 42′ E. We were now within three or four leagues of the land, but, it being foggy, we could ſee nothing upon it diſtinctly, and as we had much wind, and a vaſt ſwell rolling in upon the ſhore from the W. S. W. I did not think it ſafe to go nearer.

In the afternoon we had a gentle breeze from the S. S. W. with which we ſteered north along the ſhore till eight, when, being within between two and three leagues, we ſounded, and had but thirty-four fathoms; upon which we hauled off N. W. by N. till eleven at night, and then brought to, having ſixty-four fathoms.

Thurſd. 22. At four in the morning we made ſail to the N. E. with a light breeze at S. S. W. which at eight veered to the weſtward, and ſoon after died away. At this time we were within three or four miles of the land, and had fifty-four fathoms, with a large ſwell from the W. S. W. rolling obliquely upon the ſhore, which made me fear that I ſhould be obliged to anchor; but by the help of a light air now and then from the S. W. I was able to keep the ſhip from driving. At noon, the northermoſt land in ſight bore N. E. by E. ½ E. diſtant about ten leagues; our latitude, by account, was 40° 55′ S. longitude from Cape Weſt 6° 35′ E. From this time we had light airs from the ſouthward, with intervals of calm,

lm, till noon on the 23d, when our latitude, by ob- 1770. March.
rvation, wa 40° 36′ 30″ S. and our longitude from
ape Weſt 6° 32′ E. The eaſtermoſt point of land in Friday 23.
ght bore E. 10 N. at the diſtance of ſeven leagues,
nd a bluff head or point, of which we had been a-breaſt
noon the day before, and off which lay ſome rocks
ove water, bore S. 18 W. at the diſtance of ſix
agues. This point I called ROCK'S POINT. Our
titude was now 40° 55′ S. and having nearly run
wn the whole of the north-weſt coaſt of Tovy Poe-
mmoo, I ſhall give ſome account of the face of the
untry.

I have already obſerved, that on the 11th, when we
ere off the ſouthern part, the land then ſeen was
aggy and mountainous, and there is great reaſon to
lieve that the ſame ridge of mountains extends near-
the whole length of the iſland. Between the weſter-
moſt land which we ſaw that day, and the eaſtermoſt
hich we ſaw on the 13th, there is a ſpace of about
x or eight leagues, of which we did not ſee the coaſt,
ough we plainly diſcovered the mountains inland.
he ſea-coaſt near Cape Weſt is low, riſing with an
ſy and gradual aſcent to the foot of the mountains,
eing in moſt parts covered with wood. From Point
ive-Fingers, down to latitude 44° 20′, there is a nar-
w ridge of hills that riſes directly from the ſea, and
covered with wood: cloſe behind theſe hills are the
ountains, extending in another ridge of a ſtupendous
eight, and conſiſting of rocks that are totally barren
nd naked, except where they are covered with ſnow,
hich is to be ſeen in large patches upon many parts
them, and has probably lain there ever ſince the
reation of the world. A proſpect more rude, craggy,
nd deſolate, than this country affords from the ſea,
annot poſſibly be conceived; for as far inland as the
ye can reach, nothing appears but the ſummits of
ocks, which ſtand ſo near together, that inſtead of val-
es there are only fiſſures between them. From the
titude of 44° 20′, to the latitude of 42° 8′, theſe
ountains lie farther inland, and the ſea coaſt conſiſts
f woody hills and vallies, of various height and extent,
nd has much appearance of fertility; many of the
allies form plains of conſiderable extent, wholly co-
vered

1770. March. vered with wood, but it is very probable that the ground in many places is ſwampy, and interſperſed with pools of water. From latitude 42° 8′, to 41° 30′, the land is not diſtinguiſhed by any thing remarkable; it riſes into hills directly from the ſea, and is covered with wood; but the weather being foggy while we were upon this part of the coaſt, we could ſee very little inland, except now and then the ſummits of the mountains, towering above the cloudy miſts that obſcured them below, which confirmed my opinion, that a chain of mountains extended from one end of the iſland to the other.

In the afternoon we had a gentle breeze at S. W. which, before it was quite dark, brought us a-breaſt of the eaſtern point which we had ſeen at noon; but not knowing what courſe the land took on the other ſide of it, we brought to in thirty-four fathoms, at the diſtance of about one league from the ſhore. At eight in the evening, there being little wind, we filled and ſtood on till midnight, and then we brought to till

Saturd. 24. four in the morning, when we again made ſail, and at break of day we ſaw low land extending from the point to the S. S. E. as far as the eye could reach, the eaſtern extremity of which appeared in round hillocks. By this time the gale had veered to the eaſtward, which

Sunday 25. obliged us to ply to windward. At noon next day, the eaſtern point bore S. W. by S. diſtant ſixteen miles, and our latitude was 40° 19′; the wind continuing eaſterly, we were nearly in the ſame ſituation at noon the

Monday 26. the day following. About three o'clock the wind came to the weſtward, and we ſteered E. S. E. with all the

Tueſd. 27. ſail we could ſet till it was dark, and then ſhortened ſail till the morning: as we had thick hazy weather all night, we kept ſounding continually, and had from thirty-ſeven to forty-two fathoms. When the day broke we ſaw land bearing S. E. by E. and an iſland lying near it bearing E. S. E. diſtant about five leagues. This iſland I knew to be the ſame that I had ſeen from the entrance of Queen Charlotte's Sound, from which it bears N. W. by N. diſtant nine leagues. At noon it bore ſouth, diſtant four or five miles, and the north weſt head of the Sound S. E. by S. diſtant ten leagues and

d an half. Our latitude, by obſervation, was 40° 1770. March.
' S.

As we had now circumnavigated the whole country, became neceſſary to think of quitting it; but as I had irty tons of empty water-caſks on board, this could t be done till I had filled them; I therefore hauled nd the iſland, and entered a bay which lies between t and Queen Charlotte's Sound, leaving three more nds, which lay cloſe under the weſtern ſhore, be- een three and four miles within the entrance, on our board hand. While we were running in, we kept lead continually going, and had from forty to twelve homs. At ſix o'clock in the evening we anchored eleven fathoms, with a muddy bottom, under the ſt ſhore, in the ſecond cove, that lies within the ee iſlands; and as ſoon as it was light, the next Wedneſ. 28.
rning, I took a boat and went on ſhore, to look for vatering place, and a proper birth for the ſhip, both ich I found much to my ſatisfaction. As ſoon as ſhip was moored, I ſent an officer on ſhore, to ſu- intend the watering, and the Carpenter with his w to cut wood, while the long-boat was employed anding the empty caſks.

In this employment we were buſy till the 30th, when Friday 30.
wind ſeeming to ſettle at S. E. and our water be- nearly completed, we warped the ſhip out of the e, that we might have room to get under ſail; and noon I went away in the pinnace, to examine as ch of the bay as my time would admit.

After rowing about two leagues up it, I went a-ſhore n a point of land on the weſtern ſide, and having nbed a hill, I ſaw the weſtern arm of this bay run S. W. by W. about five leagues farther, yet I could diſcover the end of it. There appeared to be ſe- al other inlets, or at leaſt ſmall bays, between this the north weſt head of Queen Charlotte's Sound, ach of which, I make no doubt, there is anchor- and ſhelter, as they are all covered from the ſea d by the iſlands which lie without them. The land ut this bay, as far as I could ſee of it, is of a hilly face, chiefly covered with trees, ſhrubs, and fern, ich render travelling difficult and fatiguing. In this urſion I was accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander,

1770. March. Solander, who found ſeveral new plants. We ... with ſome huts, which ſeemed to have been long ... ſerted, but ſaw no inhabitants. Mr. Banks examin... ſeveral of the ſtones that lay upon the beach, whi... were full of veins, and had a mineral appearance, ... he did not diſcover any thing in them which he kn... to be ore; if he had had an opportunity to exam... any of the bare rocks, perhaps he might have be... more fortunate. He was alſo of opinion, that what ... had taken for marble in another place, was a miner... ſubſtance, and that, conſidering the correſpondence ... latitude between this place and South America, it w... not improbable but that, by a proper examinati... ſomething very valuable might be found.

At my return, in the evening, I found all the w... and water on board, and the ſhip ready for the ſea; ... reſolved therefore to quit the country, and return hom... by ſuch a route as might be of moſt advantage to t... ſervice, and upon this ſubject took the opinion of m... officers. I had myſelf a ſtrong deſire to return by C... Horn, becauſe that would have enabled me finally ... determine, whether there is or is not a ſouthern con... nent; but againſt this it was a ſufficient objection, th... we muſt have kept in a high ſouthern latitude in th... very depth of winter, with a veſſel which was n... thought ſufficient for the undertaking; and the ſam... reaſon was urged againſt our proceeding directly for t... Cape of Good Hope, with ſtill more force, becauſe ... diſcovery of moment could be hoped for in that rou... it was therefore reſolved that we ſhould return by t... Eaſt Indies, and that with this view we ſhould, up... leaving the coaſt, ſteer weſtward, till we ſhould fall ... with the eaſt coaſt of New Holland, and then follo... the direction of that coaſt to the northward, till w... ſhould arrive at its northern extremity; but if th... ſhould be found impracticable, it was further reſolv... that we ſhould endeavour to fall in with the land, ... iſlands, ſaid to have been diſcovered by Quiros.

Saturd. 31. With this view, at break of day on Saturday ... 31ſt of March, 1770, we got under ſail, and put to ... with the advantage of a freſh gale at S. E. and cl... weather, taking our departure from the eaſtern poi... wh...

ich we had ſeen at noon on the 23d, and to which, this occaſion, I gave the name of CAPE FARE- 1770. March.
LL.

The bay out of which we had juſt ſailed I called MIRALTY BAY, giving the name of CAPE STE- NS to the north-weſt point, and of CAPE JACKSON he ſouth-eaſt, after the two gentlemen who at this were Secretaries to the Board of Admiralty.

dmiralty Bay may eaſily be known by the iſland has been juſt mentioned, which lies two miles E. of Cape Stephens, in latitude 40° 37′ S. longi- 185° 6′ W. and is of a conſiderable height. Be- n this iſland and Cape Farewell, which are be- n fourteen and fifteen leagues diſtant from each r, in the direction of W. by N. and E. by S. the e forms a large deep bay, the bottom of which we d ſcarcely ſee, while we were ſailing in a ſtraight from one Cape to the other; it is, however, pro- y of leſs depth than it appeared to be; for as we d the water ſhallower here, than at the ſame di- ce from any other part of the coaſt, there is reaſon ppoſe, that the land at the bottom which lies next ea is low, and therefore not eaſily to be diſtinguiſh- om it; I have for this reaſon called it BLIND BAY, am of opinion, that it is the ſame which was call- Murderer's Bay by Taſman.

uch particulars of this country and its inhabitants, their manners and cuſtoms, as could be learned e we were circumnavigating the coaſt, ſhall now elated.

CHAP. VIII.

neral Account of New Zealand: its firſt Diſcovery, Situation, Extent, Climate, and Productions.

EW ZEALAND was firſt diſcovered by Abel Janſen Taſman, a Dutch navigator, whoſe name been ſeveral times mentioned in this narrative, on 13th of December, in the year 1642. He traverſ- he eaſtern coaſt from latitude 34° to 43°, and en- d the ſtreight which divides the two iſlands, and in chart is called COOK'S STREIGHT; but being at-

1770. March. tacked by the natives ſoon after he came to an chor, in the place to which he gave the name of Mu derer's Bay, he never went on ſhore. He gave th country the name of STAATEN LAND, or the land o the States, in honour of the States General, and it now generally diſtinguiſhed in our maps and charts b the name of NEW ZEALAND. As the whole of th country, except that part of the coaſt which was ſe by Taſman from on board his ſhip, has from his tim to the voyage of the Endeavour, remained altoget unknown, it has by many been ſuppoſed to be part a ſouthern continent. It is, however, now known conſiſt of two large iſlands, divided from each other a ſtreight or paſſage, which is about four or five lea broad.

Theſe iſlands are ſituated between the latitudes 34° and 48° S. and between the longitudes of 181° 194° W. which is now determined with uncommo exactneſs, from innumerable obſervations of the ſ and moon, and one of the tranſits of Mercury, by M Green, a perſon of known abilities, who, as has be obſerved before, was ſent out by the Royal Society, obſerve the tranſit of Venus in the South Seas.

The northermoſt of theſe iſlands is called by the n tives Eaheinomauwe, and the ſouthermoſt Tovy, Tavai Poenammoo; yet, as I have obſerved befo we are not ſure whether the name Tovy Poenamm comprehends the whole ſouthern iſland, or only p of it. The figure and extent of theſe iſlands, with ſituation of the bays and harbours they contain, the ſmaller iſlands that lie about them will appear fro the chart that I have drawn, every part of which, ho ever, I cannot vouch to be equally accurate. The co of Eaheinomauwe, from Cape Palliſer to Eaſt Ca is laid down with great exactneſs, both in its figu and the courſe and diſtance from point to point; the opportunities that offered, and the methods tha uſed, were ſuch as could ſcarcely admit of an err From Eaſt Cape to St. Maria van Diemen, the cha though perhaps not equally exact, is without any ſ ror of moment, except poſſibly in ſome few place which are here, and in other parts of the chart, diſti guiſhed by a dotted line, and which I had no oppo

fun

nity to examine. From Cape Maria van Diemen to 1770. March.
titude 36° 15′, we were ſeldom nearer the ſhore than
etween five and eight leagues; and therefore the line
at marks the ſea coaſt may poſſibly be erroneous.
om latitude 36° 15′ to nearly the length of Entry
land, our courſe was very near the ſhore, and in this
rt of the chart, therefore, there can be no material
ror, except perhaps at Cape Tierawitte. Between
ntry Iſland and Cape Palliſer we were again farther
om the ſhore, and this part of the coaſt, therefore,
ay not be laid down with minute exactneſs; yet,
on the whole, I am of opinion, that this iſland will
found not much to differ from the figure that I
ve given it, and that upon the coaſt there are few or
harbours which are not noticed in the journal, or
lineated in the chart. I cannot, however, ſay as
uch of Tovy Poenammoo, the ſeaſon of the year,
d the circumſtances of the voyage, would not per-
t me to ſpend ſo much time about this iſland as I
d employed upon the other; and the ſtorms that we
t with made it both difficult and dangerous to keep
ar the ſhore. However, from Queen Charlotte's
und to Cape Campbell, and as far to the S. W. as
itude 43°, the chart will be found pretty accurate.
tween latitude 43° and latitude 44° 20′ the line may
doubted; for of ſome part of the coaſt which it
reſents we had ſcarcely a view. From latitude
° 20′ to Cape Saunders, our diſtance would not per-
t me to be particular, and the weather was beſides
remely unfavourable. From Cape Saunders to Cape
uth, and even to Cape Weſt, there is alſo reaſon to
r that the chart will in many places be found erro-
ous, as we were ſeldom able to keep the ſhore, and
re ſometimes blown to ſuch a diſtance, that it could
be ſeen. From Cape Weſt to Cape Farewell,
even to Charlotte's Sound, it is not more to be
ſted.

Tovy Poenammoo is for the moſt part a mountain- Country.
, and, to all appearance, a barren country; and
people whom we ſaw in Queen Charlotte's Sound,
oſe that came off to us under the ſnowy mountains,
the fires to the weſt of Cape Saunders, were all

1770. March. the inhabitants, and ſigns of inhabitants, that we diſcovered upon the whole iſland.

Eaheinomauwe has a much better appearance; it is indeed not only hilly but mountainous, yet even the hills and mountains are covered with wood, and every valley has a rivulet of water. The ſoil in theſe vallies, and in the plains, of which there are many that are not overgrown with wood, is in general light, but fertile, and in the opinion of Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, as well as of every other gentleman on board, every kind of European grain, plants, and fruit, would flouriſh here in the utmoſt luxuriance. From the vegetables that we found here, there is reaſon to conclude that the winters are milder than thoſe in England, and we found the ſummer not hotter, though it was more equally warm; ſo that if this country ſhould be ſettled by people from Europe, they would, with a little induſtry, be very ſoon ſupplied not only with the neceſſaries, but the luxuries of life in great abundance.

Quadrupeds. In this country there are no quadrupeds but dogs and rats, at leaſt we ſaw no other, and the rats are ſo ſcarce that many of us never ſaw them. The dogs live with the people, who breed them for no other purpoſe than to eat: there might, indeed, be quadrupeds that we did not ſee; but this is not probable, becauſe the chief pride of the natives, with reſpect to their dreſs, is in the ſkins and hair of ſuch animals as they have, and we never ſaw the ſkin of any animal about them but thoſe of dogs and birds. There are indeed ſeals upon the coaſt, and we once ſaw a ſea-lion, but we imagine they are ſeldom caught; for though we ſaw ſome of their teeth, which were faſhioned into an ornament like a bodkin, and worn by the natives at their breaſt and highly valued, we ſaw none of their ſkins. There are whales alſo upon this coaſt; and though the people did not appear to have any art or inſtrument, by which ſuch an animal could be taken and killed, we ſaw pattoo-pattoos in the poſſeſſion of ſome of them which were made of the bone of a whale, or of ſome other animal whoſe bone had exactly the ſame appearance.

Of birds, the ſpecies are not many; and of theſe one, except perhaps the gannet, is the ſame with oſe of Europe: here are ducks, indeed, and ſhaggs ſeveral kinds, ſufficiently reſembling thoſe of Eupe, to be called the ſame, by thoſe who have exained them very nicely. Here are alſo hawks, owls, d quails, which differ but little from thoſe of Europe firſt ſight; and ſeveral ſmall birds, whoſe ſong, as s been remarked in the courſe of the narrative, is uch more melodious than any that we had ever heard. The ſea coaſt is alſo viſited by many oceanic birds, rticularly albatroſſes, ſheerwaters, pintados, and a w of the birds which Sir John Narborough has called nguins, and which indeed are what the French call uance, and ſeem to be a middle ſpecies between bird d fiſh; for their feathers, eſpecially thoſe upon their ngs, differ very little from ſcales; and their wings emſelves, which they uſe only in diving, and not to celerate their motion even upon the ſurface of the ter, may perhaps, with equal propriety, be called s.

1770. March. Birds.

Neither are inſects in greater plenty than birds: a w butterflies and beetles, fleſh-flies, very like thoſe in rope, and ſome muſquitos and ſand-flies, perhaps ctly the ſame with thoſe of North America, make the whole catalogue. Of muſquitos and ſand-flies, wever, which are juſtly accounted the curſe of every untry where they abound, we did not ſee many: ere were, indeed, a few in almoſt every place where went on ſhore, but they gave us ſo little trouble, t we did not make uſe of the ſhades which we had ovided for the ſecurity of our faces.

For this ſcarcity of animals upon the land, the ſea, wever, makes an abundant recompence, every creek arming with fiſh, which are not only wholeſome, t equally delicious with thoſe of Europe. The ſhip dom anchored in any ſtation, or with a light gale ſed any place, that did not afford us enough, with ok and line, to ſerve the whole ſhip's company, eſcially to the ſouthward. When we lay at anchor, e boats, with hook and line, near the rocks, could e fiſh in any quantity, and the ſeine ſeldom failed producing a ſtill more ample ſupply; ſo that both

Fiſh.

1770. March. times when we anchored in Cook's Streight, every mess in the ſhip, that was not careleſs and improvident, ſalted as much as laſted many weeks after they went to ſea. Of this article, the variety was equal to the plenty: we had mackarel of many kinds, among which one was exactly the ſame as we have in England; theſe came in immenſe ſhoals, and were taken by the natives in their ſeines, who ſold them to us at a very eaſy rate. Beſides theſe, there were fiſh of many ſpecies, which we had never ſeen before, but to all which the ſeamen very readily gave names; ſo that we talked here as familiarly of hakes, bream, cole-fiſh, and many others as we do in England; and, though they are by no means of the ſame family, it muſt be confeſſed, that they do honour to the name. But the higheſt luxury which the ſea affords us, even in this place, was the lobſter, or ſea cray-fiſh, which are probably the ſame that in the account of Lord Anſon's Voyage are ſaid to have been found at the iſland of Juan Fernandez, except that, although large, they are not quite equal in ſize; they differ from ours in England in ſeveral particulars, they have a greater number of prickles on their backs, and they are red when firſt taken out of the water: theſe we bought alſo every where to the northward in great quantities of the natives, who catch them by diving near the ſhore, and finding out where they lie with their feet. We had alſo a fiſh that Frezier, in his Voyage to the Spaniſh Main, in South America, has deſcribed by the names of Elefant, Pejegallo, or Poiſon coq, which, though coarſe, we eat very heartily. Several ſpecies of the ſkate, or ſting ray, are alſo found here, which are ſtill coarſer than the elefant; but, as an atonement, we had among many kinds of dog-fiſh, one ſpotted with white, which was in flavour exactly ſimilar to our beſt ſkate, but much more delicious. We had alſo flat fiſh reſembling both ſoles and flounders, beſides eels and congers of various kinds, with many others, of which thoſe who ſhall hereafter viſit this coaſt will not fail to find the advantage, and ſhell-fiſh in great variety, particularly clams, cockles, and oyſters.

Among

Among the vegetable productions of this country, 1770. March.
e trees claim a principal place; for here are foreſts
vaſt extent, full of the ſtraighteſt, the cleaneſt, and Trees, plants, &c.
e largeſt timber-trees that we had ever ſeen; their
e, their grain, and apparent durability, render them
for any kind of building, and indeed for every other
rpoſe except maſts, for which, as I have already
ſerved, they are too hard and too heavy; there is
e in particular which, when we were upon the coaſt,
s rendered conſpicuous by a ſcarlet flower, that ſeem-
to be a compendage of many fibres; it is about as
ge as an oak, and the wood is exceedingly hard and
avy, and excellently adapted to the uſe of the mill-
ight: there is another which grows in the ſwamps,
markably tall and ſtraight, thick enough to make
ſts for veſſels of any ſize, and, if a judgment may
formed by the direction of its grain, very tough.
is, which, as has been before remarked, our Car-
ter thought to reſemble the pitch-pine, may pro-
bly be lightened by tapping, and it will then make
e fineſt maſts in the world; it has a leaf not unlike
ew, and bears berries in ſmall bunches.

Great part of this country is covered with a luxuri-
verdure; and our natural hiſtorians were gratified
the novelty, if not the variety of the plants. Sow-
ſtle, garden night-ſhade, one or two kinds of graſs,
ſame as in England, and two or three kinds of fern,
thoſe of the Weſt Indies, with a few of the plants
t are to be found in almoſt every part of the world,
e all, out of about four hundred ſpecies, that have
herto been deſcribed by any botaniſts, or had been
elſewhere during the courſe of this voyage, except
ut five or ſix which had been gathered at Terra del
go.

Of eatable vegetables there are but few; our peo-
, indeed, who had been long at ſea, eat with equal
ſure and advantage of wild celery, and a kind of
ſſes, which grew in great abundance upon all parts
the ſea ſhore. We alſo, once or twice, met with a
t like what the country people in England call
mbs quarters, or Fathen, which we boiled inſtead of
ens; and once we had the good fortune to find a
bage-tree, which afforded us a delicious meal; and,

1770. March. except the fern-root, and one other vegetable, totally unknown in Europe, and which, though eaten by the natives, was extremely disagreeable to us, we found no other vegetable production that was fit for food, among those that appeared to be the wild produce of the country; and we could find but three esculent plants among those which are raised by cultivation, yams, sweet potatoes, and coccos. Of the yams and potatoes there are plantations consisting of many acres, and I believe that any ship which should happen to be here in the autumn, when they are dug up, might purchase them in any quantity.

Gourds are also cultivated by the natives of this place, the fruit of which furnishes them with vessels for various uses. We also found here the Chinese paper mulberry-tree, the same as that of which the inhabitants of the South Sea islands make their cloth; but it is so scarce, that though the new Zealanders also make cloth of it, they have not enough for any other purpose than to wear as an ornament in the holes which they make in their ears, as I have observed before.

But among all the trees, shrubs, and plants of this country, there is not one that produces fruit, except a berry which has neither sweetness nor flavour, and which none but the boys took pains to gather, should be honoured with that appellation. There is, however, a plant that serves the inhabitants instead of hemp and flax, which excels all that are put to the same purposes in other countries: of this plant there are two sorts; the leaves of both resemble those of flags, but the flowers are smaller, and their clusters more numerous; in one kind they are yellow, and in the other a deep red. Of the leaves of these plants, with very little preparation, they make all their common apparel; and of these they make also their strings, lines and cordage for every purpose, which are so much stronger than any thing we can make with hemp, that they will not bear a comparison. From the same plant by another preparation, they draw long slender fibres which shine like silk, and are as white as snow; of these, which are also surprizingly strong, the finer clothes are made; and of the leaves, without any other preparation than splitting them into proper breadths,

and

nd tying the ſtrips together, they make their fiſhing ets; ſome of which, as I have before remarked, are f an enormous ſize. 1770. March.

A plant, which with ſuch advantage might be ap-lied to ſo many uſeful and important purpoſes, would ertainly be a great acquiſition to England, where it ould probably thrive with very little trouble, as it eems to be hardy, and to affect no particular ſoil; eing found equally in hill and valley; in the drieſt ould, and the deepeſt bogs: the bog, however, it eems rather to prefer, as near ſuch places we obſerved to be larger than elſewhere.

I have already obſerved, that we found great plenty f iron ſand in Mercury Bay, and therefore that iron re is undoubtedly to be found at no great diſtance. s to other metals, we had ſcarcely knowledge enough f the country for conjecture.

If the ſettling of this country ſhould ever be thought n object worthy the attention of Great Britain, the eſt place for eſtabliſhing a colony would be either on he banks of the Thames, or in the country border-ng on the Bay of Iſlands. In either place there would e the advantage of an excellent harbour; and, by eans of the river, ſettlements might be extended, nd a communication eſtabliſhed with the inland parts f the country: veſſels might be built of the fine tim-er which abounds in theſe parts, at very little trou-le and expence, fit for ſuch a navigation as would nſwer the purpoſe. I cannot indeed exactly aſſign he depth of water which a veſſel intended to navigate his river, even as far up as I went with the boat, hould draw, becauſe this depends upon the depth f water that is upon the bar, or flats, which lie be-ore the narrow part of the river, for I had no oppor-unity to make myſelf acquainted with them; but am of opinion, that a veſſel which ſhould draw ot more than twelve feet would perfectly anſwer the urpoſe.

When we firſt arrived upon the coaſt of this coun-y, we imagined it to be much better peopled than we fterwards found it, concluding that the inland parts ere populous from the ſmoke that we ſaw at a con-iderable diſtance from the ſhore; and perhaps that may

1770. March. may really be the caſe, with reſpect to the country behind Poverty Bay, and the Bay of Plenty, where the inhabitants appeared to be more numerous than in other places. But we had reaſon to believe, that, in general, no part of the country but the ſea coaſt is inhabited; and even there we found the people but thinly ſcattered, all the weſtern coaſt from Cape Maria Van Diemen to Mount Egmont being totally deſolate; ſo that upon the whole the number of inhabitants bears no proportion to the extent of country.

CHAP. IX.

A Deſcription of the Inhabitants, their Habitations, Apparel, Ornaments, Food, Cookery, and Manner of Life.

THE ſtature of the men in general is equal to the largeſt of thoſe in Europe: they are ſtout, well limbed, and fleſhy; but not fat, like the lazy and luxurious inhabitants of the iſlands in the South Seas: they are alſo exceedingly vigorous and active, and have an adroitneſs, and manual dexterity in an uncommon degree, which are diſcovered in whatever they do. I have ſeen the ſtrokes of fifteen paddles on a ſide in one of their canoes made with incredible quickneſs, and yet with ſuch minute exactneſs of time, that all the rowers ſeemed to be actuated by one common ſoul. Their colour in general is brown; but in few deeper than that of a Spaniard, who has been expoſed to the ſun; in many not ſo deep. The women have not a feminine delicacy in their appearance, but their voice is remarkably ſoft; and by that, the dreſs of both ſexes being the ſame, they are principally diſtinguiſhed: they have, however, like the women of other countries, more airy cheerfulneſs, and a greater flow of animal ſpirits, than the other ſex. Their hair, both of the head and beard, is black: and their teeth extremely regular, and as white as ivory: the features of both ſexes are good; they ſeem to enjoy high health, and we ſaw many who appeared to be of great age. The diſpoſitions both of the men and the women

1770. March.

women seemed to be mild and gentle; they treat each other with the tendereſt affection, but are implacable towards their enemies, to whom, as I have before obſerved, they never give quarter. It may perhaps, at firſt, ſeem ſtrange, that where there is ſo little to be got by victory, there ſhould ſo often be war; and that every little diſtrict of a country inhabited by people ſo mild and placid, ſhould be at enmity with all the reſt. But poſſibly more is to be gained by victory among theſe people than at firſt appears, and they may be prompted to mutual hoſtilities by motives which no degree of friendſhip or affection is able to reſiſt. It appears, by the account that has already been given of them, that their principal food is fiſh, which can only be procured upon the ſea-coaſt; and there, in ſufficient quantities, only at certain times; the tribes, therefore, who live inland, if any ſuch there are, and even thoſe upon the coaſt, muſt be frequently in danger of periſhing by famine. Their country produces neither ſheep, nor goats, nor hogs, nor cattle; tame fowls they have none, nor any art by which thoſe that are wild can be caught in ſufficient plenty to ſerve as proviſion. If there are any whoſe ſituation cuts them off from a ſupply of fiſh, the only ſuccedaneum of all other animal food, except dogs, they have nothing to ſupport life, but the vegetables that have already been mentioned, of which the chief are fern root, yams, coco-nuts, and potatoes; when by accident theſe fail, the diſtreſs muſt be dreadful; and even among the inhabitants of the coaſt, many tribes muſt frequently be reduced to nearly the ſame ſituation, either by the failure of their plantations, or the deficiency of their dry ſeaſon, during the ſeaſon when but few fiſh are to be caught. Theſe conſiderations will enable us to account, not only for the perpetual danger in which the people who inhabit this country appear to live, by the care which they take to fortify every village, but for the horrid practice of eating thoſe who are killed in battle; for the hunger of him who is preſſed by famine to eat, will abſorb every feeling, and every ſentiment which would reſtrain him from allaying it with the body of his adverſary. It may however be remarked, that, if this account of the origin of ſo horrid a practice

1770. March. tice is true, the miſchief does by no means end with the neceſſity that produced it: after the practice has been once begun on one ſide by hunger, it will naturally be adopted on the other by revenge. Nor is this all, for though it may be pretended, by ſome who wish to appear ſpeculative and philoſophical, that whether the dead body of an enemy be eaten or buried, is in itſelf a matter perfectly indifferent; as it is, whether the breaſts and thighs of a woman ſhould be covered or naked; and that prejudice and habit only make us ſhudder at the violation of cuſtom in one inſtance, and bluſh at it in the other; yet, leaving this as a point of doubtful diſputation, to be diſcuſſed at leiſure, it may ſafely be affirmed, that the practice of eating human fleſh, whatever it may be in itſelf, is relatively and in its conſequences, moſt pernicious: tending manifeſtly to eradicate a principle which is the chief ſecurity of human life, and more frequently reſtrains the hand of murder than the ſenſe of duty, or even the fear of puniſhment.

Among thoſe who are accuſtomed to eat the dead death muſt have loſt much of its horror; and where there is little horror at the ſight of death, there will not be much repugnance to kill. A ſenſe of duty, and fear of puniſhment, may be more eaſily ſurmounted than the feelings of Nature, or thoſe which have been engrafted by Nature by early prejudice and uninterrupted cuſtom. The horror of the murderer ariſes leſs from the guilt of the fact, than its natural effect; and he who has familiariſed the effect, will conſequently loſe much of the horror. By our laws, and our religion, murder and theft incur the ſame puniſhment, both in this world and the next; yet, of the multitude who would deliberately ſteal, there are but very few who would deliberately kill, even to procure much greater advantage. But there is the ſtrongeſt reaſon to believe, that thoſe who have been ſo accuſtomed to prepare a human body for a meal, that they can with a little feeling cut up a dead man, as our cook-maids divide a dead rabbit for a fricaſſee, would feel as little horror in committing a murder as in picking a pocket, and conſequently would take away life with as little compunction as property; ſo that men, under the circumſtances

circumſtances, would be made murderers by the ſlight temptations that now make them thieves. If any man doubts whether this reaſoning is concluſive, let him aſk himſelf whether, in his own opinion, he ſhould not be ſafer with a man in whom the horror of deſtroying life is ſtrong, whether, in conſequence of natural inſtinct unſubdued, or of early prejudice, which has nearly an equal influence, than in the power of a man who under any temptation to murder him would be reſtrained only by conſiderations of intereſt; for to theſe all motives of duty may be reduced, as they muſt terminate either in hope of good, or fear of evil. 1770. March.

The ſituation and circumſtances, however, of theſe poor people, as well as their temper, are favourable to thoſe who ſhall ſettle as a colony among them. Their ſituation ſets them in need of protection, and their temper renders it eaſy to attach them by kindneſs; and whatever may be ſaid in favour of a ſavage life, among people who live in luxurious idleneſs upon the bounty of Nature, civilization would certainly be a bleſſing to thoſe whom her parſimony ſcarcely furniſhes with the bread of life, and who are perpetually deſtroying each other by violence, as the only alternative of *periſhing* by hunger.

But theſe people, from whatever cauſe, being inured to war, and by habit conſidering every ſtranger as an enemy, were always diſpoſed to attack us when they were not intimidated by our manifeſt ſuperiority. At firſt, they had no notion of any ſuperiority but numbers; and when this was on their ſide, they conſidered all our expreſſions of kindneſs as the artifices of fear and cunning, to circumvent them, and preſerve ourſelves: but when we are once convinced of our power, after having provoked us to the uſe of our fire-arms, though loaded only with ſmall ſhot, and of our clemency, by our forbearing to make uſe of weapons ſo dreadful except in our defence, they become at once friendly, and even affectionate, placing in us the moſt unbounded confidence, and doing every thing which could incite us to put equal confidence in them. It is alſo remarkable, that when an intercourſe was once eſtabliſhed between us, they were very

1770. March. very rarely detected in any act of diſhoneſty. Before, indeed, and while they conſidered us as enemies, who came upon their coaſt only to make an advantage of them, they did not ſcruple by any means to make an advantage of us; and would, therefore, when they had received the price of any thing they had offered to ſell, pack up both the purchaſe and the purchaſe-money with all poſſible compoſure, as ſo much lawful plunder from the people who had no view but to plunder them.

I have obſerved that our friends in the South Seas had not even the idea of indecency, with reſpect to any object or any action; but this was by no means the caſe with the inhabitants of New Zealand, in whoſe carriage and converſation there was as much modeſt reſerve and decorum with reſpect to actions, which yet in their opinion were not criminal, as are to be found among the politeſt people in Europe. The women were not impregnable; but the terms and manner of compliance were as decent as thoſe in marriage among us, and according to their notions, the agreement was as innocent. When any of our people made an overture to any of their young women, he was given to underſtand that the conſent of her friends was neceſſary, and by the influence of a proper preſent, it was generally obtained; but when theſe preliminaries are ſettled, it was alſo neceſſary to treat the wife for a night, with the ſame delicacy that is here required by the wife for life, and the lover who preſumed to take any liberties by which this was violated, was ſure to be diſappointed.

One of our gentlemen having made his addreſſes to a family of the better ſort, received an anſwer, which, tranſlated into our language, according to the mode and ſpirit of it, as well as the letter, would have been exactly in theſe terms: "Any of theſe young ladies will think themſelves honoured by your addreſſes, but you muſt firſt make me a ſuitable preſent, and you muſt then come and ſleep with us on ſhore, for day-light muſt by no means be a witneſs of what paſſes between you."

I have already obſerved, that in perſonal cleanlineſs they are not quite equal to our friends at Otaheite; becauſe,

1770. March.

becauſe, not having the advantage of ſo warm a climate, they do not ſo often go into the water; but the moſt diſguſtful thing about them is the oil, with which, like the Iſlanders, they anoint their hair: it is certainly the fat either of fiſh or of birds, melted down, and though the better ſort have it freſh, their inferiors uſe that which is rancid, and conſequently are almoſt as diſagreeable to the ſmell as a Hottentot; neither are their heads free from vermin, though we obſerved that they were furniſhed with combs, both of bone and wood: theſe combs are ſometimes worn ſtuck upright in the hair as an ornament, a faſhion which at preſent prevails among the ladies of England. The men generally wear their beards ſhort, and their hair tied upon the crown of the head in a bunch, in which they ſtick the feathers of various birds, in different manners, according to their fancies; ſometimes one is placed on each ſide of the temples, pointing forwards, which we thought made a very diſagreeable appearance. The women wear their hair ſometimes cropped ſhort, and ſometimes flowing over their ſhoulders.

The bodies of both ſexes are marked with the black ſtains called Amoco, by the ſame method that is uſed at Otaheite, and called Tattowing; but the men are more marked, and the women leſs. The women in general ſtain no part of their bodies but the lips, though ſometimes they are marked with ſmall black patches on other parts: the men, on the contrary, ſeem to add ſomething every year to the ornaments of the laſt, ſo that ſome of them, who appeared to be of an advanced age, were almoſt covered from head to foot. Beſides the Amoco, they have marks impreſſed by a method unknown to us, of a very extraordinary kind: they are furrows of about a line deep and a line broad, ſuch as appear upon the bark of a tree which has been cut through, after a year's growth: the edges of theſe furrows are afterwards indented by the ſame method, and being perfectly black, they make a moſt frightful appearance. The faces of the old men are almoſt covered with theſe marks; thoſe who are young, black only their lips like the women: when they are ſomewhat older, they have generally a black patch

1770. March. patch upon one cheek, and over one eye, and ſo proceed gradually, that they may grow old and honourable together: but though we could not but be diſguſted with the horrid deformity which theſe ſtains and furrows produced in the "human face divine," we could not but admire the dexterity and art with which they were impreſſed. The marks upon the face in general are ſpirals, which are drawn with great nicety and even elegance, thoſe on one ſide exactly correſponding with thoſe on the other: the marks on the body ſomewhat reſemble the foliage in old chaſed ornaments, and the convolutions of fillagree work; but in theſe they have ſuch a luxuriance of fancy, that of an hundred, which at firſt ſight appeared to be exactly the ſame, no two were, upon a cloſe examination, found to be alike. We obſerved, that the quantity and form of theſe marks were different in different parts of the coaſt, and that as the principal ſeat of them at Otaheite was the breech, in New Zealand it was ſometimes the only part which was free, and in general was leſs diſtinguiſhed than any other.

The ſkins of theſe people, however, are not only dyed, but painted, for as I have before obſerved, they ſmear their bodies with red oker, ſome rubbing it on dry, and ſome applying it in large patches mixed with oil, which is always wet, and which the leaſt touch will rub off; ſo that the tranſgreſſions of ſuch of our people as were guilty of raviſhing a kiſs from theſe blooming beauties, were moſt legibly written upon their faces.

The dreſs of a New Zealander is certainly, to a ſtranger at firſt ſight, the moſt uncouth that can be imagined. It is made of the leaves of the flag, which has been deſcribed among the vegetable productions of this country: theſe leaves are ſplit into three or four ſlips, and the ſlips, when they are dry, interwoven with each other into a kind of ſtuff between netting and cloth, with all the ends, which are eight or nine inches long, hanging out on the upper ſide, like the ſhag or thrum mats, which we ſometimes ſee lying in a paſſage. Of this cloth, if cloth it may be called, two pieces ſerve for a compleat dreſs; one of them is tied over their ſhoulders with a ſtring, and reaches as low as the knees; to the end of this ſtring is faſtened a bodkin of bone,

which

which is eaſily paſſed through any two parts of this upper garment, ſo as to tack them together; the other piece is wrapped round the waiſt, and reaches nearly to the ground: the lower garment, however, is worn by the men only upon particular occaſions; but they wear a belt, to which a ſtring is faſtened, for a very ſingular uſe. The inhabitants of the South Sea iſlands ſlit up the prepuce ſo as to prevent it from covering the glans of the penis, but theſe people, on the contrary, bring the prepuce over the glans, and to prevent it from being drawn back by contraction of the part, they tie the ſtring which hangs from the girdle round the end of it. The glans indeed ſeemed to be the only part of their body which they were ſolicitous to conceal, for they frequently threw off all their dreſs but the belt and ſtring, with the moſt careleſs indifference, but ſhewed manifeſt ſigns of confuſion, when, to gratify our curioſity, they were requeſted to untie the ſtring, and never conſented but with the utmoſt reluctance and ſhame. When they have only their upper garment on, and ſit upon their hams, they bear ſome reſemblance to a thatched houſe; but this covering, though it is ugly, is well adapted to the uſe of thoſe who frequently ſleep in the open air, without any other ſhelter from the rain. 1770. March.

But beſides this coarſe ſhag or thatch, they have two ſorts of cloth, which have an even ſurface, and are very ingeniouſly made, in the ſame manner with that manufactured by the inhabitants of South America, ſome of which we procured at Rio-de Janeiro. One ſort is as coarſe as our coarſeſt canvas, and ſomewhat reſembles it in the manner of laying the threads, but it is ten times as ſtrong: the other is formed by many threads lying very cloſe one way, and a few croſſing them the other, ſo as to bind them together; but theſe are about half an inch aſunder, ſomewhat like the round pieces of cane matting which are ſometimes placed under the diſhes upon a table. This is frequently ſtriped, and always had a pretty appearance; for it is compoſed of the fibres of the ſame plant, which are prepared ſo as to ſhine like ſilk. It is made in a kind of frame of the ſize of the cloth, generally about five feet long, and four broad, acroſs which the long threads, which lie

1770. March. cloſe together, or wrap, are ſtrained, and the croſs threads, or woof, are worked in by hand, which muſt be a very tedious operation.

To both theſe kinds of cloth they work borders of different colours, in ſtitches, ſomewhat like carpeting, or rather like thoſe uſed in the ſamplers which girls work at ſchool. Theſe borders are of various patterns, and wrought with a neatneſs, and even an elegance, which, conſidering they have no needle, is ſurprizing; but the great pride of their dreſs conſiſts in the fur of their dogs, which they uſe with ſuch œconomy, that they cut it into ſtripes, and ſew them upon their cloth at a diſtance from each other, which is a ſtrong proof that dogs are not plenty among them; theſe ſtripes are alſo of different colours, and diſpoſed ſo as to produce a pleaſing effect. We ſaw ſome dreſſes that were adorned with feathers inſtead of fur, but theſe were not common; and we ſaw one that was intirely covered with the red feathers of the parrot.

The dreſs of the man who was killed, when we firſt went aſhore in Poverty Bay, has been deſcribed already; but we ſaw the ſame dreſs only once more during our ſtay upon the coaſt, and that was in Queen Charlotte's Sound.

The women, contrary to the cuſtom of the ſex in general, ſeemed to affect dreſs rather leſs than the men: their hair, which, as I have obſerved before, is generally cropt ſhort, is never tied upon the top of the head when it is ſuffered to be long, nor is it ever adorned with feathers. Their garments were made of the ſame materials, and in the ſame form, as thoſe of the other ſex, but the lower one was always bound faſt round them, except when they went into the water to catch lobſters, and then they took great care not to be ſeen by the men. Some of us happening one day to land upon a ſmall iſland in Tolaga Bay, we ſurprized ſeveral of them at this employment; and the chaſte Diana, with her nymphs, could not have diſcovered more confuſion and diſtreſs at the ſight of Actæon, than theſe women expreſſed upon our approach. Some of them hid themſelves among the rocks, and the reſt crouched down in the ſea till they had made themſelves a girdle and apron of ſuch weeds as they could find

an

nd when they came out, even with this veil, we could erceive that their modeſty ſuffered much pain by our reſence. The girdle and apron which they wear in ommon have been mentioned before. 1770. March.

Both ſexes bore their ears, and by ſtretching them, e holes become large enough to admit a finger at aſt. In theſe holes they wear ornaments of various inds, cloth, feathers, bones of large birds, and even metimes a ſtick of wood; and to theſe receptacles of nery they generally applied the nails which we gave em, and every thing which it was poſſible they could ntain. The women ſometimes thruſt through them e down of the albatroſs, which is as white as ſnow, d which, ſpreading before and behind the hole in a nch almoſt as big as the fiſt, makes a very ſingular, d however ſtrange it may be thought, not a diſagree- le appearance. Beſides the ornaments that are thruſt ro' the holes of the ears, many others are ſuſpended them by ſtrings; ſuch as chiſels or bodkins made of een talc, upon which they ſet a high value, the nails d teeth of their deceaſed relations, the teeth of dogs, d every thing elſe that they can get, which they think ther curious or valuable. The women alſo wear brace- ts and anclets, made of the bones of birds, ſhells, or y other ſubſtances which they can perforate and ſtring on a thread. The men had ſometimes hanging to a ing which went round the neck, a piece of green c, or whalebone, ſomewhat in the ſhape of a tongue, th the rude figure of a man carved upon it; and upon s ornament they ſet a high value. In one inſtance, ſaw the griſtle that divides the noſtrils, and called anatomiſts, the *ſeptum naſi*, perforated, and a feather ruſt through the hole, which projected on each ſide er the cheeks: it is probable that this frightful ſingu- ity was intended as an ornament, but of the many ple we ſaw, we never obſerved it in any other, nor en a perforation that might occaſionally ſerve for ſuch urpoſe.

Their houſes are the moſt inartificially made of any Houſes. ng among them, being ſcarcely equal, except in ſize, an Engliſh dog-kennel: they are ſeldom more than hteen or twenty feet long, eight or ten broad, and

1770. March. five or six high, from the pole that runs from one end to the other, and forms the ridge, to the ground: the framing is of wood, generally slender sticks, and both walls and roof consist of dry grass and hay, which, it must be confessed, is very tightly put together; and some are also lined with the bark of trees, so that in cold weather they must afford a very comfortable retreat. The roof is sloping, like those of our barns, and the door is at one end, just high enough to admit a man creeping upon his hands and knees: near the door is a square hole, which serves the double office of window and chimney, for the fire-place is at the end, nearly in the middle between the two sides: in some conspicuous part, and generally near the door, a plank is fixed, covered with carving after their manner: this they value as we do a picture, and in their estimation it is not an inferior ornament: the side walls and roof project about two feet beyond the walls at each end, so as to form a kind of porch, in which there are benches for the accommodation of the family. That part of the floor which is allotted for the fire-place, is inclosed in a hollow square, by partitions either of wood or stone, and in the middle of it the fire is kindled. The floor along the inside of the walls is thickly covered with straw, and upon this the family sleep.

Furniture. The furniture and implements consist of but few articles, and one chest commonly contains them all, except their provision-baskets, the gourds that hold their fresh water, and the hammers that are used to beat their fern-root, which generally stand without the door; some rude tools, their clothes, arms, and a few feathers to stick in their hair, make the rest of their treasure.

Some of the better sort, whose families are large, have three or four houses inclosed within a court-yard, the walls of which are constructed of poles and hay, and are about ten or twelve feet high.

When we were on shore in the district called Tolago, we saw the ruins, or rather the frame of a house, for it had never been finished, much superior in size to any that we saw elsewhere: it was thirty feet in length, about fifteen in breadth, and twelve high: the sides of it were adorned with many carved planks, of a work-

manship

manſhip much ſuperior to any other that we had met with in the country; but for what purpoſe it was built, or why it was deſerted, we could never learn. 1770. March.

But theſe people, though in their houſes they are ſo well defended from the inclemency of the weather, ſeem to be quite indifferent whether they have any ſhelter at all during their excurſions in ſearch of fern-roots and fiſh, ſometimes ſetting up a ſmall ſhade to windward, and ſometimes altogether neglecting even that precaution, ſleeping with their women and children under buſhes, with their weapons ranged round them, in the manner that has been already deſcribed. The party conſiſting of forty or fifty, whom we ſaw at Mercury Bay, in a diſtrict which the natives call Opoorage, never erected the leaſt ſhelter while we ſtayed there, though it ſometimes rained inceſſantly for four-and-twenty hours together.

Food. The articles of their food have been enumerated already; the principal, which to them is what bread is to the inhabitants of Europe, is the roots of fern which grows upon the hills, and is nearly the ſame with what grows upon our high commons in England, and is called indifferently fern, bracken, or brakes. The birds which ſometimes ſerve them for a feaſt, are chiefly penguins and albatroſſes, with a few other ſpecies that have been occaſionally mentioned in this narrative.

Cookery. Having no veſſel in which water can be boiled, their cookery conſiſts wholly of baking and roaſting. They bake nearly in the ſame manner as the inhabitants of the South Seas: and to the account that has been already given of their roaſting, nothing need be added, but that the long ſkewer, or ſpit, to which the fleſh is faſtened, is placed ſloping towards the fire, by ſetting one ſtone againſt the bottom of it, and ſupporting it near the middle with another, by the moving of which to a greater or leſs diſtance from the end, the degree of obliquity is increaſed or diminiſhed at pleaſure.

To the northward, as I have obſerved, there are plantations of yams, ſweet potatoes, and cocoas, but we ſaw no ſuch to the ſouthward; the inhabitants therefore of that part of the country muſt ſubſiſt wholly upon

1770. March. fern-root and fiſh, except the ſcanty and accidental re- ſource which they may find in ſea-fowl and dogs; and that fern and fiſh are not to be procured at all ſeaſons of the year, even at the ſea-ſide, and upon the neighbouring hills, is manifeſt from the ſtores of both that we ſaw laid up dry, and the reluctance which ſome of them expreſſed at ſelling any part of them to us when we offered to purchaſe them, at leaſt the fiſh, for ſea- ſtores: and this particular ſeems to confirm my opinion that this country ſcarcely ſuſtains the preſent number of its inhabitants, who are urged to perpetual hoſtilities by hunger, which naturally prompted them to eat the dead bodies of thoſe who were ſlain in the conteſt.

Water is their univerſal and only liquor, as far as we could diſcover; and if they have really no means of intoxication, they are, in this particular, happy be- yond any other people that we have yet ſeen or heard of.

As there is, perhaps, no ſource of diſeaſe, either cri- tical or chronic, but intemperance and inactivity, it cannot be thought ſtrange that theſe people enjoy per- fect and uninterrupted health. In all our viſits to their towns, where young and old, men and women crowded about us, prompted by the ſame curioſity that carried us to look at them, we never ſaw a ſingle perſon who appeared to have any bodily complaint; not among the numbers that we have ſeen naked, did we once perceive the ſlighteſt eruption upon the ſkin, or any marks that an eruption had left behind. At firſt indeed, obſerving that ſome of them, when they came off to us, were marked in patches with a white flower- appearance upon different parts of their bodies, we thought that they were leprous, or highly ſcorbutic; but, upon examination, we found that theſe marks were owing to their having been wetted by the ſprey of the ſea in their paſſage, which, when it was dried away, left the ſalts behind it in a fine white powder.

Another proof of health, which we have mentioned upon a former occaſion, is the facility with which their wounds healed that had left ſcars behind them, and that we ſaw in a recent ſtate; when we ſaw the man who

had been ſhot with a muſket-ball through the fleſhy part of his arm, his wound ſeemed to be ſo well digeſted, and in ſo fair a way of being perfectly healed, that if I had not known that no application had been made to it, I ſhould certainly have inquired, with a very intereſted curioſity, after the vulnery herbs and ſurgical art of the country. 1770. March.

A farther proof that human nature is here untainted with diſeaſe, is the great number of old men that we ſaw, many of whom, by the loſs of their hair and teeth, appeared to be very ancient, yet none of them were decrepit; and though not equal to the young in muſcular ſtrength, were not a whit behind them in cheerfulneſs and vivacity.

CHAP. X.

Of the Canoes and Navigation of the Inhabitants of New Zealand; their Tillage, Weapons, and Muſic; Government, Religion, and Language: With ſome Reaſons againſt the Exiſtence of a Southern Continent.

THE ingenuity of theſe people appears in nothing more than in their canoes; they are long and narrow, and in ſhape very much reſemble a New-England whale-boat; the larger ſort ſeem to be built chiefly for war, and will carry from forty to eighty or an hundred armed men: we meaſured one which lay ſhore at Tolaga, ſhe was ſixty-eight feet and an half long, five feet broad, and three feet and an half deep; the bottom was ſharp, with ſtraight ſides like a wedge, and conſiſted of three lengths, hollowed out to about two inches, or an inch and an half thick, and well faſtened together with ſtrong plaiting; each ſide conſiſted of one entire plank, ſixty-three feet long, ten or twelve inches broad, and about an inch and quarter thick, and theſe were fitted and laſhed to the bottom part with great dexterity and ſtrength. A conſiderable number of thwarts were laid from gunwale to gunwale, to which they were ſecurely laſhed on each ſide, as a ſtrengthening to the boat. The ornament at the head projected five Canoes.

1770. March. five or six feet beyond the body, and was about four feet and an half high; the ornament at the stern was fixed upon the end, as the stern-post of a ship is upon her keel, and was about fourteen feet high, two feet broad, and an inch and an half thick: they both consisted of boards of carved work, of which the design was much better than the execution. All their canoes, except a few at Opoorage or Mercury Bay, which were of one piece, and hollowed by fire, are built after this plan, and few are less than twenty feet long: some of the smaller sort have out-riggers, and sometimes two of them are joined together, but this is not common. The carving upon the stern and head ornaments of the inferior boats, which seem to be intended wholly for fishing, consists of the figure of a man, with a face as ugly as can be conceived, and a monstrous tongue thrust out of the mouth, with the white shells of sea-ears stuck in for the eyes. But the canoes of the superior kind *, which seem to be their men of war, are magnificently adorned with open work, and covered with loose fringes of black feathers, which had a most elegant appearance: the gunwale boards were also frequently carved in a grotesque taste, and adorned with tufts of white feathers placed upon a black ground. Of visible objects that are wholly new, no verbal description can convey a just idea, but in proportion as they resemble some that are already known, to which the mind of the reader must be referred; the carving of these people being of a singular kind, and not in the likeness of any thing that is known on our side of the ocean, either "in the heaven above, or in the "earth beneath, or in the waters that are under the "earth."

The paddles are small, light, and neatly made; the blade is of an oval shape, or rather of a shape resembling a large leaf, pointed at the bottom, broadest in the middle, and gradually losing itself in the shaft, the whole length being about six feet, of which the shaft or loom, including the handle, is four, and the blade two. By the help of these oars they push on their boats with amazing velocity.

In

* See plate, Vol. II. page 164.

In ſailing they are not expert, having no art of going otherwiſe than before the wind: the ſail is of netting or mat, which is ſet up between two poles that are fixed upright upon each gunwale, and ſerve both for maſts and yards: two ropes anſwered the purpoſe of ſheets, and were conſequently faſtened above to the top of each pole. But clumſy and inconvenient as this apparatus is, they make good way before the wind, and are ſteered by two men who ſit in the ſtern, with each a paddle in his hand for that purpoſe. 1770. March.

Having ſaid thus much of their workmanſhip, I ſhall now give ſome account of their tools; they have adzes, axes, and chiſels, which ſerve them alſo as augers for boring of holes: as they have no metal, their adzes and axes are made of a hard black ſtone, or of a green talc, which is not only hard but tough; and their chiſels of human bone, or ſmall fragments of jaſper, which they chip off from a block in ſharp angular pieces like a gun-flint. Their axes they value above all that they poſſeſs, and never would part with one of them for any thing that we could give: I once offered one of the beſt axes I had in the ſhip, beſides a number of other things, for one of them, but the owner would not ſell it; from which I conclude that good ones are ſcarce among them. Their ſmall tools of jaſper, which are uſed in finiſhing their niceſt work, they uſe till they are blunt, and then, as they have no means of ſharpening them, throw them away. We had given the people at Tolaga a piece of glaſs, and in a ſhort time they found means to drill a hole through it, in order to hang it round the neck as an ornament by a thread; and we imagine the tool muſt have been a piece of this jaſper. How they bring their large tools firſt to an edge, and ſharpen the weapon which they call Patoo-Patoo, we could not certainly learn; but probably it is by bruiſing the ſame ſubſtance to powder, and with this grinding two pieces againſt each other. Tools.

Their nets, particularly their ſeine, which is of an enormous ſize, have been mentioned already: one of theſe ſeems to be the joint work of a whole town, and I ſuppoſe it to be the joint property alſo: the other net, which is circular, and extended by two or three hoops, Nets.

1770. March. hoops, has been particularly deſcribed, as well as the manner of baiting and uſing it. Their hooks are of bone or ſhell, and in general are ill made. To receive the fiſh when it is caught, and to hold their other proviſions, they have baſkets of various kinds and dimenſions very neatly made of wicker work.

Tillage. They excel in tillage, as might naturally be expected where the perſon that ſows is to eat the produce, and where there is ſo little beſides that can be eaten: when we firſt came to TEGADOO, a diſtrict between Poverty Bay and Eaſt Cape, their crops were juſt covered, and had not yet begun to ſprout; the mould was as ſmooth as in a garden, and every root had its ſmall hillock, ranged in a regular quincunx by lines, which with the pegs were ſtill remaining in the field. We had not an opportunity to ſee any of the huſbandmen work, but we ſaw what ſerves them at once for ſpade and plough: this inſtrument is nothing more than a long narrow ſtake ſharpened to an edge at one end, with a ſhort piece faſtened tranſverſely at a little diſtance above it, for the convenience of preſſing it down with the foot. With this they turn up pieces of ground ſix or ſeven acres in extent, though it is not more than three inches broad; but as the ſoil is light and ſandy, it makes little reſiſtance.

Tillage, weaving, and other arts of peace, ſeem to be beſt known and moſt practiſed in the northern part of this country; for there is little appearance of any of them in the ſouth: but the arts of war flouriſh equally through the whole coaſt.

Weapons. Of weapons they have no great variety, but ſuch as they have are well fitted for deſtruction; they have ſpears, darts, battle-axes, and the Patoo-Patoo. The ſpear is fourteen or fifteen feet long, pointed at both ends, and ſometimes headed with bone: theſe are graſped by the middle, ſo that the part behind balancing that before, makes a puſh more difficult to be parried, than that of a weapon which is held by the end. The dart and other weapons have been ſufficiently deſcribed already; and it has alſo been remarked that theſe people have neither ſling nor bow. They throw the dart by hand, and ſo they do ſtones; but darts and ſtones are ſeldom uſed except in defending

the

1770. March.

their forts. Their battles, whether in boats or on shore, are generally hand to hand, and the slaughter must consequently be great, as a second blow with any of their weapons is unnecessary, if the first takes place: their trust, however, seems to be principally placed in the Patoo-Patoo, which is fastened to their wrists by a strong strap, lest it should be wrenched from them, and which the principal people generally wear sticking in their girdles, considering it is a military ornament, and part of their dress, like the poniard of the Asiatic, and the sword of the European. They have no defensive armour; but, besides their weapons, the Chiefs carried a staff of distinction, in the same manner as our officers do the spontoon: this was generally the rib of a whale, as white as snow, with many ornaments of carved work, dog's hair, and feathers; but sometimes it was a stick, about six feet long, adorned in the same manner, and inlaid with a shell like mother-of-pearl. Those who bore this mark of distinction were generally old, at least past the middle age, and were also more marked with the Amoco than the rest.

One or more persons, thus distinguished, always appeared in each canoe, when they came to attack us, according to the size of it. When they came within about a cable's length of the ship, they used to stop, and the Chiefs rising from their seat, put on a dress which seemed appropriated to the occasion, generally of dog's skin, and holding out their decorated staff, or weapon, directed the rest of the people what they should do. When they were at too great a distance to reach us with a lance or a stone, they presumed that we had no weapon with which we could reach them; here then the defiance was given, and the words were almost universally the same, Haromai, haromai, harre ota a Patoo-Patoo oge: "Come to us, come on shore, and we will kill you with our Patoo-Patoos." While they were uttering these menaces they came gradually nearer and nearer, till they were close along-side; talking at intervals in a peaceable strain, and answering any questions that we asked them; and at intervals renewing their defiance and threats, till being encouraged by our apparent timidity, they began their warsong and dance, as a prelude to an attack, which always

1770. March. ways follows, and was ſometimes continued till it became abſolutely neceſſary to repreſs them by firing ſome ſmall ſhot; and ſometimes ended after throwing a few ſtones on board, as if content with having offered us an inſult which we did not dare to revenge.

The war-dance conſiſts of a great variety of violent motions, and hideous contortions of the limbs, during which the countenance alſo performs its part: the tongue is frequently thruſt out to an incredible length, and the eye-lids ſo forcibly drawn up, that the white appears both above and below, as well as on each ſide of the lid, ſo as to form a circle round it; nor is any thing neglected that can render the human ſhape frightful and deformed: at the ſame time they brandiſh their ſpears, ſhake their darts, and cleave the air with their Patoo-Patoos. This horrid dance is always accompanied by a ſong; it is wild indeed, but not diſagreeable, and every ſtrain ends in a loud and deep ſigh, which they utter in concert. In the motions of the dance, however horrid, there is a ſtrength, firmneſs, and agility, which we could not but behold with admiration; and in their ſong they keep time with ſuch exactneſs, that I have often heard above an hundred paddles ſtruck againſt the ſides of their boats at once, ſo as to produce but a ſingle ſound, at the diviſion of their muſic.

A ſong not altogether unlike this, they ſometimes ſing without the dance, and as a peaceable amuſement: they have alſo other ſongs which are ſung by the women, whoſe voices are remarkably mellow and ſoft, and have a pleaſing and tender effect; the time is ſlow, and the cadence mournful; but it is conducted with more taſte than could be expected among the poor ignorant ſavages of this half deſolate country; eſpecially as it appeared to us, who were none of us much acquainted with muſic as a ſcience, to be ſung in parts; it was at leaſt ſung by many voices at the ſame time.

They have ſonorous inſtruments, but they can ſcarcely be called inſtruments of muſic; one is the ſhell, called the Triton's trumpet, with which they make a noiſe not unlike that which our boys ſometimes make with a cow's horn: the other is a ſmall wooden pipe, reſembling

reſembling a child's nine-pin, only much ſmaller, and in this there is no more muſic than in a pea-whiſtle. They ſeem ſenſible, indeed, that theſe inſtruments are not muſical, for we never heard an attempt to ſing to them, or to produce with them any meaſured tones that bore the leaſt reſemblance to a tune. 1770. March.

To what has been already ſaid, of the practice of eating human fleſh, I ſhall only add, that in almoſt every cove where we landed we found freſh bones of men, near the place where fires had been made; and that among the heads that were brought on board by the old man, ſome ſeemed to have falſe eyes, and ornaments in their ears, as if alive. That which Mr. Banks bought was ſold with great reluctance by the poſſeſſor: the head was manifeſtly that of a young perſon, about fourteen or fifteen years of age, and by the contuſions on one ſide appeared to have received many violent blows, and indeed a part of the bone near the eye was wanting. Theſe appearances confirmed us in the opinion, that the natives of this country give no quarter, nor take any priſoners to be killed and eaten at a future time, as is ſaid to have been a practice among the Indians of Florida; for if priſoners had been taken, this poor young creature, who cannot be ſuppoſed capable of making much reſiſtance, would probably have been one, and we knew that he was killed with the reſt; for the fray had happened but a few days before.

The towns, or Hippahs, of theſe people, which are all fortified, have been ſufficiently deſcribed already, and from the Bay of Plenty to Queen Charlotte's Sound, they ſeem to be the conſtant reſidence of the people; but above Poverty Bay, Hawke's Bay, Tegadoo, and Tolaga, we ſaw no Hippahs, but ſingle houſes ſcattered at a diſtance from each other; yet upon the ſides of the hills there were ſtages of a great length, furniſhed with ſtones and darts, probably as retreats for the people at the laſt extremity, as upon theſe ſtages a fight may be carried on with much advantage againſt thoſe below, who may be reached with great effect by darts and ſtones, which it is impoſſible for them to throw up with equal force. And indeed the forts themſelves ſeem to be no farther ſerviceable, than

1770. March. than by enabling the poſſeſſors to repreſs a ſudden attack; for as there is no ſupply of water within the lines, it would be impoſſible to ſuſtain a ſiege. A conſiderable ſtock of fern-root and dry fiſh is indeed laid up in them, but they may be reſerved againſt ſeaſons of ſcarcity, and that ſuch ſeaſons there are, our obſervations left us no room to doubt; beſides, while an enemy ſhould be prowling in the neighbourhood, it would be eaſy to ſnatch a ſupply of water from the ſide of the hill, though it would be impoſſible to dig up fern-root or catch fiſh.

In this diſtrict, however, the people ſeemed to live in a ſtate of conſcious ſecurity, and to avail themſelves of their advantage: their plantations were more numerous, their canoes were more decorated, and they had not only finer carving, but finer clothes. This part of the coaſt alſo was much the moſt populous, and poſſibly their apparent peace and plenty might ariſe from their being united under one Chief, or King; for the inhabitants of all this part of the country told us, that they were the ſubjects of Teratu. When they pointed to the reſidence of this Prince, it was in a direction which we thought inland, but which, when we knew the country better, we found to be the Bay of Plenty.

Government. It is much to be regretted, that we were obliged to leave this country without knowing any thing of Teratu by his name. As an Indian monarch, his territory is certainly extenſive; he was acknowledged from Cape Kidnappers to the northward, and weſtward as far as the Bay of Plenty, a length of coaſt upwards of eighty leagues; and we do not yet know how much farther weſtward his dominions may extend: poſſibly the fortified towns which we ſaw in the Bay of Plenty may be his barrier, eſpecially as at Mercury Bay he was not acknowledged, nor indeed any other ſingle Chief; for wherever we landed, or ſpoke with the people upon that coaſt, they told us that we were at but a ſmall diſtance from their enemies.

In the dominions of Teratu we ſaw ſeveral ſubordinate Chiefs, to whom great reſpect was paid, and by whom juſtice was probably adminiſtered; for upon our complaint to one of them, of a theft that had been committed

committed on board the ſhip by a man that came with him, he gave him ſeveral blows and kicks, which the other received as the chaſtiſement of authority, againſt which no reſiſtance was to be made, and which he had no right to reſent. Whether this authority was poſſeſſed by appointment or inheritance we could not learn; but we obſerved that the Chiefs, as well here as in other parts, were elderly men. In other parts, however, we learned that they poſſeſſed their authority by inheritance. 1770. March.

The little ſocieties which we found in the ſouthern parts ſeemed to have ſeveral things in common, particularly their fine clothes and fiſhing nets. Their fine clothes, which poſſibly might be the ſpoils of war, were kept in a ſmall hut, which was erected for that purpoſe in the middle of the town: the nets we ſaw making in almoſt every houſe, and the ſeveral parts being afterwards collected were joined together. Leſs account ſeems to be made of the women here than in the South Sea iſlands; ſuch at leaſt was the opinion of Tupia, who complained of it as an indignity to the ſex. We obſerved that the two ſexes eat together; but how they divide their labour we do not certainly know. I am inclined to believe that the men till the ground, make nets, catch birds, and go out in their boats to fiſh; and that the women dig up fern roots, collect lobſters and other ſhell fiſh near the beach, dreſs the victuals, and weave cloth: ſuch at leaſt were their employments when we had an opportunity of obſerving them, which was but ſeldom; for in general our appearance made a holiday wherever we went, men, women and children flocking round us, either to gratify their curioſity, or to purchaſe ſome of the valuable merchandize which we carried about with us, conſiſting principally of nails, paper, and broken glaſs.

Of the religion of theſe people it cannot be ſuppoſed that we could learn much; they acknowledge the influence of ſuperior beings, one of whom is ſupreme, and the reſt ſubordinate; and gave nearly the ſame account of the origin of the world, and the production of mankind, as our friends in Otaheite: Tupia, however, ſeemed to have a much more deep and extenſive knowledge of theſe ſubjects than any of the people here; Religion.

1770. March. here; and whenever he was diſpoſed to inſtruct them, which he ſometimes did in a long diſcourſe, he was ſure of a numerous audience, who liſtened in profound ſilence, with ſuch reverence and attention, that we could not but wiſh them a better teacher.

What homage they pay to the deities they acknowlege we could not learn; but we ſaw no place of public worſhip, like the Morais of the South Sea Iſlands; yet we ſaw, near a plantation of ſweet potatoes, a ſmall area, of a ſquare figure, ſurrounded with ſtones, in the middle of which one of the ſharpened ſtakes which they uſe as a ſpade was ſet up, and upon it was hung a baſket of fern roots: upon inquiry, the natives told us, that it was an offering to the gods, by which the owner hoped to render them propitious, and obtain a plentiful crop.

Dead. As to their manner of diſpoſing of their dead, we could form no certain opinion of it, for the accounts that we received by no means agreed. In the northern parts, they told us that they buried them in the ground; and in the ſouthern, that they threw them into the ſea: it is however certain that we ſaw no graves in the country, and that they affected to conceal every thing relating to their dead with a kind of myſterious ſecrecy. But whatever may be the ſepulchre, the living are themſelves the monuments; for we ſaw ſcarcely a ſingle perſon of either ſex whoſe body was not marked by the ſcars of wounds which they had inflicted upon themſelves as a teſtimony of their regret for the loſs of a relation or friend: ſome of theſe wounds we ſaw in a ſtate ſo recent, that the blood was ſcarcely ſtaunched, which ſhews that death had been among them while we were upon the coaſt; and makes it more extraordinary that no funeral ceremony ſhould have fallen under our notice: ſome of the ſcars were very large and deep, and in many inſtances had greatly disfigured the face. One monument indeed was obſerved of another kind, the croſs that was ſet up near Queen Charlotte's Sound.

Having now given the beſt account in my power of the cuſtoms and opinions of the inhabitants of New Zealand, with their boats, nets, furniture, and dreſs, I ſhall only remark, that the ſimilitude between the

particulars here and in the South Sea islands is a very strong proof that the inhabitants have the same origin; and that the common ancestors of both, were natives of the same country. They have both a tradition that their ancestors, at a very remote period of time, came from another country; and, according to the tradition of both, that the name of that country was HEAWIJE; but the similitude of the language seems to put the matter altogether out of doubt. I have already observed, that Tupia, when he accosted the people here in the language of his own country, was perfectly understood; and I shall give a specimen of the similitude, by a list of words in both languages, according to the dialect of the northern and southern islands of which New Zealand consists, by which it will appear that the language of Otaheite does not differ more from that of New Zealand, than the language of the two islands from each other. 1770. March.

ENGLISH.	NEW ZEALAND.		OTAHEITE.
	Northern.	*Southern.*	
A Chief,	Eareete,	Eareete,	Earee.
A man,	Taata,	Taata,	Taata.
A woman,	Whahine,	Whahine,	Ivahine.
The head,	Eupo,	Heaowpoho,	Eupo.
The hair,	Macauwe,	Heoo-oo,	Roourou.
The ear,	Terringa,	Hetaheyei,	Terrea.
The forehead,	Erai,	Heai,	Erai.
The eyes,	Mata,	Hemata,	Mata.
The cheeks,	Paparinga,	Hepapaeh,	Paparea.
The nose,	Ahewh,	Heeih,	Ahew.
The mouth,	Hangoutou,	Hegaowai,	Outou.
The chin,	Ecouwai,	Hakaoewai,	
The arm,	Haringaringu,		Rema.
The finger,	Maticara,	Hermaigawh,	Maneow.
The belly,	Ateraboo,		Oboo.
The navel,	Apeto,	Heeapeto,	Peto.
The bither,	Haromai,	Heromai,	Harromai.
Eye,	Heica,	Heica,	Eyea.
Lobster,	Kooura,	Kooura,	Tooura.
Taro,	Taro,	Taro,	Taro.
Sweet potatoes,	Cumala,	Cumala,	Cumala.
Yams,	Tuphwhe,	Tuphwhe,	Tuphwhe.

1770. March.

Birds,	Mannu,	Mannu,	Mannu.
No,	Kaoura,	Kaoura,	Oure.
One,	Tahai,		Tahai.
Two,	Rua,		Rua.
Three,	Torou,		Torou.
Four,	Ha,		Hea.
Five,	Rema,		Rema.
Six,	Ono,		Ono.
Seven,	Etu,		Hetu.
Eight,	Warou,		Warou.
Nine,	Iva,		Heva.
Ten,	Angahourou,		Ahourou.
The teeth,	Hennihew,	Heneaho,	Nihio.
The wind,	Mehow,		Mattai.
A thief,	Amootoo,		Teto.
To examine,	Mataketake,		Mataitai.
To ſing,	Eheara,		Heiva.
Bad,	Keno,	Keno,	Eno.
Trees,	Eratou,	Eratou,	Eraou.
Grandfather,	Toubouna,	Toubouna,	Toubouna.
What do you call this or that,	Owy Terra,		Owy Terra.

By this ſpecimen, I think, it appears to demonſtr tion that the language of New Zealand and Otaheite radically the ſame. The language of the northern a ſouthern parts of New Zealand differs chiefly in t pronunciation, as the ſame Engliſh word is pronounc *gate* in Middleſex, and *geate* in Yorkſhire: and as t ſouthern and northern words were not written down the ſame perſon, one might poſſibly uſe more letters produce the ſame ſound than the other.

I muſt alſo obſerve, that it is the genius of the l guage, eſpecially in the ſouthern parts, to put ſome ticle before a noun, as we do *the* or *a*; the articles u here are generally *be* or *ko*: it is alſo common here add the word *oeia* after another word, as an iterati eſpecially if it is an anſwer to a queſtion; as we ſay *indeed, to be ſure, really, certainly*: this ſometimes our gentlemen into the formation of words of an en mous length, judging by the ear only, without be

ble to refer each ſound into its ſignification. An ex- 1770. March.
mple will make this perfectly underſtood.

In the Bay of Iſlands there is a remarkable one, call-
d by the natives MATU ARO. One of our gentlemen
aving aſked a native the name of it, he anſwered, with
e particle, Kematuaro; the gentleman hearing the
ound imperfectly, repeated his queſtion, and the Indian
peating his anſwer, added öeia, which made the word
ematuaroöeia; and thus it happened that in the log
ok I found Matuaro transformed into Cumettiwar-
weia: and the ſame transformation, by the ſame
eans, might happen to an Engliſh word. Suppoſe a
tive of New Zealand at Hackney church, to inquire,
What village is this?" The anſwer would be, "It
is Hackney." Suppoſe the queſtion to be repeated
th an air of doubt and uncertainty, the anſwer might
"It is Hackney indeed;" and the New Zealander,
e had the uſe of letters, would probably record, for
information of his countrymen, that during his
dence among us he had viſited a village called
dtyſhakneeindede." The article uſed by the inha-
nts of the South Sea iſlands, inſtead of *he* or *ko*, is
or la, but the word *oeia* is common to both; and
n we began to learn the language, it led us into
y ridiculous miſtakes.

ut ſuppoſing theſe iſlands, and thoſe in the South
, to have been peopled originally from the ſame
try, it will perhaps for ever remain a doubt what
try that is: we were, however, unanimouſly of
on, that the people did not come from America,
h lies to the eaſtward; and except there ſhould
ar to be a continent to the ſouthward, in a moderate
de, it will follow that they came from the weſt-

hus far our navigation has certainly been unfa-
ble to the notion of a ſouthern continent, for it
ſwept away at leaſt three-fourths of the poſitions
which it has been founded. The principal navi-
, whoſe authority has been urged on this occaſion,
aſman, Juan Fernandes, Hermite, the commander
Dutch ſquadron, Quiros, and Roggewein; and the
of the Endeavour has demonſtrated that the land
y theſe perſons, and ſuppoſed to be part of a con-

1770. March. tinent, is not ſo; it has alſo totally ſubverted the theo-retical arguments which have been brought to prov that the exiſtence of a ſouthern continent is neceſſary t preſerve an equilibrium between the two hemiſpheres for upon this principle what we have already proved be water, would render the ſouthern hemiſphere to light. In our route to the northward, after doublin Cape Horn, when we were in the latitude of 40°, o longitude was 110°; and in our return to the ſouthwar after leaving Ulietea, when we were again in latitu 40°, our longitude was 145°; the difference is 3 When we were in latitude 30°, the difference of lon tude between the two tracks was 21°, which continu till we were as low as 20°; but a ſingle view of t chart will convey a better idea of this than the m minute deſcription: yet as upon a view of the char will appear that there is a large ſpace extending quite the Tropics, which neither we, nor any other navi tors to our knowledge have explored, and as there appear to be room enough for the cape of a ſouth continent to extend northward into a low ſouthern l tude, I ſhall give my reaſons for believing there is cape, of any ſouthern continent, to the northward 40° S.

Notwithſtanding what has been laid down by ſo geographers in their maps, and alledged by Mr. D rymple, with reſpect to Quiros, it is improbable in higheſt degree that he ſaw to the ſouthward of iſlands, which he diſcovered in latitude 25 or 26, which I ſuppoſe may lie between the longitude of and 140° W. any ſigns of a continent, much leſs thing which, in his opinion, was a known or ind table ſign of ſuch land; for if he had, he would tainly have ſailed ſouthward in ſearch of it, and had ſought ſuppoſing the ſigns to have been indubit he muſt have found: the diſcovery of a ſouthern tinent was the ultimate object of Quiro's voyage, no man appears to have had it more at heart; ſo if he was in latitude 26° S. and in longitude 146° where Mr. Dalrymple has placed the iſlands he d vered, it may fairly be inferred that no part of a ſout continent extends to that latitude.

1770. March.

It will, I think, appear with equal evidence from the accounts of Roggewein's voyage, that between the longitudes of 130° and 150° W. there is no main land to the northward of 35° S. Mr. Pingre, in a treatiſe concerning the tranſit of Venus, which he went out to obſerve, has inſerted an extract of Roggewein's voyage, and a map of the South Seas; and for reaſons which may be ſeen at large in his work, ſuppoſes him, after leaving Eaſter Iſland, which he places in latitude 28½ S. longitude 123° W. to have ſteered S. W. as high as 34° S. and afterwards W. N. W. and if this was indeed his route, the proof that there is no main land to the northward of 35° S. is irrefragable. Mr. Dalrymple indeed ſuppoſes his route to have been different, and that from Eaſter Iſle he ſteered N. W. taking a courſe afterwards very little different from that of La Maire; but I think it highly improbable that a man, who at his own requeſt was ſent to diſcover a ſouthern continent, ſhould take a courſe in which La Maire had already proved no continent could be found: it muſt however be confeſſed, that Roggewein's track cannot certainly be aſcertained, becauſe in the accounts that have been publiſhed of his voyage, neither longitudes nor latitudes are mentioned. As to myſelf, I ſaw nothing that I thought a ſign of land, in my route either to the northward, ſouthward, or weſtward, till a few days before I made the eaſt coaſt of New Zealand: I did indeed frequently ſee large flocks of birds, but they were generally ſuch as are found at a very remote diſtance from any coaſt; and it is alſo true, that I frequently ſaw pieces of rockweed, but I could not infer the vicinity of land from theſe, becauſe I have been informed, upon indubitable authority, that a conſiderable quantity of the beans called Ox-eyes, which are known to grow no where but in the Weſt Indies, are every year thrown up on the coaſt of Ireland, which is not leſs than twelve hundred leagues diſtant.

Thus have I given my reaſons for thinking that there is no continent to the northward of latitude 40° S. Of what may lie farther to the ſouthward than 40° I can give no opinion; but I am ſo far from wiſhing to diſcourage any future attempt, finally to determine a

1770. March. queſtion, which has long been an object of attention to many nations, that now this voyage has reduced the only poſſible ſcite of a continent in the ſouthern hemiſphere, north of latitude 40°, to ſo ſmall a ſpace, I think it would be pity to leave that any longer unexamined, eſpecially as the voyage may turn to good account, beſides determining the principal queſtion, if no continent ſhould be found, by the diſcovery of new iſlands in the tropical regions, of which there is probably a great number, that no European veſſel has ever yet viſited. Tupia from time to time gave us an account of about one hundred and thirty, and in a chart drawn by his own hand, he actually laid down no leſs than ſeventy-four.

AN

ACCOUNT

OF A

VOYAGE round the WORLD.

BOOK III.

CHAP. I.

The Run from New Zealand to Botany Bay, on the Eaſt Coaſt of New Holland, now called New South Wales. Various Incidents that happened there. With ſome Account of the Country and its Inhabitants.

HAVING ſailed from Cape Farewell, which lies in latitude 40° 33′ S. longitude 186° W. on Saturday the 31ſt of March, 1770, we ſteered weſtward, with a freſh gale at N. N. E. and at noon, on the 2d of April, our latitude, by obſervation, was 40°, our longitude from Cape Farewell 2° 31′ W. 1770. March. Saturd. 31. April. Monday 2.

In the morning of the 9th, being in latitude 38° 29′ S. we ſaw a tropic bird, which in ſo high a latitude is very uncommon. Monday 9.

In the morning of the 10th, being in latitude 38° 31′ S. longitude 202° 43′ W. we found the variation, by the amplitude, to be 11° 25′ E. and by the azimuth 11° 20′. Tueſd. 10.

In the morning of the 11th, the variation was 13° 48′, which is two degrees and an half more than the day before, though I expected to have found it leſs. Wedn. 11.

1770. April. In the courſe of the 13th, being in latitude 39° 23′ S. longitude 204° 2′ W. I found the variation to be 12°
Friday 13. 27′ E. and in the morning of the 14th it was 11° 30′.
Saturd. 14. This day we alſo ſaw ſome flying-fiſh. On the 15th we
Sunday 15. ſaw an egg-bird and a gannet; and as theſe are birds that never go far from the land, we continued to ſound all night, but had no ground with 130 fathoms. At
Monday 16. noon, on the 16th, we were in latitude 39° 45′ S. longitude 208° W. At about two o'clock the wind came about to the W. S. W. upon which we tacked and ſtood to the N. W. ſoon after a ſmall land-bird perched upon the rigging, but we had no ground with 120 fathoms. At eight we wore and ſtood to the ſouthward till twelve at night, and then wore and ſtood to the
Tueſday 17. N. W. till four in the morning, when we again ſtood to the ſouthward, having a freſh gale at W. S. W. with ſqualls and dark weather till nine, when the weather became clear, and there being little wind, we had an opportunity to take ſeveral obſervations of the ſun and moon, the mean reſult of which gave 207° 56′ W. longitude; our latitude at noon was 39° 36′ S. We had now a hard gale from the ſouthward, and a great ſea from the ſame quarter, which obliged us to run under our fore-ſail and mizen all night, during which we ſounded every two hours, but had no ground with 120 fathoms.

Wedneſ. 18. In the morning of the 18th we ſaw two Port Egmont hens, and a pintado bird, which are certain ſigns of approaching land, and indeed, by our reckoning, we could not be far from it, for our longitude was now one degree to the weſtward of the eaſt ſide of Van Diemen's land, according to the longitude laid down by Taſman, whom we could not ſuppoſe to have erred much in ſo ſhort a run as from this land to New Zealand; and by our latitude we could not be above fifty or fifty-five leagues from the place whence he took his departure. All this day we had frequent ſqualls and a great ſwell.

Thurſ. 19. At one in the morning we brought to and ſounded, but had no ground with 130 fathoms. At ſix we ſaw land extending from N. E. to W. at the diſtance of five or ſix leagues, having eighty fathoms water, with a fine ſandy bottom.

We

We continued ſtanding weſtward, with the wind at S. S. W. till eight, when we made all the ſail we could, and bore away along the ſhore N. E. for the eaſtermoſt land in ſight, being at this time in latitude 37° 58′ S. and longitude 210° 39′ W. The ſouthermoſt point of land in ſight, which bore from us W. ¼ S. I judged to be in latitude 38°, longitude 211° 7′, and gave it the name of POINT HICKS, becauſe Mr. Hicks, the Firſt Lieutenant, was the firſt who diſcovered it. To the ſouthward of this Point no land was to be ſeen, though it was very clear in that quarter, and by our longitude, compared with that of Taſman, not as it is laid down in the printed charts, but in the extracts from Taſman's journal, publiſhed by Rembrantſe, the body of Van Diemen's land ought to have borne due ſouth: and indeed, from the ſudden falling of the ſea, after the wind abated, I had reaſon to think it did; yet as I did not ſee it, and as I found this coaſt trend N. E. and S. W. or rather more to the eaſtward, I cannot determine whether it joins to Van Diemen's land or not. 1770. April.

At noon we were in latitude 37° 50′, longitude 210° 9′ W. The extremes of the land extended from S. W. to E. N. E. and a remarkable point before N. by E. at the diſtance of about four leagues. This point lies in a round hillock, very much reſembling the Dam Head at the entrance of Plymouth Sound, and therefore I called it by the ſame name. The variation by an azimuth, taken this morning, was 3° 7′ E. and what we had now ſeen of the land appeared low and level; the ſea-ſhore was a white ſand, but the country within was green and woody. About one o'clock we ſaw three water-ſpouts at once, two were between us and the ſhore, and the third at ſome diſtance, upon our larboard quarter: this phænomenon is ſo well known, that it is not neceſſary to give a particular deſcription of it here.

At ſix o'clock in the evening we ſhortened ſail, and brought to for the night, having fifty-ſix fathoms water, and a fine ſandy bottom. The northermoſt land in ſight then bore N. E. by E. ½ E. and a ſmall iſland lying cloſe to a point on the main bore W. diſtant two leagues. This point, which I called CAPE HOWE, may

1770. April. may be known by the trending of the coaſt, which is north on the one ſide, and ſouth-weſt on the other; it may alſo be known by ſome round hills upon the main, juſt within it.

Friday 20. We brought to for the night, and at four in the morning made ſail along ſhore to the northward. At ſix, the northermoſt land in ſight bore N. N. W. and we were at this time about four leagues from the ſhore. At noon we were in latitude 36° 51′ S. longitude 209° 53′ W. and about three leagues diſtant from the ſhore. The weather being clear, gave us a good view of the country, which has a very pleaſing appearance: it is of a moderate height, diverſified by hills and vallies, ridges and plains, interſperſed with a few lawns of no great extent, but in general covered with wood; the aſcent of the hills and ridges is gentle, and the ſummits are not high. We continued to ſail along the ſhore to the northward, with a ſoutherly wind, and in the afternoon we ſaw ſmoke in ſeveral places, by which we knew the country to be inhabited. At ſix in the evening we ſhortened ſail and ſounded; we found forty-four fathoms water, with a clear ſandy bottom, and ſtood on under an eaſy ſail till twelve, when we brought to for the night, and had ninety fathoms water.

Saturd. 21. At four in the morning we made ſail again, at the diſtance of about five leagues from the land, and at ſix we were a-breaſt of a high mountain, lying near the ſhore, which, on account of its figure, I called MOUNT DROMEDARY; under this mountain the ſhore forms a point, to which I gave the name of POINT DROMEDARY, and over it there is a peaked hillock. At this time being in latitude 36° 18′ S. longitude 209° 55′ W. we found the variation to be 10° 42′ E.

Between ten and eleven, Mr. Green and I took ſeveral obſervations of the ſun and moon, the mean reſult of which gave 209° 17′ longitude W. By an obſervation made the day before, our longitude was 210° 9′ W. from which 20′ being ſubtracted, there remained 209° 49′, the longitude of the ſhip this day at noon; the mean of which, with this day's obſervation, gives 209° 33′, by which I fix the longitude of this coaſt. At noon our latitude was 35° 49′ S. Cape Dromedary bo

ore S. 30 W. at the distance of twelve leagues, and 1770. April.
n open bay, in which were three or four small islands,
ore N. W. by W. at the distance of five or six leagues.
This bay seemed to afford but little shelter from the
ea winds, and yet it is the only place where there ap-
eared a probability of finding anchorage upon the
hole coast. We continued to steer along the shore
. by E. and N. N. E. at the distance of about three
agues, and saw smoke in many places near the beach.
t five in the evening we were a-breast of a point of
nd which rose in a perpendicular cliff, and which,
r that reason, I called POINT UPRIGHT. Our lati-
de was 35° 35′ S. when this Point bore from us due
est, distant about two leagues. In this situation we
d about thirty-one fathoms water, with a sandy bot-
m. At six in the evening, the wind falling, we
iled off E. N. E. and at this time the northermost
nd in sight bore N. by E. ½ E. At midnight, being
seventy fathoms water, we brought to till four in
e morning, when we made sail in for the land: but
day-break found our situation nearly the same as it Sunday 22.
d been at five the evening before, by which it was
parent, that we had been driven about three leagues
the southward, by a tide or current, during the
ght. After this we steered along the shore N. N. E.
th a gentle breeze at S. W. and were so near the
nd as to distinguish several of the natives upon the
ach, who appeared to be of a black or very dark
lour. At noon, our latitude, by observation, was
° 27′ S. and longitude 209° 23′ W. Cape Drome-
y bore S. 28 W. distant nineteen leagues, a re-
arkable peaked hill, which resembled a square dove-
use, with a dome at the top, and which, for that
ason, I called the PIGEON-HOUSE, bore N. 32°
W. and a small low island, which lay close under
e shore, bore N. W. distant about two or three
gues. When I first discovered this island, in the
rning, I was in hopes, from its appearance, that
should have found shelter for the ship behind it,
t when we came near it, it did not promise security
en for the landing of a boat: I should, however,
ve attempted to send a boat on shore, if the wind
d not veered to that direction, with a large hollow
sea

1770. April. ſea rolling in upon the land from the S. E. which in-
deed had been the caſe ever ſince we had been upon it.
The coaſt ſtill continued to be of a moderate height,
forming alternately rocky points and ſandy beaches;
but within, between Mount Dromedary and the Pigeon-
Houſe, we ſaw high mountains, which, except two,
are covered with wood; theſe two lie inland behind the
Pigeon-Houſe, and are remarkably flat at the top, with
ſteep rocky cliffs all round them, as far as we could ſee.
The trees, which almoſt every where clothe this coun-
try, appear to be large and lofty. This day the varia-
tion was found to be 9° 50′ E. and, for the two laſt
days, the latitude, by obſervation, was twelve or four-
teen miles to the ſouthward of the ſhip's account,
which could have been the effect of nothing but a cur-
rent ſetting in that direction. About four in the after-
noon, being near five leagues from the land, we tacked
and ſtood off S. E. and E. and the wind having veered
Monday 23. in the night from E. to N. E. and N. we tacked about
four in the morning, and ſtood in, being then about
nine or ten leagues from the ſhore. At eight the wind
began to die away, and ſoon after it was calm. At noon
our latitude, by obſervation, was 35° 38′, and our diſ-
ſtance from the land about ſix leagues. Cape Drome-
dary bore S. 37 W. diſtant ſeventeen leagues, and the
Pigeon-Houſe N. 40 W. in this ſituation we had ſe-
venty-four fathoms water. In the afternoon we had
variable light airs and calms till ſix in the evening,
when a breeze ſprung up at N. by W. At this time,
being about four or five leagues from the ſhore, we had
ſeventy fathoms water. The Pigeon-Houſe bore N.
45 W. Mount Dromedary S. 30 W. and the northern-
moſt land in ſight N. 19 E.

Tueſday 24. We ſtood to the north-eaſt till noon the next day,
with a gentle breeze at N. W. and then we tacked
and ſtood weſtward. At this time our latitude, by
obſervation, was 35° 10′ S. and longitude 208° 51′ W.
A point of land which I had diſcovered on St. George's
Day, and which therefore I called CAPE GEORGE,
bore W. diſtant nineteen miles, and the Pigeon-Houſe
(the latitude and longitude of which I found to be 35°
19′ S. and 209° 42′ W.) S. 75′ W. In the morning we
had

had found the variation, by amplitude, to be 7° 50′ E. and by ſeveral azimuths 7° 54′ E. We had a freſh breeze at N. W. from noon till three; it then came to the weſt, when we tacked and ſtood to the northward. At five in the evening, being about five or ſix leagues from the ſhore, with the Pigeon-houſe bearing W. S. W. diſtant about nine leagues, we had eighty-ſix fathoms water; and at eight having thunder and lightning, with heavy ſqualls, we brought to in 120 fathoms. 1770. April.

At three in the morning, we made ſail again to the northward, having the advantage of a freſh gale at S. W. At noon, we were about three or four leagues from the ſhore, and in latitude 34° 22′ S. longitude 208° 36′ W. In the courſe of this day's run from the preceding noon, which was forty-five miles north-eaſt, we ſaw ſmoke in ſeveral places near the beach. About two leagues to the northward of Cape George, the ſhore ſeemed to form a bay, which promiſed ſhelter from the north-eaſt winds; but as the wind was with us, it was not in my power to look into it without beating up, which would have coſt me more time than I was willing to ſpare. The north point of this bay, on account of its figure, I named LONG NOSE; its latitude 35° 6′, and about eight leagues north of it there lies a point, which, from the colour of the land about it, I called RED POINT: its latitude is 34° 29′, and longitude 208° 45′ W. To the north-weſt of Red Point, and a little way inland, ſtands a round hill, the top of which looks like the crown of a hat. In the afternoon of this day, we had a light breeze at N. N. W. till five in the evening, when it fell calm: at this time, we were between three and four leagues from the ſhore, and had forty-eight fathoms water: the variation by azimuth was 8° 48′ E. and the extremities of this land were from N. E. by N. to S. W. by S. Before it was dark, we ſaw ſmoke in ſeveral places along the ſhore, and a fire two or three times afterwards. During the night we lay becalmed, driving in before the ſea till one in the morning, when we got a breeze from the land, with which we ſteered N. E. being in thirty-eight fathoms. At noon it veered to N. E. by N. and we were then in latitude 34° 10′ S. longitude 208° Weda. 25. Thurſd. 26.

1770. April. 208° 27′ W. the land was distant about five leagues, and extended from S. 37 W. to N. ½ E. In this latitude, there are some white cliffs, which rise perpendicularly from the sea to a considerable height. We stood off the shore till two o'clock, and then tacked and stood in till six, when we were within four or five miles of it, and at that distance had fifty fathoms water. The extremities of the land bore from S. 28 W. to N. 25° 30′ E. We now tacked and stood off till twelve, then Friday 27. tacked and stood in again till four in the morning, when we made a trip off till day-light; and during all this time we lost ground, owing to the variableness of the winds. We continued at the distance of between four and five miles from the shore, till the afternoon, when we came within two miles, and I then hoisted out the pinnace and yawl, to attempt a landing; but the pinnace proved to be so leaky, that I was obliged to hoist her in again. At this time we saw several of the natives walking briskly along the shore, four of whom carried a small canoe upon their shoulders: we flattered ourselves that they were going to put her into the water, and come off to the ship; but finding ourselves disappointed, I determined to go on shore in the yawl, with as many as it would carry: I embarked, therefore, with only Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Tupia and four rowers: we pulled for that part of the shore where the Indians appeared, near which four small canoes were lying at the water's edge. The Indians sat down upon the rocks, and seemed to wait for our landing; but to our great regret, when we came within about a quarter of a mile, they ran away into the woods: we determined however to go ashore, and endeavour to procure an interview, but in this we were again disappointed, for we found so great a surf beating upon every part of the beach, that landing with our little boat was altogether impracticable: we were therefore obliged to be content with gazing at such objects as presented themselves from the water: the canoes, upon a nearer view, seemed very much to resemble those of the smaller sort at New Zealand. We observed, that among the trees on shore, which were not very large, there was no underwood; and could distinguish that many of them were of the palm kind, and

and ſome of them cabbage-trees: after many a wiſhful look we were obliged to return, with our curioſity rather excited than ſatisfied, and about five in the evening got on board the ſhip. About this time it fell calm, and our ſituation was by no means agreeable: we were now not more than a mile and a half from the ſhore, and within ſome breakers, which lay to the ſouthward, but happily a light breeze came off the land, and carried us out of danger: with this breeze we ſtood to the northward, and at day-break we diſcovered a bay, which ſeemed to be well ſheltered from all winds, and into which therefore I determined to go with the ſhip. The pinnace being repaired, I ſent her, with the Maſter, to ſound the entrance, while I kept turning up, having the wind right out. At noon, the mouth of the bay bore N. N. W. diſtant about a mile, and ſeeing a ſmoke on the ſhore, we directed our glaſſes to the ſpot, and ſoon diſcovered ten people, who, upon our nearer approach, left the fire, and retired to a little eminence, whence they could conveniently obſerve our motions. Soon after two canoes, each having two men on board, came to the ſhore juſt under the eminence, and the men joined the reſt on the top of it. The pinnace, which had been ſent a-head to ſound, now approached the place; upon which all the Indians retired farther up the hill, except one, who hid himſelf among ſome rocks near the landing-place. As the pinnace proceeded along the ſhore, moſt of the people took the ſame route, and kept a-breaſt of her at a diſtance; when ſhe came back, the Maſter told us, that in a cove a little within the harbour, ſome of them had come down to the beach, and invited him to land by many ſigns and words of which he knew not the meaning; but that all of them were armed with long pikes and a wooden weapon ſhaped ſomewhat like a cimeter. The Indians who had not followed the boat, ſeeing the ſhip approach, uſed many threatening geſtures, and brandiſhed their weapons; particularly two, who made a very ſingular appearance, for their faces ſeemed to have been duſted with a white powder, and their bodies painted with broad ſtreaks of the ſame colour, which paſſing obliquely over their breaſts and backs, looked not unlike the croſs-belts worn by

1770. April.

1770. April. by our ſoldiers; the ſame kind of ſtreaks were alſo drawn round their legs and thighs like broad garters: each of theſe men held in his hand the weapon that had been deſcribed to us as like a cimeter, which appeared to be about two feet and a half long, and they ſeemed to talk to each other with great earneſtneſs.

We continued to ſtand into the bay, and early in the afternoon anchored under the ſouth ſhore, about two miles within the entrance, in ſix fathoms water, the ſouth point bearing S. E. and the north point E. As we came in we ſaw, on both points of the bay, a few huts, and ſeveral of the natives, men, women, and children. Under the ſouth head we ſaw four ſmall canoes, with each one man on board, who were very buſily employed in ſtriking fiſh with a long pike or ſpear; they ventured almoſt into the ſurf, and were ſo intent upon what they were doing, that although the ſhip paſſed within a quarter of a mile of them, they ſcarcely turned their eyes towards her; poſſibly being deafened by the ſurf, and their attention wholly fixed upon their buſineſs or ſport, they neither ſaw nor heard her go past them.

The place where the ſhip had anchored was a-breaſt of a ſmall village, conſiſting of about ſix or eight houſes; and while we were preparing to hoiſt out the boat, we ſaw an old woman, followed by three children, come out of the wood; ſhe was loaded with fire-wood, and each of the children had alſo its little burden. When ſhe came to the houſes three more children, younger than the others, came out to meet her; ſhe often looked at the ſhip, but expreſſed neither fear nor ſurpriſe; in a ſhort time ſhe kindled a fire, and the four canoes came in from fiſhing. The men landed, and having hauled up their boats, began to dreſs their dinner, to all appearance, wholly unconcerned about us, though we were within half a mile of them. We thought it remarkable, that of all the people we had yet ſeen, not one had the leaſt appearance of clothing, the old woman herſelf being deſtitute even of a fig-leaf.

After dinner the boats were manned, and we ſet out from the ſhip, having Tupia of our party. We intended to land where we ſaw the people, and began to hope, that as they had ſo little regarded the ſhip coming

coming into the bay, they would as little regard our coming on ſhore; in this, however, we were diſappointed, for as ſoon as we approached the rocks, two of the men came down upon them to diſpute our landing, and the reſt ran away. Each of the two champions was armed with a lance about ten feet long, and a ſhort ſtick, which he ſeemed to handle as if it was a machine to aſſiſt him in managing or throwing the lance. They called to us in a very loud tone, and in a harſh diſſonant language, of which neither we nor Tupia underſtood a ſingle word: they brandiſhed their weapons, and ſeemed reſolved to defend their coaſt to the uttermoſt, though they were but two, and we were forty. I could not but admire their courage, and being very unwilling that hoſtilities ſhould commence with ſuch inequality of force between us, I ordered the boat to lie upon her oars: we then parlied by ſigns for about a quarter of an hour, and, to beſpeak their goodwill, I threw them nails, beads, and other trifles, which they took up, and ſeemed to be well pleaſed with. I then made ſigns that I wanted water, and, by all the means that I could deviſe, endeavoured to convince them that we would do them no harm. They now waved to us, and I was willing to interpret it as an invitation; but upon our putting the boat in, they came again to oppoſe us. One appeared to be a youth about nineteen or twenty, and the other a man of middle age: as I had now no other reſource, I fired a muſquet between them. Upon the report, the youngeſt dropped a bundle of lances upon the rock, but, recollecting himſelf, in an inſtant he ſnatched them up again with great haſte. A ſtone was then thrown at us, upon which I ordered a muſquet to be fired with ſmall ſhot, which ſtruck the eldeſt upon the legs, and he immediately ran to one of the houſes, which was diſtant about an hundred yards. I now hoped that our conteſt was over, and we immediately landed; but we had ſcarcely left the boat when he returned, and we then perceived, that he had left the rock only to fetch a ſhield for a target for his defence. As ſoon as he came up, he threw a lance at us, and his comrade another; they fell where we ſtood thickeſt, but happily hurt nobody. A third muſquet with ſmall-ſhot was then fired at them,

1770. April.

1770. April. upon which one of them threw another lance, and both immediately ran away: If we had purſued, we might probably have taken one of them; but Mr. Banks ſuggeſting that the lances might be poiſoned, I thought it not prudent to venture into the woods. We repaired immediately to the huts, into one of which we found the children, who had hidden themſelves behind a ſhield and ſome bark; we peeped at them, but left them in their retreat, without their knowing that they had been diſcovered, and we threw into the houſe, when we went away, ſome beads, ribands, pieces of cloth, and other preſents, which we hoped would procure us the good-will of the inhabitants when they ſhould return; but the lances which we found lying about we took away with us, to the number of about fifty; they were from ſix to ſeven feet long, and all of them had four prongs, in the manner of a fiſh-gig, each of which was pointed with fiſh-bone, and very ſharp: we obſerved that they were ſmeared with a viſcous ſubſtance of a green colour, which favoured the opinion of their being poiſoned, though we afterwards diſcovered that it was a miſtake; they appeared, by the ſea-weed that we found ſticking to them, to have been uſed in ſtriking fiſh. Upon examining the canoes that lay upon the beach we found them to be the worſt we had ever ſeen; they were between twelve and fourteen feet long, and made of the bark of a tree, in one piece, which was drawn together and tied up at each end, the middle being kept open by ſticks, which were placed acroſs them from gunwale to gunwale, as thwarts. We then ſearched for freſh water, but found none, except in a ſmall hole which had been dug in the ſand.

Having reimbarked in our boat, we depoſited our lances on board the ſhip, and then went over to the north point of the bay, where we had ſeen ſeveral of the inhabitants when we were entering it, but which we now found totally deſerted. Here, however, we found freſh water, which trickled down from the top of the rocks, and ſtood in pools among the hollows at the bottom; but it was ſituated ſo, as not be procured for our uſe without difficulty.

In the morning, therefore, I ſent a party of men to that part of the ſhore where we firſt landed, with orders to dig holes in the ſand, where the water might gather; but going a-ſhore myſelf with the gentlemen ſoon afterwards, we found, upon a more diligent ſearch, a ſmall ſtream, more than ſufficient for our purpoſe. 1770. April. Sunday 29.

Upon viſiting the hut where we had ſeen the children, we were greatly mortified to find that the beads and ribands, which we had left there the night before, had not been moved from their places, and that not an Indian was to be ſeen.

Having ſent ſome empty water-caſks on ſhore, and left a party of men to cut wood, I went myſelf in the pinnace to ſound, and examine the bay; during my excurſion I ſaw ſeveral of the natives, but they all fled at my approach. In one of the places where I landed I found ſeveral ſmall fires, and freſh muſcles broiling upon them; here alſo I found ſome of the largeſt oyſter-ſhells I had ever ſeen.

As ſoon as the wooders and waterers came on board to dinner, ten or twelve of the natives came down to the place, and looked with great attention and curioſity at the caſks, but did not touch them; they took away, however, the canoes which lay near the landing-place, and again diſappeared. In the afternoon, when our people were again a-ſhore, ſixteen or eighteen Indians, all armed, came boldly within about an hundred yards of them, and then ſtopped: two of them advanced ſomewhat nearer; and Mr. Hicks, who commanded the party on ſhore, with another, advanced to meet them, holding out preſents to them as he approached, and expreſſing kindneſs and amity by every ſign he could think of, but all without effect; for before he could get up with them they retired, and it would have anſwered no purpoſe to purſue. In the evening I went with Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander to a ſandy cove on the north ſide of the bay, where, in three or four hauls with the ſeine, we took above three hundred weight of fiſh, which was equally divided among the ſhip's company.

The next morning, before day-break, the Indians came down to the houſes that were a-breaſt of the ſhip, Monday 30.

1770. April. and were heard frequently to ſhout very loud. As ſoon as it was light they were ſeen walking along the beach, and ſoon after they retired to the woods, where, at the diſtance of about a mile from the ſhore, they kindled ſeveral fires.

Our people went a-ſhore as uſual, and with them Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, who, in ſearch of plants, repaired to the woods. Our men, who were employed in cutting graſs, being the fartheſt removed from the main body of the people, a company of fourteen or fifteen Indians advanced towards them, having ſticks in their hands, which, according to the report of the Serjeant of the marines, ſhone like a muſquet. The graſs-cutters, upon ſeeing them approach, drew together, and repaired to the main body. The Indians, being encouraged by this appearance of a flight, purſued them; they ſtopped, however, when they were within about a furlong of them, and after ſhouting ſeveral times went back into the woods. In the evening they came again in the ſame manner, ſtopped at the ſame diſtance, ſhouted, and retired. I followed them myſelf, alone and unarmed, for a conſiderable way along the ſhore, but I could not prevail upon them to ſtop.

This day Mr. Green took the ſun's meridian altitude, a little within the ſouth entrance of the bay, which gave the latitude 34° S. the variation of the needle was 11° 3′ E.

May. Tueſday 1. Early the next morning the body of Forby Sutherland, one of our ſeamen, who died the evening before, was buried near the watering-place, and from this incident I called the ſouth point of this bay SUTHERLAND POINT. This day we reſolved to make an excurſion into the country. Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, myſelf, and ſeven others, properly accoutred for the expedition, ſet out, and repaired firſt to the huts near the watering-place, whither ſome of the natives continued every day to reſort; and though the little preſents which we had left there before had not yet been taken away, we left others of ſomewhat more value, conſiſting of cloth, looking-glaſſes, combs, and beads, and then went up into the country. We found the ſo

1770. May.

to be either ſwamp or light ſand, and the face of the country finely diverſified by wood and lawn. The trees are tall, ſtraight, and without underwood, ſtanding at ſuch a diſtance from each other, that the whole country, at leaſt where the ſwamps do not render it incapable of cultivation, might be cultivated without cutting down one of them: between the trees the ground is covered with graſs, of which there is great abundance, growing in tufts about as big as can well be graſped in the hand, which ſtand very cloſe to each other. We ſaw many houſes of the inhabitants, and places where they had ſlept upon the graſs without any ſhelter; but we ſaw only one of the people, who the moment he diſcovered us ran away. At all theſe places we left preſents, hoping that at length they might produce confidence and good-will. We had a tranſient and imperfect view of a quadruped about as big as a rabbit: Mr. Banks's greyhound, which was with us, got ſight of it, and would probably have caught it, but the moment he ſet off he lamed himſelf, againſt a ſtump which lay concealed in the long graſs. We afterwards ſaw the dung of an animal which fed upon graſs, and which we judged could not be leſs than a deer; and the footſteps of another, which was clawed like a dog, and ſeemed to be about as big as a wolf: we alſo tracked a ſmall animal, whoſe foot reſembled that of a polcat or weaſel. The trees over our heads abounded with birds of various kinds, among which were many of exquiſite beauty, particularly loriquets and cockatoos, which flew in flocks of ſeveral ſcores together. We found ſome wood which had been felled by the natives with a blunt inſtrument, and ſome that had been barked. The trees were not of many ſpecies; among others there was a large one, which yielded a gum not unlike the *ſanguis draconis*; and in ſome of them ſteps had been cut, at about three feet diſtance from each other, for the convenience of climbing them.

From this excurſion we returned between three and four o'clock, and having dined on board, we went aſhore again at the watering-place, where a party of men were filling caſks. Mr. Gore, the Second Lieutenant, had been ſent out in the morning with a boat, to dredge for oyſters at the head of the bay; when he

1770. May. had performed this ſervice, he went a-ſhore, and having taken a midſhipman with him, and ſent the boat away, ſet out to join the waterers by land. In his way he fell in with a body of two-and-twenty Indians, who followed him, and were often not more than twenty yards diſtant; when Mr. Gore perceived them ſo near, he ſtopped, and faced about, upon which they ſtopped alſo; and when he went on again, continued their purſuit: they did not, however, attack him, though they were all armed with lances, and he and the midſhipman got in ſafety to the watering-place. The Indians, who had ſlackened their purſuit when they came in ſight of the main body of our people, halted at about the diſtance of a quarter of a mile, where they ſtood ſtill. Mr. Monkhouſe, and two or three of the waterers, took it in their heads to march up to them; but ſeeing the Indians keep their ground till they came pretty near them, they were ſeized with a ſudden fear, very common to the raſh and fool-hardy, and made a haſty retreat. This ſtep, which inſured the danger that it was taken to avoid, encouraged the Indians, and four of them running forward diſcharged their lances at the fugitives with ſuch force, that, flying no leſs than forty yards, they went beyond them. As the Indians did not purſue, our people, recovering their ſpirits, ſtopped to collect the lances, when they came up to the place where they lay; upon which the Indians, in their turn, began to retire. Juſt at this time I came up with Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia; and being deſirous to convince the Indians that we were neither afraid of them, nor intended them any miſchief, we advanced towards them, making ſigns of expoſtulation and entreaty, but they could not be perſuaded to wait till we could come up. Mr. Gore told us, that he had ſeen ſome of them up the bay, who had invited him by ſigns to come on ſhore, which he, certainly with great prudence, declined.

Wedneſd. 1. The morning of the next day was ſo rainy, that we were all glad to ſtay on board. In the afternoon, however, it cleared up, and we made another excurſion along the ſea-coaſt to the ſouthward. We went a-ſhore, and Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander gathered many plants

but beſides theſe we ſaw nothing worthy of notice. At our firſt entering the woods, we met with three of the natives, who inſtantly ran away; more of them were ſeen by ſome of the people, but they all diſappeared, with great precipitation, as ſoon as they found that they were diſcovered. By the boldneſs of theſe people at our firſt landing, and the terror that ſeized them at the ſight of us afterwards, it appears that they were ſufficiently intimidated by our fire-arms; not that we had any reaſon to think the people much hurt by the ſmall-ſhot which we were obliged to fire at them, when they attacked us at our coming out of the boat; but they had probably ſeen the effects of them, from their lurking places, upon the birds that we had ſhot. Tupia, who was now become a good markſman, frequently ſtrayed from us to ſhoot parrots, and he told us, that, while he was thus employed, he had once met with nine Indians, who, as ſoon as they perceived he ſaw them, ran from him in great confuſion and terror. 1770. May.

The next day twelve canoes, in each of which was a ſingle Indian, came towards the watering-place, and were within half a mile of it a conſiderable time; they were employed in ſtriking fiſh, upon which, like others that we had ſeen before, they were ſo intent that they ſeemed to regard nothing elſe. It happened, however, that a party of our people were out a ſhooting near the place, and one of the men, whoſe curioſity might at length perhaps be roufed, by the report of the fowling-pieces, was obſerved by Mr. Banks to haul up his canoe upon the beach, and go towards the ſhooting party; in ſomething more than a quarter of an hour he returned, launched his canoe, and went off in her to his companions. This incident makes it probable, that the natives acquired a knowledge of the deſtructive power of our fire-arms, when we knew nothing of the matter; for this man was not ſeen by any of the party whoſe operations he had reconnoitred. Thurſday 3.

While Mr. Banks was gathering plants near the watering-place, I went with Dr. Solander and Mr. Monkhouſe to the head of the bay, that I might examine that part of the country, and make farther attempts to form ſome connection with the natives. In

1770. May. our way we met with eleven or twelve ſmall canoes, with each a man in it, probably the ſame that were afterwards a-breaſt of the ſhore, who all made into ſhoal water upon our approach. We met other Indians on ſhore the firſt time we landed, who inſtantly took to their canoes, and paddled away. We went up the country to ſome diſtance, and found the face of it nearly the ſame with that which has been deſcribed already, but the ſoil was much richer; for inſtead of ſand, I found a deep black mould, which I thought very fit for the production of grain of any kind. In the woods we found a tree which bore fruit, that in colour and ſhape reſembled a cherry; the juice had an agreeable tartneſs, though but little flavour. We found alſo interſperſed ſome of the fineſt meadows in the world; ſome places, however, were rocky, but theſe were comparatively few: the ſtone is ſandy, and might be uſed with advantage for building. When we returned to the boat, we ſaw ſome ſmoke upon another part of the coaſt, and went thither in hopes of meeting with the people, but at our approach theſe alſo ran away. We found ſix ſmall canoes, and ſix fires very near the beach, with ſome muſcles roaſting upon them and a few oyſters lying near; by this we judged that there had been one man in each canoe, who having picked up ſome ſhell-fiſh had come a-ſhore to eat it and made his ſeparate fire for that purpoſe. We taſted of their cheer, and left them in return ſome ſtrings of beads, and other things which we thought would pleaſe them. At the foot of a tree in this place we found a ſmall well of freſh water, ſupplied by a ſpring and the day being now far ſpent we returned to the ſhip. In the evening Mr. Banks made a little excurſion with his gun, and found ſuch a number of quails reſembling thoſe in England, that he might have ſhot as many as he pleaſed; but his object was variety, and not number.

Friday 4. The next morning, as the wind would not permit me to ſail, I ſent ſeveral parties into the country, to try again whether ſome intercourſe could not be eſtabliſhed with the natives. A midſhipman, who belonged to one of theſe parties, having ſtraggled a long way from his companions, met with a very old man

nd woman, and ſome little children; they were ſitting 1770. May.
nder a tree by the water ſide, and neither party ſaw
he other till they were cloſe together; the Indians
hewed ſigns of fear, but did not attempt to run away.
The man happened to have nothing to give them but a
arrot that he had ſhot; this he offered, but they re-
uſed to accept it, withdrawing themſelves from his
and either through fear or averſion. His ſtay with
hem was but ſhort, for he ſaw ſeveral canoes near the
each fiſhing, and being alone, he feared they might
ome a-ſhore and attack him: he ſaid, that theſe people
ere very dark coloured, but not black; that the man
nd woman appeared to be very old, being both grey-
eaded; that the hair of the man's head was buſhy, and
s beard long and rough; that the woman's hair was
opped ſhort, and both of them were ſtark naked.
r. Monkhouſe the Surgeon, and one of the men, who
ere with another party near the watering-place, alſo
rayed from their companions, and as they were com-
g out of a thicket obſerved ſix Indians ſtanding toge-
er, at the diſtance of about fifty yards. One of them
ronounced a word very loud, which was ſuppoſed to
e a ſignal, for a lance was immediately thrown at him
t of the wood, which very narrowly miſſed him.
hen the Indians ſaw that the weapon had not taken
ect, they ran away with the greateſt precipitation;
t on turning about towards the place whence the
ce had been thrown, he ſaw a young Indian, whom
judged to be about nineteen or twenty years old,
me down from a tree, and he alſo ran away with ſuch
ed as made it hopeleſs to follow him. Mr. Monk-
uſe was of opinion that he had been watched by theſe
ians in his paſſage through the thicket, and that the
uth had been ſtationed in the tree, to diſcharge the
ce at him, upon a ſignal as he ſhould come by; but
wever this be, there could be no doubt but that he
s the perſon who threw the lance.

In the afternoon, I went myſelf with a party over
the north ſhore, and while ſome of our people were
ling the ſeine, we made an excurſion a few miles
o the country, proceeding afterwards in the direction
the coaſt. We found this place without wood, and
ſome-

1770. May. ſomewhat reſembling our moors in England; the ſurface of the ground, however, was covered with a thin bruſh of plants, about as high as the knees: the hills near the coaſt are low, but others riſe behind them, increaſing by a gradual aſcent to a conſiderable diſtance, with marſhes and moraſſes between. When we returned to the boat, we found that our people had caught with the ſeine a great number of ſmall fiſh, which are well known in the Weſt-Indies, and which our ſailors call Leather-jackets, becauſe their ſkin is remarkably thick. I had ſent the ſecond Lieutenant out in the yawl a ſtriking, and when we got back to the ſhip, we found that he alſo had been very ſucceſsful. He had obſerved that the large ſting-rays, of which there is great plenty in the bay, followed the flowing tide into very ſhallow water; he therefore took the opportunity of flood, and ſtruck ſeveral in not more than two or three feet water; one of them weighed no leſs than two hundred and forty pounds after his entrails were taken out.

The next morning, as the wind continued northerly, I ſent out the yawl again, and the people ſtruck one ſtill larger, for when his entrails were taken out he weighed three hundred and thirty-ſix pounds.

The great quantity of plants which Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander collected in this place induced me to give it the name of BOTANY BAY. It is ſituated in the latitude of 34° S. longitude 208° 37′ W. It is capacious, ſafe, and convenient, and may be known by the land on the ſea-coaſt, which is nearly level, and of a moderate height; in general higher than it is farther inland, with ſteep rocky cliffs next the ſea, which have the appearance of a long iſland lying cloſe under the ſhore. The harbour lies about the middle of the land, and in approaching it from the ſouthward, is diſcovered before the ſhip comes a-breaſt of it; but from the northward it is not diſcovered ſo ſoon: the entrance is a little more than a quarter of a mile broad, and lies in W. N. W. To ſail into it the ſouthern ſhore ſhould be kept on board, till the ſhip is within a ſmall bare iſland, which lies cloſe under the north ſhore; within this iſland the deepeſt water on

the

that ſide is ſeven fathoms, ſhallowing to five a good way up. At a conſiderable diſtance from the ſouth ſhore there is a ſhoal, reaching from the inner ſouth point quite to the head of the harbour; but over towards the north and north-weſt ſhore, there is a channel of twelve or fourteen feet at low water, for three or four leagues, up to a place where there is three or four fathoms, but here I found very little freſh water. We anchored near the ſouth ſhore, about a mile within the entrance, for the convenience of ſailing with a ſoutherly wind, and becauſe I thought it the beſt ſituation for watering: but I afterwards found a very fine ſtream on the north ſhore, in the firſt ſandy cove within the iſland, before which a ſhip might lie almoſt land-locked, and procure wood as well as water in great abundance. Wood indeed is every where plenty, but I ſaw only two kinds which may be conſidered as timber. Theſe trees are as large, or larger than the Engliſh oak, and one of them has not a very different appearance: this is the ſame that yields the reddiſh gum like ſanguis draconis, and the wood is heavy, hard, and dark-coloured, like lignum vitæ; the other grows tall and ſtrait, ſomething like the pine; and the wood of this, which has ſome reſemblance to the live oak of America, is alſo hard and heavy. There are a few ſhrubs, and ſeveral kinds of the palm; mangroves alſo grow in great plenty near the head of the bay. The country in general is level, low, and woody, as far as we could ſee. The woods, as I have before obſerved, abound with birds of exquiſite beauty, particularly of the parrot kind; we found alſo crows here, exactly the ſame with thoſe in England. About the head of the harbour, where there are large flats of ſand and mud, there is great plenty of waterfowl, moſt of which were altogether unknown to us: one of the moſt remarkable was black and white, much larger than a ſwan, and in ſhape ſomewhat reſembling a pelican. On theſe banks of ſand and mud there are great quantities of oyſters, muſcles, cockles, and other ſhell-fiſh, which ſeem to be the principal ſubſiſtence of the inhabitants, who go into ſhoal water with their little canoes, and pick them out with their hands. We did not obſerve that they eat any of them raw, nor do they always

1770. May.

1770. May. always go on ſhore to dreſs them, for they have frequently fires in their canoes for that purpoſe. They do not however ſubſiſt wholly upon this food, for they catch a variety of other fiſh, ſome of which they ſtrike with gigs, and ſome they take with hook and line. All the inhabitants that we ſaw were ſtark naked: they did not appear to be numerous, nor to live in ſocieties, but like other animals were ſcattered about along the coaſt and in the woods. Of their manner of life, however, we could know but little, as we were never able to form the leaſt connection with them: after the firſt conteſt at our landing, they would never come near enough to parley; nor did they touch a ſingle article of all that we had left at their huts, and the places they frequented on purpoſe for them to take away.

During my ſtay in this harbour, I cauſed the Engliſh colours to be diſplayed on ſhore every day and the ſhip's name, and the date of the year, to be inſcribed upon one of the trees near the watering-place.

It is high-water here at the full and change of the moon about eight o'clock, and the tide riſes and falls perpendicularly between four and five feet.

CHAP. IV.

The Range from Botany Bay to Trinity Bay; with a farther Account of the Country, its Inhabitants and Productions.

Sunday 6. AT day-break, on Sunday the 6th of May 1770, we ſet ſail from Botany Bay, with a light breeze at N. W. which ſoon after coming to the ſouthward we ſteered along the ſhore N. N. E. and at noon our latitude, by obſervation, was 33° 50′ S. At this time we were between two and three miles diſtant from the land and a-breaſt of a bay, or harbour, in which there appeared to be good anchorage, and which I called Port Jackson. This harbour lies three leagues to the northward of Botany Bay: the variation, by ſeveral azimuths, appeared to be 8° E. At ſun-ſet the northernmoſt land in ſight bore N. 26 E. and ſome broken land, that ſeemed to form a bay, bore N. 40 W. diſtant four leagues. This bay, which lies in latitude 33° 42′, I call

Broken

BROKEN BAY. We ſteered along the ſhore N. N. E. all night, at the diſtance of about three leagues from the land, having from thirty-two to thirty-ſix fathoms water, with a hard ſandy bottom. 1770. May.

Soon after ſun-riſe on the 7th, I took ſeveral azimuths, with four needles belonging to the azimuth compaſs, the mean reſult of which gave the variation 7° 56′ E. At noon our latitude, by obſervation, was 33° 22′ S. We were about three leagues from the ſhore; the northernmoſt land in ſight bore N. 19 E. and ſome lands which projected in three bluff points, and which, for that reaſon, I called CAPE THREE POINTS, bore S. W. diſtant five leagues. Our longitude from Botany Bay was 19′ E. In the afternoon, we ſaw ſmoke in ſeveral places upon the ſhore, and in the evening, found the variation to be 8° 25′ E. At this time we were between two and three miles from the ſhore, in twenty-eight fathoms; and at noon the next day, we had not advanced one ſtep to the northward. We ſtood off ſhore, with the wind northerly, till twelve at night, and at the diſtance of about five leagues, had ſeventy fathoms; at the diſtance of ſix leagues we had eighty fathoms, which was the extent of the ſoundings; for at the diſtance of ten leagues, we had no ground with 150 fathoms. Mond. 7. Tueſd. 8.

The wind continuing northerly, till the morning of the 10th, we continued to ſtand in and off the ſhore, with very little change of ſituation in other reſpects; but a gale then ſpringing up at S. W. we made the beſt our way along the ſhore to the northward. At ſun-riſe, our latitude was 33° 2′ S. and the variation 8° E. At nine in the forenoon, we paſſed a remarkable hill, which ſtood a little way inland, and ſomewhat reſembled the crown of a hat: and at noon, our latitude, by obſervation, was 32° 53′ S. and our longitude 208° W. We were about two leagues diſtant from the land, which extended from N. 41 E. to S. 41 W. and a ſmall ſand rock, or iſland, which lay cloſe under the land, bore S. 82° W. diſtant between three and four leagues. About four in the afternoon, we paſſed, at the diſtance of about a mile, a low rocky point, which I called POINT STEPHENS, on the north ſide of which is an inlet, which I called PORT STEPHENS: this inlet appeared to Thurſd. 10.

me,

1770. May. me, from the maſt head, to be ſheltered from all winds. It lies in latitude 33° 40′, longitude 207° 51′, and at the entrance are three ſmall iſlands, two of which are high; and on the main near the ſhore are ſome high round hills, which at a diſtance appear like iſlands. In paſſing this bay, at the diſtance of two or three miles from the ſhore, our ſoundings were from thirty-three to twenty-ſeven fathoms, from which I conjectured that there muſt be a ſufficient depth of water within it. At a little diſtance within land we ſaw ſmoke in ſeveral places; and at half an hour paſt five, the northernmoſt land in ſight bore N. 36 E. and Point Stephens S. W. diſtant four leagues. Our ſoundings in the night, were from forty-eight to ſixty-two fathoms, at the diſtance of between three and four leagues from the ſhore, which made in two hillocks. This Point I called CAPE HAWKE: it lies in the latitude of 32° 14′ S. longitude

Friday 11. 207° 30′ W. and at four o'clock in the morning bore W. diſtant about eight miles; at the ſame time the northernmoſt land in ſight bore N. 6 E. and appeared like an iſland. At noon, this land bore N. 8 E. the northernmoſt land in ſight N. 13 E. and Cape Hawke S. 37 W. Our latitude, by obſervation, was 32° 2′, which was twelve miles to the ſouthward of that given by the log; ſo that probably we had a current ſetting that way: by the morning amplitude and azimuth the variation was 9° 10′ E. During our run along the ſhore, in the afternoon, we ſaw fires in ſeveral places at a little diſtance from the beach, and one upon the top of a hill, which was the firſt we had ſeen upon elevated ground ſince our arrival upon the coaſt. At ſun-ſet, we had twenty-three fathoms, at the diſtance of a league and an half from the ſhore: the northernmoſt land then bore N. 13 E. and three hills, remarkable large and high, lying contiguous to each other, and not far from the beach, N. N. W. As theſe hills bore ſome reſemblance to each other, we called them the THREE BROTHERS. They lie in latitude 31° 40′, and may be ſeen fourteen or ſixteen leagues. We ſteered N. E. by N. all night, having from twenty-ſeven to ſixty-ſeven fathoms, at the diſtance of between two and ſix leagues from the ſhore.

At day-break we ſteered north, for the northernmoſt land in ſight. At noon, we were four leagues from the ſhore, and, by obſervation, in latitude 31° 18′ S. which was fifteen miles to the ſouthward of that given by the log; our longitude 206° 58′ W. In the afternoon we ſtood in for the land, where we ſaw ſmoke in ſeveral places, till ſix in the evening, when, being within three or four miles of it, and in twenty-four fathoms of water, we ſtood off with a freſh breeze at S. and N. N. W. till midnight, when we had 118 fathoms, at the diſtance of eight leagues from the land, and then tacked. At three in the morning the wind veered to the weſtward, when we tacked and ſtood to the northward. At noon our latitude, by obſervation, was 30° 43′ S. and our longitude 206° 45′ W. At this time we were between three and four leagues from the ſhore, the northernmoſt part of which bore from us S. 13 W. and a point, or head land, on which we ſaw fires that produced a great quantity of ſmoke, bore W. diſtant four leagues. To this point I gave the name of SMOKEY CAPE: it is of a conſiderable height, and over the pitch of the point is a round hillock; within it are two others, much higher and larger, and within them the land is very low. Our latitude was 30° 31′ S. longitude 206° 54′ W. this day the obſerved latitude was only five miles ſouth of the log. We ſaw ſmoke in ſeveral parts along the coaſt, beſides that ſeen upon Smokey Cape.

1770. May. Saturd. 12.

Sund. 23.

In the afternoon, the wind being at N. E. we ſtood in and on, and at three or four miles diſtance from the ſhore had thirty fathoms water: the wind afterwards coming croſs off land, we ſtood to the northward, having from thirty to twenty-one fathoms, at the diſtance of four or five miles from the ſhore.

At five in the morning the wind veered to the north, and blew freſh, attended with ſqualls: at eight it began to thunder and rain, and in about an hour it fell calm, which gave us an opportunity to ſound, and we had eighty-ſix fathoms at between four and five leagues from the ſhore: ſoon after this we had a gale from the ſouthward, with which we ſteered N. by W. for the northernmoſt land in ſight. At noon, we were about four leagues from the ſhore, and by obſervation in latitude

Mond. 24.

30°

1770. May. 30° 22′ which was nine miles to the ſouthward of ou reckoning, longitude 206° 39′ W. Some lands ne the ſhore, of a conſiderable height, bore W.

As we advanced to the northward, from Botany Ba the land gradually increaſed in height, ſo that in th latitude it may be called a hilly country. Between th latitude and the Bay, it exhibits a pleaſing variety ridges, hills, vallies, and plains, all clothed with woo of the ſame appearance with that which has been pa ticularly deſcribed: the land near the ſhore is in g neral low and ſandy, except the points, which a rocky, and over many of them are high hills, whic at their firſt riſing out of the water, have the appe ance of iſlands. In the afternoon we had ſome ſm rocky iſlands between us and the land, the ſouthernm of which lies in latitude 30° 10′, and the northernm 29° 58′, and ſomewhat more than two leagues fr the land: about two miles without the northernmoſt land we had thirty-three fathoms water. Having t advantage of a moon, we ſteered along the ſhore night, in the direction of N. and N. by E. keep at the diſtance of about three leagues from the la and having from twenty to twenty five fathoms wa As ſoon as it was light, having a freſh gale, we m Tueſday 15. all the ſail we could, and at nine o'clock in the mo ing, being about a league from the ſhore, we diſ vered ſmoke in many places, and having recourſe our glaſſes, we ſaw about twenty of the natives, w had each a large bundle upon his back, which we c jectured to be palm leaves for covering their houſ we continued to obſerve them above an hour, dur which they walked upon the beach, and up a p that led over a hill of a gentle aſcent, behind which loſt ſight of them: not one of them was obſerved ſtop and look towards us, but they trudged along, all appearance, without the leaſt emotion either of rioſity or ſurprize; though it is impoſſible they ſho not have ſeen the ſhip by a caſual glance as they w ed along the ſhore, and though ſhe muſt, with pect to every other object they had yet ſeen, have b little leſs ſtupendous and unaccountable than a floa mountain with all its woods would have been to

At noon our latitude, by obſervation, was 28° 39′ S. and longitude 206° 27′ W. A high point of land, which I named CAPE BYRON, bore N. W. by W. at the diſtance of three miles. It lies in latitude 28° 37′ 30″ S. longitude 206° 30′ W. and may be known by a remarkable ſharp peaked mountain, which lies inland, and bears from it N. W. by W. From this point, the land trends N. 13 W. inland it is high and hilly, but low near the ſhore; to the ſouthward of the point it is alſo low and level. We continued to ſteer along the ſhore with a freſh gale, till ſun-ſet, when we ſuddenly diſcovered breakers a-head, directly in the ſhip's courſe, and alſo on our larboard bow. At this time we were about five miles from the land, and had twenty fathoms water: we hauled up eaſt till eight, when we had run eight miles, and increaſed our depth of water to forty-four fathoms: we then brought to, with the ſhip's head to the eaſtward, and lay upon this tack till ten, when having increaſed our ſounding to ſeventy-eight fathoms, we wore, and lay with the ſhip's head to the land till five in the morning, when we made ſail, and at day-light were greatly ſurprized to find ourſelves farther to the ſouthward, than we had been the evening before, though the wind had been ſoutherly, and blown freſh all night: we now ſaw the breakers again within us, and paſſed them at the diſtance of one league. They lie in latitude 28° 8′ S. ſtretching off eaſt two leagues from a point of land, under which is a ſmall iſland. Their ſituation may always be known by the peaked mountain which has been juſt mentioned, and which bears from them S. W. by W. for this reaſon I have named it MOUNT WARNING. It lies ſeven or eight leagues inland, in latitude 28° 22′ S. The land about it is high and hilly, but it is of itſelf ſufficiently conſpicuous to be at once diſtinguiſhed from every other object. The point off which theſe ſhoals lie, I have named POINT DANGER. To the northward of this point the land is low, and trends N. W. by N. but it ſoons turns again more to the northward.

1770. May.

At noon we were about two leagues from the land, and by obſervation, in latitude 27° 46′ S. which was ſeventeen miles to the ſouthward of the log; our lon-

1770. May. gitude was 206° 26′ W. Mount Warning bore S. 26 W. diſtant fourteen leagues, and the northernmoſt land in ſight bore N. We purſued our courſe along the ſhore, at the diſtance of about two leagues, in the direction of N. ¾ E. till between four and five in the afternoon, when we diſcovered breakers on our larboard bow. Our depth of water was thirty-ſeven fathoms and at ſun-ſet the northernmoſt land bore N. by W. the breakers N. W. by W. diſtant four miles, and the northernmoſt land ſet at noon, which formed a point and to which I gave the name of POINT LOOK-OUT W. diſtant four miles, in the latitude of 27° 6′. On the north ſide of this Point the ſhore forms a wide open bay, which I called MORETON's BAY, in the bottom of which the land is ſo low that I could but juſt ſee it from the top-maſt head. The breakers lie between three and four miles from Point Look-out; and at this time we had a great ſea from the ſouthward, which broke upon them very high. We ſtood on N. N. E. till eight o'clock, when having paſſed the breakers, and deepened our water to fifty-two fathoms, we brought to till midnight when we made ſail again to the N. N. E.

Thurſ. 17. At four in the morning we had 135 fathoms, and when the day broke, I perceived that during the night I had got much farther northward, and from the ſhore, than I expected from the courſe we ſteered, for we were diſtant at leaſt ſeven leagues; I therefore hauled in N. W by W. with a freſh gale at S. S. W. The land that was fartheſt to the north the night before, now bore S. S. W. diſtant about ſix leagues, and I gave it the name of CAPE MORETON, it being the north point of Moreton's Bay: its latitude is 26° 56′ and its longitude is 206° 28′. From Cape Moreton the land trends away weſt, farther than can be ſeen, for there is a ſmall ſpace, where at this time no land is viſible, and ſome on board having alſo obſerved that the ſea looked paler than uſual, were of opinion that the bottom of Moreton Bay opened into a river: we had here thirty-four fathoms water, and a fine ſandy bottom: this alone would have produced the change that had been obſerved in the colour of the water; and it was by no means neceſſary to ſuppoſe a river to account for the land at the bottom of the Bay not being viſible; for ſuppoſing the land

here to be as low as we knew it to be in a hundred other parts of the coaſt, it would have been impoſſible to ſee it from the ſtation of the ſhip; however, if any future navigator ſhould be diſpoſed to determine the queſtion, whether there is or is not a river in this place, which the wind would not permit us to do, the ſituation may always be found by three hills which lie to the northward of it, in the latitude of 26° 53′. Theſe hills are but a little inland, and not far from each other: they are remarkable for the ſingular form of their elevation, which very much reſembles a glaſs-houſe, and for which reaſon I called them the GLASS HOUSES: the northernmoſt of the three is the higheſt and largeſt: there are alſo ſeveral other peaked hills inland to the northward of theſe, but they are not nearly ſo remarkable. At noon our latitude was, by obſervation, 26° 7′ S. which was ten miles to the northward of the log, a circumſtance which had never before happened upon this coaſt; our longitude was 206° 46′. At this time we were between two and three leagues from the land, and had twenty-four fathoms water. A low bluff point, which was the ſouth head of a ſandy bay, bore N. 62 W. diſtant three leagues, and the northernmoſt point of land in ſight bore N. ¼ E. This day we ſaw ſmoke in ſeveral places, and ſome at a conſiderable diſtance inland. In ſteering along the ſhore at the diſtance of two leagues, our ſoundings were from twenty-four to thirty-two fathoms, with a ſandy bottom. At ſix in the even-ing, the northernmoſt point of land bore N. ¼ W: diſtant four leagues; at ten it bore N. W. by W. ½ W. and as we had ſeen no land to the northward of it, we ſteered to, not well knowing which way to ſteer.

1770. May.

At two in the morning, however, we made ſail with a wind at S. W. and at day-light we ſaw the land extending as far as N. ¼ E. the point we had ſet the night before S. W. by W. diſtant between three and four leagues. It lies in latitude 25° 58′, longitude 206° 30′ W. the land within it is of a moderate and equal height, but the point itſelf is ſo unequal, that it looks like two ſmall iſlands lying under the land, for which reaſon I gave it the name of DOUBLE ISLAND POINT; it may alſo be known by the white cliffs on the north ſide of it. Here the land trends to the N. W. and

Friday 18.

1770. May. forms a large open bay, the bottom of which is ſo low a flat, that from the deck it could ſcarcely be ſeen. In croſſing this bay, our depth of water was from thirty to twenty-two fathoms, with a white ſandy bottom. At noon we were about three leagues from the ſhore, in latitude 25° 34′ S. longitude 206° 45′ W. Double Iſland Point bore S. ¾ W. and the northernmoſt land in ſight N. ¾ E. This part of the coaſt, which is of a moderate height, is more barren than any we had ſeen, and the ſoil more ſandy. With our glaſſes we could diſcover that the ſands, which lay in great patches of many acres, were moveable, and that ſome of them had not been long in the place they poſſeſſed; for we ſaw, in ſeveral parts, trees half buried, the tops of which were ſtill green; and in others, the naked trunks of ſuch as the ſand had ſurrounded long enough to deſtroy. In other places the woods appeared to be low and ſhrubby, and we ſaw no ſigns of inhabitants. Two water ſnakes ſwam by the ſhip; they were beautifully ſpotted, and in every reſpect like land ſnakes, except that their tails were broad and flat, probably to ſerve them inſtead of fins in ſwimming. In the morning of this day the variation was 8° 20′ E. and in the evening 8° 36′. During the night we continued our courſe to the northward with a light breeze from the land, being diſtant from it between two and three leagues, and having from twenty-three to twenty-ſeven fathoms, with a fine ſandy bottom.

Saturd. 19. At noon on the 19th, we were about four miles from the land, with only thirteen fathoms. Our latitude was 25° 4′, and the northernmoſt land in ſight bore N. 21 W. diſtant eight miles. At one o'clock, being ſtill four miles diſtant from the ſhore, but having ſeventeen fathoms water, we paſſed a black bluff head, or point of land, upon which a great number of the natives were aſſembled, and which therefore I called Indians Head: it lies in latitude 25° 3′. About four miles N. by W. of this Head, is another very like it, from whence the land trends away ſomewhat more to the weſtward: next to the ſea it is low and ſandy, and behind it nothing was to be ſeen, even from the ma-

head. Near Indian Head we ſaw more of the natives, and upon the neighbouring ſhore fires by night, and ſmoke by day. We kept to the northward all night, at the diſtance of from four miles to four leagues from the ſhore, and with a depth of water from ſeventeen to thirty-four fathoms. At day-break, the northernmoſt land bore from us W. S. W. and ſeemed to end in a point, from which we diſcovered a reef running out to the northward, as far as we could ſee. We had hauled our wind to the weſtward before it was light, and continued the courſe till we ſaw the breakers upon our lee bow. We now edged away N. W. and N. N. W. along the eaſt ſide of the ſhoal, from two to one mile diſtant, having regular ſoundings from thirteen to ſeven fathoms, with a fine ſandy bottom. At noon our latitude, by obſervation, was 20° 26′, which was thirteen miles to the northward of the log. We judged the extreme point of the ſhoal to bear from us about N. W. and the point from which it ſeemed to run out bore S. ¾ W. diſtant twenty miles. This point I named SANDY CAPE, from two very large patches of white ſand which lay upon it. It is ſufficiently high to be ſeen at the diſtance of twelve leagues, in clear weather, and lies in latitude 24° 45′, longitude 206° 51′; the land trends from it S. W. as far as can be ſeen. We kept along the eaſt ſide of the ſhoal till two in the afternoon, when, judging that there was a ſufficient depth of water upon it to allow paſſage for the ſhip, I ſent the boat a-head to ſound, and upon her making the ſignal for more than five fathoms, we hauled our wind, and ſtood over the tail of it, in ſix fathoms. At this time we were in latitude 24° 22′, and Sandy Cove bore S. ½ E. diſtant eight leagues; but the direction of the ſhoal is neareſt N. N. W. and S. S. E. It is remarkable, that when on board the ſhip we had ſix fathoms, the boat, which was ſcarcely a quarter of a mile to the ſouthward, had little more than five, and that immediately after ſix fathoms we had thirteen, and then twenty, as faſt as the man could caſt the lead; from theſe circumſtances, I conjectured that the weſt ſide of the ſhoal was ſteep. This ſhoal I called the BREAK SEA SPIT, becauſe we had now ſmooth water, and to the ſouthward of it we had always a high ſea from the

1770. May. Sunday 20.

1770. May. S. E. At ſix in the evening the land of Sandy Cape ex-
tended from S. 17 E. to S. 27 E. at the diſtance of eigh
leagues; our depth of water was twenty-three fathom
with the ſame ſoundings we ſtood to the weſtward a
Monday 21. night. At ſeven in the morning we ſaw, from the maſt
head, the land of Sandy Cape bearing S. E. ½ E. diſtan
about thirteen leagues. At nine we diſcovered land t
the weſtward, and ſoon after ſaw ſmoke in ſeveral place
Our depth of water was now decreaſed to ſeventee
fathoms, and by noon we had no more than thirteen
though we were ſeven leagues from the land, whic
extended from S. by W. to W. N. W. Our latitud
at this time was 24° 28′ S. For a few days paſt w
had ſeen ſeveral of the ſea birds called boobies, no
having met with any of them before. Laſt nigh
a ſmall flock of them paſſed the ſhip, and went awa
to the N. W. and in the morning, from about half a
hour before ſun-riſe, to half an hour after, flights o
them were continually coming from the N. N. W. an
flying to the S. S. E. nor was one of them ſeen to fly i
any other direction; we therefore conjectured that the
was a lagoon, river, or inlet of ſhallow water, in th
bottom of the deep bay, to the ſouthward of us, wh
ther theſe birds reſorted to feed in the day; and tha
not far to the northward, there were ſome iſlands
which they repaired in the night. To this bay I ga
the name of HERVEY'S BAY, in honour of Captai
Hervey. In the afternoon we ſtood in for the lan
ſteering S. W. with a gentle breeze at S. E. till fo
o'clock, when, being in latitude 24° 36′, about tw
leagues from the ſhore, and having nine fathoms wate
we bore away along the coaſt N. W. by W. and at th
ſame time could ſee land extending to the S. S. E. abo
eight leagues. Near the ſea, the land is very low, b
within there are ſome lofty hills, all thickly cloath
with wood. While we were running along the ſhor
we ſhallowed our water from nine to ſeven fathom
and at one time we had but ſix, which determined us
anchor for the night.

Tueſday 22. At ſix in the morning we weighed, with a gen
breeze from the ſouthward, and ſteered N. W. ¾ W
edging in for the land till we got within two miles

, with water from ſeven to eleven fathoms. We then 1770. May.
eered N. N. W. as the land lay, and at noon our lati-
ude was 24° 19′. We continued in the ſame courſe,
the ſame diſtance, with from twelve fathoms to ſeven,
ll five in the evening, when we were a-breaſt of the
outh point of a large open bay, in which I intended to
nchor. During this courſe we diſcovered, with our
laſſes, that the land was covered with palm-nut-trees,
hich we had not ſeen from the time of our leaving the
lands within the tropic. We alſo ſaw two men walk-
g along the ſhore, who did not condeſcend to take the
aſt notice of us. In the evening, having hauled cloſe
pon a wind, and made two or three trips, we anchor-
d about eight o'clock in five fathoms, with a fine ſandy
ottom. The ſouth point of the bay bore E. ¾ S. diſtant
wo miles, the north point N. W. ¼ N. and about the
me diſtance from the ſhore.

Early the next morning I went a-ſhore, with a party Wedn. 23.
f men, in order to examine the country, accompanied
y Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, the other gentlemen, and
upia: the wind blew freſh, and we found it ſo cold,
at, being at ſome diſtance from the ſhore, we took
ur clokes, as a neceſſary equipment for the voyage.
We landed a little within the ſouth point of the bay,
here we found a channel leading into a large lagoon:
his channel I proceeded to examine, and found three
athoms water till I got about a mile up it, where I met
ith a ſhoal, upon which there was little more than one
athom, but having paſſed over it, I had three fathoms
gain. The entrance of this channel lies cloſe to the
outh point of the bay, being formed by the ſhore on
he eaſt, and on the weſt by a large ſpit of ſand; it is
bout a quarter of a mile broad, and lies in S. by W.
n this place there is room for a few ſhips to lie in great
ecurity, and a ſmall ſtream of freſh water: I would
ave rowed into the lagoon, but was prevented by
hallows. We found ſeveral bogs, and ſwamps of ſalt
ater, upon which, and by the ſides of the lagoon,
rows the true mangrove, ſuch as is found in the Weſt
ndies, and the firſt of the kind that we had met with.
n the branches of theſe mangroves there were many
neſts of a remarkable kind of ant, that was as green as

1770. May. graſs: when the branches were diſturbed they came out in great numbers, and puniſhed the offender by a much ſharper bite than ever we had felt from the ſame kind of animal before. Upon theſe mangroves alſo we ſaw ſmall green caterpillars in great numbers; their bodies were thick ſet with hairs, and they were ranged upon the leaves, ſide by ſide, like a file of ſoldiers, to the number of twenty or thirty together: when we touched them, we found that the hair on their bodies had the quality of a nettle, and gave us a much more acute though leſs durable pain. The country here is manifeſtly worſe than about Botany Bay; the ſoil is dry and ſandy, but the ſides of the hills are covered with trees, which grow ſeparately, without underwood. We found here the tree that yields a gum like the ſanguis draconis; but it is ſomewhat different from the trees of the ſame kind which we had ſeen before, for the leaves are longer, and hang down like thoſe of the weeping willow. We found alſo much leſs gum upon them, which is contrary to the eſtabliſhed opinion, that the hotter the climate, the more gums exude. Upon a plant alſo, which yielded a yellow gum, there was leſs than upon the ſame kind of plant in Botany Bay. Among the ſhoals and ſand-banks we ſaw many large birds, ſome in particular of the ſame kind that we had ſeen in Botany Bay, much bigger than ſwans, which we judged to be pelicans; but they were ſo ſhy that we could not get within gun-ſhot of them. Upon the ſhore we ſaw a ſpecies of the buſtard, one of which we ſhot, it was as large as a turkey, and weighed ſeventeen pounds and an half. We all agreed that this was the beſt bird we had eaten ſince we left England, and in honour of it we called this inlet BUSTARD BAY. It lies in latitude 24° 4′, longitude 208° 18′. The ſea ſeemed to abound with fiſh; but unhappily, we tore our ſeine all to pieces at the firſt haul. Upon the mud-banks, under the mangroves, we found innumerable oyſters of various kinds; among others the hammer oyſter, and a large proportion of ſmall pearl oyſters; if in deeper water there is equal plenty of ſuch oyſters at their full growth, a pearl fiſhery might certainly be eſtabliſhed here to very great advantage.

The

The people who were left on board the ſhip ſaid, that while we were in the woods about twenty of the natives came down to the beach, a-breaſt of her, and having looked at her ſome time, went away; but we that were a-ſhore, though we ſaw ſmoke in many places, ſaw no people: the ſmoke was at places too diſtant for us to get to them by land, except one, to which we repaired: we found ten ſmall fires burning within a few paces of each other; but the people were gone: we ſaw near them ſeveral veſſels of bark, which we ſuppoſed to have contained water, and ſome ſhells and fiſh-bones, the remains of a recent meal. We ſaw alſo, lying upon the ground, ſeveral pieces of ſoft bark, about the length and breadth of a man, which we imagined might be their beds; and, on the windward ſide of the fires, a ſmall ſhade about a foot and a half high, of the ſame ſubſtance. The whole was in a thicket of cloſe trees, which afforded good ſhelter from the wind. The place ſeemed to be much trodden, and as we ſaw no houſe, nor any remains of a houſe, we were inclined to believe that as theſe people had no cloaths, they had no dwelling; but ſpent their nights, among the other commoners of Nature, in the open air: and Tupia himſelf, with an air of ſuperiority and compaſſion, ſhook his head, and ſaid that they were Taata Enos, 'poor wretches.' I meaſured the perpendicular height of the laſt tide, and found it to be eight feet above low-water mark, and from the time of low-water this day, I found that it muſt be high-water at the full and change of the moon at eight o'clock. 1770. May.

At four o'clock in the morning we weighed, and with a gentle breeze at ſouth made ſail out of the bay. In ſtanding out our ſoundings were from five to fifteen fathoms; and at day-light, when we were in the greateſt depth, and a-breaſt of the north head of the bay, we diſcovered breakers ſtretching out from it N. N. E. between two and three miles, with a rock at the outermoſt point of them, juſt above water. While we were paſſing theſe rocks, at the diſtance of about half a mile, we had from fifteen to twenty fathoms, and as ſoon as we had paſſed them, we hauled along ſhore W. N. W. for the fartheſt land we had in ſight. At noon Thurſd. 24.

our

1770. May. our latitude by obſervation was 23° 52′ S. the north part of Buſtard Bay bore S. 62 E. diſtant ten miles; and the northermoſt land in ſight N. 60 W. the longitude was 208° 37′, and our diſtance from the ſhore ſix miles, with fourteen fathoms water.

Till five in the afternoon it was calm, but afterwards we ſteered before the wind N. W. as the land lay till ten at night, and then brought to, having had all along

Friday 25. fourteen and fifteen fathoms. At five in the morning we made ſail; and at day-light the northernmoſt point of the main bore N. 70 W. Soon after we ſaw more land, making like iſlands, and bearing N. W. by N. At nine, we were a-breaſt of the point, at the diſtance of one mile, with fourteen fathoms water. This point I found to lie directly under the tropic of Capricorn, and for that reaſon I called it CAPE CAPRICORN: its longitude is 208° 58′ W. it is of a conſiderable height, looks white and barren, and may be known by ſome iſlands which lie to the N. W. of it, and ſome ſmall rocks at the diſtance of about a league S. E. On the weſt ſide of the Cape there appeared to be a lagoon, and on the two ſpits which formed the entrance we ſaw an incredible number of the large birds that reſemble a pelican. The northernmoſt land now in ſight bore from Cape Capricorn N. 24 W. and appeared to be an iſland; but the main land trended W. by N. ½ N. which courſe we ſteered, having from fifteen to ſix fathoms, and from ſix to nine, with a hard ſandy bottom. At noon, our latitude by obſervation was 23° 24′. Cape Capricorn bore S. 60 E. diſtant two leagues; and a ſmall iſland N. by E. two miles: in this ſituation we had nine fathoms, being about four miles from the main, which, next the ſea, is low and ſandy, except the points which are high and rocky. The country in land is hilly, but by no means of a pleaſing aſpect. We continued to ſtand to the N. W. till four o'clock in the afternoon, when it fell calm; and we ſoon after anchored in twelve fathoms, having the main land and iſlands in a manner all round us, and Cape Capricorn bearing S. 54 E. diſtant four leagues. In the night we found the riſe and fall near ſeven feet; and the flood ſet to the weſtward, and the ebb to the eaſtward, which

is juſt contrary to what we found when we were at anchor to the eaſtward of Buſtard Bay. 1770. May.

At ſix in the morning we weighed, with a gentle breeze at ſouth, and ſtood away to the N. W. between the outermoſt range of iſlands and the main, leaving ſeveral ſmall iſlands between the main and the ſhip, which we paſſed at a very little diſtance: our ſoundings being irregular, from twelve to four fathoms, I ſent a boat a-head to ſound. At noon we were about three miles from the main, and about the ſame diſtance from the iſlands without us: our latitude by obſervation was 23° 7′ S. the main land here is high and mountainous; the iſlands which lie off it are alſo moſt of them high, and of a ſmall circuit, having an appearance rather of barrenneſs than fertility. At this time we ſaw ſmoke in many places at a conſiderable diſtance inland, and therefore conjectured that there might be a lagoon, river, or inlet running up the country, the rather, as we had paſſed two places which had the appearance of being ſuch; but our depth of water was too little to encourage me to venture where I ſhould probably have leſs. We had not ſtood to the northward above an hour, before we ſuddenly fell into three fathoms; upon which I anchored, and ſent away the Maſter to ſound the channel which lay to the leeward of us, between the northermoſt iſland and the main: it appeared to be pretty broad, but I ſuſpected that it was ſhallow, and ſo indeed it was found; for the Maſter reported at his return that in many places he had only two fathoms and an half, and where we lay at anchor we had only ſixteen feet, which was not two feet more than the ſhip drew. While the Maſter was ſounding the channel, Mr. Banks tried to fiſh from the cabin windows with hook and line: the water was too ſhallow for fiſh; but the ground was almoſt covered with crabs, which readily took the bait, and ſometimes held it ſo faſt in their claws, that they did not quit their hold till they were conſiderably above water. Theſe crabs were of two ſorts, and both of them ſuch as we had not ſeen before: one of them was adorned with the fineſt blue that can be imagined, in every reſpect equal to the ultramarine, with which all his claws, and every joint was deeply tinged: the under part of him was white, and Saturd. 26.

1770. May. and ſo exquiſitely poliſhed, that in colour and brightneſs it exactly reſembled the white of old china: the other was alſo marked with the ultramarine upon his joints, and his toes, but ſomewhat more ſparingly; and his back was marked with three brown ſpots which had a ſingular appearance. The people who had been out with the boat to ſound, reported, that upon an iſland where we had obſerved two fires, they had ſeen ſeveral of the inhabitants, who called to them, and ſeemed very deſirous that they ſhould land. In the evening the wind veered to E. N. E. which gave us an opportunity to ſtretch three or four miles back by the way we came; after which, the wind ſhifted to the ſouth, and obliged us again to anchor in ſix fathoms.

Sunday 27. At five in the morning I ſent away the Maſter to ſearch for a paſſage between the iſlands, while we got the ſhip under ſail; and as ſoon as it was light we followed the boat, which made a ſignal that a paſſage had been found. As ſoon as we got again into the deep water, we made ſail to the northward, as the land lay, with ſoundings from nine fathoms to fifteen, and ſome ſmall iſlands ſtill without us. At noon we were about two leagues diſtant from the main; and by obſervation in latitude 22° 53′ S. The northernmoſt point of land in ſight now bore N. N. W. diſtant ten miles. To this point I gave the name of CAPE MANIFOLD, from the number of high hills which appeared over it: it lies in latitude 22° 43′ S. and diſtant about ſeventeen leagues from Cape Capricorn, in the direction of N. 26 W. Between theſe Capes the ſhore forms a large bay, which I called KEPPEL BAY; and I alſo diſtinguiſhed the iſlands by the name of KEPPEL's ISLANDS. In this bay there is good anchorage; but what refreſhments it may afford, I know not: we caught no fiſh, though we were at anchor; but probably there is freſh water in ſeveral places, as both the iſlands and the main are inhabited. We ſaw ſmoke and fires upon the main; and upon the iſlands we ſaw people. At three in the afternoon we paſſed Cape Manifold, from which the land trends N. N. W. The land of the Cape is high, riſing in hills directly from the ſea; and may be known by three iſlands which lie off it, one of them near the ſhore, and the other two eight miles out

at ſea. One of theſe iſlands is low and flat, and the other high and round. At ſix o'clock in the evening we brought to, when the northernmoſt part of the main in ſight bore N. W. and ſome iſlands which lie off it N. 31 W. Our ſoundings after twelve o'clock were from twenty to twenty-five fathoms, and in the night from thirty to thirty-four. 1770. May.

At day-break we made ſail, Cape Manifold bearing S. by E. diſtant eight leagues, and the iſlands which I had ſet the night before were diſtant four miles in the ſame direction. The fartheſt viſible point of the main bore N. 67 W. at the diſtance of twenty-two miles; but we could ſee ſeveral iſlands to the northward of this direction. At nine o'clock in the afternoon we were a-breaſt of the point which I called CAPE TOWNSHEND. It lies in latitude 22° 15′; longitude 209° 43′: the land is high and level, and rather naked than woody. Several iſlands lie to the northward of it, at the diſtance of four or five miles out at ſea; three or four leagues to the S. E. the ſhore forms a bay, in the bottom of which there appeared to be an inlet or harbour. To the weſtward of the Cape the land trends S. W. ½ S. and there forms a very large bay, which turns to the eaſtward, and probably communicates with the inlet, and makes the land of the Cape an iſland. As ſoon as we got round this Cape, we hauled our wind to the weſtward, in order to get within the iſlands, which lie ſcattered in the bay in great numbers, and extend out to ſea as far as the eye could reach even from the maſt-head: theſe iſlands vary both in height and circuit from each other; ſo that, although they are very numerous, no two of them are alike. We had not ſtood long upon a wind before we came into ſhoal water, and were obliged to tack at once to avoid it. Having ſent a boat a-head, I bore away W. by N. many ſmall iſlands, rocks, and ſhoals, lying between us and the main, and many of a larger extent without us: our ſoundings till near noon were from fourteen to ſeventeen fathoms, when the boat made the ſignal for meeting with ſhoal water: upon this we hauled cloſe upon a wind to the eaſtward, but ſuddenly fell into three fathoms and a quarter; we immediately dropped an anchor, which brought the ſhip Monday 28.

up

1770. May. up with all her ſails ſtanding. When the ſhip was brought up we had four fathoms, with a coarſe ſandy bottom, and found a ſtrong tide ſetting to the N. W. by W. ½ W. at the rate of near three miles an hour, by which we were ſo ſuddenly carried upon the ſhoal. Our latitude by obſervation was 22° 8′ S. Cape Townſhend bore E. 16 S. diſtant thirteen miles; and the weſternmoſt part of the main in ſight W. ¾ N. At this time a great number of iſlands lay all round us.

In the afternoon, having ſounded round the ſhip, and found that there was water ſufficient to carry her over the ſhoal, we weighed, and about three o'clock made ſail and ſtood to the weſtward, as the land lay, having ſent a boat a-head to ſound. At ſix in the evening we anchored in ten fathoms, with a ſandy bottom, about two miles diſtance from the main; the weſternmoſt part of which bore W. N. W. and a great number of iſlands, lying a long way without us, were ſtill in ſight.

Tueſday 29. At five o'clock the next morning I ſent away the Maſter with two boats to ſound the entrance of an inlet which bore from us weſt, at about the diſtance of a league, into which I intended to go with the ſhip, that I might wait a few days till the moon ſhould increaſe, and in the mean time examine the country. As ſoon as the ſhip could be got under ſail, the boats made the ſignal for anchorage; upon which we ſtood in, and anchored in five fathoms water, about a league within the entrance of the inlet; which, as I obſerved a tide to flow and ebb conſiderably, I judged to be a river that ran up the country to a conſiderable diſtance. In this place I had thoughts of laying the ſhip a-ſhore, and cleaning her bottom; I therefore landed with the Maſter in ſearch of a convenient place for that purpoſe, and was accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander. We found walking here exceedingly troubleſome, for the ground was covered with a kind of graſs, the ſeeds of which were very ſharp and bearded backwards; ſo that whenever they ſtuck into our clothes, which indeed was at every ſtep, they worked forwards by means of the beard, till they got at the fleſh; and at the ſame time we were ſurrounded by a cloud of muſquitos, which inceſſantly tormented us with their ſtings.

We

We ſoon met with ſeveral places where the ſhip might conveniently be laid a-ſhore; but to our great diſappointment, we could find no freſh water. We proceeded, however, up the country, where we found gum trees, like thoſe that we had ſeen before, and obſerved, that here alſo the gum was in very ſmall quantities. Upon the branches of theſe trees, and ſome others, we found ants neſts made of clay, as big as a buſhel; ſomething like thoſe deſcribed in Sir Hans Sloan's Natural Hiſtory of Jamaica, vol. ii. p. 221. tab. 258, but not ſo ſmooth: the ants which inhabited theſe neſts were ſmall, and their bodies white; but upon another ſpecies of the tree we found a ſmall black ant, which perforated all the twigs, and having worked out the pith, occupied the pipe which had contained it; but the parts in which theſe inſects had thus formed a lodgment, and in which they ſwarmed in amazing numbers, bore leaves and flowers, and appeared to be as flouriſhing a ſtate as thoſe that were ſound. We found alſo an incredible number of butterflies, ſo that for the ſpace of three or four acres the air was ſo crowded with them, that millions were to be ſeen in every direction, at the ſame time that every branch and twig was covered with others that were not upon the wing. We found here alſo a ſmall fiſh of a ſingular kind; it was about the ſize of a minnow, and had two very ſtrong breaſt-fins: we found it in places that were quite dry, where we ſuppoſed it might have been left by the tide; but it did not ſeem to have become diſguid by the want of water, for upon our approach it leaped away, by the help of the breaſt-fins, as nimbly as a frog: neither indeed did it ſeem to prefer water to land; for when we found it in the water, it frequently leaped out, and purſued its way upon dry ground. We alſo obſerved, that when it was in places where ſmall ſtones were ſtanding above the ſurface of the water, at a little diſtance from each other, it choſe rather to leap from ſtone to ſtone, than to paſs through the water; and we ſaw ſeveral of them paſs entirely over puddles in this manner, till they came to dry ground, and then leap away.

1770. May.

In the afternoon we renewed our ſearch after freſh water, but without ſucceſs, and therefore I determined to

1770. May. to make my ſtay here but ſhort; however, having ob-
ſerved from an eminence, that the inlet penetrated
conſiderable way into the country, I determined to trac
it in the morning.

Wedneſ. 30. At ſun-riſe I went a-ſhore, and climbing a conſide-
rable hill, I took a view of the coaſt, and the iſland
that lie off it, with their bearings, having an azimut
compaſs with me for that purpoſe; but I obſerved, tha
the needle differed very conſiderably in its poſitio
even to thirty degrees, in ſome places more, in othe
leſs; and once I found it differ from itſelf no leſs tha
two points in the diſtance of fourteen feet. I took u
ſome of the looſe ſtones that lay upon the ground, an
applied them to the needle, but they produced no e
fect; and I therefore concluded that there was iron o
in the hills, of which I had remarked other indicatio
both here and in the neighbouring parts. After I ha
made my obſervations upon the hill, I proceeded wi
Dr. Solander up the inlet; I ſet out with the firſt
the flood, and long before high water I had advanc
above eight leagues. Its breadth thus far was from tw
to five miles, upon a S. W. by S. direction; but he
it opened every way, and formed a large lake, whi
to the N. W. communicated with the ſea; and I n
only ſaw the ſea in this direction, but found the tide
flood coming ſtrongly in from that point; I alſo o
ſerved an arm of this lake extending to the eaſtwar
and it is not improbable that it may communica
with the ſea in the bottom of the bay, which lies
the weſtward of Cape Townſhend. On the ſouth ſi
of the lake is a ridge of high hills, which I was ve
deſirous to climb; but it being high-water, and t
day far ſpent, I was afraid of being bewildered amo
the ſhoals in the night, eſpecially as the weather w
dark and rainy, and therefore I made the beſt of m
way to the ſhip. In this excurſion I ſaw only tw
people, and they were at a diſtance; they follow
the boat along the ſhore a good way, but the ti
running ſtrongly in my favour, I could not prudent
wait for them: I ſaw, however, ſeveral fires in o
direction, and ſmoke in another, but they alſo were
a diſtance. While I was tracing the inlet with D
Solander, Mr. Banks was endeavouring to penetra
in

into the country, where ſeveral of the people, who had leave to go a-ſhore, were alſo rambling about. Mr. Banks and his party found their courſe obſtructed by a ſwamp covered with mangroves, which, however, they reſolved to paſs; the mud was almoſt knee deep, yet they reſolutely went on; but before they got half way, they repented of their undertaking. The bottom was covered with branches of trees interwoven with each other; ſometimes they kept their footing upon them, ſometimes their feet ſlipped through, and ſometimes they were ſo entangled among them, that they were forced to free themſelves by groping in the mud and ſlime with their hands. In about an hour, however, they croſſed it, and judged it might be about a quarter of a mile over. After a ſhort walk, they came to a place where there had been four ſmall fires, and near them ſome ſhells and bones of fiſh that had been roaſted; they found alſo heaps of graſs laid together, where four or five people appeared to have ſlept. The Second Lieutenant, Mr. Gore, who was at another place, ſaw a little water lying in the bottom of a gully, and near it the track of a large animal: ſome buſtards were alſo ſeen, but none of them ſhot, nor any other bird except a few of the beautiful loriquets, which we had ſeen in Botany Bay. Mr. Gore, and one of the Midſhipmen, who were in different places, ſaid, that they had heard the voices of Indians near them, but had ſeen none. The country in general appeared ſandy and barren, and being deſtitute of freſh water, it connot be ſuppoſed to have any ſettled inhabitants. The deep gullies, which were worn by torrents from the hills, prove, that at certain ſeaſons the rains here are very copious and heavy.

1770. May.

The inlet in which the ſhip lay I called THIRSTY SOUND, becauſe it afforded us freſh water. It lies in latitude 22° 10′ S. and longitude 210° 18′ W. and may be known by a group of ſmall iſlands lying under the ſhore, from two to five leagues diſtant, in the direction of N. W. and by another group of iſlands that lie right before it, between three and four leagues out at ſea. Over each of the points that form the entrance is a high round hill, which on the N. W. is a peninſula, that at high-water is ſurrounded by the ſea; they

1770. May. are bold to both the ſhores, and the diſtance betwee them is about two miles. In this inlet is good anchor age in ſeven, ſix, five, and four fathoms, and place very convenient for laying a ſhip down, where, a ſpring-tides, the water does not riſe leſs than ſixteen o eighteen feet. The tide flows at the full and change o the moon about eleven o'clock. I have already obſerv ed, that here is no freſh water, nor could we procur refreſhment of any other kind. We ſaw two turtle but we were not able to take either of them; neithe did we catch either fiſh or wild fowl, except a few ſma land birds; we ſaw indeed the ſame ſorts of water fow as in Botany Bay, but they were ſo ſhy that we coul not get a ſhot at them.

As I had not therefore a ſingle inducement to ſta longer in this place, I weighed anchor at ſix o'clock i Thurſd. 31. the morning of Thurſday the 31ſt of May, and put t ſea. We ſtood to the N. W. with a freſh breeze at S. E. and kept without the group of iſlands that lie i ſhore, and to the N. W. of Thirſty Sound, as ther appeared to be no ſafe paſſage between them and th main: at the ſame time we had a number of iſland without us, extending as far as we could ſee. Durin our run in this direction, our depth of water was ten eight, and nine fathoms. At noon the weſt point Thirſty Sound, which I have called PIER HEAD, bor S. 36 E. diſtant five leagues; the eaſt point of the othe inlet, which communicates with the Sound, bore S. b W. diſtant two leagues; the group of iſlands juſt men tioned lay between us and the point, and the farthe part of the main in ſight, on the other ſide of the inle bore N. W. Our latitude, by obſervation, was 21 53′. At half an hour after twelve the boat, whic was ſounding a-head, made the ſignal for ſhoal wate and we immediately hauled our wind to the N. E. A this time we had ſeven fathoms, at the next caſt fiv and at the next three, upon which we inſtantly drop ped an anchor that brought the ſhip up. Pier Hea the north-weſt point of Thirſty Sound, bore S. E. d ſtant ſix leagues, being half way between the iſland which lie off the eaſt point of the weſtern inlet, an three ſmall iſlands which lie directly without them. was now the firſt of the flood, which we found to ſ

N. W

N. W. by W. ½ W. and having ſounded about the ſhoal, upon which we had three fathoms, and found deep water all round it, we got under ſail, and having hauled round the three iſlands that have been juſt mentioned, came to anchor under the lee of them, in fifteen fathoms water; and the weather being dark, hazy, and rainy, we remained there till ſeven o'clock in the morning. At this time we got again under ſail, and ſtood to the N. W. with a freſh breeze at S. S. E. having the main land in ſight, and a number of iſlands all round us, ſome of which lay out at ſea as far as the eye could reach. The weſtern inlet, which in the chart is diſtinguiſhed by the name of Broad Sound, we had now all open; at the entrance it is at leaſt nine or ten leagues wide; in it, and before it, lie ſeveral iſlands, and probably ſhoals alſo, for our ſoundings were very irregular, varying ſuddenly from ten to four fathoms. At noon our latitude, by obſervation, was 21° 29′ S. a point of land which forms the north-weſt entrance into Broad Sound, and which I have named CAPE PALMERSTON, lying in latitude 21° 30′, longitude 210° 54′ W. bore W. by N. diſtant three leagues. Our latitude was 21° 27′, our longitude 210° 57′. Between this Cape and Cape Townſhend lies the bay which I have called the BAY OF INLETS. We continued to ſtand to the N. W. and N. W. by N. as the land lay, under an eaſy ſail, having a boat a-head to ſound. At firſt the ſoundings were very irregular, from nine to four fathoms, but afterwards they were regular from nine to eleven. At eight in the evening, being about two leagues from the main land, we anchored in eleven fathoms, with a ſandy bottom, and ſoon after we found the tide ſetting, with a ſlow motion, to the weſtward. At one o'clock it was ſlack, or law water; and at half an hour after two the ſhip trended to the eaſtward, and rode ſo till ſix in the morning, when the tide had riſen eleven feet. We now got under ſail, and ſtood away, in the direction of the coaſt, N. N. W. From what we had obſerved of the tide during the night, it is plain that the flood came from the N. W. whereas the preceding day, and ſeveral days before, it came from the S. E. nor was this the firſt or even ſecond time that we remarked the ſame thing. At ſun-riſe this morning we found the variation to be 6° 45′ E. and in ſteering along the

1770. June.

Friday 1.

Saturd. 2.

1770. June. shore, between the island and the main, at the distance of about two leagues from the main, and three or four from the island, our soundings were regular from twelve to nine fathoms; but about eleven o'clock in the forenoon we were again embarrassed with shoal water, having at one time not more than three fathoms; yet we got clear, without casting anchor. At noon we were about two leagues from the main, and four from the islands without us. Our latitude, by observation, was 20° 56′, and a high promontory, which I named Cape Hillsborough, bore W. ¼ N. distant seven miles. The land here is diversified by mountains, hills, plains and vallies, and seems to be well clothed with herbage and wood. The islands which lie parallel to the coast and from five to eight or nine miles distant, are of various height and extent, scarcely any of them are more than five leagues in circumference, and many are not four miles: besides this chain of islands, which lies at a distance from the coast, there are others much less, which lie under the land, from which we saw smoke rising in different places. We continued to steer along the shore at the distance of about two leagues, with regular soundings from nine to ten fathoms. At sun-set the farthest part of the main bore N. 48 W. and to the northward of this lay some high land, which I took to be an island, and of which the north-west point bore 41 W. but not being sure of a passage, I came to an anchor about eight o'clock in the evening, in ten fathoms water, with a muddy bottom. About ten we had a tide setting to the northward, and at two it had fallen nine feet; after this it began to rise, and the flood came from the northward, in the direction of the islands which lay out to sea; a plain indication that there was no passage to the N. W. This, however, had not appeared at day-break, when we got under Sunday 3. sail and stood to the N. W. At eight o'clock in the morning we discovered low land, quite across what we took for an opening, which proved to be a bay, about five or six leagues deep; upon this we hauled our wind to the eastward round the north point of the bay, which at this time bore from us N. E. by N. distant four leagues: from this point we found the land trend away N. by W. ½ W. and a streight or passage between

between it and a large iſland, or iſlands, lying parallel to it. Having the tide of ebb in our favour, we ſtood for this paſſage, and at noon were juſt within the entrance; our latitude, by obſervation, was 20° 26′ S. Cape Hillſborough bore S. by E. diſtant ten leagues; and the north point of the bay S. 19 W. diſtant four miles. This point, which I named CAPE CONWAY, lies in latitude 26° 36′ S. longitude 211° 28′ W. and the bay, which lies between this Cape and Cape Hillſborough, I called REPULSE BAY. The greateſt depth of water which we found in it was thirteen fathoms, and the leaſt eight. In all parts there was ſafe anchorage, and I believe that, upon proper examination, ſome good harbours would be found in it, eſpecially at the north ſide within Cape Conway; for juſt within that Cape there lie two or three ſmall iſlands, which alone would ſhelter that ſide of the bay from the ſoutherly and ſouth-eaſterly winds, that ſeem to prevail here as a trade. Among the many iſlands that lie upon this coaſt, there is one more remarkable than the reſt; it is of a ſmall circuit, very high and peaked, and lies E. by S. ten miles from Cape Conway, at the ſouth end of the paſſage. In the afternoon we ſteered through this paſſage, which we found to be from three to ſeven miles broad, and eight or nine leagues in length, N. by W. ½ W. S. by E. ½ E. It is formed by the main on the weſt, and by the iſlands on the eaſt, one of which is at leaſt five leagues in length; our depth of water, in running through, was from twenty to five-and-twenty fathoms, with good anchorage every where; and the whole paſſage may be conſidered as one ſafe harbour, excluſive of the ſmall bays and coves which abound on each ſide, where ſhips might lie as in a baſon. The land both upon the main and the iſlands is high, and diverſified by hill and valley, wood and lawn, with a green and pleaſant appearance. On one of the iſlands we diſcovered, with our glaſſes, two men and a woman, and a canoe with an outrigger, which appeared to be larger, and of a conſtruction very different from thoſe of bark tied together at the ends, which we had ſeen upon other parts of the coaſt; we hoped therefore that the people here had made ſome farther advances beyond mere animal life, than thoſe that we had ſeen

1770. June.

1770. June. before. At ſix o'clock in the evening we were nearly the length of the north end of the paſſage; the north-weſtermoſt point of the main in ſight bore N. 45 W. and the north end of the iſland N. N. E. with an open ſea between the two points. As this paſſage was diſcovered on Whitſunday, I called it WHITSUNDAY'S PASSAGE, and I called the iſlands that form it CUMBERLAND ISLANDS, in honour of his Royal Highneſs the Duke. We kept under an eaſy ſail, with the lead going all night, being at the diſtance of about three leagues from the ſhore, and having from twenty-one Mond. 4. to twenty-three fathoms water. At day-break we were a-breaſt of the point which had been the fartheſt in ſight to the north-weſt the evening before, which I named CAPE GLOUCESTER. It is a lofty promontory, in latitude 19° 59′ S. longitude 211° 49′ W. and may be known by an iſland which lies out at ſea N. by W. ½ W. at the diſtance of five or ſix leagues from it, and which I called HOLBORNE ISLE; there are alſo iſlands lying under the land, between Holborne Iſle and Whitſunday's Paſſage. On the weſt ſide of Cape Glouceſter the land trends away S. W. and S. S. W. and forms a deep bay, the bottom of which I could but juſt ſee from the maſt head; it is very low, and a continuation of the low land which we had ſeen at the bottom of Repulſe Bay. This bay I called EDGCUMBE BAY, but without ſtaying to look into it, we continued our courſe to the weſtward, for the fartheſt land we could ſee in that direction, which bore W. by N. ½ N. and appeared very high. At noon we were about three leagues from the ſhore, by obſervation, in latitude 19° 47′ S. and Cape Glouceſter bore S. 63 E. diſtant ſeven leagues and an half. At ſix in the evening we were a-breaſt of the weſternmoſt point juſt mentioned, at about three miles diſtance; and becauſe it riſes abruptly from the low lands which ſurround it I called it CAPE UPSTART. It lies in latitude 19° 39′ S. longitude 212° 32′ W. fourteen leagues W. N. W. from Cape Glouceſter, and is of a height ſufficient to be ſeen at the diſtance of twelve leagues; inland there are ſome high hills or mountains, which like the cape, afford but a barren proſpect. Having paſſed this cape, we continued ſtanding to the W. N. W.

as the land lay, under an eaſy ſail, having from ſixteen to ten fathoms, till two o'clock in the morning, when we fell into ſeven fathoms, upon which we hauled our wind to the northward, judging ourſelves to be very near land. At day-break we found our conjecture to be true, being within little more than two leagues of it. In this part of the coaſt the land, being very low, is nearer than it appears to be, though it is diverſified with here and there a hill. At noon we were about four leagues from the land in fifteen fathoms water, and our latitude, by obſervation, was 19° 12′ S. Cape Upſtart bearing S. 32° 30′ E. diſtant twelve leagues. About this time ſome very large columns of ſmoke were ſeen riſing from the low lands. At ſun-ſet, the preceding night, when we were cloſe under Cape Upſtart, the variation was nearly 9° E. and at ſun-riſe this day it was no more than 5° 35′; I judged therefore that it had been influenced by iron ore, or other magnetical matter, contained under the ſurface of the earth. 1770. June. Tueſday 5.

We continued to ſteer W. N. W. as the land lay, with twelve or fourteen fathoms water, till noon on the 6th, when our latitude, by obſervation, was 19° 1′ S. and we had the mouth of a bay all open, extending from S. ½ W. to S. W. ½ S. diſtant two leagues. This bay, which I named CLEVELAND BAY, appeared to be about five or ſix miles in extent every way; the eaſt point I named CAPE CLEVELAND, and the weſt, which had the appearance of an iſland, MAGNETICAL ISLE, as we perceived that the compaſs did not traverſe well when we were near it; they are both high, and ſo is the main land within them, the whole forming a ſurface the moſt rugged, rocky, and barren of any we had ſeen upon the coaſt; it was not, however, without inhabitants, for we ſaw ſmoke in ſeveral parts of the bottom of the bay. The northernmoſt land that was in ſight at this time bore N. W. and it had the appearance of an iſland, for we could not trace the main land farther than W. by N. We ſteered W. N. W. keeping the main land on board, the outermoſt part of which, at ſun-ſet, bore W. by N. but without it lay high land, which we judged not to be part of it. Wedneſd. 6.

1770. June. Thurſd. 7. At day-break we were a-breaſt of the eaſtern part o this land, which we found to be a group of iſlands, ly ing about five leagues from the main. At this time being between the two ſhores, we advanced ſlowly t the N. W. till noon, when our latitude, by obſervation was 18° 49′ S. and our diſtance from the main abou five leagues: the north-weſt part of it bore from u N. by W. ½ W. the iſlands extending from N. to E and the neareſt being diſtant about two miles: Cap Cleveland bore S. 50 E. diſtant eighteen leagues. Ou ſoundings, in the courſe that we had ſailed between thi time and the preceding noon, were from fourteen t eleven fathoms.

In the afternoon we ſaw ſeveral large columns o ſmoke upon the main; we ſaw alſo ſome people an canoes; and upon one of the iſlands what had the ap pearance of cocoa-nut-trees. As a few of theſe nut would now have been very acceptable, I ſent Lieute nant Hicks a-ſhore, and with him went Mr. Bank and Dr. Solander, to ſee what refreſhment could b procured, while I kept ſtanding in for the iſland with the ſhip. About ſeven o'clock in the evening they re turned, with an account that what we had taken fo cocoa-nut-trees were a ſmall kind of cabbage-palm and that, except about fourteen or fifteen plants, they had met with nothing worth bringing away. While they were aſhore they ſaw none of the people; but juſt as they had put off one of them came very near the beach, and ſhouted with a loud voice: it was ſo dark that they could not ſee him, however they turned to wards the ſhore, but when he heard the boat putting back he ran away, or hid himſelf, for they could not get a glimpſe of him, and though they ſhouted he made no reply. After the return of the boats, we ſtood away N.

Friday 8. by W. for the northernmoſt land in ſight, of which we were a-breaſt at three o'clock in the morning, having paſſed all the iſlands three or four hours before. This land, on account of its figure, I named POINT HILLOCK: it is of a conſiderable height, and may be known by a round hillock, or rock, which joins to the point, but appears to be detached from it. Between this cape and Magnetical Iſle, the ſhore forms a large bay,

which

which I called HALIFAX BAY: before it lay the group of iſlands which has been juſt mentioned, and ſome others, at a leſs diſtance from the ſhore. By theſe iſlands the Bay is ſheltered from all winds, and it affords good anchorage. The land near the beach in the bottom of the Bay, is low and woody, but farther back it is one continued ridge of high land, which appeared to be barren and rocky. Having paſſed Point Hillock, we continued ſtanding to the N. N. W. as the land trended, having the advantage of a light moon. At ſix, we were a-breaſt of a point of land which lies N. by W. ½ W. diſtant eleven miles from Point Hillock, which I named CAPE SANDWICH. Between theſe two points the land is very high, and the ſurface is craggy and barren. Cape Sandwich may be known not only by the high craggy land over it, but by a ſmall iſland which lies eaſt of it, at the diſtance of a mile, and ſome others that lie about two leagues to the northward. From Cape Sandwich the land trends W. and afterwards N. forming a fine large bay, which I called ROCKINGHAM BAY, where there appears to be good ſhelter, and good anchorage, but I did not ſtay to examine it: I kept the ranging along the ſhore to the northward, for a cluſter of ſmall iſlands, which lie off the northern point of the Bay. Between the three outermoſt of theſe iſlands, and thoſe near the ſhore, I found a channel of about a mile broad, through which I paſſed, and upon one of the neareſt iſlands we ſaw with our glaſſes about thirty of the natives, men, women, and children, all ſtanding together, and looking with great attention at the ſhip, the firſt inſtance of curioſity that we had ſeen among them: they were all ſtark naked, with ſhort hair, and of the ſame complexion with thoſe that we had ſeen before. At noon, our latitude, by obſervation, was 17° 59′, and we were a-breaſt of the north point of Rockingham Bay, which bore from us W. at the diſtance of about two miles. This boundary of the Bay is formed by an iſland of conſiderable height, which in the chart is diſtinguiſhed by the name of HUNK ISLE, and which lies ſo near the ſhore as not to be eaſily diſtinguiſhed from it. Our longitude was 213° 57′ W. Cape Sandwich bore S. by E. ½ E. diſtant nineteen miles, and the northermoſt land in ſight

1770. June.

N.

1770. June. N ½ W. our depth of water for the laſt ten hours ha not been more than ſixteen, nor leſs than ſeven fathom At ſun-ſet the northern extremity of the land bore N 25 W. and we kept our courſe N. by W. along th coaſt, at the diſtance of between three and four league with an eaſy ſail all night, having from twelve to fi teen fathoms water.

Saturday 9. At ſix o'clock in the morning we were a-breaſt ſome ſmall iſlands, which we called FRANKLAND ISLES, and which lie about two leagues diſtant fro the main land. The moſt diſtant point in ſight to th northward bore N. by W. ½ W. and we thought was part of the main, but afterwards found it to be iſland of conſiderable height, and about four miles circuit. Between this iſland and a point on the mai from which it is diſtant about two miles, I paſſed wi the ſhip. At noon, we were in the middle of the cha nel, and by obſervation in the latitude of 16° 57′ with twenty fathoms water. The point on the mai of which we were now a-breaſt, I called CAPE GRA TON: its latitude is 16° 57′ S. and longitude 214° W. and the land here, as well as the whole coaſt, about twenty leagues to the ſouthward, is high, has rocky ſurface, and is thinly covered with wood: duri the night we had ſeen ſeveral fires, and about noon ſo people. Having hauled round Cape Grafton, we fou the land trend away N. W. by W. and three miles the weſtward of the Cape we found a bay, in which anchored about two miles from the ſhore, in four thoms water with an oozy bottom. The eaſt point the bay bore S. 74 E. the weſt point S. 83 W. an low, green, woody iſland, which lies in the offing, 35 E. This iſland, which lies N. by E. ½ E. diſt three or four leagues from Cape Grafton, is called the chart GREEN ISLAND.

As ſoon as the ſhip was brought to an anchor went aſhore, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. lander. As my principal view was to procure ſome fr water, and as the bottom of the bay was low land vered with mangroves, where it was not probable fr water was to be found, I went out towards the Ca and found two ſmall ſtreams, which however w rendered very difficult of acceſs by the ſurf and ro up

upon the ſhore: I ſaw alſo, as I came round the Cape, a ſmall ſtream of water run over the beach, in a ſandy cove, but I did not go in with the boat, becauſe I ſaw that it would not be eaſy to land. When we got a-ſhore, we found the country every where riſing into ſteep rocky hills, and as no freſh water could conveniently be procured, I was unwilling to loſe time by going in ſearch of lower land elſewhere: we therefore made the beſt of our way back to the ſhip, and about midnight we weighed and ſtood to the N. W. having but little wind, with ſome ſhowers of rain. At four in the morning, the breeze freſhened at S. by E. and the weather became fair: we continued ſteering N. N. W. and W. as the land lay, at about three leagues diſtant, with ten, twelve, and fourteen fathoms water. At ten we hauled off north, in order to get without a ſmall low iſland, which lay at about two leagues diſtance from the main, and great part of which at this time, it being high water, was overflowed: about three leagues to the north-weſt of this iſland, cloſe under the main land, is another iſland, the land of which riſes to a greater height, and which at noon bore from us N. 55 W. diſtant ſeven or eight miles. At this time our latitude was 16° 20′ S. Cape Grafton bore S. 29 E. diſtant forty miles, and the northernmoſt point of land in ſight N. 20 W. our depth of water was fifteen fathoms. Between this point and Cape Grafton the ſhore forms a large, but not a very deep bay, which being diſcovered on Trinity Sunday, I called TRINITY BAY.

1770. June. Sund. 10.

CHAP. V.

Dangerous Situation of the Ship in her Courſe from Trinity Bay to Endeavour River.

HITHERTO we had ſafely navigated this dangerous coaſt, where the ſea in all parts conceals ſhoals that ſuddenly project from the ſhore, and rocks that riſe abruptly like a pyramid from the bottom, for an extent of two and twenty degrees of latitude, more than one thouſand three hundred miles; and therefore hitherto none of the names which diſtinguiſh the ſeveral parts

1770. June. parts of the country that we ſaw, are memorials of diſtreſs; but here we became acquainted with misfortune, and we therefore called the point which we had juſt ſeen fartheſt to the northward, CAPE TRIBULATION.

This Cape lies in latitude 16° 6′ S. and longitude 214° 39′ W. We ſteered along the ſhore N. by W. at the diſtance of between three and four leagues, having from fourteen to twelve and ten fathoms water: in the offing we ſaw two iſlands, which lie in latitude 16° S. and about ſix or ſeven leagues from the main. At ſix in the evening, the northernmoſt land in ſight bore N. by W. ½ W. and two low woody iſlands, which ſome of us took to be rocks above water, bore N. ½ W. At this time we ſhortened ſail, and hauled off ſhore E. N. E. and N. E. by E. cloſe upon a wind, for it was my deſign to ſtretch off all night, as well to avoid the danger we ſaw a-head, as to ſee whether any iſlands lay in the offing, eſpecially as we were now near the latitude aſſigned to the iſlands which were diſcovered by Quiros, and which ſome geographers, for what reaſon I know not, have thought fit to join to this land. We had the advantage of a fine breeze, and a clear moonlight night, and in ſtanding off from ſix till near nine o'clock, we deepened our water from fourteen to twenty-one fathoms; but while we were at ſupper it ſuddenly ſhoaled, and we fell into twelve, ten, and eight fathoms, within the ſpace of a few minutes; I immediately ordered every body to their ſtation, and all was ready to put about and come to an anchor, but meeting at the next caſt of the lead with deep water again, we concluded that we had gone over the tail of the ſhoals which we had ſeen at ſun-ſet, and that all danger was paſt: before ten, we had twenty and one and twenty fathoms, and this depth continuing, the gentlemen left the deck in great tranquillity, and went to bed; but a few minutes before eleven, the water ſhallowed at once from twenty to ſeventeen fathoms, and before the lead could be caſt again, the ſhip ſtruck, and remained immoveable, except by the heaving of the ſurge, that beat her againſt the crags of the rock upon which ſhe lay. In a few moments every body was upon the deck, with countenances

tenances which ſufficiently expreſſed the horrors of our ſituation. We had ſtood off the ſhore three hours and a half, with a pleaſant breeze, and therefore knew that we could not be very near it, and we had too much reaſon to conclude that we were upon a rock of coral, which is more fatal than any other, becauſe the points of it are ſharp, and every part of the ſurface ſo rough as to grind away whatever is rubbed againſt it, even with the gentleſt motion. In this ſituation all the ſails were immediately taken in, and the boats hoiſted out to examine the depth of water round the ſhip: we ſoon diſcovered that our fears had not aggravated our misfortune, and that the veſſel had been lifted over a ledge of the rock, and lay in a hollow within it: in ſome places there was from three to four fathoms, and in others not ſo many feet. The ſhip lay with her head to the N. E. and at the diſtance of about thirty yards on the ſtarboard ſide, the water deepened to eight, ten, and twelve fathoms. As ſoon as the long-boat was out, we ſtruck our yards and top-maſts, and carried out the ſtream anchor on the ſtarboard bow, got the coaſting anchor and cable into the boat, and were going to carry it out the ſame way; but upon ſounding a ſecond time round the ſhip, the water was found deepeſt aſtern: the anchor therefore was carried out from the ſtarboard quarter inſtead of the ſtarboard bow, that is, from the ſtern inſtead of the head, and having taken ground, our utmoſt force was applied to the capſtan, hoping that if the anchor did not come home, the ſhip would be got off, but to our great misfortune and diſappointment we could not move her: during all this time ſhe continued to beat with great violence againſt the rock, ſo that it was with the utmoſt difficulty that we kept upon our legs; and to complete the ſcene of diſtreſs, we ſaw, by the light of the moon, the ſheathing boards from the bottom of the veſſel floating away all round her, and at laſt her falſe keel, ſo that every moment was making way for the ſea to ruſh in which was to ſwallow us up. We had now no chance but to lighten her, and we had loſt the opportunity of doing that to the greateſt advantage, for unhappily we went on ſhore juſt at high water, and by this time it had

1770. June.

con-

1770. June. conſiderably fallen, ſo that after ſhe ſhould be lightened ſo as to draw as much leſs water as the water had ſunk we ſhould be but in the ſame ſituation as at firſt; and the only alleviation of this circumſtance was, that as the tide ebbed the ſhip ſettled to the rocks, and was not beaten againſt them with ſo much violence. We had indeed ſome hope from the next tide, but it was doubtful whether ſhe would hold together ſo long, eſpecially as the rock kept grating her bottom under the ſtarboard bow with ſuch force as to be heard in the fore ſtore room. This however was no time to indulge conjecture, nor was any effort remitted in deſpair of ſucceſs that no time might be loſt, the water was immediately ſtarted in the hold, and pumped up; ſix of our guns being all we had upon the deck, our iron and ſtone ballaſt, caſks, hoop ſtaves, oil jars, decayed ſtores, and many other things that lay in the way of heavier materials, were thrown overboard with the utmoſt expedition, every one exerting himſelf with an alacrity almoſt approaching to chearfulneſs, without the leaſt repining or diſcontent; yet the men were ſo far impreſt with a ſenſe of their ſituation, that not an oath was heard among them, the habit of profaneneſs, however ſtrong, being inſtantly ſubdued, by the dread of incurring guilt when death ſeemed to be ſo near.

Monday 11. While we were thus employed, day broke upon us, and we ſaw the land at about eight leagues diſtance without any iſland in the intermediate ſpace, upon which, if the ſhip ſhould have gone to pieces, we might have been ſet a-ſhore by the boats, and from which they might have taken us by different turns into the main: the wind however gradually died away, and early in the forenoon it was a dead calm; if it had blown hard, the ſhip muſt inevitably have been deſtroyed. At eleven in the forenoon we expected high water, and anchors were got out, and every thing made ready for another effort to heave her off if ſhe ſhould float, but to our inexpreſſible ſurprize and concern ſhe did not float by a foot and an half, though we had lightened her near fifty ton, ſo much did the day-tide fall ſhort of that in the night. We now proceeded to lighten her ſtill more, and threw overboa

eve

every thing that it was poſſible for us to ſpare: hitherto ſhe had not admitted much water, but as the tide fell, it ruſhed in ſo faſt, that two pumps, inceſſantly worked, could ſcarcely keep her free. At two o'clock ſhe lay heeling two or three ſtreaks to ſtarboard, and the pinnace, which lay under her bows, touched the ground: we had now no hope but from the tide at midnight, and to prepare for it we carried out our two bower anchors, one on the ſtarboard quarter, and the other right a-ſtern, got the blocks and tackle which were to give us a purchaſe upon the cables in order, and brought the falls, or ends of them, in a-baft, ſtraining them tight, that the next effort might operate upon the ſhip, and by ſhortening the length of the cable between that of the anchors, draw her off the ledge upon which ſhe reſted, towards the deep water. About five o'clock in the afternoon, we obſerved the tide begin to riſe, but we obſerved at the ſame time that the leak increaſed to a moſt alarming degree, ſo that two more pumps were manned, but unhappily only one of them would work: three of the pumps however were kept going, and at nine o'clock the ſhip righted, but the leak had gained upon us ſo conſiderably, that it was imagined ſhe muſt go to the bottom as ſoon as ſhe ceaſed to be ſupported by the rock: this was a dreadful circumſtance, ſo that we anticipated the floating of the ſhip not as an earneſt of deliverance, but as an event that would probably precipitate our deſtruction. We well knew that our boats were not capable of carrying us all on ſhore, and that when the dreadful criſis ſhould arrive, as all command and ſubordination would be at an end, a conteſt for preference would probably enſue, that would increaſe the horrors even of ſhip-wreck, and terminate in the deſtruction of us all by the hands of each other; yet we knew that if any ſhould be left on board to periſh in the waves, they would probably ſuffer leſs upon the whole than thoſe who ſhould get on ſhore, without any laſting or effectual defence againſt the natives, in a country, where even nets and fire-arms would ſcarcely furniſh them with food; and where, if they ſhould find the means of ſubſiſtence, they muſt be condemned to languiſh out the remainder of life in a

1770. June.

deſolate

1770. June. deſolate wilderneſs, without the poſſeſſion, or even hope of any domeſtic comfort, and cut off from all commerce with mankind, except the naked ſavages who prowled the deſert, and who perhaps were ſome of the moſt rude and uncivilized upon the earth.

To thoſe only who have waited in a ſtate of ſuch ſuſpence, death has approached in all his terrors; and as the dreadful moment that was to determine our fate came on, every one ſaw his own ſenſations pictured in the countenances of his companions: however, the capſtan and windlace were manned with as many hands as could be ſpared from the pumps, and the ſhip floating about twenty minutes after ten o'clock the effort was made, and ſhe was heaved into deep water. It was ſome comfort to find that ſhe did not now admit more water than ſhe had done upon the rock; and though, by the gaining of the leak upon the pumps, there was no leſs than three feet nine inches water in the hold, yet the men did not relinquiſh their labour, and we held the water as it were at bay; but having now endured exceſſive fatigue of body and agitation of mind for more than four-and-twenty hours, and having but little hope of ſucceeding at laſt, they began to flag: none of them could work at the pumps more than five or ſix minutes together, and then, being totally exhauſted, they threw themſelves down upon the deck, though a ſtream of water was running over it from the pumps between three and four inches deep; when thoſe who ſucceeded them had worked their ſpell, and were exhauſted in their turn, they threw themſelves down in the ſame manner, and the others ſtarted up again, and renewed their labour; thus relieving each other till an accident was very near putting an end to their efforts at once. The planking which lines the inſide of the ſhip's bottom is called the cieling, and between this, and the outſide planking, there is a ſpace of about eighteen inches: the man who till this time had attended the well to take the depth of water, had taken it only to the cieling, and gave the meaſure accordingly; but he being now relieved, the perſon who came in his ſtead, reckoned the depth to the outſide planking, by which it appeared in a few minutes to have gained upon the pumps eight

een inches, the difference between the planking with- 1770.
ut and within. Upon this, even the braveſt was upon June.
he point of giving up his labour with his hope, and
n a few minutes every thing would have been involved
n all the confuſion of deſpair. But this accident, how-
ver dreadful in its firſt conſequences, was eventually
he cauſe of our preſervation: the miſtake was ſoon
tected, and the ſudden joy which every man felt upon
nding his ſituation better than his fears had ſuggeſted,
erated like a charm, and ſeemed to poſſeſs him with
ſtrong belief that ſcarcely any real danger remained.
ew confidence and new hope, however founded, in-
ired new vigour; and though our ſtate was the ſame
when the men firſt began to ſlacken in their labour,
rough wearineſs and deſpondency, they now renewed
ir efforts with ſuch alacrity and ſpirit, that before
ght o'clock in the morning the lake was ſo far from Tueſd. 12.
ing gained upon the pumps, that the pumps had
ined conſiderably upon the leak. Every body now
ted of getting the ſhip into ſome harbour, as a thing
t to be doubted, and as hands could be ſpared from
e pumps, they were employed in getting up the an-
rs: the ſtream anchor and beſt bower we had taken
board; but it was found impoſſible to ſave the little
wer, and therefore it was cut away at a whole cable:
loſt alſo the cable of the ſtream anchor among the
ks; but in our ſituation theſe were trifles which
rcely attracted our notice. Our next buſineſs was to
up the fore-top-maſt and fore-yard, and warp the
p to the ſouth-eaſt, and at eleven, having now a
eze from the ſea, we once more got under ſail and
d for the land.

It was, however, impoſſible long to continue the la-
r by which the pumps had been made to gain upon
leak, and as the exact ſituation of it could not be
covered, we had no hope of ſtopping it within. In
s ſituation, Mr. Monkhouſe, one of my midſhipmen,
e to me and propoſed an expedient that he had once
uſed on board a merchant ſhip, which ſprung a
k that admitted above four feet water an hour, and
ich by this expedient was brought ſafely from Virgi-
to London; the maſter having ſuch confidence in
that he took her out of harbour, knowing her con-

1770. June. dition, and did not think it worth while to wait till leak could be otherwiſe ſtopped. To this man, the fore, the care of the expedient, which is called foth ing the ſhip, was immediately committed, four or f of the people being appointed to aſſiſt him, and he p formed it in this manner: He took a lower ſtudd ſail, and having mixed together a large quantity of oak and wool, chopped pretty ſmall, he ſtitched it down handfuls upon the ſail, as lightly as poſſible, and o this he ſpread the dung of our ſheep and other fil but horſe dung, if we had had it, would have b better. When the ſail was thus prepared, it was ha ed under the ſhip's bottom by ropes, which kept it tended, and when it came under the leak, the ſuc which carried in the water, carried in with it the oak and wool from the ſurface of the ſail, which in ot parts the water was not ſufficiently agitated to waſh By the ſucceſs of this expedient our leak was ſo far duced, that inſtead of gaining upon three pumps was eaſily kept under with one. This was a new ſou of confidence and comfort; the people could ſcarc have expreſſed more joy if they had been already port; and their views were ſo far from being limi to running the ſhip a-ſhore in ſome harbour, either an iſland or the main, and building a veſſel out of materials, to carry us to the Eaſt Indies, which had lately been the utmoſt object of our hope, that noth was now thought of but ranging along the ſhore ſearch of a convenient place to repair the damage had ſuſtained, and then proſecuting the voyage upon ſame plan as if nothing had happened. Upon this oc ſion I muſt obſerve, both in juſtice and gratitude to ſhip's company, and the gentlemen on board, that though in the midſt of our diſtreſs every one ſeemed have a juſt ſenſe of his danger, yet no paſſionate exc mations, or frantic geſtures, were to be heard or ſe every one appeared to have the perfect poſſeſſion of mind, and every one exerted himſelf to the utterm with a quiet and patient perſeverance, equally diſt from the tumultuous violence of terror, and the gloo inactivity of deſpair.

In the mean time, having light airs at E. S. E. got up the main-top maſt, and main-yard, and k edg

ging in for the land, till about ſix o'clock in the even- 1770.
, when we came to an anchor in ſeventeen fathoms June.
ter, at the diſtance of ſeven leagues from the ſhore,
d one from the ledge of rocks upon which we had
uck.

This ledge or ſhoal lies in latitude 15° 45′ S. and
ween ſix or ſeven leagues from the main. It is not
wever the only ſhoal on this part of the coaſt, eſpe-
lly to the northward; and at this time we ſaw one
the ſouthward, the tail of which we paſſed over,
en we had uneven ſoundings about two hours before
ſtruck. A part of this ſhoal is always above water,
d has the appearance of white ſand: a part alſo of
t upon which we had lain is dry at low water, and
that place conſiſts of ſand ſtones; but all the reſt of
s a coral rock.

While we lay at anchor for the night, we found that
ſhip made about fifteen inches water an hour, from
ich no immediate danger was to be apprehended;
d at ſix o'clock in the morning, we weighed and ſtood Wedneſ. 13
the N. W. ſtill edging in for the land with a gentle
eze at S. S. E. At nine we paſſed cloſe without two
ll iſlands that lie in latitude 15° 41′ S. and about
r leagues from the main: to reach theſe iſlands had,
the height of our diſtreſs, been the object of our
e, or perhaps rather of our wiſhes, and therefore
alled them HOPE ISLANDS. At noon we were
t three leagues from the land, and in latitude 15°
S. the northernmoſt part of the main in ſight bore
30 W. and Hope Iſlands extended from S. 30 E.
. 40 E. In this ſituation we had twelve fathoms
r, and ſeveral ſand-banks without us. At this
e the leak had not increaſed; but that we might be
pared for all events, we got the ſail ready for another
ering. In the afternoon, having a gentle breeze at
. by E. I ſent out the Maſter with two boats, as well
ound a-head of the ſhip, as to look out for a harbour
re we might repair our defects, and put the ſhip in
oper trim. At three o'clock we ſaw an opening
had the appearance of an harbour, and ſtood off and
while the boats examined it, but they ſoon found
there was not depth of water in it ſufficient for the
. When it was near ſun-ſet, there being many

1770. June. ſhoals about us, we anchored in four fathoms, at t diſtance of about two miles from the ſhore, the la extending from N. ½ E. to S. by E. ½ E. The pinna was ſtill out with one of the mates; but at nine o'clo ſhe returned, and reported, that about two leagues leeward ſhe had diſcovered juſt ſuch a harbour as wanted, in which there was a ſufficient riſe of wat and every other convenience that could be deſir either for laying the ſhip aſhore, or heaving her down

Thurſd. 24. In conſequence of this information, I weighed at o'clock in the morning, and having ſent two bo a-head, to lie upon the ſhoals that we ſaw in our w we ran down to the place; but notwithſtanding precaution, we were once in three fathoms water. ſoon as theſe ſhoals were paſſed, I ſent the boats to in the channel that led to the harbour, and by time it began to blow. It was happy for us that a pl of refuge was at hand; for we ſoon found that the would not work, having twice miſſed ſtays: our ſit tion, however, though it might have been much wo was not without danger: we were entangled am ſhoals, and I had great reaſon to fear being drive leeward, before the boats could place themſelves ſo a preſcribe our courſe. I therefore anchored in four thoms, about a mile from the ſhore, and then m the ſignal for the boats to come on board. When was done, I went myſelf and buoyed the channel, wh I found very narrow; the harbour alſo I found ſma than I expected, but moſt excellently adapted to purpoſe; and it is remarkable, that in the whole co of our voyage we had ſeen no place which, in our ſent circumſtances, could have afforded us the ſ relief. At noon, our latitude was 15° 26′ S. Du all the reſt of this day, and the whole night, it b too freſh for us to venture from our anchor and run the harbour; and for our farther ſecurity, we got d the top-gallant yards, unbent the mainſail and ſom the ſmall ſails; got down the fore-top-gallant maſt, the gibb boom, and ſprit-ſail, with a view to lig the ſhip forwards as much as poſſible, in order to c at her leak, which we ſuppoſed to be ſomewhere in part; for in all the joy of our unexpected delivera we had not forgot that at this time there was not but a lock of wool between us and deſtruction.

gale continuing, we kept our ſtation all the 15th. On the 16th, it was ſomewhat more moderate; and about ſix o'clock in the morning, we hove the cable ſhort, with a deſign to get under ſail, but were obliged to de- ſiſt, and veer it out again. It is remarkable that the ſea breeze, which blew freſh when we anchored, continued to do ſo almoſt every day while we ſtaid here; it was calm only while we were upon the rock, except once; and even the gale that afterwards wafted us to the ſhore, would then certainly have beaten us to pieces. In the evening of the preceding day, we had obſerved a fire near the beach over againſt us; and as it would be ne- ceſſary for us to ſtay ſome time in this place, we were not without hope of making an acquaintance with the people. We ſaw more fires upon the hills to-day, and with our glaſſes diſcovered four Indians going along the ſhore, who ſtopped, and made two fires; but for what purpoſe it was impoſſible we ſhould gueſs. 1770. June. Friday 15. Saturd. 16.

The ſcurvy now began to make its appearance among us, with many formidable ſymptoms. Our poor Indian, Tupia, who had ſome time before complained that his gums were ſore and ſwelled, and who had taken plenti- fully of our lemon juice by the Surgeon's direction, had now livid ſpots upon his legs, and other indubitable teſ- timonies that the diſeaſe had made a rapid progreſs, not- withſtanding all our remedies, among which the bark had been liberally adminiſtered. Mr. Green, our aſtro- nomer, was alſo declining; and theſe, among other circumſtances, imbittered the delay which prevented our going aſhore.

In the morning of the 17th, though the wind was ſtill freſh, we ventured to weigh, and puſh in for the harbour; but in doing this we twice run the ſhip a- ground: the firſt time ſhe went off without any trou- ble, but the ſecond time ſhe ſtuck faſt. We now got down the fore-yard, fore-top-maſts, and booms, and having them overboard, made a raft of them along-ſide of the ſhip. The tide was happily riſing, and about three o'clock in the afternoon, ſhe floated. We ſoon warped her into the harbour, and having moored her along-ſide of a ſteep beach to the ſouth, we got the anchors, cables, and all the hawſers on ſhore before night. Sunday 17.

1770. June.

CHAP. VI.

Tranſactions while the Ship was refitting in Endeavour River: a Deſcription of the adjacent Country, its Inhabitants, and Productions.

Monday 18. IN the morning of Monday the 18th, a ſtage was made from the ſhip to the ſhore, which was ſo bo that ſhe floated at twenty feet diſtance: two tents were alſo ſet up, one for the ſick, and the other for ſtores a proviſions, which were landed in the courſe of the da We alſo landed all the empty water caſks, and part the ſtores. As ſoon as the tent for the ſick was got rea for their reception, they were ſent aſhore to the num ber of eight or nine, and the boat was diſpatched haul the ſeine, in hopes of procuring ſome fiſh for th refreſhment; but ſhe returned without ſucceſs. In t mean time, I climbed one of the higheſt hills amo thoſe that overlooked the harbour, which afforded by means a comfortable proſpect: the low land near t river is wholly overrun with mangroves, among whi the ſalt water flows every tide; and the high land a peared to be every where ſtony and barren. In t mean time Mr. Banks had alſo taken a walk up t country, and met with the frames of ſeveral old Indi houſes, and places where they had dreſſed ſhell-fiſ but they ſeemed not to have been frequented for ſo months. Tupia, who had employed himſelf in anglin and lived intirely upon what he caught, recovered in furpriſing degree; but Mr. Green ſtill continued to extremely ill.

Tueſday 19. The next morning I got the four remaining gu out of the hold, and mounted them upon the quarte deck; I alſo got a ſpare anchor and anchor-ſtock aſho and the remaining part of the ſtores and ballaſt that we in the hold: ſet up the ſmith's forge, and employed t armourer and his mate to make nails and other neceſ ries for the repairs of the ſhip. In the afternoon all t officers ſtores and the ground tier of water were got ou ſo that nothing remained in the fore and main hold, b the coals, and a ſmall quantity of ſtone ballaſt. Th da

day Mr. Banks croſſed the river to take a view of the country on the other ſide: he found it conſiſt principally of ſand-hills, where he ſaw ſome Indian houſes, which appeared to have been very lately inhabited. In his walk he met with vaſt flocks of pigeons and crows: of the pigeons, which were exceedingly beautiful, he ſhot ſeveral, but the crows, which were exactly like thoſe in England, were ſo ſhy, that he could not get within reach of them. 1770. June.

On the 20th, we landed the powder, and got out the ſtone ballaſt and wood, which brought the ſhip's draught of water to eight feet ten inches forward, and thirteen feet a-baft; and this I thought, with the difference that would be made by trimming the coals aft, would be ſufficient; for I found that the water roſe and fell perpendicularly eight feet at the ſpring-tides: but as ſoon as the coals were trimmed from over the leak, we could hear the water ruſh in a little abaft the foremaſt, about three feet from the keel: this determined me to clear the hold intirely. This evening Mr. Banks obſerved that in many parts of the inlet there were large quantities of pumice ſtones, which lay at a conſiderable diſtance above high-water mark; whither they might have been carried either by the freſhes or extraordinary high tides, for there could be no doubt but that they came from the ſea. Wedn. 20.

The next morning we went early to work, and by four o'clock in the afternoon had got out all the coals, caſt the moorings looſe, and warped the ſhip a little higher up the harbour to a place which I thought moſt convenient for laying her a-ſhore in order to ſtop the lake. Her draught of water forward was now ſeven feet nine inches, and abaft thirteen feet ſix inches. At eight o'clock, it being high-water, I hauled her bow cloſe a-ſhore; but kept her ſtern a-float, becauſe I was afraid of helping her; it was however neceſſary to lay the whole of her as near the ground as poſſible. Thurſd. 21.

At two o'clock in the morning of the 22d, the tide left her, and gave us an opportunity to examine the leak, which we found to be at her floor heads, a little before the ſtarboard fore-chains. In this place the rocks had made their way through four planks, and even into the timbers; three more planks were much Friday 22.

1770. June. damaged, and the appearance of theſe breaches was very extraordinary: there was not a ſplinter to be ſeen, but all was as ſmooth, as if the whole had been cut away by an inſtrument: the timbers in this place were happily very cloſe, and if they had not, it would have been abſolutely impoſſible to have ſaved the ſhip. But after all, her preſervation depended upon a circumſtance ſtill more remarkable: in one of the holes, which was big enough to have ſunk us, if we had had eight pumps inſtead of four, and been able to keep them inceſſantly going, was in great meaſure plugged up by a fragment of the rock, which, after having made the wound, was left ſticking in it; ſo that the water which at firſt had gained upon our pumps, was what came in at the interſtices, between the ſtone and the edges of the hole that received it. We found alſo ſeveral pieces of the fothering, which had made their way between the timbers, and in a great meaſure ſtopped thoſe parts of the leak which the ſtone had left open. Upon further examination, we found that, beſides the leak, conſiderable damage had been done to the bottom; great part of the ſheathing was gone from under the larboard bow; a conſiderable part of the falſe keel was alſo wanting, and theſe indeed we had ſeen ſwim away in fragments from the veſſel, while ſhe lay beating againſt the rock: the remainder of it was in ſo ſhattered a condition that it had better have been gone, and the fore-foot and main keel were alſo damaged, but not ſo as to produce any immediate danger: what damage ſhe might have received abaft could not yet be exactly known, but we had reaſon to think it was not much, as but little water made its way into her bottom, while the tide kept below the leak which has already been deſcribed. By nine o'clock in the morning the carpenters got to work upon her, while the ſmiths were buſy in making bolts and nails. In the mean time, ſome of the people were ſent on the other ſide of the water to ſhoot pigeons for the ſick, who at their return reported that they had ſeen an animal as large as a greyhound, of a ſlender make, a mouſe colour, and extremely ſwift; they diſcovered alſo many Indian houſes, and a fine ſtream of freſh water.

The

The next morning I ſent a boat to haul the ſeine; but at noon it returned with only three fiſh, and yet we ſaw them in plenty leaping about the harbour. This day the Carpenter finiſhed the repairs that were neceſſary on the ſtarboard ſide, and at nine o'clock in the evening we heeled the ſhip the other way, and hauled her off about two feet, for fear of neiping. This day almoſt every body had ſeen the animal which the pigeon-ſhooters had brought an account of the day before; and one of the ſeamen, who had been rambling in the woods, told us at his return, that he verily believed he had ſeen the devil. We naturally inquired in what form he had appeared, and his anſwer was in ſo ſingular a ſtile that I ſhall ſet down his own words: "He was, ſays John, as large as a one gallon keg, and "very like it: he had horns and wings, yet he crept "ſo ſlowly through the graſs, that if I had not been "*afeard* I might have touched him." This formidable apparition we afterwards diſcovered to have been a bat; and the bats here muſt be acknowledged to have a frightful appearance, for they are nearly black, and full as large as a partridge; they have indeed no horns, but the fancy of a man who thought he ſaw the devil might eaſily ſupply that defect. 1770. June. Saturd. 23.

Early on the 24th the carpenters began to repair the ſheathing under the larboard bow, where we found two planks cut about half through; and in the mean time I ſent a party of men, under the direction of Mr. Gore, in ſearch of refreſhments for the ſick; this party returned about noon with a few palm-cabbages, and a bunch or two of wild plantains; the plantains were the ſmalleſt I had ever ſeen, and the pulp, though it was well taſted, was full of ſmall ſtones. As I was walking this morning, at a little diſtance from the ſhip, I ſaw myſelf one of the animals which had been ſo often deſcribed; it was of a light mouſe colour, and in ſize and ſhape very much reſembling a greyhound; it had a long tail alſo, which it carried like a greyhound; and I ſhould have taken it for a wild dog, if, inſtead of running, it had not leaped like a hare or deer; its legs were ſaid to be very ſlender, and the print of its foot to be like that of a goat; but where I ſaw it, the graſs was ſo high that the legs were concealed, and the ground Sunday 24.

was

1770. June. was too hard to receive the track. Mr. Banks alſo had an imperfect view of this animal, and was of opinion that its ſpecies was hitherto unknown.

After the ſhip was hauled aſhore, all the water that came into her of courſe went backwards; ſo that, although ſhe was dry forward, ſhe had nine feet water abaft. As in this port, therefore, her bottom could not be examined on the inſide, I took the advantage of the tide being out, this evening, to get the maſter and two of the men to go under her, and examine her whole larboard ſide without. They found the ſheathing gone about the floor-heads a-breaſt of the main-maſt, and part of a plank a little damaged; but all agreed that ſhe had received no other material injury. The loſs of her ſheathing alone was a great misfortune, as the worms would now be let into her bottom, which might expoſe us to great inconvenience and danger; but as I knew no remedy for the miſchief but heaving her down, which would be a work of immenſe labour and long time, if practicable at all in our preſent ſituation, I was obliged to be content. The carpenters, however, continued to work under her bottom in the evening, till they were prevented by the tide: the morning tide did not ebb out far enough to permit them to work at all; for we had only one tolerable high and low tide in four-and-twenty hours, as indeed we had experienced when we lay upon the rock. The poſition of the ſhip, which threw the water in her a-baft, was very near depriving the world of all the knowledge which Mr. Banks had endured ſo much labour, and ſo many riſks to procure; for he had removed the curious collection of plants, which he made during the whole voyage, into the bread-room, which lies in the after part of the ſhip, as a place of the greateſt ſecurity; and nobody having thought of the danger to which laying her head ſo much higher than the ſtern would expoſe them, they were this day found under water. Moſt of them, however, were, by indefatigable care and attention, reſtored to a ſtate of preſervation, but ſome were entirely ſpoiled and deſtroyed.

Monday 25. The 25th was employed in filling water and over-hauling the rigging, and at low water the carpenters

finiſhed

finiſhed the repairs under the larboard bow, and every other place which the tide would permit them to come at: ſome caſks were then laſhed under her bows, to facilitate her floating; and at night, when it was high water, we endeavoured to heave her off, but without ſucceſs, for ſome of the caſks that were laſhed to her gave way. 1770. June.

The morning of the 26th was employed in getting more caſks ready for the ſame purpoſe; and in the afternoon we laſhed no leſs than eight-and-thirty under the ſhip's bottom; but, to our great mortification, theſe alſo proved ineffectual, and we found ourſelves reduced to the neceſſity of waiting till the next ſpring-tide. Tueſday 26.

This day ſome of our gentlemen, who had made an excurſion into the woods, brought home the leaves of a plant, which was thought to be the ſame that in the Weſt Indies is called coccos, but upon trial the roots proved too acrid to be eaten; the leaves, however, were little inferior to ſpinnage. In the place where theſe plants were gathered grew plenty of the cabbage-trees, which have occaſionally been mentioned before, a kind of wild plantain, the fruit of which was ſo full of ſtones as ſcarcely to be eatable; another fruit was alſo found, about the ſize of a ſmall golden pippin, but flatter, and of a deep purple colour; when firſt gathered from the tree it was very hard and diſagreeable, but after being kept a few days became ſoft, and taſted very much like an indifferent damaſcene.

The next morning we began to move ſome of the weight from the after-part of the ſhip forward, to eaſe her; in the mean time the Armourer continued to work at the forge, the Carpenter was buſy in caulking the ſhip, and the men employed in filling water and over-hauling the rigging. In the forenoon I went myſelf in the pinnace up the harbour, and made ſeveral hauls with the ſeine, but caught only between twenty and thirty fiſh, which were given to the ſick and convaleſcent. Wedn. 27.

On the 28th Mr. Banks went with ſome of the ſeamen up the country, to ſhew them the plant which in the Weſt Indies is called Indian kale, and which ſerved us for greens. Tupia had much meliorated the Thurſ. 28.

root

1770. June. root of the coccos, by giving them a long dreſſing in his country oven, but they were ſo ſmall that we did not think them an object for the ſhip. In their walk they found one tree which had been notched for the convenience of climbing it, in the ſame manner with thoſe we had ſeen in Botany Bay; they ſaw alſo many neſts of white ants, which reſemble thoſe of the Eaſt Indies, the moſt pernicious inſects in the world. The neſts were of a pyramidical figure, from a few inches to ſix feet high, and very much reſembled the ſtones in England, which are ſaid to be monuments of the Druids. Mr. Gore, who was alſo this day four or five miles up the country, reported that he had ſeen the footſteps of men, and tracked animals of three or four different ſorts, but had not been fortunate enough to ſee either man or beaſt.

Friday 29. At two o'clock in the morning of the 29th I obſerved, in conjunction with Mr. Green, an emerſion of Jupiter's firſt ſatellite; the time here was $2^h\ 18'\ 53''$, which gave the longitude of this place $214°\ 42'\ 30''$ W. its latitude is $15°\ 26'$ S. At break of day I ſent the boat again with the ſeine, and in the afternoon it returned, with as much fiſh as enabled me to give every man a pound and an half. One of my midſhipmen, an American, who was this day abroad with his gun, reported that he had ſeen a wolf, exactly like thoſe which he had been uſed to ſee in his own country, and that he had ſhot at it, but did not kill it.

Saturd. 30. The next morning, encouraged by the ſucceſs of the day before, I ſent the boat again to haul the ſeine, and another party to gather greens; I ſent alſo ſome of the young gentlemen to take a plan of the harbour, and went myſelf upon a hill, which lies over the ſouth point, to take a view of the ſea. At this time it was low water, and I ſaw, with great concern, innumerable ſand-banks and ſhoals lying all along the coaſt in every direction. The innermoſt lay about three or four miles from the ſhore, the outermoſt extended as far as I could ſee with my glaſs, and many of them did but juſt riſe above water. There was ſome appearance of a paſſage to the northward, and I had no hope of getting clear but in that direction; for as the wind blows conſtantly from the S. E. it would have been difficult,

difficult, if not impoſſible, to return back to the ſouth- 1770. June.
ward.

Mr. Gore reported, that he had this day ſeen two animals like dogs, of a ſtraw colour, that they ran like a hare, and were about the ſame ſize. In the afternoon the people returned from hauling the ſeine, with ſtill better ſucceſs than before, for I was now able to diſtribute two pounds and an half to each man: the greens that had been gathered I ordered to be boiled among the peaſe, and they made an excellent meſs, which, with two copious ſupplies of fiſh, afforded us unſpeakable refreſhment.

The next day, July the 1ſt, being Sunday, every July. body had liberty to go a-ſhore, except one from each Sunday 1. meſs, who were again ſent out with the ſeine. The ſeine was again equally ſucceſsful, and the people who went up the country gave an account of having ſeen ſeveral animals, though none of them were to be caught. They ſaw a fire alſo about a mile up the river, and Mr. Gore, the Second Lieutenant, picked up the huſk of a cocoa-nut, which had been caſt upon the beach, and was full of barnacles; this probably might come from ſome iſland to windward, perhaps from the Terra del Eſpirito Santo of Quiros, as we were now in the latitude where it is ſaid to lie. This day the thermometer in the ſhade roſe to 87, which was higher than it had been at any day ſince we came upon this coaſt.

Early the next morning I ſent the maſter in the pin- Mond. 2. nace, out of the harbour, to ſound about the ſhoals in the offing, and look for a channel to the northward. At this time we had a breeze from the land, which continued till about nine o'clock, and was the firſt we had had ſince our coming into the river. At low water we laſhed ſome empty caſks under the ſhip's bows, having ſome hope that, as the tides were riſing, ſhe would float the next high water. We ſtill continued to fiſh with great ſucceſs, and at high water we again attempted to heave the ſhip off, but our utmoſt efforts were ſtill ineffectual.

The next day at noon the Maſter returned, and re- Tueſd. 3. ported, that he had found a paſſage out to ſea between the ſhoals, and deſcribed its ſituation. The ſhoals, he ſaid,

1770. July. ſaid, conſiſted of coral rocks, many of which were dry at low water, and upon one of which he had been a-ſhore. He found here ſome cockles, of ſo enormous a ſize, that one of them was more than two men could eat, and a great variety of other ſhell-fiſh, of which he brought us a plentiful ſupply. In the evening he had alſo landed in a bay about three leagues to the northward of our ſtation, where he diſturbed ſome of the natives who were at ſupper; they all fled with the greateſt precipitation at his approach, leaving ſome freſh ſea eggs and a fire ready kindled behind them, but there was neither houſe nor hovel near the place. We obſerved, that although the ſhoals that lie juſt within ſight of the coaſt, abound with ſhell-fiſh, which may be eaſily caught at low water, yet we ſaw no ſuch ſhells about the fire-places on ſhore. This day an allegator was ſeen to ſwim about the ſhip for ſome time, and at high water we made another effort to float her, which happily ſucceeded: we found, however, that by lying ſo long with her head a-ground, and her ſtern a-float, ſhe had ſprung a plank between decks, a-breaſt of the main-chains, ſo that it was become neceſſary to lay her a-ſhore again.

Wedneſ. 4. The next morning was employed in trimming her upon an even keel; and in the afternoon, having warped her over, and waited for high water, we laid her a-ſhore on the ſand-bank, on the ſouth ſide of the river; for the damage ſhe had received already from the great deſcent of the ground, made me afraid to lay her broad-ſide to the ſhore in the ſame place from which we had juſt floated her. I was now very deſirous to make another trial to come at her bottom, where the ſheathing had been rubbed off; but though ſhe had ſcarcely four feet water under her, when the tide was out, yet that part was not dry.

Thurſ. 5. On the 5th I got one of the Carpenter's crew, a man in whom I could confide, to go down again to the ſhip's bottom, and examine the place. He reported, that three ſtreaks of the ſheathing, about eight feet long, were wanting, and that the main plank had been a little rubbed: this account perfectly agreed with the report of the Maſter, and others, who had been under her bottom before. I had the comfort, however, to find the

the Carpenter of opinion, that this would be of little conſequence, and therefore, the other damage being repaired, ſhe was again floated at high water, and moored along-ſide the beach, where the ſtores had been depoſited: we then went to work to take the ſtores on board, and put her in a condition for the ſea. This day Mr. Banks croſſed to the other ſide of the harbour, where, as he walked along a ſandy beach, he found innumerable fruits, and many of them ſuch as no plants which he had diſcovered in this country produced; among others were ſome cocoa-nuts, which Tupia ſaid had been opened by a kind of crab, which, from his deſcription, we judged to be the ſame that the Dutch call Beurs Krabbe, and which we had not ſeen in theſe ſeas. All the vegetable ſubſtances which he found in this place were encruſted with marine productions, and covered with barnacles; a ſure ſign that they muſt have come far by ſea, and, as the trade-wind blows right upon the ſhore, probably from Terra del Eſpirito Santo, which has been mentioned already. 1770. July.

The next morning Mr. Banks, with Lieutenant Gore, and three men, ſet out in a ſmall boat up the river, with a view to ſpend two or three days in an excurſion, to examine the country, and kill ſome of the animals which had been ſo often ſeen at a diſtance. Friday 6.

On the 7th I ſent the Maſter again out to ſound about the ſhoals, the account which he brought me of a channel being by no means ſatisfactory; and we ſpent the remainder of this day, and the morning of the next, in fiſhing and other neceſſary occupations. Saturd. 7.

About four o'clock in the afternoon Mr. Banks and his party returned, and gave us an account of their expedition. Having proceeded about three leagues among ſwamps and mangroves, they went up into the country, which they found to differ but little from what they had ſeen before; they purſued their courſe therefore up the river, which at length was contracted into a narrow channel, and was bounded, not by ſwamps and mangroves, but by ſteep banks, that were covered with trees of a moſt beautiful verdure, among which was that which in the Weſt Indies is called Mohoe, or the bark tree, the *hibiſcus tiliaceus*. The land Sunday 8.

within

1770. July. within was in general low, and had a thick covering of long grass; the soil seemed to be such as promised great fertility, to any who should plant and improve it. In the course of the day Tupia saw an animal, which, by his description, Mr. Banks judged to be a wolf; they also saw three other animals, but could neither catch nor kill one of them, and a kind of bat as large as a partridge; but this also eluded all their diligence and skill. At night they took up their lodging close to the banks of the river, and made a fire, but the musquitos swarmed about them in such numbers, that their quarters were almost untenable; they followed them into the smoke, and almost into the fire, which, hot as the climate was, they could better endure than the stings of these insects, which were an intolerable torment. The fire, the flies, and the want of a better bed than the ground, rendered the night extremely uncomfortable, so that they passed it not in sleep, but in restless wishes for the return of day. With the first dawn they set out in search of game, and, in a walk of many miles, they saw four animals of the same kind, two of which Mr. Banks's greyhound fairly chaced; but they threw him out at a great distance by leaping over the long thick grass, which prevented his running: this animal was observed not to run upon four legs, but to bound or hop forward upon two, like the Jerbua, or Mus Jaculus. About noon they returned to the boat, and again proceeded up the river which was soon contracted into a fresh water brook where, however, the tide rose to a considerable height. As the evening approached it became low water, and it was then so shallow that they were obliged to get out of the boat and drag her along, till they could find a place in which they might, with some hope of rest pass the night. Such a place at length offered, and while they were getting the things out of the boat, they observed a smoke at the distance of about a furlong; as they did not doubt but that some of the natives with whom they had so long and earnestly desired to become personally acquainted, were about the fire three of the party went immediately towards it, hoping that so small a number would not put them to flight

when they came up to the place, however, they found it deſerted, and therefore they conjectured, that before they had diſcovered the Indians, the Indians had diſcovered them. They found the fire ſtill burning, in the hollow of an old tree that was become touch-wood, and ſeveral branches of trees newly broken down, with which children appeared to have been playing: they obſerved alſo many footſteps upon the ſand, below high water mark, which were certain indications that the Indians had been recently upon the ſpot. Several houſes were found at a little diſtance, and ſome ovens dug in the ground in the ſame manner as thoſe of Otaheite, in which victuals appeared to have been dreſſed ſince the morning, and, ſcattered about them, lay ſome ſhells of a kind of clam, and ſome fragments of roots, the refuſe of the meal. After regretting their diſappointment, they repaired to their quarters, which was a broad ſand-bank, under the ſhelter of a buſh. Their beds were plantain leaves, which they ſpread upon the ſand, and which were as ſoft as a mattreſs; their cloaks ſerved them for bed-clothes, and ſome bunches of graſs for pillows; with theſe accommodations they hoped to paſs a better night than the laſt, eſpecially as, to their great comfort, not a muſquito was to be ſeen. Here then they lay down, and, ſuch is the force of habit, they reſigned themſelves to ſleep, without once reflecting upon the probability and danger of being found by the Indians in that ſituation. If this appears ſtrange, let us for a moment reflect, that every danger, and every calamity, after a time becomes familiar, and loſes its effect upon the mind. If it were poſſible that a man ſhould firſt be made acquainted with his mortality, or even with the inevitable debility and infirmities of old age, when his underſtanding had arrived at its full ſtrength, and life was endeared by the enjoyments of youth, and vigour, and health, with what an agony of terror and diſtreſs would the intelligence be received! yet, being gradually acquainted with theſe mournful truths, by inſenſible degrees, we ſcarce know when, they loſe all their force, and we think no more of the approach of old age and death, than theſe wanderers of an unknown deſart did of a leſs obvious and certain evil,

1770. July.

1770. July. the approach of the native ſavages, at a time when they muſt have fallen an eaſy prey to their malice or their fears: and it is remarkable, that the greater part of thoſe who have been condemned to ſuffer a violent death, have ſlept the night immediately preceding their execution; though there is, perhaps, no inſtance of a perſon accuſed of a capital crime having ſlept the firſt night of his confinement. Thus is the evil of life in ſome degree a remedy for itſelf; and though every man at twenty deprecates fourſcore, almoſt every man is as tenacious of life at fourſcore as at twenty; and if he does not ſuffer under any painful diſorder, loſes as little of the comforts that remain, by reflecting that he is upon the brink of the grave, where the earth already crumbles under his feet, as he did of the pleaſures of his better days, when his diſſolution, though certain, was ſuppoſed to be at a diſtance.

Our travellers having ſlept, without once awaking, till the morning, examined the river, and finding the tide favoured their return, and the country promiſed nothing worthy of a farther ſearch, they re-imbarked in their boat, and made the beſt of their way to the ſhip.

Soon after the arrival of this party, the Maſter alſo returned, having been ſeveral leagues out to ſea, and he was now of opinion, that there was no getting out where before he thought there had been a paſſage; his expedition, however, was by no means without its advantage; for having been a ſecond time upon the rock where he had ſeen the large cockles, he met with a great number of turtle, three of which he caught, that together weighed ſeven hundred and ninety-one pounds, though he had no better inſtrument than a boat-hook.

Monday 9. The next morning, therefore, I ſent him out again with proper inſtruments for taking them, and Mr. Banks went with him; but the ſucceſs did not at all anſwer our expectations, for, by the unaccountable conduct of the officer, not a ſingle turtle was taken, nor could he be perſuaded to return. Mr. Banks, however, went a-ſhore upon the reef, where he ſaw ſeveral of the large cockles, and having collected many ſhells, and marine productions, he returned at eleven o'clock

o'clock at night, in his own ſmall boat, the Maſter ſtill continuing with the large one upon the rock. In the afternoon ſeven or eight of the natives had appeared on the ſouth ſide of the river, and two of them came down to the ſandy point, oppoſite to the ſhip; but upon ſeeing me put off in a boat to ſpeak with them, they all ran away with the greateſt precipitation. 1770. July.

As the Maſter continued abſent with the boat all night, I was forced to ſend the Second Lieutenant for him early the next morning in the yawl; and ſoon after four of the natives appeared upon the ſandy point, on the north ſide of the river, having with them a ſmall wooden canoe with outriggers. They ſeemed for ſome time to be buſily employed in ſtriking fiſh. Some of our people were for going over to them in a boat, but this I would by no means permit, repeated experience having convinced me that it was more likely to prevent than procure an interview. I was determined to try what could be done by a contrary method, and accordingly let them alone, without appearing to take the leaſt notice of them. This ſucceeded ſo well, that at length two of them came in the canoe within muſket ſhot of the ſhip, and there talked a great deal in a very loud tone. We underſtood nothing that they ſaid, and therefore could anſwer their harangue only by ſhouting, and making all the ſigns of invitation and kindneſs that we could deviſe. During this conference, they came inſenſibly nearer and nearer, holding up their lances, but in a threatening manner, but as if to intimate, that if we offered them any injury they had weapons to revenge it. When they were almoſt along-ſide of us, we threw them ſome cloth, nails, beads, paper, and other trifles, which they received without the leaſt appearance of ſatisfaction. At laſt, one of the people happened to ſhow them a ſmall fiſh; at this they expreſſed the greateſt joy imaginable, and intimating by ſigns that they would fetch their companions, immediately paddled away towards the ſhore. In the mean time ſome of our people, and among them Tupia, landed on the oppoſite ſide of the river. The canoe, with all the four Indians, very ſoon returned to the ſhip, and came quite along- Tueſday 10.

1770. July. ſide, without expreſſing any fear or diſtruſt. We diſtributed ſome more preſents among them, and ſoon after they left us, and landed on the ſame ſide of the river where our people had gone a-ſhore: every man carried in his hand two lances, and a ſtick, which is uſed in throwing them, and advanced to the place where 'Tupia and the reſt of our people were ſitting. Tupia ſoon prevailed upon them to lay down their arms, and come forward without them; he then made ſigns that they ſhould ſit down by him, with which they complied, and ſeemed to be under no apprehenſion or conſtraint; ſeveral more of us then going a-ſhore, they expreſſed ſome jealouſy leſt we ſhould get between them and their arms; we took care, however, to ſhew them that we had no ſuch intention, and having joined them, we made them ſome more preſents, as a farther teſtimony of our good-will, and our deſire to obtain theirs. We continued together, with the utmoſt cordiality, till dinner-time, and then, giving them to underſtand that we were going to eat, we invited them by ſigns to go with us; this, however, they declined, and as ſoon as we left them, they went away in their canoe. One of theſe men was ſomewhat above the middle age, the other three were young; they were in general of the common ſtature, but their limbs were remarkably ſmall; their ſkin was of the colour of wood-ſoot, or what would be called a dark chocolate colour; their hair was black, but not woolly; it was ſhort cropped in ſome lank, and in others curled. Dampier ſays, that the people whom he ſaw on the weſtern coaſt of this country wanted two of their fore-teeth, but theſe had no ſuch defect; ſome part of their bodies had been painted red, and the upper lip and breaſt of one of them was painted with ſtreaks of white, which he called *Carbanda*; their features were far from being diſagreeable, their eyes were lively, and their teeth even and white, their voices were ſoft and tuneable, and they repeated many words after us with great facility. In the night Mr. Gore and the Maſter returned with the long-boat, and brought one turtle and a few ſhell-fiſh. The yawl had been left upon the ſhoal with ſix men, to make a farther trial for turtle.

The

The next morning we had another viſit from four of the natives, three of them had been with us before, but the fourth was a ſtranger, whoſe name, as we learned from his companions who introduced him, was YAPARICO. This gentleman was diſtinguiſhed by an ornament of a very ſtriking appearance, it was the bone of a bird, nearly as thick as a man's finger, and five or ſix inches long, which he had thruſt into a hole, made in the griſtle that divides the noſtrils; of this we had ſeen one inſtance, and only one, in New Zealand; but, upon examination, we found, that among all theſe people this part of the noſe was perforated, to receive an ornament of the ſame kind. They had alſo holes in their ears, though nothing was then hanging to them, and had bracelets upon the upper part of their arms, made of plaited hair, ſo that, like the inhabitants of Terra del Fuego, they ſeem to be fond of ornament, though they are abſolutely without apparel; and one of them, to whom I had given part of an old ſhirt, inſtead of throwing it over any part of his body, tied it as a fillet round his head. They brought with them a fiſh, which they gave us, as we ſuppoſed, in return for the fiſh that we had given them the day before. They ſeemed to be much pleaſed, and in no haſte to leave us; but ſeeing ſome of our gentlemen examine their canoe with great curioſity and attention, they were alarmed, and jumping immediately into it, paddled away without ſpeaking a word. 1770. July. Wedneſ. 11.

About two the next morning the yawl, which had been left upon the ſhoal, returned with three turtles, and a large ſkeat. As it ſeemed now probable that this fiſhery might be proſecuted with advantage, I ſent her out again, after breakfaſt, for a further ſupply. Soon after three Indians ventured down to Tupia's tent, and were ſo well pleaſed with their reception, that one of them went with the canoe to fetch two others, whom we had never ſeen: when he returned, he introduced the ſtrangers by name, a ceremony which, upon ſuch occaſions, was never omitted. As they had received the fiſh that was thrown into their canoe, when they firſt approached the ſhip, with ſo much pleaſure, ſome fiſh was offered to them now, and we were greatly ſur- Thurſ. 12.

1770. July. prized to ſee that it was received with the greateſt indifference: they made ſigns, however, to ſome of the people, that they ſhould dreſs it for them, which was immediately done; but after eating a little of it, they threw the reſt to Mr. Banks's dog. They ſtaid with us all the forenoon, but would never venture above twenty yards from their canoe. We now perceived that the colour of their ſkin was not ſo dark as it appeared, what we had taken for their complexion, being the effects of dirt and ſmoke, in which, we imagined, they contrived to ſleep, notwithſtanding the heat of the climate, as the only means in their power to keep off the muſquitos. Among other things that we had given them when we firſt ſaw them, were ſome medals, which we had hung round their necks by a riband; and theſe ribands were ſo changed by ſmoke, that we could not eaſily diſtinguiſh of what colour they had been. This incident led us more narrowly to examine the colour of their ſkin. While theſe people were with us, we ſaw two others on the point of land that lay on the oppoſite ſide of the river, at the diſtance of about two hundred yards, and by our glaſſes diſcovered them to be a woman and a boy; the woman, like the reſt, being ſtark naked. We obſerved, that all of them were remarkably clean limbed, and exceedingly active and nimble. One of theſe ſtrangers had a necklace of ſhells, very prettily made, and a bracelet upon his arm, formed of ſeveral ſtrings, ſo as to reſemble what in England is called gymp: both of them had a piece of bark tied over the forehead, and were diſfigured by the bone in the noſe. We thought their language more harſh than that of the Iſlanders in the South Sea, and they were continually repeating the word *chercau*, which we imagined to be a term expreſſing admiration, by the manner in which it was uttered: they alſo cried out, when they ſaw anything new, *cher, tut, tut, tut, tut!* which probably had a ſimilar ſignification. Their canoe was not above ten feet long, and very narrow, but it was fitted with an outrigger, much like thoſe of the iſlands, though in every reſpect very much inferior: when it was in ſhallow water they ſet it on with poles, and when in deep they worked it with paddles about four feet long; it contained juſt four people, ſo that the people who viſited

us to-day, went away at two turns. Their lances were like thoſe that we had ſeen in Botany Bay, except that they had but a ſingle point, which in ſome of them was the ſting of the ray, and barbed with two or three ſharp bones of the ſame fiſh: it was indeed a moſt terrible weapon, and the inſtrument which they uſed in throwing it, ſeemed to be formed with more art than any we had ſeen before. About twelve o'clock next day the yawl returned, with another turtle and a large ſting-ray, and in the evening was ſent out again. 1770. July. Friday 13.

The next morning two of the Indians came on board, but after a ſhort ſtay went along the ſhore, and applied themſelves with great diligence to the ſtriking of fiſh. Mr. Gore, who went out this day with his gun, had the good fortune to kill one of the animals which had been ſo much the ſubject of our ſpeculation; an idea of it will be beſt conceived by the cut, page 345, without which the moſt accurate verbal deſcription would anſwer very little purpoſe, as it has not ſimilitude enough to any animal already known, to admit of illuſtration by reference. In form it is moſt like the gerbua, which it alſo reſembles in its motion, as has been obſerved already; but it greatly differs in ſize, the gerbua not being larger than a common rat, and this animal, when full grown, being as big as a ſheep; this individual was a young one, much under its full growth, weighing only thirty-eight pounds; the head, neck, and ſhoulders are very ſmall, in proportion to the other parts of the body; the tail is nearly as long as the body, thick near the rump, and tapering towards the end; the fore-legs of this individual were only eight inches long, and the hind-legs two-and-twenty; its progreſs is by ſucceſſive leaps or hops, of a great length, in an erect poſture; the fore-legs are kept bent cloſe to the breaſt, and ſeemed to be of uſe only for digging; the ſkin is covered with a ſhort fur, of a dark mouſe or grey colour, excepting the head and ears, which bear a ſlight reſemblance to thoſe of a hare. This animal is called by the natives *Kanguroo.* Saturd. 14.

The next day our kanguroo was dreſſed for dinner, and proved moſt excellent meat. We might now indeed be ſaid to fare ſumptuouſly every day, for we had turtle in great plenty, and we all agreed that they were Sunday 15.

1770. July. much better than any we had taſted in England, which we imputed to their being eaten freſh from the ſea, before their natural fat had been waſted, or their juices changed, by a diet and ſituation ſo different from what the ſea affords them, as garbage and a tub. Moſt of thoſe that we caught here were of the kind called green turtle, and weighed from two to three hundred weight, and when theſe were killed, they were always found to be full of turtle graſs, which our naturaliſts took to be a kind of *conferva*; two of them were loggerheads, the fleſh of which was much leſs delicious, and in their ſtomachs nothing was to be found but ſhells.

Monday 16. In the morning of the 16th, while the people were employed, as uſual, in getting the ſhip ready for the ſea, I climbed one of the hills on the north ſide of the river, from which I had an extenſive view of the inland country, and found it agreeably diverſified by hills, vallies, and large plains, which in many places were richly covered with wood. This evening we obſerved an emerſion of Jupiter's firſt ſatellite, which gave 214° 53′ 45″ of longitude. The obſervation which was made on the 29th of June gave 214° 42′ 30″; the mean is 214° 48′ 7½″, the longitude of this place weſt of Greenwich.

Tueſday 17. On the 17th I ſent the Maſter and one of the Mates in the pinnace, to look for a channel to the northward, and I went myſelf with Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander into the woods, on the other ſide of the water. Tupia, who had been thither by himſelf, reported, that he had ſeen three Indians, who had given him ſome roots about as thick as a man's finger, in ſhape not much unlike a raddiſh, and of a very agreeable taſte. This induced us to go over, hoping that we ſhould be able to improve our acquaintance with the natives: in a very little time we diſcovered four of them in a canoe, who as ſoon as they ſaw us came a-ſhore, and, though they were all ſtrangers, walked up to us, without any ſigns of ſuſpicion or fear. Two of theſe had necklaces of ſhells which we could not perſuade them to part with for any thing we could give them: we preſented them however with ſome beads, and after a ſhort ſta

ſtay they departed. We attempted to follow them, hoping that they would conduct us to ſome place where we ſhould find more of them, and have an opportunity of ſeeing their women; but they made us underſtand by ſigns, that they did not deſire our company. 1770. July.

At eight o'clock the next morning we were viſited by ſeveral of the natives, who were now become quite familiar. One of them, at our deſire, threw his lance, which was about eight feet long: it flew with a ſwiftneſs and ſteadineſs that ſurpriſed us, and though it was never more than four feet from the ground, it entered deeply into a tree at fifty paces diſtance. After this they ventured on board, where I left them, to all appearance much entertained, and went again with Mr. Banks to take a view of the country; but chiefly to indulge an anxious curioſity, by looking round us upon the ſea, of which our wiſhes almoſt perſuaded us we had formed an idea more diſadvantageous than the truth. After having walked about ſeven or eight miles along the ſhore to the northward, we aſcended a very high hill, and were ſoon convinced that the danger of our ſituation was at leaſt equal to our apprehenſions; for in whatever direction we turned our eyes, we ſaw rocks and ſhoals without number, and no paſſage out to ſea, but through the winding channels between them, which could not be navigated without the laſt degree of difficulty and danger. We returned therefore to the ſhip, not in better ſpirits than when we left it; we found ſeveral natives ſtill on board, and we were told that the turtles, of which we had then no leſs than twelve upon the deck, had fixed their attention more than any thing elſe in the ſhip. Wedn. 18.

On the 19th in the morning we were viſited by ten of the natives, the greater part from the other ſide of the river, where we ſaw ſix or ſeven more, moſt of them women, and, like all the reſt of the people we had ſeen in this country, they were ſtark naked. Our gueſts brought with them a greater number of lances than they had ever done before, and having laid them up in a tree, they ſet a man and a boy to watch them: the reſt then came on board, and we ſoon perceived Thurſd. 19.

that

1770. July. that they had determined to get one of our turtle, which was probably as great a dainty to them as to us. They first aſked us, by ſigns, to give them one; and being refuſed, they expreſſed, both by looks and geſtures, great diſappointment and anger. At this time we happened to have no victuals dreſſed, but I offered one of them ſome biſcuit, which he ſnatched and threw overboard with great diſdain. One of them renewed his requeſt to Mr. Banks, and upon a refuſal ſtamped with his foot, and puſhed him from him in a tranſport of reſentment and indignation: having applied by turns to almoſt every perſon who appeared to have any command in the ſhip, without ſucceſs, they ſuddenly ſeized two of the turtles, and dragged them towards the ſide of the ſhip where their canoe lay: our people ſoon forced them out of their hands, and replaced them with the reſt. They would not however relinquiſh their enterpriſe, but made ſeveral other attempts of the ſame kind; in all which being equally diſappointed, they ſuddenly leaped into their canoe in a rage, and began to paddle towards the ſhore. At the ſame time, I went into the boat with Mr. Banks, and five or ſix of the ſhip's crew, and we got aſhore before them, where many more of our people were already engaged in various employments; as ſoon as they landed, they ſeized their arms, and, before we were aware of their deſign, they ſnatched a brand from under a pitch kettle which was boiling, and making a circuit to the windward of the few things we had on ſhore, they ſet fire to the graſs in their way, with ſurpriſing quickneſs and dexterity: the graſs, which was five or ſix feet high, and as dry as ſtubble, burnt with amazing fury; and the fire made a rapid progreſs towards a tent of Mr. Banks's, which had been ſet up for Tupia when he was ſick, taking in its courſe a ſow and pigs, one of which it ſcorched to death. Mr. Banks leaped into a boat, and fetched ſome people from on board, juſt time enough to ſave his tent by hauling it down upon the beach; but the ſmith's forge, at leaſt ſuch part of it as would burn, was conſumed. While this was doing, the Indians went to a place at ſome diſtance where ſeveral of our people were waſhing, and where our nets, among which was

th

the ſeine, and a great quantity of linen, were laid out to dry; here they again ſet fire to the graſs, entirely diſregarding both treats and entreaties. We were therefore obliged to diſcharge a muſquet, loaded with ſmall ſhot, at one of them, which drew blood at the diſtance of about forty yards, and this putting them to flight, we extinguiſhed the fire at this place before it had made much progreſs; but where the graſs had been firſt kindled, it ſpread into the woods to a great diſtance. As the Indians were ſtill in ſight, I fired a muſquet, charged with ball, a-breaſt of them among the mangroves, to convince them that they were not yet out of our reach: upon hearing the ball they quickened their pace, and we ſoon loſt ſight of them. We thought they would now give us no more trouble; but ſoon after we heard their voices in the woods, and perceived that they came nearer and nearer. I ſet out, therefore, with Mr. Banks and three or four more, to meet them: when our parties came in ſight of each other, they halted, except one old man, who came forward to meet us: at length he ſtopped, and having uttered ſome words, which we were very ſorry we could not underſtand, he went back to his companions, and the whole body ſlowly retreated. We found means however to ſeize ſome of their darts, and continued to follow them about a mile: we then ſat down upon ſome rocks, from which we could obſerve their motions, and they alſo ſat down at about an hundred yards diſtance. After a ſhort time, the old man again advanced towards us, carrying in his hand a lance without a point: he ſtopped ſeveral times, at different diſtances, and ſpoke; we anſwered by reckoning and making ſuch ſigns of amity as we could deviſe; upon which the meſſenger of peace, as we ſuppoſed him to be, turned and ſpoke aloud to his companions, who then ſet up their lances againſt a tree, and advanced towards us in a friendly manner: when they came up, we returned the darts or lances that we had taken from them, and we perceived with great ſatisfaction that this rendered the reconciliation compleat. We found in this party four perſons whom we had never ſeen before, who as uſual were introduced to us by name; but the man who had been wounded in the at-

1770. July.

tempt

1770. July. tempt to burn our nets and linen, was not among them we knew however that he could not be dangerouſly hur by the diſtance at which the ſhot reached him. W made all of them preſents of ſuch trinkets as we ha about us, and they walked back with us towards th ſhip: as we went along, they told us, by ſigns, tha they would not ſet fire to the graſs any more; and w diſtributed among them ſome muſquet balls, and en deavoured to make them underſtand their uſe and effe When they came a-breaſt of the ſhip, they ſat dow but could not be prevailed upon to come on board; w therefore left them, and in about two hours they we away, ſoon after which we perceived the woods on fi at about two miles diſtance. If this accident had ha pened a very little while ſooner, the conſequence mig have been dreadful; for our powder had been aboa but a few days, and the ſtore tent, with many valuab things which it contained, had not been removed mar hours. We had no idea of the fury with which gra would burn in this hot climate, nor conſequently of t difficulty of extinguiſhing it; but we determined, th if it ſhould ever again be neceſſary for us to pitch o tents in ſuch a ſituation, our firſt meaſure ſhould be clear the ground round us.

In the afternoon we got every thing on board the ſhi new birthed her, and let her ſwing with the tide; a at night the Maſter returned, with the diſcouragi account that there was no paſſage for the ſhip to t northward.

Friday 20. The next morning, at low water, I went and ſound and buoyed the bar, the ſhip being now ready for t ſea. We ſaw no Indians this day, but all the hi round us for many miles were on fire, which at nig made a moſt ſtriking and beautiful appearance.

Saturd. 21. The 21ſt paſſed without our getting ſight of any the inhabitants, and indeed without a ſingle incide

Sunday 22. worth notice. On the 22d we killed a turtle for t day's proviſion, upon opening which we found a wood harpoon, or turtle-peg, about as thick as a ma finger, near fifteen inches long, and bearded at t end, ſuch as we had ſeen among the natives, ſticki through both ſhoulders: it appeared to have be

ſtru

ſtruck a conſiderable time, for the wound had perfectly healed up over the weapon. 1770. July.

Early in the morning of the 23d I ſent ſome people into the country to gather a ſupply of the greens which have been before-mentioned by the name of Indian Kale; and one of them having ſtraggled from the reſt, ſuddenly fell in with four Indians, three men and a boy, whom he did not ſee till, by turning ſhort in the wood, he found himſelf among them. They had kindled a fire, and were broiling a bird of ſome kind, and part of a kanguroo, the remainder of which, and a cockatoo, hung at a little diſtance upon a tree: the man, being unarmed, was at firſt greatly terrified; but he had the preſence of mind not to run away, judging very rightly, that he was moſt likely to incur danger by appearing to apprehend it; on the contrary, he went and ſat down by them, and, with an air of chearfulneſs and good humour, offered them his knife, the only thing he had about him which he thought would be acceptable to them; they received it, and having handed it from one to the other, they gave it him again: he then made an offer to leave them; but this they ſeemed not diſpoſed to permit: ſtill however he diſſembled his fears, and ſat down again; they conſidered him with great attention and curioſity, particularly his clothes, and then felt his hands and face, and ſatisfied themſelves that his body was of the ſame texture with their own. They treated him with the greateſt civility, and having kept him about half an hour, they made ſigns that he might depart: he did not wait for a ſecond diſmiſſion, but when he left them, not taking the direct way to the ſhip, they came from their fire and directed him; ſo that they well knew whence he came. Monday 23.

In the mean time, Mr. Banks, having made an excurſion on the other ſide of the river to gather plants, found the greateſt part of the cloth that had been given to the Indians lying in a heap together, probably as uſeleſs lumber, not worth carrying away: and perhaps, if he had ſought further, he might have found the other trinkets; for they ſeemed to ſet very little value upon any thing we had, except our turtle,

1770. July. turtle, which was a commodity that we were leaſt abl to ſpare.

The blowing weather, which prevented our attemp to get out to ſea, ſtill continuing, Mr. Banks and Dr

Tueſd. 24. Solander went again out on the 24th to ſee whether an new plant could be picked up: they traverſed the wood all day without ſucceſs; but as they were returnin through a deep valley, the ſides of which, though al moſt as perpendicular as a wall, were covered with tree and buſhes; they found lying upon the ground ſevera marking nuts, the Anacardium Orientale; theſe pu them upon a new ſcent, and they made a moſt diligen ſearch after the tree that bore them, which perhaps n European botaniſt ever ſaw; but to their great mortifi cation they could not find it: ſo that, after ſpendin much time, and cutting down four or five trees, the returned quite exhauſted with fatigue to the ſhip.

Wdneſd. 25. On the 25th, having made an excurſion up the river I found a canoe belonging to our friends the Indians whom we had not ſeen ſince the affair of the turtle they had left it tied to ſome mangroves, about a mil diſtant from the ſhip, and I could ſee by their fires tha they were retired at leaſt ſix miles directly inland.

Thurſd. 26. As Mr. Banks was again gleaning the country fo his Natural Hiſtory on the 26th, he had the good for tune to take an animal of the Opoſſum tribe: it was female, and with it he took two young ones: it wa found much to reſemble the remarkable animal of th kind, which Monſ. de Buffon has deſcribed in his Na tural Hiſtory by the name of Phalanger, but it was no the ſame. Monſ. Buffon ſuppoſes this tribe to be pe culiar to America, but in this he is certainly miſtaken and probably, as Pallas has obſerved in his Zoology, th Phalanger itſelf is a native of the Eaſt Indies, as th animal which was caught by Mr. Banks reſembled it i the extraordinary conformation of the feet, in which i differs from animals of every other tribe.

Friday 27. On the 27th Mr. Gore ſhot a kanguroo, which, wit the ſkin, entrails, and head, weighed eighty-four pounds Upon examination, however, we found that this anima was not at its full growth, the innermoſt grinders no being

ing yet formed. We dreſſed it for dinner the next day; but to our great diſappointment, we found it had much worſe flavour than we had eaten before. 1770. July. Saturd. 28.

The wind continued in the ſame quarter, and with the ſame violence, till five o'clock in the morning of the 29th, when it fell calm; ſoon after a light breeze ſprung up from the land, and it being about two hours ebb, I ſent a boat to ſee what water was upon the bar; in the mean time we got the anchor up, and made all ready to put to ſea. But when the boat came back, the officer reported that there were only thirteen feet water upon the bar, which was ſix inches leſs than the ſhip drew. We were therefore obliged to come to, and the land breeze ſetting in again about eight o'clock, we gave up all hope of ſailing that day. Sunday 29.

We had freſh gales at S. E. with hazy weather and rain, till two in the morning of the 31ſt, when the weather being ſomewhat more moderate, I had thoughts of trying to warp the ſhip out of the harbour; but upon going out myſelf firſt in the boat, I found it ſtill blew too freſh for the attempt. During all this time the pinnace and yawl continued to ply the net and hook with tolerable ſucceſs; ſometimes taking a turtle, and frequently bringing in from two to three hundred weight of fiſh. Mond. 30. Tueſday 31.

On the firſt of Auguſt the Carpenter examined the pumps, and, to our great mortification, found them all in a ſtate of decay, owing, as he ſaid, to the ſap's having been left in the wood; one of them was ſo rotten, when hoiſted up, to drop to pieces, and the reſt were little better; ſo that our chief truſt was now in the ſoundneſs of our veſſel, which happily did not admit more than one inch of water in an hour. Auguſt. Wedn. 1.

At ſix o'clock in the morning of Friday the 3d we made another unſucceſsful attempt to warp the ſhip out of the harbour; but at five o'clock in the morning of the 4th, our efforts had a better effect, and about ſeven, we got once more under ſail, with a light air from the land, which ſoon died away, and was followed by the ſea-breezes from S. E. by S. with which we ſtood off to ſea E. by N. having the pinnace a-head, which was ordered to keep ſounding continually. The yawl had been ſent to the turtle bank, to take up the net Friday 3. Saturd. 4.

1770. August. net which had been left there; but as the wind freſh ened, we got out before her. A little before noon w anchored in fifteen fathoms water, with a ſandy botto for I did not think it ſafe to run in among the ſhoa till I had well viewed them, at low-water, from t maſt-head, which might determine me which way ſteer: for as yet I was in doubt whether I ſhould b back to the ſouthward, round all the ſhoals, or ſee paſſage to the eaſtward or the northward, all which preſent appeared to be equally difficult and dangero When we were at anchor the harbour from which ſailed bore S. 70 W. diſtant about five leagues; the n thernmoſt point of the main in ſight, which I nam CAPE BEDFORD, and which lies in latitude 15° 16 longitude 214° 45′ W. bore N. 20 W. diſtant th leagues and a half; but to the N. E. of this Cape could ſee land which had the appearance of two h iſlands: the turtle banks bore eaſt, diſtant one mi our latitude by obſervation was 15° 32′ S. and our de of water in ſtanding off from the land was from th and an half to fifteen fathoms.

CHAP. VII.

Departure from Endeavour River; a particular Deſc tion of the Harbour there, in which the Ship was fitted, the adjacent Country, and ſeveral Iſlands the Coaſt: the Range from Endeavour River to Northern Extremity of the Country, and the Dange that Navigation.

TO the harbour which we had now left, I gave name of ENDEAVOUR RIVER. It is onl ſmall harbour, or creek, which runs in a win channel three or four leagues inland, and at the of which there is a ſmall brook of freſh water: t is not depth of water for ſhipping above a mile w the bar, and at this diſtance only on the north where the bank is ſo ſteep for near a quarter of a that a ſhip may lie a-float at low water, ſo nea ſhore as to reach it with a ſtage, and the ſituati extre

extremely convenient for heaving down; but at low water, the depth upon the bar is not more than nine or ten feet, nor more than ſeventeen or eighteen at the height of the tide; the difference between high and low water, at ſpring tides, being about nine feet. At the new and full of the moon it is high water between nine and ten o'clock: it muſt alſo be remembered, that this part of the coaſt is ſo barricaded with ſhoals, as to make the harbour ſtill more difficult of acceſs; the ſafeſt approach is from the ſouthward, keeping the main land cloſe upon the board all the way. Its ſituation may always be found by the latitude, which has been very accurately laid down. Over the ſouth point is ſome high land, but the north point is formed by a low ſandy beach, which extends about three miles to the northward, where the land begins again to be high. 1770. August.

The chief refreſhment that we procured here was turtle, but as they were not to be had without going five leagues out to ſea, and the weather was frequently tempeſtuous, we did not abound with this dainty: what we caught, as well as the fiſh, was always equally divided among us all by weight, the meaneſt perſon on board having the ſame ſhare as myſelf; and I think every commander, in ſuch a voyage as this, will find this intereſt to follow the ſame rule. In ſeveral parts of the ſandy beaches, and ſand hills near the ſea, we found purſlain, and a kind of bean that grows upon a ſtalk, which creeps along the ground: the purſlain we found very good when it was boiled, and the beans are not to be deſpiſed, for we found them of great ſervice to our ſick: the beſt greens, however, that could be procured here, were the tops of the coccos, which have been mentioned already, as known in the Weſt Indies by the name of Indian kale: theſe were, in our opinion, not much inferior to ſpinnage, which in taſte they somewhat reſemble; the roots indeed are not good, but they might probably be meliorated by proper cultivation. They are found here chiefly in boggy ground. The few cabbage palms that we met with, were in general ſmall, and yielded ſo little cabbage that they were not worth ſeeking.

1770. August. Beſides the kanguroo and the opoſſum, that have bee already mentioned, and a kind of polecat, there ar wolves upon this part of the coaſt, if we were not de ceived by the tracks upon the ground, and ſeveral ſpe cies of ſerpents; ſome of the ſerpents are venemou and ſome harmleſs: there are no tame animals here ex cept dogs, and of theſe we ſaw but two or three, whic frequently came about the tents, to pick up the ſcra and bones that happened to lie ſcattered nerr ther There does not indeed ſeem to be many of any anima except the kanguroo; we ſcarcely ſaw any other abo once, but this we met with almoſt every time we we into the woods. Of land fowls we ſaw crows, kite hawks, cockatoos of two ſorts, one white and the oth black, a very beautiful kind of loriquets, ſome parro pigeons of two or three ſorts, and ſeveral ſmall bir not known in Europe. The water fowls are herr whiſtling ducks, which perch, and, I believe, roo upon trees, wild geeſe, curlieus, and a few others, b theſe do not abound. The face of the country, whi has been occaſionally mentioned before, is agreeab diverſified by hill and valley, lawn and wood. T ſoil of the hills is hard, dry, and ſtony, yet it produc coarſe graſs beſides wood; the ſoil of the plains and v lies is in ſome places ſand, and in ſome clay; in ſo alſo it is rocky and ſtony, like the hills; in gener however, it is well clothed, and has at leaſt the appe ance of fertility. The whole country, both hill a valley, wood and plain, abounds with ant hills, ſo of which are ſix or eight feet high, and twice as mu in circumference. The trees here are not of ma ſorts; the gum tree, which we found on the ſouth part of the coaſt, is the moſt common, but here it not ſo large: on each ſide of the river, thro' its wh courſe, there are mangroves in great numbers, wh in ſome places extend a mile within the coaſt. T country is in all parts well watered, there being ſeve fine rivulets at a ſmall diſtance from each other, none in the place where we lay, at leaſt not during time we were there, which was the dry ſeaſon; were however well ſupplied with water by ſprin which were not far off.

In the afternoon of the 4th, we had a gentle breeze at S. E. and clear weather, but as I did not intend to ſail till the next morning, I ſent all the boats to the reef, to get what turtle and ſhell fiſh they could. At low water, I went up to the maſt-head, and took a view of the ſhoals, which made a very threatening appearance: I could ſee ſeveral at a remote diſtance, and part of many of them was above water. The ſea appeared moſt open to the north-eaſt of the turtle reef, and I came to a reſolution to ſtretch out that way cloſe upon a wind, becauſe if we ſhould find no paſſage, we could always return the way we went. In the evening the boats brought in a turtle, a ſting-ray, and as many large cockles as came to about a pound and a half a man, for in each of them there was not leſs than two pounds of meat: in the night alſo we caught ſeveral ſharks, which, though not a dainty, were an acceptable increaſe of our freſh proviſions. 1770. Auguſt. Saturd. 4.

In the morning I waited till half ebb before I weighed, becauſe at that time the ſhoals begin to appear, but the wind then blew ſo hard, that I was obliged to remain at an anchor: in the afternoon, however, the gale becoming more moderate, we got under ſail, and ſtood out upon a wind N. E. by E. leaving the turtle reef to windward, and having the pinnace ſounding ahead: we had not kept this courſe long, before we diſcovered ſhoals before us, and upon both the bows; and at half an hour after four, having run about eight miles, the pinnace made the ſignal for ſhoal water, where we little expected it: upon this we tacked, and ſtood on and off, while the pinnace ſtretched farther to the eaſtward, and night approaching, I came to an anchor in twenty fathoms water, with a muddy bottom. Endeavour River then bore S. 52 W. Cape Bedford W. by N. ½ N. diſtant five leagues, the northermoſt land in ſight, which had the appearance of an iſland, and a ſhoal, a ſmall ſandy part of which appeared above water, bore N. E. diſtant between two and three miles: in ſtanding off from turtle reef to this place, we had from fourteen to twenty fathoms water, but when the pinnace was about a mile farther to the E. N. E. there was no more than four or five feet water, with rocky ground; and yet this did not appear to us in the Sunday 5.

1770. August. ſhip. In the morning of the 6th we had a ſtrong gale ſo that inſtead of weighing, we were obliged to veer away more cable, and ſtrike our top-gallant yards. A

Monday 6. low water, myſelf, with ſeveral of the officers, kept look out at the maſt-head, to ſee if any paſſage could be diſcovered between the ſhoals, but nothing was in view except breakers, extending from the S. round by the E. as far as N. W. and out to ſea beyond the reach of our ſight; theſe breakers, however, did not appear to be cauſed by one continued ſhoal, but by ſeveral which lay detached from each other: on that which lay fartheſt to the eaſtward, the ſea broke very high which made me think it was the outermoſt, for upon many of theſe within, the breakers were inconſiderable, and from about half ebb to half flood, they were not to be ſeen at all, which makes ſailing among them ſtill more dangerous, eſpecially as the ſhoals here conſiſt principally of coral rocks, which are as ſteep as a wall; upon ſome of them however, and generally at the north end, there are patches of ſand which are covered only at high water, and which are to be diſcerned at ſome diſtance. Being now convinced that there was no paſſage to ſea, but through the labyrinth formed by theſe ſhoals, I was altogether at a loſs which way to ſteer, when the weather ſhould permit us to get under ſail. It was the Maſter's opinion, that we ſhould beat back the way we came, but this would have been an endleſs labour, as the wind blew ſtrong from that quarter, almoſt without intermiſſion; on the other hand, if no paſſage could be found to the northward, we ſhould be compelled to take that meaſure at laſt. Theſe anxious deliberations engaged us till eleven o'clock at night, when the ſhip drove, and obliged us to veer away to a cable and one third, which brought

Tueſday 7. her up; but in the morning, the gale increaſing, ſhe drove again, and we therefore let go the ſmall bower and veered away to a whole cable upon it, and two cables on the other anchors, yet ſhe ſtill drove, tho' not ſo faſt; we then got down top gallant-maſts, and ſtruck the yards and top-maſts cloſe down, and at laſt had the ſatisfaction to find that ſhe rode. Cape Bedford now bore W. S. W. diſtant three leagues and an half, and in this ſituation we had ſhoals to the eaſtward, extend-

in

ing from the S. E. by S. to the N. N. W. the nearest of which was about two miles distant. As the gale continued, with little remission, we rode till seven o'clock in the morning of the 10th, when, it being more moderate, we weighed, and stood in for the land, having at length determined to seek a passage along the shore to the northward, still keeping the boat a-head: during our run in we had from nineteen to twelve fathoms: after standing in about an hour, we edged away for three small islands that lay N. N. E. ½ E. three leagues from Cape Bedford, which the Master had visited while we were in port. At nine o'clock, we were a-breast of them, and between them and the main: between us and the main there was another low island, which lies N. N. W. four miles from the three islands; and in this channel we had fourteen fathoms water. The northermost point of land in sight now bore N. N. W. ½ W. distant about two leagues. Four or five leagues to the north of this head-land we saw three islands, near which lay some that were still smaller, and we could see the shoals and reefs without us, extending to the northward, as far as these islands: between these reefs and the head-land, we directed our course, leaving to the eastward a small island, which lies N. by E. distant four miles from the three islands. At noon we were got between the head-land and the three islands: from the head-land we were distant two leagues, and from the islands four; our latitude, by observation, was 14° 51′. We now thought we saw a clear opening before us, and hoped that we were once more out of danger; in this hope, however, we soon found ourselves disappointed, and for that reason I called the head-land CAPE FLATTERY. It lies in latitude 14° 56′ S. longitude 214° 43′ W. and is a lofty promontory, making next the sea in two hills, which have a third behind them, with low sandy ground on each side: it may however be still better known by the three islands out at sea: the northermost and largest lies about five leagues from the Cape, in the direction of N. N. E. From Cape Flattery the land trends away N. W. and N. W. by W. We steered along the shore N. W. by W. till one o'clock, for what we thought the open channel, when the petty officer at the mast-head cried out that he saw land a-head, extending quite round to the islands that lay without us,

1770. August. Friday 10.

1770. August. and a large reef between us and them; upon this I ran up to the maſt-head myſelf, from whence I very plainly ſaw the reef, which was now ſo far to windward that we could not weather it; but the land a-head which he had ſuppoſed to be the main, appeared to me to be only a cluſter of ſmall iſlands. As ſoon as I got down from the maſt-head, the Maſter and ſome others went up, who all inſiſted that the land a-head was not iſlands, but the main; and to make their report ſtill more alarming, they ſaid that they ſaw breakers all round us. In this dilemma we hauled upon a wind in for the land, and made the ſignal for the boat that was ſounding a-head to come on board, but as ſhe was far to leeward, we were obliged to edge away to take her up, and ſoon after we came to an anchor under a point of the main, in ſomewhat leſs than five fathoms, and at about the diſtance of a mile from the ſhore. Cape Flattery now bore S. E. diſtant three leagues and an half. As ſoon as the ſhip was at anchor I went a-ſhore upon the point, which is high, and afforded me a good view of the ſea-coaſt, trending away N.W. by W. eight or ten leagues, which, the weather not being very clear, was as far as I could ſee. Nine or ten ſmall low iſlands, and ſome ſhoals, appeared off the coaſt; I ſaw alſo ſome large ſhoals between the main and the three high iſlands, without which I was clear of opinion there were more iſlands, and not any part of the main. Except the point I was now upon, which I called POINT LOOK-OUT, and Cape Flattery, the main land to the northward of Cape Bedford is low and chequered with white ſand and green buſhes, for ten or twelve miles inland, beyond which it riſes to a conſiderable height. To the northward of Point Look-out, the coaſt appeared to be ſhoal and flat for a conſiderable diſtance, which did not encourage the hope that the channel we had hitherto found in with the land would continue. Upon this point, which was narrow and conſiſted of the fineſt white ſand we had ever ſeen, we diſcovered the footſteps of people, and we ſaw alſo ſmoke and fire at a diſtance up the country.

In the evening I returned to the ſhip, and reſolved the next morning to viſit one of the high iſlands in the offing, from the top of which, as they lay five leagues

leagues out to sea, I hoped to discover more distinctly the situation of the shoals, and the channel between them. 1770. August.

In the morning therefore of the 11th I set out in the pinnace, accompanied by Mr. Banks, whose fortitude and curiosity made him a party in every expedition, for the northermost and largest of the three islands; and at the same time I sent the Master in the yawl to leeward, to sound between the low islands and the main. In my way I passed over a reef of coral rock and sand, which lies about two leagues from the island, and I left another to leeward, which lies about three miles from it. On the north part of the reef, to the leeward, there is a low sandy island, with trees upon it; and upon the reef which we passed over we saw several turtle; we chased one or two, but having little time to spare, and the wind blowing fresh, we did not take any.

About one o'clock we reached the island, and immediately ascended the highest hill, with a mixture of hope and fear, proportioned to the importance of our business, and the uncertainty of the event. When I looked round I discovered a reef of rocks, lying between two and three leagues without the islands, and extending in a line N. W. and S. E. farther than I could see, upon which the sea broke in a dreadful surf; this, however, made me think that there were no shoals beyond them, and I conceived hopes of getting without these, as I perceived several breaks or openings in the reef, and deep water between that and the island. I continued upon this hill till sun-set, but the weather was so hazy during the whole time, that I came down much disappointed. After reflecting upon what I had seen, and comparing the intelligence I had gained with what I expected, I determined to stay upon the island all night, hoping that the morning might be clearer, and afford me a more distinct and comprehensive view. We therefore took up our lodging under the shelter of a bush which grew upon the beach; and at three in the morning, having sent the pinnace with one of the Sunday 12. mates whom I had brought out with me, to sound between the island and the reefs, and examine what appeared to be a channel through them, I climbed the

1770. August. hill a ſecond time, but, to my great diſappointment, found the weather much more hazy than it had been the day before. About noon the pinnace returned, having been as far as the reef, and found between fifteen and twenty-eight fathoms of water; but it blew ſo hard that the Mate did not dare to venture into one of the channels, which, he ſaid, appeared to him to be very narrow. This, however, did not diſcourage me, for I judged, from his deſcription of the place he had been at, that he had ſeen it to diſadvantage. While I was buſy in my ſurvey, Mr. Banks was attentive to his favourite purſuit, and picked up ſeveral plants which he had not before ſeen. We found the iſland, which is viſible at twelve leagues diſtance, to be about eight leagues in circumference, and in general very rocky and barren. On the north-weſt ſide, however, there are ſome ſandy bays, and ſome low land, which is covered with long thin graſs, and trees of the ſame kind with thoſe upon the main: this part alſo abounded with lizards of a very large ſize, ſome of which we took. We found alſo freſh water in two places, one was a running ſtream, but that was a little brackiſh where I taſted it, which was cloſe to the ſea; the other was a ſtanding pool, cloſe behind the ſandy beach, and this was perfectly ſweet and good. Notwithſtanding the diſtance of this iſland from the main, we ſaw, to our great ſurprize, that it was ſometimes viſited by the natives, for we found ſeven or eight frames of their huts, and vaſt heaps of ſhells, the fiſh of which we ſuppoſed had been their food. We obſerved that all theſe huts were built upon eminences, and entirely expoſed to the S. E. contrary to thoſe which we had ſeen upon the main; for they were all built either upon the ſide of a hill, or under ſome buſhes which afforded them ſhelter from the wind. From theſe huts, and their ſituation, we concluded that at ſome ſeaſons of the year the weather here is invariably calm and fine, for the inhabitants have no boat which can navigate the ſea to ſo great a diſtance, in ſuch weather as we had from the time of our firſt coming upon the coaſt. As we ſaw no animals upon this place but lizards, I called it LIZARD ISLAND; the other two high iſlands, which lie at the diſtance of four or five miles

miles from it, are comparatively ſmall; and near them lie three others ſmaller ſtill, and low, with ſeveral ſhoals or reefs, eſpecially to the S. E. There is, however, a clear paſſage from Cape Flattery to theſe iſlands, and even quite to the outward reefs, leaving Lizard Iſland to the north-weſt, and the others to the ſouth-eaſt. 1770. Auguſt.

At two in the afternoon, there being no hope of clear weather, we ſet out from Lizard Iſland to return to the ſhip, and in our way landed upon the low ſandy iſland with trees upon it, which we had remarked in our going out. Upon this iſland we ſaw an incredible number of birds, chiefly ſea-fowl: we found alſo the neſt of an eagle with young ones, which we killed, and the neſt of ſome other bird, we knew not what, of a moſt enormous ſize: it was built with ſticks upon the ground, and was no leſs than ſix-and-twenty feet in circumference, and two feet eight inches high. We found alſo that this place had been viſited by the Indians, probably to eat turtle, many of which we ſaw upon the iſland, and a great number of their ſhells, piled one upon another in different places.

To this ſpot we gave the name of EAGLE ISLAND, and after leaving it we ſteered S. W. directly for the ſhip, ſounding all the way, and we had never leſs than eight fathoms, nor more than fourteen, the ſame depth of water that I had found between this and Lizard Iſland.

When I got on board, the Maſter informed me that he had been down to the low iſlands, between which and the main I had directed him to ſound: that he judged them to lie about three leagues from the main; but without them he found from ten to fourteen fathoms, and between them and the main ſeven, but that flat, which ran two leagues out from the main, made the channel narrow. Upon one of theſe low iſlands he went, and was a-ſhore upon others; and he reported, that he ſaw every where piles of turtle-ſhells, and fins hanging upon the trees in many places, with the fleſh upon them, ſo recent that the boat's crew eat of them; he ſaw alſo two ſpots clear of graſs, which appeared to have been lately dug up, and from the ſhape and ſize of them he conjectured they were graves.

After

1770. August. After conſidering what I had ſeen myſelf, and the report of the Maſter, I was of opinion that the paſſage to leeward would be dangerous, and that by keeping in with the main we ſhould run the riſk of being locked in by the great reef, and at laſt be compelled to return back in ſearch of another paſſage, by which, or any other accident that ſhould cauſe the ſame delay, we ſhould infallibly loſe our paſſage to the Eaſt Indies, and endanger the ruin of the voyage, as we had now but little more than three months proviſions on board at ſhort allowance.

Having ſtated this opinion, and the facts and appearances upon which it was founded, to the officers, it was unanimouſly agreed, that the beſt thing we could do would be to quit the coaſt altogether, till we could approach it with leſs danger.

Monday 13. In the morning therefore, at break of day, we got under ſail, and ſtood out N. E. for the north-weſt end of Lizard Iſland, leaving Eagle Iſland to windward and ſome other iſlands and ſhoals to the leeward, and leaving the pinnace a-head to aſcertain the depth of water in every part of our courſe. In this channel we had from nine to fourteen fathoms. At noon the north-weſt end of Lizard Iſland bore E. S. E. diſtant one mile: our latitude, by obſervation, was 14° 38′ and our depth of water fourteen fathoms. We had a ſteady gale at S. E. and by two o'clock we juſt fetched to windward of one of the channels or openings in the outer reef, which I had ſeen from the iſland. We now tacked, and made a ſhort trip to the S. W. while the Maſter in the pinnace examined the channel; he ſoon made the ſignal for the ſhip to follow, and in a ſhort time ſhe got ſafe out. As ſoon as we got without the breakers, we had no ground with one hundred and fifty fathoms, and found a large ſea rolling in from the S. E. a certain ſign that neither land nor ſhoals were near us in that direction.

Our change of ſituation was now viſible in every countenance, for it was moſt ſenſibly felt in every breaſt. We had been little leſs than three months entangled among ſhoals and rocks, that every moment threatened us with deſtruction, frequently paſſing our nights at anchor, within hearing of the ſurge that broke

broke over them; ſometimes driving towards them, even while our anchors were out, and knowing that if by any accident, to which an almoſt continual tempeſt expoſed us, they ſhould not hold, we muſt in a few minutes inevitably periſh. But now, after having ſailed no leſs than three hundred and ſixty leagues, without once having a man out of the chains heaving the lead, even for a minute, which perhaps never happened to any other veſſel, we found ourſelves in an open ſea, with deep water, and enjoyed a flow of ſpirits, which was equally owing to our late dangers and our preſent ſecurity; yet the very waves, which by their ſwell convinced us that we had no rocks or ſhoals to fear, convinced us alſo that we could not ſafely put the ſame confidence in our veſſel as before ſhe had ſtruck; for the blows ſhe received from them ſo widened her leaks, that ſhe admitted no leſs than nine inches water in an hour, which, conſidering the ſtate of our pumps, and the navigation that was ſtill before us, would have been a ſubject of more ſerious conſideration, to people whoſe danger had not ſo lately been ſo much more imminent. 1770. Auguſt.

The paſſage or channel, through which we paſſed into the open ſea beyond the reef, lies in latitude 14° 32′ S. and may always be known by the three high iſlands within it, which I have called the ISLANDS OF DIRECTION, becauſe by theſe a ſtranger may find a ſafe paſſage through the reef quite to the main. The channel lies from Lizard Iſland N. E. ½ N. diſtant three leagues, and is about one third of a mile broad, and not more in length. Lizard Iſland, which is, as I have before obſerved, the largeſt and the northermoſt of the three, affords ſafe anchorage under the north-weſt ſide, freſh water, and wood for fuel. The low iſlands and ſhoals alſo, which lie between it and the main, abound with turtle and fiſh, which may probably be caught in all ſeaſons of the year, except when the weather is very tempeſtuous; ſo that, all things conſidered, there is not perhaps a better place for ſhips to refreſh at, upon the whole coaſt than this iſland. And, before I diſmiſs it, I muſt obſerve, that we found upon it, as well as upon the beach in and about Endeavour River, bamboos, cocoa-nuts, pumice-ſtone, and

1770. August. and the ſeeds of plants which are not the produce of this country, and which, it is reaſonable to ſuppoſe, are brought from the eaſtward by the trade-winds. The iſlands which were diſcovered by Quiros, and called Auſtralia del Eſpiritu Santa, lie in this parallel, but how far to the eaſtward cannot now be aſcertained; in moſt charts they are placed in the ſame longitude with this country, which, as appears by the account of his voyage which has been publiſhed, he never ſaw; for that places his diſcoveries no leſs than two-and-twenty degrees to the eaſtward of it.

As ſoon as we were without the reef we brought to, and having hoiſted in the boats, we ſtood off and on upon a wind all night; for I was not willing to run to leeward till I had a whole day before me. In the Tueſd. 14. morning, at day-break, Lizard Iſland bore S. 15 E. diſtant ten leagues; and we then made ſail and ſtood away N. N. W. ½ W. till nine o'clock, when we ſtood N. W. ½ N. having the advantage of a freſh gale at S. E. At noon our latitude, by obſervation, was 13° 46′ S. and at this time we had no land in ſight. At ſix in the evening we ſhortened ſail, and brought the ſhip to, with her head to the N. E. and at ſix in Wedneſ. 15. the morning made ſail and ſteered weſt, in order to get within ſight of the land, that I might be ſure not to over-ſhoot the paſſage, if a paſſage there was, between this land and New Guinea. At noon our latitude, by obſervation, was 13° 2′ S. longitude 216° W. which was 1° 23′ W. of Lizard Iſland. At this time we had no land in ſight; but a little before one o'clock we ſaw high land from the maſt-head, bearing W. S. W. At two we ſaw more land to the N. W. of that we had ſeen before; it appeared in hills, like iſlands, but we judged it to be a continuation of the main land. About three we diſcovered breakers between the land and the ſhip, extending to the ſouthward farther than we could ſee; but to the north we thought we ſaw them terminate a-breaſt of us. What we took for the end of them in this direction, however, ſoon appeared to be only an opening in the reef; for we preſently ſaw them again, extending northward beyond the reach of our ſight. Upon this we hauled cloſe upon a wind, which was now at E. S. E. and we had ſcarcely trimmed

med our ſails before it came to E. by N. which was right upon the reef, and conſequently made our clearing it doubtful. At ſunſet the northermoſt part of it that was in ſight bore from us N. by E. and was two or three leagues diſtant; this however being the beſt tack to clear it, we kept ſtanding to the northward with all the ſail we could ſet till midnight; when, being afraid of ſtanding too far in this direction, we tacked and ſtood to the ſouthward, our run from ſunſet to this time being ſix leagues N. and N. by E. When we had ſtood about two miles S. S. E. it fell calm; we had ſounded ſeveral times during the night, but had no bottom with one hundred and forty fathoms, neither had we any ground now with the ſame length of line; yet, about four in the morning, we plainly heard the roaring of the ſurf, and at break of day ſaw it foaming to a vaſt height, at not more than a mile's diſtance. Our diſtreſs now returned upon us with a double force; the waves, which rolled in upon the reef, carried us towards it very faſt; we could reach no ground with an anchor, and had not a breath of wind for the ſail. In this dreadful ſituation, no reſource was left us but the boats; and to aggravate our misfortune, the pinnace was under repair: the long-boat and yawl, however, were put into the water, and ſent a-head to tow, which, by the help of our ſweeps abaft, got the ſhip's head round to the northward; which, if it could not prevent our deſtruction, might at leaſt delay it. But it was ſix o'clock before this was effected, and we were not then a hundred yards from the rock upon which the ſame billow, which waſhed the ſide of the ſhip, broke to a tremendous height the very next time it roſe; ſo that between us and deſtruction there was only a dreary valley, no wider than the baſe of one wave, and even now the ſea under us was unfathomable, at leaſt no bottom was to be found with a hundred and twenty fathoms. During this ſcene of diſtreſs, the Carpenter had found means to patch up the pinnace; ſo that ſhe was hoiſted out, and ſent a-head, in aid of the other boats, to tow; but all our efforts would have been ineffectual, if, juſt at this criſis of our fate, a light air of wind had not ſprung up, ſo light, that any other time we ſhould

1770. Auguſt. Thurſd. 16.

1770. August. should not have obſerved it, but which was enough to turn the ſcale in our favour, and, in conjunction with the aſſiſtance which was afforded us by the boats, to give the ſhip a perceptible motion obliquely from the reef. Our hopes now revived; but in leſs than ten minutes it was again a dead calm, and the ſhip was again driven towards the breakers, which were not now two hundred yards diſtant. The ſame light breeze however returned before we had loſt all the ground it had enabled us to gain, and laſted about ten minutes more. During this time we diſcovered a ſmall opening in the reef, at about the diſtance of a quarter of a mile: I immediately ſent out one of the Mates to examine it, who reported that its breadth was not more than the length of the ſhip, but that within it there was ſmooth water. this diſcovery ſeemed to render our eſcape poſſible, and that was all, by puſhing the ſhip through the opening which was immediately attempted. It was uncertain indeed whether we could reach it; but if we ſhould ſucceed thus far, we made no doubt of being able to get through: in this however we were diſappointed, for having reached it by the joint aſſiſtance of our boats and the breeze, we found that in the mean time it had become high water, and to our great ſurprize we met the tide of ebb ruſhing out of it like a mill-ſtream. We gained however ſome advantage, though in a manner directly contrary to our expectations; we found it impoſſible to go through the opening, but the ſtream that prevented us carried us about a quarter of a mile it was too narrow for us to keep in it longer; yet the tide of ebb ſo much aſſiſted the boats, that by noon we had got an offing of near two miles. We had, however, reaſon to deſpair of deliverance, even if the breeze which had now died away ſhould revive, for we were ſtill embayed in the reef; and the tide of ebb being ſpent, the tide of flood, notwithſtanding our utmoſt efforts, again drove the ſhip into the bight. About this time, however, we ſaw another opening, near a mile to the weſtward, which I immediately ſent the First Lieutenant, Mr. Hicks, in the ſmall boat to examine. in the mean time we ſtruggled hard with the flood ſometimes gaining a little, and ſometimes loſing; but

every

every man ſtill did his duty with as much calmneſs and regularity as if no danger had been near. About two o'clock, Mr. Hicks returned with an account that the opening was narrow and dangerous, but that it might be paſſed: the poſſibility of paſſing it was ſufficient encouragement to make the attempt, for all danger was leſs imminent than our preſent ſituation. A light breeze now ſprung up at E. N. E. with which, by the help of our boats, and the very tide of flood, that, without an opening, would have been our deſtruction, we entered it, and were hurried through with amazing rapidity, by a torrent that kept us from driving againſt either ſide of the channel, which was not more than a quarter of a mile in breadth. While we were ſhooting this gulph, our ſoundings were from thirty to ſeven fathoms, very irregular, and the ground at bottom very foul. 1770. Auguſt.

As ſoon as we had got within the reef, we anchored in nineteen fathoms, over a bottom of coral and ſhells. And now, ſuch is the viciſſitude of life, we thought ourſelves happy in having regained a ſituation, which, but two days before, it was the utmoſt object of our hope to quit. Rocks and ſhoals are always dangerous to the mariner, even where their ſituation has been aſcertained; they are more dangerous in ſeas which have never before been navigated, and in this part of the globe they are more dangerous than in any other; for here they are reefs of coral rock, riſing like a wall almoſt perpendicularly out of the unfathomable deep, always overflowed at high-water, and at low-water dry in many places; and here the enormous waves of the vaſt Southern Ocean, meeting with ſo abrupt a reſiſtance, break, with inconceivable violence, in a ſurf which no rocks or ſtorms in the northern hemiſphere can produce. The danger of navigating unknown parts of this ocean was now greatly increaſed, by our having a crazy ſhip, and being ſhort of proviſions and every other neceſſary; yet the diſtinction of a firſt diſcoverer made us chearfully encounter every danger, and ſubmit to every inconvenience; and we choſe rather to incur the cenſure of imprudence and temerity, which the idle and voluptuous ſo liberally beſtow upon unſucceſsful fortitude and perſeverance, than leave a country

1770. August. country which we had diſcovered unexplored, and gave colour to a charge of timidity and irreſolution.

Having now congratulated ourſelves upon getting within the reef, notwithſtanding we had ſo lately congratulated ourſelves upon getting without it, I reſolved to keep the main land on board in my future route to the northward, whatever the conſequence might be; for if we had now gone without the reef again, it might have carried us ſo far from the coaſt, as to prevent my being able to determine, whether this country did, or did not, join to New Guinea; a queſtion which I was determined to reſolve from my firſt coming within ſight of land. However, as I had experienced the diſadvantage of having a boat under repair, at a time when it was poſſible I might want to uſe her, I determined to remain faſt at anchor, till the pinnace was perfectly refitted. As I had no employ-

Friday 17. ment for the other boats, I ſent them out in the morning to the reef, to ſee what refreſhment could be procured, and Mr. Banks, in his little boat, accompanied by Dr. Solander, went with them. In this ſituation I found the variation by amplitude and azimuth to be 4° 9′ E. and at noon, our latitude by obſervation was 12° 38′ S. and our longitude 216° 45′ W. The main land extended from N. 66 W. to S. W. by S. and the neareſt part of it was diſtant about nine leagues. The opening through which we paſſed I called PROVIDENTIAL CHANNEL; and this bore E. N. E. diſtant ten or twelve miles: on the main land within us was a lofty promontory which I called CAPE WEYMOUTH; on the north ſide of which is a bay which I called WEYMOUTH BAY: they lie in latitude 12° 42′ S. longitude 127° 15′ W. At four o'clock in the afternoon the boats returned with two hundred and forty pound of the meat of ſhell-fiſh, chiefly of cockles, ſome of which were as much as two men could move, and contained twenty pounds of good meat. Mr. Banks alſo brought back many curious ſhells and Molluſca, beſides many ſpecies of coral, among which was that called the Tubipora muſica.

Saturd. 18. At ſix o'clock in the morning we got under ſail, and ſtood away to the N. W. having two boats a-head to direct

direct us; our ſoundings were very irregular, varying five or ſix fathoms every caſt, between ten and twenty-ſeven. A little before noon we paſſed a low ſandy iſland, which we left on our ſtarboard ſide, at the diſtance of two miles. At noon our latitude was 12° 28′, and our diſtance from the main about four leagues: it extended from S. by W. to N. 71 W. and ſome ſmall iſlands from N. 40 W. to 54 W. Between us and the main were ſeveral ſhoals, and ſome without us, beſides the main or outermoſt reef, which we could ſee from the maſt-head, ſtretching away to the N. E. At two in the afternoon, as we were ſteering N. W. by N. we ſaw a large ſhoal right a-head, extending three or four points upon each bow; upon this we hauled up N. N. E. and N. E. by N. to get round the north point of it, which we reached by four, and then edged away to the weſtward, and ran between the north end of this ſhoal and another, which lies two miles to the northward of it, having a boat all the way a-head ſounding; our depth of water was ſtill very irregular, from twenty-two to eight fathoms. At half an hour after ſix, we anchored in thirteen fathoms: the northernmoſt of the ſmall iſlands ſeen at noon bore W. ¼ S. diſtant three miles: theſe iſlands are diſtinguiſhed in the chart by the name of FORBES's ISLANDS, and lie about five leagues from the main, which here forms a high point that we called BOLT HEAD, from which the land trends more weſterly, and is in that direction all low and ſandy; to the ſouthward it is high and hilly, even near the ſea.

1770. Auguſt.

At ſix in the morning we got again under ſail, and ſteered for an iſland which lay at a ſmall diſtance from the main, and at this time bore from us N. 40 W. diſtant about five leagues: our courſe was ſoon interrupted by ſhoals; however, by the help of the boats, and a good look-out from the top of the maſt, we got into a fair channel that led us down to the iſland, between a very large ſhoal on our ſtarboard ſide and ſeveral ſmall ones towards the main: in this channel we had from twenty to thirty fathoms water. Between eleven and twelve o'clock we hauled round the north-eaſt ſide of the iſland, leaving it between us and the main, from which it is diſtant about ſeven or eight miles. This iſland is about a league in circuit, and

Sunday 19.

1770. August. we saw upon it five of the natives, two of whom had lances in their hands; they came down upon a point, and having looked a little while at the ship, retired. To the N. W. of it are several low islands and quays, which lie not far from the main: and to the northward and eastward are several other islands and shoals; so that we were now encompassed on every side: but having lately been exposed to much greater danger, and rocks and shoals being grown familiar, we looked at them comparatively with little concern. The main land appeared to be low and barren, interspersed with large patches of the very fine white sand, which we had found upon Lizard Island and different parts of the main. The boats had seen many turtle upon the shoals which they passed, but it blew too hard for them to take any. At noon our latitude by observation was 12° and our longitude 217° 25′: our depth of water was fourteen fathoms; and our course and distance, reduced to a strait line, was, between this time and the preceding noon, N. 29 W. thirty-two miles.

The main land within the islands that have been just mentioned forms a point, which I called CAPE GRENVILLE: it lies in latitude 11° 58′ longitude 217° 38′; and between it and Bolt Head is a bay, which I called TEMPLE BAY. At the distance of nine leagues from Cape Grenville, in the direction of E. ½ N. lie some high islands, which I called SIR CHARLES HARDY'S ISLES; and those which lie off the Cape I called COCKBURN'S ISLES. Having lain by for the boats, which had gone out of their station, till about one o'clock, we then took the yawl in tow; and the pinnace having got a-head, we filled, and stood N. by W. for some small islands which lay in that direction; such at least they were in appearance, but upon approaching them, we perceived that they were joined together by a large reef: upon this we edged away N. W. and left them on our starboard hand; we steered between them and the islands that lay off the main, having a clear passage, and from fifteen to twenty-three fathoms water. At four o'clock, we discovered some low islands and rocks, bearing W. N. W. and stood directly for them: at half an hour after six, we anchored on the north-east side of the northernmost of them, at one mile distance,

and

and in ſix fathoms. Theſe iſlands are N. W. four leagues from Cape Grenville, and from the number of birds that I ſaw upon them, I called them BIRD ISLES. A little before ſun-ſet we were in ſight of the main land, which appeared all very low and ſandy, extending as far to the northward as N. W. by N. ſome ſhoals, quays, and low ſandy iſles ſtretching away to the N. E. 1770. Auguſt.

At ſix o'clock in the morning, we got under ſail, with a freſh breeze at E. and ſtood away N. N. W. for ſome low iſlands in that direction, but were ſoon obliged to haul cloſe upon a wind to weather a ſhoal which we diſcovered upon our larboard bow, having at the ſame time others to the eaſtward: by the time we had weathered this ſhoal to leeward, we had brought the iſlands well upon our lee bow; but ſeeing ſome ſhoals run off from them, and ſome rocks on our ſtarboard bow, which we did not diſcover till we were very near them, I was afraid to go to windward of the iſlands, and therefore brought to, and having made the ſignal for the pinnace, which was a-head, to come on board, I ſent her to leeward of the iſlands, with orders to keep along the edge of the ſhoal, which ran off from the ſouth ſide of the ſouthernmoſt iſland, ſending the yawl at the ſame time, to run over the ſhoal in ſearch of turtle. As ſoon as the pinnace had got to a proper diſtance, we wore, and ſtood after her: as we ran to leeward of this iſland, we took the yawl in tow, ſhe having ſeen only one ſmall turtle, and therefore made but little ſtay upon the ſhoal. The iſland we found to be a ſmall ſpot of land, with ſome trees upon it, and we could diſcern many huts, or habitations of the natives, whom we ſuppoſed occaſionally to viſit theſe iſlands from the main, they being only five leagues diſtant, to catch turtle, when they come ashore to lay their eggs. We continued to ſtand after the pinnace N. N. E. and N. by E. for two other low iſlands, having two ſhoals without us, and one between us and the main. At noon, we were about four leagues from the main, which we ſaw extending to the northward, as far as N. W. by N. all flat and ſandy. Our latitude, by obſervation, was 11° 23′ S. and our longitude 217° 46′ W. our ſoundings were from fourteen to Monday 20.

1770. Auguſt. twenty-three fathoms; but theſe, as well as the ſhoals and iſlands, which are too numerous to be particularly mentioned, will be beſt ſeen upon the chart. By one o'clock we had run nearly the length of the ſouthernmoſt of the two iſlands in ſight, and finding that the going to the windward of them would carry us too far from the main, we bore up and ran to leeward, where finding a fair open paſſage, we ſteered N. by W. in a direction parallel to the main, leaving a ſmall iſland which lay between it and the ſhip, and ſome low ſandy iſles and ſhoals without us, of all which we loſt ſight by four o'clock, and ſaw no more before the ſun went down: at this time the fartheſt part of the land in ſight bore N. N. W. ½ W. and ſoon after we anchored in thirteen fathoms, upon ſoft ground, at the diſtance of about five leagues from the land, where we lay till day light.

Tueſd. 21. Early in the morning we made ſail again, and ſteered N. N. W. by compaſs, for the northernmoſt land in ſight; and at this time, we obſerved the variation of the needle to be 3° 6′ E. At eight o'clock, we diſcovered ſhoals a-head, and on our larboard bow, and ſaw that the northernmoſt land, which we had taken for the main, was detached from it, and that we might paſs between them, by running to leeward of the ſhoals on our larboard bow, which were now near us: we therefore wore and brought to, ſending away the pinnace and yawl to direct us, and then ſteered N. W. along the S. W. or inſide of the ſhoals, keeping a good look-out from the maſt-head, and having another ſhoal on our larboard ſide: we found however a good channel of a mile broad between them, in which we had from ten to fourteen fathoms. At eleven o'clock, we were near the length of the land detached from the main, and there appeared to be no obſtruction in the paſſage between them, yet having the long-boat a-ſtern, and rigged, we ſent her away to keep in ſhore upon our larboard bow, and at the ſame time diſpatched the pinnace a-ſtarboard; precautions which I thought neceſſary, as we had a ſtrong flood that carried us on very faſt, and it was near high-water: as ſoon as the boats were a-head, we ſtood after them, and by noon got through the paſſage. Our latitude, by obſervation

was then 10° 36′, and the neareſt part of the main, which we ſoon after found to be the northernmoſt, bore W. 2 S. diſtant between three or four miles: we found the land which was detached from the main, to be a ſingle iſland, extending from N. to N. 75 E. diſtant between two and three miles; at the ſame time we ſaw other iſlands at a conſiderable diſtance, extending from N. by W. to W. N. W. and behind them another chain of high land, which we judged alſo to be iſlands: there were ſtill other iſlands, extending as far as N. 71 W. which at this time we took for the main. 1770. Auguſt.

The point of the main which forms the ſide of the channel through which we had paſſed, oppoſite to the iſland, is the northern promontory of the country, and I called it YORK CAPE. Its longitude is 218° 24′ W. the latitude of the north point is 10° 37′, and of the eaſt point 10° 42′ S. The land over the eaſt point, and to the ſouthward of it, is rather low, and as far as the eye can reach, very flat, and of a barren appearance. To the ſouthward of the Cape the ſhore forms a large open bay, which I called NEWCASTLE Bay, and in which are ſome ſmall low iſlands and ſhoals; the land adjacent is alſo very low, flat, and ſandy. The land of the northern part of the Cape is more hilly, the vallies ſeem to be well cloathed with wood, and the ſhore forms ſome ſmall bays, in which there appeared to be good anchorage. Cloſe to the eaſtern point of the Cape are three ſmall iſlands, from one of which a ſmall ledge of rocks runs out into the ſea: there is alſo an iſland cloſe to the northern point. The iſland that forms the ſtreight or channel through which we had paſſed, lies about four miles without theſe, which, except two, are very ſmall: the ſouthernmoſt is the largeſt, and much higher than any part of the main land. On the north-weſt ſide of this iſland there appeared to be good anchorage, and on ſhore, vallies that promiſed both wood and water. Theſe iſlands are diſtinguiſhed in the chart by the name of YORK ISLES. To the ſouthward, and ſouth-eaſt, and even to the eaſtward and northward of them, there are ſeveral other low iſlands, rocks, and ſhoals: our depth of water in ſailing between them and the main, was twelve, thirteen, and fourteen fathoms.

1770. August. We ſtood along the ſhore to the weſtward, with a gentle breeze at S. E. by S. and when we had advanced between three and four miles, we diſcovered the land a-head, which, when we firſt ſaw it, we took for the main, to be iſlands detached from it by ſeveral channels: upon this we ſent away the boats, with proper inſtructions, to lead us through that channel which was next the main; but ſoon after diſcovering rocks and ſhoals in this channel, I made a ſignal for the boats to go through the next channel to the northward, which lay between theſe iſlands, leaving ſome of them between us and the main: the ſhip followed, and had never leſs than five fathoms water in the narroweſt part of the channel, where the diſtance from iſland to iſland was about one mile and a half.

After four o'clock in the afternoon we anchored, being about a mile and a half, or two miles, within the entrance, in ſix fathoms and a half, with clear ground: the channel here had begun to widen, and the iſlands on each ſide of us were diſtant about a mile: the main land ſtretched away to the S. W. the fartheſt point in view bore S. 48 W. and the ſouthernmoſt point of the iſlands, on the north weſt ſide of the paſſage, bore S. 76 W. Between theſe two points we could ſee no land, ſo that we conceived hopes of having, at laſt, found a paſſage into the Indian ſea; however, that I might be able to determine with more certainty, I reſolved to land upon the iſland which lies at the ſouth-eaſt point of the paſſage. Upon this iſland we had ſeen many of the inhabitants when we firſt came to an anchor, and when I went into the boat, with a party of men, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, in order to go aſhore, we ſaw ten of them upon a hill, nine of them were armed with ſuch lances as we had been uſed to ſee, and the tenth had a bow, and a bundle of arrows, which we had never ſeen in the poſſeſſion of the natives of this country before: we alſo obſerved, that two of them had large ornaments of mother-of-pearl hanging round their necks. Three of theſe, one of whom was the bow-man, placed themſelves upon the beach a-breaſt of us, and we expected that they would have oppoſed our landing, but when we came within about a muſket's ſhot of the beach, they walked leiſurely away. We immediately

immediately climbed the higheſt hill, which was not more than three times as high as the maſt-head, and the moſt barren of any we had ſeen. From this hill, no land could be ſeen between the S. W. and W. S. W. ſo that I had no doubt of finding a channel through. The land to the north-weſt of it conſiſted of a great number of iſlands of various extent, and different heights, ranged one behind another, as far to the northward and weſtward as I could ſee, which could not be leſs than thirteen leagues. As I was now about to quit the eaſtern coaſt of New Holland, which I had coaſted from latitude 38 to this place, and which I am confident no European had ever ſeen before, I once more hoiſted Engliſh colours, and though I had already taken poſſeſſion of ſeveral particular parts, I now took poſſeſſion of the whole eaſtern coaſt, from latitude 38° to this place, latitude 10½ S. in right of his Majeſty King George the Third, by the name of NEW SOUTH WALES, with all the bays, harbours, rivers, and iſlands ſituated upon it: we then fired three vollies of ſmall arms, which were anſwered by the ſame number from the ſhip. Having performed this ceremony upon the iſland, which we called POSSESSION ISLAND, we re-imbarked in our boat, but a rapid ebb tide ſetting N. E. made our return to the veſſel very difficult and tedious. From the time of our laſt coming among the ſhoals, we conſtantly found a moderate tide, and flood ſetting to the N. W. and the ebb to the S. E. At this place it is high water at the full and change of the moon, about one or two o'clock, and the water riſes and falls perpendicularly about twelve feet. We ſaw ſmoke riſing in many places from the adjacent lands and iſlands, as we had done upon every part of the coaſt, after our laſt return to it through the reef. 1770. Auguſt.

We continued at anchor all night, and between ſeven and eight o'clock in the morning, we ſaw three or four of the natives upon the beach gathering ſhell-fiſh; we diſcovered, by the help of our glaſſes, that they were women, and, like all the other inhabitants of this country, ſtark naked. At low water, which happened about ten o'clock, we got under ſail, and ſtood to the S. W. Wedneſ. 22. Thurſd. 23.

1770. August. We ſtood along the ſhore to the weſtward, with a gentle breeze at S. E. by S. and when we had advanced between three and four miles, we diſcovered the land a-head, which, when we firſt ſaw it, we took for the main, to be iſlands detached from it by ſeveral channels: upon this we ſent away the boats, with proper inſtructions, to lead us through that channel which was next the main; but ſoon after diſcovering rocks and ſhoals in this channel, I made a ſignal for the boats to go through the next channel to the northward, which lay between theſe iſlands, leaving ſome of them between us and the main: the ſhip followed, and had never leſs than five fathoms water in the narroweſt part of the channel, where the diſtance from iſland to iſland was about one mile and a half.

After four o'clock in the afternoon we anchored, being about a mile and a half, or two miles, within the entrance, in ſix fathoms and a half, with clear ground: the channel here had begun to widen, and the iſlands on each ſide of us were diſtant about a mile: the main land ſtretched away to the S. W. the fartheſt point in view bore S. 48 W. and the ſouthernmoſt point of the iſlands, on the north weſt ſide of the paſſage, bore S. 76 W. Between theſe two points we could ſee no land, ſo that we conceived hopes of having, at laſt, found a paſſage into the Indian ſea; however, that I might be able to determine with more certainty, I reſolved to land upon the iſland which lies at the ſouth-eaſt point of the paſſage. Upon this iſland we had ſeen many of the inhabitants when we firſt came to an anchor, and when I went into the boat, with a party of men, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, in order to go aſhore, we ſaw ten of them upon a hill, nine of them were armed with ſuch lances as we had been uſed to ſee, and the tenth had a bow, and a bundle of arrows, which we had never ſeen in the poſſeſſion of the natives of this country before: we alſo obſerved, that two of them had large ornaments of mother-of-pearl hanging round their necks. Three of theſe, one of whom was the bow-man, placed themſelves upon the beach a-breaſt of us, and we expected that they would have oppoſed our landing, but when we came within about a muſket's ſhot of the beach, they walked leiſurely away. We immediately

immediately climbed the higheſt hill, which was not more than three times as high as the maſt-head, and the moſt barren of any we had ſeen. From this hill, no land could be ſeen between the S. W. and W. S. W. ſo that I had no doubt of finding a channel through. The land to the north-weſt of it conſiſted of a great number of iſlands of various extent, and different heights, ranged one behind another, as far to the northward and weſtward as I could ſee, which could not be leſs than thirteen leagues. As I was now about to quit the eaſtern coaſt of New Holland, which I had coaſted from latitude 38 to this place, and which I am confident no European had ever ſeen before, I once more hoiſted Engliſh colours, and though I had already taken poſſeſſion of ſeveral particular parts, I now took poſſeſſion of the whole eaſtern coaſt, from latitude 38° to this place, latitude 10½ S. in right of his Majeſty King George the Third, by the name of NEW SOUTH WALES, with all the bays, harbours, rivers, and iſlands ſituated upon it: we then fired three vollies of ſmall arms, which were anſwered by the ſame number from the ſhip. Having performed this ceremony upon the iſland, which we called POSSESSION ISLAND, we re-imbarked in our boat, but a rapid ebb tide ſetting N. E. made our return to the veſſel very difficult and tedious. From the time of our laſt coming among the ſhoals, we conſtantly found a moderate tide, and flood ſetting to the N. W. and the ebb to the S. E. At this place it is high water at the full and change of the moon, about one or two o'clock, and the water riſes and falls perpendicularly about twelve feet. We ſaw ſmoke riſing in many places from the adjacent lands and iſlands, as we had done upon every part of the coaſt, after our laſt return to it through the reef. 1770. Auguſt.

We continued at anchor all night, and between ſeven and eight o'clock in the morning, we ſaw three or four of the natives upon the beach gathering ſhell-fiſh; we diſcovered, by the help of our glaſſes, that they were women, and, like all the other inhabitants of this country, ſtark naked. At low water, which happened about ten o'clock, we got under ſail, and ſtood to the S. W. Wedneſ. 22. Thurſd. 23.

1770. August. with a light breeze at E. which afterwards veered to N. by E. our depth of water was from ſix to ten fathoms, except in one place, where we had but five. At noon Poſſeſſion Iſland bore N. 53 E. diſtant four leagues, the weſtern extremity of the main land in ſight bore S. 43 W. diſtant between four and five leagues, and appeared to be extremely low, the ſouth-weſt point of the largeſt iſland on the north-weſt ſide of the paſſage bore N. 71 W. diſtant eight miles, and this point I called Cape Cornwall. It lies in latitude 10° 43′ S. longitude 219° W. and ſome low iſlands that lie about the middle of the paſſage, which I called Wallis's Isles, bore W. by S. ½ S. diſtant about two leagues: our latitude, by obſervation, was 10° 46′ S. We continued to advance with the tide of flood W. N. W. having little wind, and from eight to five fathoms water. At half an hour after one, the pinnace, which was a-head, made the ſignal for ſhoal water, upon which we tacked, and ſent away the yawl to ſound alſo: we then tacked again, and ſtood after them: in about two hours, they both made the ſignal for ſhoal water, and the tide being nearly at its greateſt height, I was afraid to ſtand on, as running a-ground at that time might be fatal; I therefore came to an anchor in ſomething leſs than ſeven fathoms, ſandy ground. Wallis's Iſlands bore S. by W. ½ W. diſtant five or ſix miles, the iſlands to the northward extended from S. 73 E. to N. 10 E. and a ſmall iſland, which was juſt in ſight, bore N. W. ½ W. Here we found the flood tide ſet to the weſtward, and the ebb to the eaſtward.

After we had come to an anchor, I ſent away the Maſter in the long-boat to ſound, who, upon his return in the evening, reported, that there was a bank ſtretching north and ſouth, upon which there were but three fathoms, and that beyond it there were ſeven. About this time it fell calm, and continued ſo till nine
Friday 24. the next morning, when we weighed, with a light breeze at S. S. E. and ſteered N. W. by W. for the ſmall iſland which was juſt in ſight, having firſt ſent the boats a-head to ſound: the depth of water was eight, ſeven, ſix, five, and four fathoms, and three

fathoms

fathoms upon the bank, it being now the laſt quarter ebb. At this time, the northermoſt iſland in ſight bore N. 9 E. Cape Cornwall E. diſtant three leagues, and Wallis's Iſles S. 3 E. diſtant three leagues. This bank, at leaſt ſo much as we have ſounded, extends nearly N. and S. but to what diſtance I do not know: its breadth is not more than half a mile at the utmoſt. When we had got over the bank, we deepened our water to ſix fathoms three quarters, and had the ſame depth all the way to the ſmall iſland a-head, which we reached by noon, when it bore S. diſtant about half a mile. Our depth of water was now five fathoms, and the northernmoſt land in ſight, which is part of the ſame chain of iſlands that we had ſeen to the northward from the time of our firſt entering the ſtreight, bore N. 71 E. Our latitude, by obſervation, was 10° 33′ S. and our longitude 219° 22′ W. in this ſituation, no part of the main was in ſight. As we were now near the iſland, and had but little wind, Mr. Banks and I landed upon it, and found it, except a few patches of wood, to be a barren rock, the haunt of birds, which had frequented it in ſuch numbers, as to make the ſurface almoſt uniformly white with their dung: of theſe birds, the greater part ſeemed to be boobies, and I therefore called the place BOOBY ISLAND. After a ſhort ſtay, we returned to the ſhip, and in the mean time the wind had got to the S. W. it was but a gentle breeze, yet it was accompanied by a ſwell from the ſame quarter, which, with other circumſtances, confirmed my opinion that we were got to the weſtward of Carpentaria, or the northern extremity of New Holland, and had now an open ſea to the weſtward, which gave me great ſatisfaction, not only becauſe the dangers and fatigues of the voyage were drawing to an end, but becauſe it would no longer be a doubt whether New Holland and New Guinea were two ſeparate iſlands, or different parts of the ſame.

1770. August.

The north-eaſt entrance of this paſſage, or ſtreight, lies in the latitude of 10° 39′ S. and in the longitude of 218° 36′ W. It is formed by the main or the northern extremity of New Holland, on the S. E. and by a congeries of iſlands, which I called the PRINCE OF WALES'S ISLANDS, to the N. W. and it is probable that theſe iſlands extend quite to New Guinea. They

differ

1770. August. differ very much both in height and circuit, and many of them ſeemed to be well clothed with herbage and wood: upon moſt, if not all of them, we ſaw ſmoke, and therefore there can be no doubt of their being inhabited: it is alſo probable, that among them there are at leaſt as good paſſages as that we came through, perhaps better, though better need not be deſired, if the acceſs to it, from the eaſtward, were leſs dangerous: that a leſs dangerous acceſs may be diſcovered, I think there is little reaſon to doubt, and to find it little more ſeems to be neceſſary, than to determine how far the principal, or outer reef, which bounds the ſhoals to the eaſtward, extends towards the north, which I would not have left to future navigators, if I had been leſs harraſſed by danger and fatigue, and had had a ſhip in better condition for the purpoſe.

To this channel, or paſſage, I have given the name of the ſhip, and called it ENDEAVOUR STREIGHTS. Its length from N. E. to S. W. is ten leagues, and it is about five leagues broad, except at the north-eaſt entrance, where it is ſomewhat leſs than two miles, being contracted by the iſlands which lie there. That which I called Poſſeſſion Iſland is of a moderate height and circuit, and this we left between us and the main, paſſing between it and two ſmall round iſlands, which lie about two miles to the N. W. of it. The two ſmall iſlands, which I called Wallis's Iſlands, lie in the middle of the ſouth-weſt entrance, and theſe we left to the ſouthward. Our depth of water in the ſtreight was from four to nine fathoms, with every where good anchorage, except upon the bank which lies two leagues to the northward of Wallis's Iſlands, where, at low water, there are but three fathoms: for a more particular knowledge of this ſtreight, and of the ſituation of the ſeveral iſlands and ſhoals on the eaſtern coaſt of New Wales, I refer to the chart, where they are delineated with all the accuracy that circumſtances would admit; yet, with reſpect to the ſhoals, I cannot pretend that one half of them are laid down, nor can it be ſuppoſed poſſible that one half of them ſhould be diſcovered in the courſe of a ſingle navigation: many iſlands alſo muſt have eſcaped my pencil, eſpecially between latitude 20° and 22°, where we ſaw iſlands out at ſea

sea as far as an island could be distinguished; it must not therefore be supposed, by future navigators, that where no shoal or island is laid down in my chart, no shoal or island will be found in these seas: it is enough that the situation of those that appear in the chart is faithfully ascertained, and, in general, I have the greatest reason to hope that it will be found as free from error as any that has not been corrected by subsequent and successive observations. The latitudes and longitudes of all, or most of the principal head-lands and bays, may be confided in; for we seldom failed of getting an observation once at least every day, by which to correct the latitude of our reckoning, and observations for settling the longitude were equally numerous, no opportunity that was offered by the sun and moon being suffered to escape. It would be injurious to the memory of Mr. Green, not to take this opportunity of attesting that he was indefatigable both in making observations and calculating upon them; and that, by his instructions and assistance, many of the petty officers were enabled both to observe and calculate with great exactness. This method of finding the longitude at sea, may be put into universal practice, and may always be depended upon within half a degree, which is sufficient for all nautical purposes. If, therefore, observing and calculating were considered as necessary qualifications for every sea officer, the labours of the speculative theorist to solve this problem might be remitted, without much injury to mankind: neither will it be so difficult to acquire this qualification, or put it in practice, as may at first appear; for, with the assistance of the nautical almanack, and astronomical ephemeris, the calculations for finding the longitude will take up little more time than the calculation of an azimuth for finding the variation of the compass.

1770. August.

CHAP.

1770. August.

CHAP. VIII.

Departure from New South Wales. A particular Description of the Country, its Products, and People. A Specimen of the Language; and some Observations upon the Currents and Tides.

OF this country, its products, and its people, many particulars have already been related in the course of the narrative, being so interwoven with the events, as not to admit of a separation. I shall now give a more full and circumstantial description of each, in which, if some things should happen to be repeated, the greater part will be found new.

New Holland, or, as I have now called the eastern coast, New South Wales, is of a larger extent than any other country in the known world that does not bear the name of a continent. The length of coast along which we sailed, reduced to a straight line, is no less than twenty-seven degrees of latitude, amounting to near 200 miles, so that its square surface must be much more than equal to all Europe. To the southward of 33 or 34, the land in general is low and level; farther northward it is hilly, but in no part can be called mountainous, and the hills and mountains, taken together, make but a small part of the surface, in comparison with the vallies and plains. It is, upon the whole, rather barren than fertile, yet the rising ground is chequered by woods and lawns, and the plains and vallies are in many places covered with herbage: the soil however is frequently sandy, and many of the lawns or savannahs, are rocky and barren, especially to the northward, where, in the best spots, vegetation was less vigorous than in the southern part of the country; the trees were not so tall, nor was the herbage so rich. The grass in general is high but thin, and the trees, when they are largest, are seldom less than forty feet asunder; nor is the country inland, as far as we could examine it, better cloathed than the sea coast. The banks of the bay are covered with mangroves, to the distance of a mile within the beach, under which the soil is a rank mud

that

that is always overflowed by a ſpring tide; farther in the country we ſometimes met with a bog, upon which the graſs was very thick and luxuriant, and ſometimes with a valley that was cloathed with underwood. The ſoil in ſome parts ſeemed to be capable of improvement, but the far greater part is ſuch as can admit of no cultivation. The coaſt, at leaſt that part of it which lies to the northward of 25° S. abounds with fine bays and harbours, where veſſels may lie in perfect ſecurity from all winds. 1770. Auguſt.

If we may judge by the appearance of the country while we were there, which was in the very height of the dry ſeaſon, it is well watered. We found innumerable ſmall brooks and ſprings, but no great rivers; theſe brooks, however, probably become large in the rainy ſeaſon. Thirſty Sound was the only place where freſh water was not to be procured for the ſhip, and even there one or two ſmall pools were found in the woods, though the face of the country was every where interſected by ſalt-creeks and mangrove-land.

Of trees there is no great variety. Of thoſe that could be called timber, there are but two ſorts; the largeſt is the gum-tree, which grows all over the country, and has been mentioned already: it has narrow leaves, not much unlike a willow, and the gum, or rather reſin, which it yields, is of a deep red, and reſembles the *ſanguis draconis:* poſſibly it may be the ſame, for this ſubſtance is known to be the produce of more than one plant. It is mentioned by Dampier, and is perhaps the ſame that Taſman found upon Diemen's Land, where, he ſays, he ſaw "Gum of the trees, "and gum lac of the ground." The other timber tree is that which grows ſomewhat like our pines, and has been particularly mentioned in the account of Botany Bay. The wood of both theſe trees, as I have before remarked, is extremely hard and heavy. Beſides theſe, here are trees covered with a ſoft bark that is eaſily peeled off, and is the ſame that in the Eaſt Indies is uſed for the caulking of ſhips.

We found here the palm of three different ſorts: the firſt, which grows in great plenty to the ſouthward, has leaves that are plaited like a fan; the cabbage of theſe is ſmall, but exquiſitely ſweet, and the nuts, which

1770. August. which it bears in great abundance, are very good food for hogs. The ſecond ſort bore a much greater reſemblance to the true cabbage-tree of the Weſt Indies; its leaves were large and pinnated, like thoſe of the cocoa-nut; and theſe alſo produced a cabbage, which though not ſo ſweet as the other, was much larger. The third ſort, which, like the ſecond, was found only in the northern parts, was ſeldom more than ten feet high, with ſmall pinnated leaves, reſembling thoſe of ſome kind of fern; it bore no cabbage, but a plentiful crop of nuts, about the ſize of a large cheſtnut, but rounder. As we found the hulls of theſe ſcattered round the places where the Indians had made their fires, we took for granted that they were fit to eat; thoſe, however, who made the experiment, paid dear for their knowledge of the contrary, for they operated both as an emetic and cathartic with great violence. Still, however, we made no doubt but that they were eaten by the Indians; and judging that the conſtitution of the hogs might be as ſtrong as theirs, though our own had proved to be ſo much inferior, we carried them to the ſtye; the hogs eat them, indeed, and for ſome time, we thought, without ſuffering any inconvenience; but in about a week they were ſo much diſordered that two of them died, and the reſt were recovered with great difficulty. It is probable, however, that the poiſonous quality of theſe nuts may lie in the juice, like that of the caſſada of the Weſt Indies, and that the pulp, when dried, may be not only wholeſome but nutritious. Beſides theſe ſpecies of the palm and mangroves, there were ſeveral ſmall trees and ſhrubs, altogether unknown in Europe, particularly one which produced a very poor kind of fig; another that bore what we called a plum, which it reſembled in colour, but not in ſhape, being flat on the ſides like a little cheeſe; and a third that bore a kind of purple apple, which, after it had been kept a few days, became eatable, and taſted ſomewhat like a damaſcene.

Here is a great variety of plants to enrich the collection of a botaniſt, but very few of them are of the eſculent kind. A ſmall plant, with long, narrow, graſſy leaves, reſembling that kind of bullruſh, which in England is called the Cat's-tail, yields a reſin of a bright yellow

yellow colour, exactly reſembling gambouge, except that it does not ſtain; it has a ſweet ſmell, but its properties we had no opportunity to diſcover, any more than thoſe of many others with which the natives appear to be acquainted, as they have diſtinguiſhed them by names. 1770. Auguſt.

I have already mentioned the root and leaves of a plant reſembling the coccos of the Weſt Indies, and a kind of bean; to which may be added, a ſort of parſley and purſelain, and two kinds of yams, one ſhaped like a raddiſh, and the other round and covered with ſtringy fibres: both ſorts are very ſmall, but ſweet, and we never could find the plants that produced them, though we often ſaw the places where they had been newly dug up; it is probable that the drought had deſtroyed the leaves, and we could not, like the Indians, diſcover them by the ſtalks.

Moſt of the fruits of this country, ſuch as they are, have been mentioned already. We found one in the ſouthern part of the country reſembling a cherry, except that the ſtone was ſoft; and another not unlike a pine-apple in appearance, but of a very diſagreeable taſte, which is well known in the Eaſt Indies, and is called by the Dutch *Pyn Appel Boomen.*

Of the quadrupeds, I have already mentioned the dog, and particularly deſcribed the kanguroo, and the animal of the opoſſum kind, reſembling the phalanger of Buffon; to which I can add only one more, reſembling a polecat, which the natives call Quoll; the back is brown, ſpotted with white, and the belly white unmixed. Several of our people ſaid they had ſeen wolves, but perhaps if we had not ſeen tracks that favoured the account, we might have thought them little more worthy of credit than he who reported that he had ſeen the devil.

Of bats, which hold a middle place between the beaſts and the birds, we ſaw many kinds, particularly one which, as I have obſerved already, was larger than a partridge. We were not fortunate enough to take one either alive or dead, but it was ſuppoſed to be the ſame as Buffon has deſcribed by the name of Rouſet or Rouget.

The

1770. August. The ſea and other water-fowl of this country ar gulls, ſhaggs, ſoland-geeſe, or gannets, of two ſort boobies, noddies, curlieus, ducks, pelicans of an enor mous ſize, and many others. The land birds are crow parrots, paroquets, cockatoos, and other birds of th ſame kind, of exquiſite beauty; pigeons, doves, quail buſtards, herons, cranes, hawks, and eagles. The pi geons flew in numerous flocks, ſo that, notwithſtandin their extreme ſhyneſs, our people frequently killed te or twelve of them in a day; theſe birds are very beau tiful, and creſted very differently from any we had ſee before.

Among other reptiles, here are ſerpents of variou kinds, ſome noxious and ſome harmleſs, ſcorpion centipieds, and lizards. The inſects are but few; th principal are the muſquito, and the ant. Of the an there are ſeveral ſorts; ſome are as green as a leaf, an live upon trees, where they build their neſts of variou ſizes, between that of a man's head and his fiſt. Thei neſts are of a very curious ſtructure; they are forme by bending down ſeveral of the leaves, each of whic is as broad as a man's hand, and gluing the points o them together, ſo as to form a purſe; the viſcus uſe for this purpoſe is an animal juice, which Nature ha enabled them to elaborate. Their method of fir bending down the leaves we had not an opportunity t obſerve, but we ſaw thouſands uniting all their ſtrengt to hold them in this poſition, while other buſy mult tudes were employed within, in applying the glute that was to prevent their returning back. To ſatisf ourſelves that the leaves were bent, and held down b the effort of theſe diminutive artificers, we diſturbe them in their work; and as ſoon as they were drive from their ſtation, the leaves on which they were em ployed ſprung up with a force much greater than w could have thought them able to conquer by any com bination of their ſtrength. But though we gratified ou curioſity at their expence, the injury did not go unre venged, for thouſands immediately threw themſelve upon us, and gave us intolerable pain with their ſting eſpecially thoſe which took poſſeſſion of our necks an our hair, from whence they were not eaſily driven the ſting was ſcarcely leſs painful than that of a bee bu

but, except it was repeated, the pain did not laſt more than a minute. 1770. August.

Another ſort are quite black, and their operations and manner of life are not leſs extraordinary. Their habitations are the inſide of the branches of a tree, which they contrive to excavate, by working out the pith almoſt to the extremity of the ſlendereſt twig; the tree at the ſame time flouriſhing as if it had no ſuch inmate. When we firſt found the tree, we gathered ſome of the branches, and were ſcarcely leſs aſtoniſhed than we ſhould have been to find that we had profaned a conſecrated grove, where every tree, upon being wounded, gave ſigns of life; for we were inſtantly covered with legions of theſe animals, ſwarming from every broken bough, and inflicting their ſtings with inceſſant violence. They are mentioned by Rumphius in his *Herbarium Amboinenſe*, vol. ii. p. 257. but the tree in which he ſaw their dwelling is very different from that in which we found them.

A third kind we found neſted in the root of a plant, which grows on the bark of trees in the manner of miſletoe, and which they had perforated for that uſe. This root is commonly as big as a large turnip, and ſometimes much bigger; when we cut it, we found it interſected by innumerable winding paſſages, all filled with theſe animals, by which, however, the vegetation of the plant did not appear to have ſuffered any injury. We never cut one of theſe roots that was not inhabited, though ſome were not bigger than a hazel-nut. The animals themſelves are very ſmall, not more than half as big as the common red ant in England. They had ſtings, but ſcarcely force enough to make them felt; they had, however, a power of tormenting us in an equal, if not a greater degree; for the moment we handled the root, they ſwarmed from innumerable holes, and running about thoſe parts of the body that were uncovered, produced a titillation more intolerable than pain, except it is increaſed to great violence. Rumphius has alſo given an account of this bulb and its inhabitants, vol. vi. p. 120, where he mentions another ſort that are black.

1770. August.

We found a fourth kind, which are perfectly harmleſs, and almoſt exactly reſemble the white ants of the Eaſt Indies; the architecture of theſe is ſtill more curious than that of the others. They have houſes of two ſorts, one is ſuſpended on the branches of trees, and the other erected upon the ground: thoſe upon the trees are about three or four times as big as a man's head, and are built of a brittle ſubſtance, which ſeems to conſiſt of ſmall parts of vegetables kneaded together with a glutinous matter, which their bodies probably ſupply; upon breaking this cruſt, innumerable cells, ſwarming with inhabitants, appear in a great variety of winding directions, all communicating with each other, and with ſeveral apertures that lead to other neſts upon the ſame tree: they have alſo one large avenue, or covered way, leading to the ground, and carried on under it to the other neſt or houſe that is conſtructed there. This houſe is generally at the root of a tree, but not of that upon which their other dwellings are conſtructed; it is formed like an irregularly ſided cone, and ſometimes is more than ſix feet high, and nearly as much in diameter. Some are ſmaller, and theſe are generally flat ſided, and very much reſemble in figure the ſtones which are ſeen in many parts of England, and ſuppoſed to be the remains of druidical antiquity. The outſide of theſe is of well-tempered clay, about two inches thick, and within are the cells, which have no opening outwards, but communicate only with the ſubterraneous way to the houſes on the tree, and to the tree near which they are conſtructed, where they aſcend up the root, and ſo up the trunk and branches, under covered ways of the ſame kind as thoſe by which they deſcended from their other dwellings. To theſe ſtructures on the ground they probably retire in the winter, or rainy ſeaſons, as they are proof againſt any wet that can fall, which thoſe in the tree, though generally conſtructed under ſome over-hanging branch, from the nature and thinneſs of their cruſt, or wall, cannot be.

The ſea in this country is much more liberal of food to the inhabitants than the land; and though fiſh is not quite ſo plenty here, as they generally are in higher latitudes, yet we ſeldom hauled the ſeine without taking

fro

from fifty to two hundred weight. They are of various sorts; but, except the mullet, and ſome of the ſhell-fiſh, none of them are known in Europe; moſt of them are palateable, and ſome are very delicious. Upon the ſhoals and reefs there are incredible numbers of the fineſt green turtle in the world, and oyſters of various kinds, particularly the rock-oyſter and the pearl-oyſter. The gigantic cockles have been mentioned already; beſides which there are ſea cray-fiſh, or lobſters, and crabs; of theſe, however, we ſaw only the ſhells. In the rivers and ſalt creeks there are alligators. 1770. Auguſt.

The only perſon who has hitherto given any account of this country, or its inhabitants, is Dampier; and though he is, in general, a writer of credit, yet in many particulars he is miſtaken. The people whom he ſaw, were indeed inhabitants of a part of the coaſt very diſtant from that which we viſited; but we alſo ſaw inhabitants upon parts of the coaſt very diſtant from each other, and there being a perfect uniformity in perſon and cuſtoms among them all, it is reaſonable to conclude, that diſtance in another direction has not conſiderably broken it.

The number of inhabitants in this country appears to be very ſmall in proportion to its extent. We never ſaw ſo many as thirty of them together but once, and that was at Botany Bay, when men, women, and children aſſembled upon a rock, to ſee the ſhip paſs by: when they manifeſtly formed a reſolution to engage us, they never could muſter above fourteen or fifteen fighting men; and we never ſaw a number of their ſheds or houſes together that could accommodate a larger party. It is true, indeed, that we ſaw only the ſea-coaſt on the eaſtern ſide, and that between this and the weſtern ſhore there is an immenſe tract of country wholly unexplored; but there is great reaſon to believe that this immenſe tract is either wholly deſolate, or at leaſt ſtill more thinly inhabited than the parts we viſited. It is impoſſible that the inland country ſhould ſubſiſt inhabitants at all ſeaſons without cultivation. It is extremely improbable that the inhabitants of the coaſt ſhould be totally ignorant of arts of cultivation which were practiſed inland; and it

1770. August. is equally improbable that, if they knew ſuch arts, there ſhould be no traces of them among them. It is certain, that we did not ſee one foot of ground in a ſtate of cultivation in the whole country, and therefore it may well be concluded, that where the ſea does not contribute to feed the inhabitants, the country is not inhabited.

The only tribe with which we had any intercourſe, we found where the ſhip was careened; it conſiſted of one-and-twenty perſons, twelve men, ſeven women, one boy, and one girl; the women we never ſaw but at a diſtance, for when the men came over the river they were always left behind. The men here, and in other places, were of a middle ſize, and in general well made, clean limbed, and remarkably vigorous, active and nimble; their countenances were not altogether without expreſſion, and their voices were remarkably ſoft and effeminate.

Their ſkins were ſo uniformly covered with dirt, that it was very difficult to aſcertain their true colour; we made ſeveral attempts, by wetting our fingers and rubbing it, to remove the incruſtations, but with very little effect. With the dirt they appear nearly as black as a Negroe, and, according to our beſt diſcoveries, the ſkin itſelf is of the colour of wood-ſoot, or what is commonly called chocolate colour. Their features are far from being diſagreeable, their noſes are not flat, nor are their lips thick; their teeth are white and even, and their hair naturally long and black; it is, however, univerſally cropped ſhort; in general it is ſtraight, but ſometimes it has a ſlight curl; we ſaw none that was not matted and filthy, though without oil or greaſe, and, to our great aſtoniſhment, free from lice. Their beards were of the ſame colour with their hair, and buſhy and thick; they are not, however, ſuffered to grow long. A man whom we had ſeen one day with his beard ſomewhat longer than his companions, we ſaw the next with it ſomewhat ſhorter, and upon examination found the ends of the hairs burnt: from this incident, and our having never ſeen any ſharp inſtrument among them, we concluded that both the hair and the beard were kept ſhort by ſingeing them.

Both

Both ſexes, as I have already obſerved, go ſtark naked, and ſeem to have no more ſenſe of indecency, in diſcovering the whole body, than we have in diſcovering our hands and face. Their principal ornament is the bone which they thruſt through the cartilage that divides the noſtrils from each other: what perverſion of taſte could make them think this a decoration, or what could prompt them, before they had worn it or ſeen it worn, to ſuffer the pain and inconveniency that muſt of neceſſity attend it, is perhaps beyond the power of human ſagacity to determine: as this bone is as thick as a man's finger, and between five and ſix inches long: it reaches quite acroſs the face, and ſo effectually ſtops up both the noſtrils, that they are forced to keep their mouths wide open for breath, and ſnuffle ſo when they attempt to ſpeak, that they are ſcarcely intelligible even to each other. Our ſeamen, with ſome humour, called it their ſpritſail-yard; and indeed it had ſo ludicrous an appearance, that till we were uſed to it, we found it difficult to refrain from laughter. Beſide this noſe-jewel, they had necklaces made of ſhells, very neatly cut and ſtrung together: bracelets of ſmall cord, wound two or three times about the upper part of their arm, and a ſtring of plaited human hair about as thick as a thread of yarn, tied round the waiſt. Beſides theſe, ſome of them had gorgets of ſhells hanging round the neck, ſo as to reach croſs the breaſt. But though theſe people wear no clothes, their bodies have a covering beſides the dirt, for they paint them both white and red: the red is commonly laid on in broad patches upon the ſhoulders and breaſt: and the white in ſtripes, ſome narrow, and ſome broad: the narrow were drawn over the limbs, and the broad over the body, not without ſome degree of taſte. The white was alſo laid on in ſmall patches upon the face, and drawn in a circle round each eye. The red ſeemed to be ochre, but what the white was we could not diſcover: it was cloſe grained, ſaponaceous to the touch, and almoſt as heavy as white lead; poſſibly it might be a kind of *Steatites*, but to our great regret we could not procure a bit of it to examine. They have holes in their ears, but we never ſaw any thing worn in them.

1770. Auguſt.

1770. August. Upon ſuch ornaments as they had, they ſet ſo great a value, that they would never part with the leaſt article for any thing we could offer; which was the more extraordinary, as our beads and ribbons were ornaments of the ſame kind, but of a more regular form and more ſhowy materials. They had indeed no idea of traffic, nor could we communicate any to them: they received the things that we gave them; but never appeared to underſtand our ſigns when we required a return. The ſame indifference, which prevented them from buying what we had, prevented them alſo from attempting to ſteal: if they had coveted more, they would have been leſs honeſt; for when we refuſed to give them a turtle, they were enraged, and attempted to take it by force, and we had nothing elſe upon which they ſeemed to ſet the leaſt value; for, as I have before obſerved, many of the things that we had given them, we found left negligently about in the woods, like the playthings of children, which pleaſe only while they are new. Upon their bodies we ſaw no marks of diſeaſe or ſores, but large ſcars in irregular lines, which appeared to be the remains of wounds which they had inflicted upon themſelves with ſome blunt inſtrument, and which we underſtood by ſigns to have been memorials of grief for the dead.

They appeared to have no fixed habitations, for we ſaw nothing like a town or village in the whole country. Their houſes, if houſes they may be called, ſeem to be formed with leſs art and induſtry than any we had ſeen, except the wretched hovels at Terra del Fuego, and in ſome reſpects they are inferior even to them. At Botany Bay, where they were beſt, they were juſt high enough for a man to ſit upright in; but not large enough for him to extend himſelf at his whole length in any direction: they are built with pliable rods about as thick as a man's finger, in the form of an oven, by ſticking the two ends into the ground, and then covering them with palm leaves, and broad pieces of bark: the door is nothing but a large hole at one end, oppoſite to which the fire is made, as we perceived by the aſhes. Under houſes, or ſheds, they ſleep, coiled up with their heels to their heads; and in this poſition one of them will

hold

hold three or four perſons. As we advanced northward, and the climate became warmer, we found theſe ſheds ſtill more ſlight: they were built, like the others, of twigs, and covered with bark; but none of them were more than four feet deep, and one ſide was intirely open: the cloſe ſide was always oppoſed to the courſe of the prevailing wind, and oppoſite to the open ſide was the fire, probably more as a defence from the muſquitos than the cold. Under theſe hovels it is probable, that they thruſt only their heads and the upper part of their bodies, extending their feet towards the fire. They were ſet up occaſionally by a wandering hord, in any place that would furniſh them for a time with ſubſiſtence, and left behind them when, after it was exhauſted, they went away: but in places where they remained only for a night or two, they ſlept without any ſhelter, except the buſhes or graſs, which is here near two feet high. We obſerved, however, that tho' the ſleeping huts which we found upon the main, were always turned from the prevailing wind, thoſe upon the iſlands were turned towards it; which ſeems to be a proof that they have a mild ſeaſon here, during which the ſea is calm, and that the ſame weather, which enables them to viſit the iſlands, makes the air welcome even while they ſleep. 1770. Auguſt.

The only furniture belonging to theſe houſes that fell under our obſervation, is a kind of oblong veſſel made of bark, by the ſimple contrivance of tying up the two ends with a withy, which not being cut off ſerves for a handle; theſe we imagined were uſed as buckets to fetch water from the ſpring, which may be ſuppoſed ſometimes to be at a conſiderable diſtance. They have however a ſmall bag, about the ſize of a moderate cabbage-net, which is made by laying threads loop within loop, ſomewhat in the manner of knitting uſed by our ladies to make purſes. This bag the man carries looſe upon his back by a ſmall ſtring which paſſes over his head; it generally contains a lump or two of paint and reſin, ſome fiſh-hooks and lines, a ſhell or two, out of which their hooks are made, a few points of darts, and their uſual ornaments, which includes the whole worldly treaſure of the richeſt man among them.

1770. August. Their fiſh-hooks are very neatly made, and ſome of them are exceedingly ſmall. For ſtriking turtle they have a peg of wood which is about a foot long, and very well bearded; this fits into a ſocket, at the end of a ſtaff of light wood, about as thick as a man's wriſt, and about ſeven or eight feet long: to the ſtaff is tied one end of a looſe line about three or four fathoms long, the other end of which is faſtened to the peg. To ſtrike the turtle, the peg is fixed into the ſocket, and when it has entered his body, and is retained there by the barb, the ſtaff flies off and ſerves for a float to trace their victim in the water; it aſſiſts alſo to tire him, till they can overtake him with their canoes, and haul him a-ſhore. One of theſe pegs, as I have mentioned already, we found buried in the body of a turtle, which had healed up over it. Their lines are from the thickneſs of a half inch rope to the fineneſs of a hair, and are made of ſome vegetable ſubſtance, but what in particular, we had no opportunity to learn.

Their food is chiefly fiſh, though they ſometimes contrive to kill the kanguroo, and even birds of various kinds; notwithſtanding they are ſo ſhy that we found it difficult to get within reach of them with a fowling-piece. The only vegetable that can be conſidered as an article of food is the yam; yet doubtleſs they eat the ſeveral fruits which have been mentioned among other productions of the country; and indeed we ſaw the ſhells and hulls of ſeveral of them lying about the places where they had kindled their fire.

They do not appear to eat any animal food raw; but having no veſſel in which water can be boiled, they either broil it upon the coals, or bake it in a hole by the help of hot ſtones, in the ſame manner as is practiſed by the inhabitants of the iſlands in the South Seas.

Whether they are acquainted with any plant that has an intoxicating quality, we do not know; but we obſerved that ſeveral of them held leaves of ſome ſort conſtantly in their mouths, as an European does tobacco, and an Eaſt Indian betele: we never ſaw the plant, but when they took it from their mouths at our requeſt; poſſibly it might be a ſpecies of the betele; but

but whatever it was, it had no effect upon the teeth or the lips. 1770. August.

As they have no nets, they catch fiſh only by ſtriking, or with a hook and line, except ſuch as they find in the hollows of the rocks and ſhoals, which are dry at half ebb.

Their manner of hunting we had no opportunity to ſee; but we conjectured, by the notches which they had every where cut in large trees in order to climb them, that they took their ſtation near the tops of them, and there watched for ſuch animals as might happen to paſs near enough to be reached by their lances: it is poſſible alſo, that in this ſituation they might take birds when they came to rooſt.

I have obſerved, that when they went from our tents upon the banks of Endeavour River, we could trace them by the fires which they kindled in their way; and we imagined that theſe fires were intended ſome way for the taking the kanguroo, which we obſerved to be ſo much afraid of fire, that our dogs could ſcarcely force it over places which had been newly burned, though the fire was extinguiſhed.

They produce fire with great facility, and ſpread it in a wonderful manner. To produce it, they take two pieces of dry ſoft wood, one is a ſtick about eight or nine inches long, the other piece is flat: the ſtick they ſhape into an obtuſe point at one end, and preſſing it upon the other, turn it nimbly, by holding it between both their hands as we do a chocolate mill, often ſhifting their hands up, and then moving them down upon it, to increaſe the preſſure as much as poſſible. By this method they get fire in leſs than two minutes, and from the ſmalleſt ſpark they increaſe it with great ſpeed and dexterity. We have often ſeen one of them run along the ſhore, to all appearance with nothing in his hand, who ſtooping down for a moment, at the diſtance of every fifty or a hundred yards, left fire behind him, as we could ſee firſt by the ſmoke, and then by the flame among the drift wood, and other litter which was ſcattered along the place. We had the curioſity to examine one of theſe planters of fire when he ſet off, and we ſaw him wrap up a ſmall ſpark in dry graſs, which, when he had run a little way, having been fanned by the

1770. August. the air that his motion produced, began to blaze; he then laid it down in a place convenient for his purpoſe, incloſing a ſpark of it in another quantity of graſs, and ſo continued his courſe.

There are perhaps few things in the hiſtory of mankind more extraordinary than the diſcovery and application of fire: it will ſcarcely be diſputed that the manner of producing it, whether by colliſion or attrition, was diſcovered by chance: but its firſt effects would naturally ſtrike thoſe to whom it was a new object with conſternation and terror: it would appear to be an enemy to life and nature, and to torment and deſtroy whatever was capable of being deſtroyed or tormented; and therefore it ſeems not eaſy to conceive what ſhould incline thoſe, who firſt ſaw it receive a tranſient exiſtence from chance, to produce it by deſign. It is by no means probable that thoſe who firſt ſaw fire approached it with the ſame caution, as thoſe who are familiar with its effects, ſo as to be warmed only and not burned; and it is reaſonable to think that the intolerable pain which, at its firſt appearance, it muſt produce upon ignorant curioſity, would ſow perpetual enmity between this element and mankind; and that the ſame principle which incites them to cruſh a ſerpent, would incite them to deſtroy fire, and avoid all means by which it would be produced, as ſoon as they were known. Theſe circumſtances conſidered, how men became ſufficiently familiar with it to render it uſeful, ſeems to be a problem very difficult to ſolve: nor is it eaſy to account for the firſt application of it to culinary purpoſes, as the eating both animal and vegetable food raw, muſt have become a habit, before there was fire to dreſs it, and thoſe who have conſidered the force of habit will readily believe, that to men, who had always eaten the fleſh of animals raw, it would be as diſagreeable dreſſed, as to thoſe who have always eaten it dreſſed it would be raw. It is remarkable that the inhabitants of Terra del Fuego produce fire from a ſpark by colliſion, and that the happier natives of this country, New Zealand, and Otaheite, produce it by the attrition of one combuſtible ſubſtance againſt another: is there not then ſome reaſon to ſuppoſe that theſe different operations correſpond with the manner in which

chanc

chance produced fire in the neighbourhood of the torrid and frigid zones? Among the rude inhabitants of a cold country, neither any operation of art, or occurrence of accident, could be ſuppoſed ſo eaſily to produce fire by attrition, as in a climate where every thing is hot, dry, and aduſt, teeming with a latent fire which a ſlight degree of motion was ſufficient to call forth; in a cold country, therefore, it is natural to ſuppoſe that fire was produced by the accidental colliſion of two metallic ſubſtances, and in a cold country, for that reaſon, the ſame expedient was uſed to produce it by deſign: but in hot countries, where two combuſtible ſubſtances eaſily kindle by attrition, it is probable that the attrition of ſuch ſubſtances firſt produced fire, and here it was therefore natural for art to adopt the ſame operation, with a view to produce the ſame effect. It may indeed be true that fire is now produced in many cold countries by attrition, and in many hot by a ſtroke; but perhaps upon enquiry there may appear reaſon to conclude, that this has ariſen from the communication of one country with another, and that with reſpect to the original production of fire in hot and cold countries, the diſtinction is well founded. 1770. Auguſt.

There may perhaps be ſome reaſon to ſuppoſe that men became gradually acquainted with the nature and effects of fire, by its permanent exiſtence in a volcano, there being remains of volcanos, or veſtiges of their effects, in almoſt every part of the world: by a volcano, however, no method of producing fire, otherwiſe than by contact, could be learned; the production and application of fire, therefore, ſtill ſeem to afford abundant ſubject of ſpeculation to the curious.

The weapons of theſe people are ſpears or lances, and theſe are of different kinds: ſome that we ſaw upon the ſouthern part of the coaſt had four prongs, pointed with bone, and barbed; the points were alſo ſmeared with a hard reſin, which gave them a poliſh, and made them enter deeper into what they ſtruck. To the northward, the lance has but one point: the ſhaft is made of cane, or the ſtalk of a plant ſomewhat reſembling a bullruſh, very ſtrait and light, and from eight to fourteen feet long, conſiſting of ſeveral

1770. August. ſeveral joints, where the pieces are let into each other, and bound together; to this are fitted points of different kinds; ſome are of a hard heavy wood, and ſome are the bones of fiſh; we ſaw ſeveral that were pointed with the ſtings of the ſting-ray, the largeſt that they could procure, and barbed with ſeveral that were ſmaller, faſtened on in a contrary direction; the points of wood were alſo ſometimes armed with ſharp pieces of broken ſhells, which were ſtuck in, and at the junctures covered with reſin: the lances that are thus barbed, are indeed dreadful weapons, for when once they have taken place, they can never be drawn back without tearing away the fleſh, or leaving the ſharp ragged ſplinters of the bone or ſhell which forms the beard behind them in the wound. Theſe weapons are thrown with great force and dexterity; if intended to wound at a ſhort diſtance, between ten and twenty yards, ſimply with the hand, but if at the diſtance of forty or fifty, with an inſtrument which we called a throwing ſtick. This is a plain ſmooth piece of a hard reddiſh wood, very highly poliſhed, about two inches broad, half an inch thick, and three feet long, with a ſmall knob, or hook at one end, and a croſs piece about three or four inches long at the other: the knob at one end is received in a ſmall dint or hollow, which is made for that purpoſe in the ſhaft of the lance near the point, but from which it eaſily ſlips, upon being impelled, forward: when the lance is laid along upon this machine, and ſecured in a proper poſition by the knob, the perſon that is to throw it holds it over his ſhoulder, and after ſhaking it, delivers both the throwing ſtick and lance with all his force; but the ſtick being ſtopped by the croſs piece which comes againſt the ſhoulder, with a ſudden jerk, the lance flies forward with incredible ſwiftneſs, and with ſo good an aim, that at the diſtance of fifty yards theſe Indians were more ſure of their mark than we could be with a ſingle bullet. Beſides theſe lances, we ſaw no offenſive weapon upon this coaſt, except when we took our laſt view of it with our glaſſes, and then we thought we ſaw a man with a bow and arrows, in which it is poſſible we might be miſtaken. We ſaw, however, at Botany Bay, a ſhield or target, of an oblong ſhape, about

about three feet long, and eighteen inches broad, which was made of the bark of a tree: this was fetched out of a hut by one of the men that oppoſed our landing, who, when he ran away, left it behind him, and upon taking it up, we found that it had been pierced through with a ſingle pointed lance near the center. Theſe ſhields are certainly in frequent uſe among the people here, for though this was the only one that we ſaw in their poſſeſſion, we frequently found trees from which they appeared manifeſtly to have been cut, the marks being eaſily diſtinguiſhed from thoſe that were made by cutting buckets: ſometimes alſo we found the ſhields cut out, but not yet taken off from the tree, the edges of the bark only being a little raiſed by wedges, ſo that theſe people appear to have diſcovered that the bark of a tree becomes thicker and ſtronger by being ſuffered to remain upon the trunk after it has been cut round. 1770. Auguſt.

The canoes of New Holland are as mean and rude as the houſes. Thoſe on the ſouthern part of the coaſt are nothing more than a piece of bark, about twelve feet long, tied together at the ends, and kept open in the middle by ſmall bows of wood; yet in a veſſel of this conſtruction we once ſaw three people. In ſhallow water they are ſet forward by a pole, and in deeper by paddles, about eighteen inches long, one of which the boatman holds in each hand; mean as they are, they have many conveniencies, they draw but little water, and they are very light, ſo that they go upon mud banks to pick up ſhell fiſh, the moſt important uſe to which they can be applied, better perhaps than veſſels of any other conſtruction. We obſerved, that in the middle of theſe canoes there was a heap of ſea-weed, and upon that a ſmall fire; probably that the fiſh may be broiled and eaten the moment it is caught.

The canoes that we ſaw when we advanced farther to the northward, are not made of bark, but of the trunk of a tree hollowed, perhaps by fire. They are about fourteen feet long, and, being very narrow, are fitted with an outrigger to prevent their overſetting. Theſe are worked with paddles, that are ſo large as to require both hands to manage one of them: the outſide is wholly unmarked by any tool, but at each end the wood

1770. August. wood is left longer at the top than at the bottom, ſo that that there is a projection beyond the hollow part reſembling the end of a plank; the ſides are tolerably thin, but how the tree is felled and faſhioned, we had no opportunity to learn. The only tools that we ſaw among them are an adze, wretchedly made of ſtone, ſome ſmall pieces of the ſame ſubſtance in form of a wedge, a wooden mallet, and ſome ſhells and fragments of coral. For poliſhing their throwing ſticks, and the points of their lances, they uſe the leaves of a kind of wild fig-tree, which bites upon wood almoſt as keenly as the ſhave-graſs of Europe, which is uſed by our joiners: with ſuch tools, the making even ſuch a canoe as I have deſcribed, muſt be a moſt difficult and tedious labour to thoſe who have been accuſtomed to the uſe of metal; it appears altogether impracticable; but there are few difficulties that will not yield to patient perſeverance, and he, who does all he can, will certainly produce effects that greatly exceed his apparent power.

The utmoſt freight of theſe canoes is four people, and if more at any time wanted to come over the river, one of thoſe who came firſt was obliged to go back for the reſt: from this circumſtance, we conjectured that the boat we ſaw, when we were lying in Endeavour River, was the only one in the neighbourhood: we have however ſome reaſon to believe that the bark canoes are alſo uſed where the wooden ones are conſtructed, for upon one of the ſmall iſlands where the natives had been fiſhing for turtle, we found one of the little paddles which had belonged to ſuch a boat, and would have been uſeleſs on board any other.

By what means the inhabitants of this country are reduced to ſuch a number as it can ſubſiſt, is not perhaps very eaſy to gueſs; whether, like the inhabitants of New Zealand, they are deſtroyed by the hands of each other in conteſts for food; whether they are ſwept off by accidental famine, or whether there is any cauſe which prevents the increaſe of the ſpecies, muſt be left for future adventurers to determine. That they have wars, appears by their weapons; for ſuppoſing the lances to ſerve merely for the ſtriking of fiſh, the ſhield could be intended for nothing but a defence against men

men; the only mark of hoſtility, however, which we ſaw among them, was the perforation of the ſhield by a ſpear which had been juſt mentioned, for none of them appeared to have been wounded by an enemy. Neither can we determine whether they are puſillanimous or brave; the reſolution with which two of them attempted to prevent our landing, when we had two boats full of men, in Botany Bay, even after one of them was wounded with ſmall ſhot, gave us reaſon to conclude that they were not only naturally courageous, but that they had acquired a familiarity with the dangers of hoſtility, and were, by habit as well as nature, a daring and warlike people; but their precipitate flight from every other place that we approached, without even a menace, while they were out of our reach, was an indication of uncommon tameneſs and timidity, ſuch as thoſe who had only been occaſionally warriors muſt be ſuppoſed to have ſhaken off, whatever might have been their natural diſpoſition. I have faithfully related facts, the reader muſt judge of the people for himſelf. 1770. Auguſt.

From the account that has been given of our commerce with them, it cannot be ſuppoſed that we ſhould know much of their language; yet as this is an object of great curioſity, eſpecially to the learned, and of great importance in their reſearches into the origin of the various nations that have been diſcovered, we took ſome pains to bring away ſuch a ſpecimen of it as might, in a certain degree, anſwer the purpoſe; and I ſhall now give an account how it was procured. If we wanted to know the name of a ſtone, we took a ſtone up into our hands, and, as well as we could, intimated by ſigns that we wiſhed they ſhould name it: the word that they pronounced upon the occaſion, we immediately wrote down. This method, though it was the beſt we could contrive, might certainly lead us into many miſtakes; for if an Indian was to take up a ſtone, and aſk us the name of it, we might anſwer a pebble or a flint; ſo when we took up a ſtone, and aſk an Indian the name of it, he might pronounce a word that diſtinguiſhed the ſpecies and not the genus, or that, inſtead of ſignifying ſtone ſimply, might ſignify a rough ſtone,

1770 August. ſtone, or a ſmooth ſtone; however, as much as poſſible to avoid miſtakes of this kind, ſeveral of us contrived, at different times, to get from them as many words as we could, and having noted them down, compared our liſts: thoſe which were the ſame in all, and which, according to every one's account, ſignified the ſame thing, we ventured to record, with a very few others, which, from the ſimplicity of the ſubject, and the eaſe of expreſſing our queſtion with plainneſs and preciſion by a ſign, have acquired equal authority.

Engliſh.	New Holland.	Engliſh.	New Holland.
The head,	Wageegee.	*Nails,*	Kulke.
Hair,	Morye.	*Sun,*	Gallan.
Eyes,	Meul.	*Fire,*	Meanang.
Ears,	Melea.	*A ſtone,*	Walba.
Lips,	Yembe.	*Sand,*	Yowall.
Noſe,	Bonjoo.	*A rope,*	Gurka.
Tongue,	Ungar.	*A man,*	Bama.
Beard,	Wallar.	*A male turtle,*	Poinga.
Neck,	Doomboo.	*A female,*	Mameingo.
Nipples,	Cayo.	*A canoe,*	Marigan.
Hands,	Marigal.	*To paddle,*	Pelenyo.
Thighs,	Coman.	*Sit down,*	Takai.
Navel,	Toolpoor.	*Smooth,*	Mier Carrar.
Knees,	Pongo.	*A dog,*	Cotta, or Kota.
Feet,	Edamal.	*A loriquet,*	Perpere, or pier-pier.
Heel,	Kniorror.	*Blood,*	Garmbe.
Cockatoo,	Wanda.	*Wood,*	Yocou.
The ſoal of the foot,	Chumal.	*The bone in the noſe,*	Tapool.
Ankle,	Chongurn.	*A bag,*	Carngala.
Arms,	Aco, *or* Acol.	*A great cockle,*	Moingo.
Thumb,	Eboorbalga.	*Cocos, yams,*	Maracotu.

English.	New Holland.	New Holland.	English.
The fore, middle, and ring fingers.	Egalbaiga.		
The little finger.	Nakil, or Eboornakil.		
The ſky,	Kere, or Kearre.		
A father,	Dunjo.		
A ſon,	Jamure.		
		Cherr, Cherco, Yarcaw, Tut, tut, tut, tut,	*Expreſſions, as we ſuppoſed, of admiration, which they continually uſed when they were in company with us.*

1770. Auguſt.

I ſhall now quit this country, with a few obſervations relative to the currents and tides upon the coaſt. From latitude 32°, and ſomewhat higher, down to Sandy Cape, in latitude 24° 46′, we conſtantly found a current ſetting to the ſouthward, at the rate of about ten or fifteen miles a day, being more or leſs, according to our diſtance from the land; for it always ran with more force in ſhore than in the offing; but I could never ſatisfy myſelf whether the flood-tide came from the ſouthward, the eaſtward, or the northward: I inclined to the opinion that it came from the ſouth-eaſt, but the firſt time we anchored off the coaſt, which was in latitude 24° 30′, about ten leagues to the ſouth-eaſt of Buſtard Bay, I found that it came from the north-weſt; on the contrary thirty leagues farther to the north-weſt, on the ſouth ſide of Keppel Bay, I found that it came from the eaſt, and at the northern part of that Bay it came from the northward, but with a much ſlower motion than it had come from the eaſt: on the eaſt ſide of the bay of Inlets, it ſet ſtrongly to the weſtward, as far as the opening of Broad Sound; but on the north ſide of that Sound, it came with a very ſlow motion from the north-weſt; and when we lay at anchor before Repulſe Bay, it came from the northward: to account for its courſe in all this variety of directions, we need only admit that the flood-tide comes from the eaſt or ſouth-eaſt. It is well known, that where there are deep inlets, and large creeks into low lands, running up from the ſea, and not occaſioned by rivers of freſh water, there will always be a great

1770. August. indraught of the flood-tide, the direction of which will be determined by the position or direction of the coast which forms the entrance of such inlet, whatever be its course at sea; and where the tides are weak, which upon this coast is generally the case, a large inlet will, if I may be allowed the expression, attract the flood-tide for many leagues.

A view of the chart will at once illustrate this position. To the northward of Whitsunday's passage there is no large inlet, consequently the flood sets to the north-ward, or north-westward, according to the direction of the coast, and the ebb to the south, or south-eastward, at least such is their course at a little distance from the land, for very near it they will be influenced by small inlets. I also observed, that we had only one high tide in twenty-four hours, which happened in the night. The difference between the perpendicular rise of the water in the day and the night when there is a spring tide, is no less than three feet which, where the tides are so inconsiderable as they are here, is a large proportion of the whole difference between high and low water. This irregularity of the tides, which is worthy of notice, we did not discover till we were run ashore, and perhaps farther to the northward it is still greater: after we got within the reef the second time, we found the tides more considerable than we had ever done before, except in the Bay of Inlets, and possibly this may be owing to the water being more confined between the shoals; here also the flood sets to the north-west, and continues in the same direction to the extremity of New Wales from whence its direction is west and south-west into the Indian sea.

CHAP. IX.

The Passage from New South Wales to New Guinea, with an Account of what happened upon landing there.

Thurs. 23. IN the afternoon of Thursday August 23d, after leaving Booby Island, we steered W. N. W. with light airs from the S. S. W. till five o'clock, when it fell calm, and the tide of ebb soon after setting to the

N.

N. E. we came to an anchor in eight fathom water, with a ſoft ſandy bottom. Booby Iſland bore S. 50 E. diſtant five miles, and the Prince of Wales's Iſles extended from N. E. by N. to S. 55 E. between theſe there appeared to be a clear open paſſage, extending from N. 46 E. to E. by N. 1770. Auguſt.

At half an hour after five in the morning of the 25th, as we were purchaſing the anchor, the cable parted about eight or ten fathoms from the ring: the ſhip then began to drive; but I immediately dropped another anchor, which brought her up before ſhe got more than a cable's length from the buoy; the boats were then ſent to ſweep for the anchor, but could not ſucceed. At noon our latitude, by obſervation, was 10° 30′ S. As I was reſolved not to leave the anchor behind, while there remained a poſſibility of recovering it, I ſent the boats again after dinner, with a ſmall line, to diſcover where it lay; this being happily effected, we ſwept for it with a hawſer, and by the ſame hawſer hove the ſhip up to it: we proceeded to weigh it, but juſt as we were about to ſhip it, the hawſer ſlipped, and we had all our labour to repeat: by this time it was dark, and we were obliged to ſuſpend our operations till the morning. Friday 24.

As ſoon as it was light, we ſweeped it again, and heaved it to the bows: by eight o'clock, we weighed the other anchor, got under ſail, and, with a fine breeze at E. N. E. ſtood to the north weſt. At noon our latitude, by obſervation, was 10° 18′ S. longitude 219° 39′ W. At this time we had no land in ſight, but about two miles to the ſouthward of us lay a large ſhoal, upon which the ſea broke with great violence, and part of which, I believe, is dry at low water. It extends N. W. and S. E. and is about five leagues in circuit. Our depth of water, from the time we weighed till now, was nine fathoms, but it ſoon ſhallowed to ſeven fathoms; and at half an hour after one, having run eleven miles between noon and that time, the boat which was a-head made the ſignal for ſhoal-water; we immediately let go an anchor, and brought the ſhip up with all the ſails ſtanding, for the boat having juſt been relieved, was at but a little diſtance; upon looking out from the ſhip, we ſaw ſhoal water almoſt Saturd. 25.

1770. August. all round us, both wind and tide at the ſame time ſetting upon it. The ſhip was in ſix fathoms, but upon ſounding round her, at the diſtance of half a cable's length, we found ſcarcely two. This ſhoal reached from the eaſt, round by the north and weſt, as far as the ſouth eaſt, ſo that there was no way for us to get clear but that by which we came. This was another hair's breadth eſcape, for it was near high-water, and there ran a ſhort cockling ſea, which muſt very ſoon have bulged the ſhip if ſhe had ſtruck; and if her direction had been half a cable's length more either to the right or left, ſhe muſt have ſtruck before the ſignal for the ſhoal was made. The ſhoals which, like theſe, lie a fathom or two under water, are the moſt dangerous of any, for they do not diſcover themſelves till the veſſel is juſt upon them, and then indeed the water looks brown, as if it reflected a dark cloud. Between three and four o'clock the tide of ebb began to make, and I ſent the maſter to ſound to the ſouthward and ſouth-weſtward, and in the mean time, as the ſhip trended, I weighed anchor, and with a little ſail ſtood firſt to the ſouthward, and afterwards edging away to the weſtward, got once more out of danger. At ſun-ſet, we anchored in ten fathoms, with a ſandy bottom, having a freſh gale at E. S. E.

Sunday 26. At ſix in the morning we weighed again and ſtood weſt, having as uſual, firſt ſent a boat a-head to ſound. I had intended to ſteer N. W. till I had made the ſouth coaſt of New Guinea, deſigning, if poſſible, to touch upon it; but upon meeting with theſe ſhoals, I altered my courſe, in hopes of finding a clearer channel, and deep water. In this I ſucceeded, for by noon our depth of water was gradually increaſed to ſeventeen fathoms. Our latitude was now by obſervation 10° 10′ S. and our longitude 220° 12′ W. No land was in ſight. We continued to ſteer weſt till ſun-ſet, our depth of water being from twenty-ſeven to twenty-three fathoms; we then ſhortened ſail, and kept up on a wind all night; four hours on one tack, and four on another. At day-light, we made all the ſail we could, and ſteered W. N. W.

Monday 27. At noon our latitude by obſervation was 9° 55′ S. longitude 221° W. variation 2° 30′ E. We continued our N. W. courſe till ſun

ſun-ſet, when we again ſhortened ſail, and hauled cloſe upon a wind to the northward: our depth of water was twenty-one fathoms. At eight we tacked and ſtood to the ſouthward till twelve: then ſtood to the northward with little ſail till day-light: our ſoundings were from twenty-five to ſeventeen fathoms, the water growing gradually ſhallow as we ſtood to the north, in order to make the land of New Guinea: from the time of our making ſail till noon, the depth of water gradually decreaſed from ſeventeen to twelve fathoms, with a ſtoney and ſhelly bottom. Our latitude by obſervation was now 8° 52′ S. which is in the ſame parallel as that in which the ſouthern parts of New Guinea are laid down in the charts; but there are only two points ſo far to the ſouth, and I reckoned that we were a degree to the weſtward of them both, and therefore did not ſee the land, which trends more to the northward. We found the ſea here to be in many parts covered with brown ſcum, ſuch as ſailors generally call ſpawn. When I firſt ſaw it, I was alarmed, fearing that we were among ſhoals; but upon ſounding, we found the ſame depth of water as in other places. This ſcum was examined both by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, but they could not determine what it was: it was formed of innumerable ſmall particles, not more than half a line in length, each of which in the microſcope appeared to conſiſt of thirty or forty tubes; and each tube was divided through its whole length by ſmall partitions into many cells, like the tubes of the conferva; they were ſuppoſed to belong to the vegetable kingdom, becauſe upon burning them they produced no ſmell like that of an animal ſubſtance. The ſame appearance had been obſerved upon the coaſt of Brazil and New Holland, but never at any conſiderable diſtance from the ſhore. In the evening a ſmall bird hovered about the ſhip, and at night ſetting among the rigging, was taken. It proved to be exactly the ſame bird which Dampier has deſcribed, and of which he has given a rude figure, by the name of a Noddy from New Holland. [See his Voyages, vol. iii. p. 98. Table of Birds, Fig. 5.]

1770. Auguſt. Tueſday 28.

1770 August. We continued ſtanding to the northward with a freſh gale at E. by E. and S. E. till ſix in the evening, having very irregular ſoundings, the depth changing at once from twenty-four fathoms to ſeven. At four, we had ſeen the land from the maſt-head, bearing N. W. by N. it appeared to be very low, and to ſtretch from W. N. W. to N. N. E. diſtant four or five leagues. We now hauled cloſe upon a wind till ſeven, then tacked and ſtood to the ſouthward till twelve, at which time we wore and ſtood to the northward till four in
Wedneſ. 29. the morning, then laid the head of the veſſel off till day-light, when we again ſaw the land, and ſtood in N. N. W. directly for it, with a freſh gale at E. by S. Our ſoundings during the night were very irregular, from ſeven to five fathoms, ſuddenly changing from deep to ſhallow, and from ſhallow to deep, without in the leaſt correſponding with our diſtance from the land. At half an hour after ſix in the morning a ſmall low land, which lay at the diſtance of about a league from the main, bore N. by W. diſtant five miles: this iſland lies in latitude 8° 13′ S. longitude 221° 25′ W. and I find it laid down in the charts by the names of Bartholomew and Whermoyſen. We now ſteered N. W. by W. W. N. W. W. by W. S. and S. W. by W. as we found the land lie, with from five to nine fathoms; and though we reckoned we were not more than four leagues from it, yet it was ſo low and level that we could but juſt ſee it from the deck. It appeared however to be well covered with wood, and among other trees, we thought we could diſtinguiſh the cocoa-nut. We ſaw ſmoke in ſeveral places, and therefore knew there were inhabitants. At noon we were about three leagues from the land; the weſtermoſt part of which that was in ſight bore S. 79° W. Our latitude by obſervation was 8° 19′ S. and longitude 221° 44′ W. The iſland of St. Bartholomew bore N. 74 E. diſtant twenty miles.

After ſteering S. W. by W. ſix miles, we had ſhoal water on our ſtarboard, which I ſent the yawl to ſound, and at the ſame time hauled off upon a wind till four o'clock, and though during that time we had run ſix miles, we had not deepened our water an inch. I

then

then edged away S. W. four miles more, but finding it ſtill ſhoal water I brought to, and called the boats aboard. At this time, being between three and four leagues from the ſhore, and the yawl having found only three fathoms water in the place to which I had ſent her to ſound, I hauled off cloſe upon a wind, and weathered the ſhoal about half a mile. 1770. Auguſt.

Between one and two o'clock we paſſed a bay, or inlet, before which lies a ſmall iſland that ſeems to ſhelter it from the ſoutherly winds; but I very much doubt whether there is ſufficient depth of water behind it for ſhipping. I could not attempt to determine the queſtion, becauſe the S. E. trade wind blows right into the bay, and we had not as yet had any breeze from the land.

We ſtretched off to ſea till twelve o'clock, when we were about eleven leagues from the land, and had deepened our water to twenty-nine fathoms. We now tacked and ſtood in till five in the morning, when, being in ſix fathoms and an half, we tacked, and laid the head of the veſſel off till day-light, when we ſaw the land bearing N. W. by W. at about the diſtance of four leagues. We now made ſail, and ſteered firſt W. S. W. then W. by S. but coming into five fathoms and a half, we hauled off S. W. till we deepened our water to eight fathoms, and then kept away W. by S. and W. having nine fathoms, and the land juſt in ſight from the deck; we judged it to be about four leagues diſtant, and it was very low and woody. Great quantities of the brown ſcum continued to appear upon the water, and the ſailors, having given up the notion of its being ſpawn, found a new name for it, and called it Sea Saw-duſt. At noon our latitude, by obſervation, was 8° 30′ S. our longitude 222° 34′ W. and Saint Bartholomew's Iſle bore N. 69 E. diſtant ſeventy-four miles. Thurſ. 30.

As all this coaſt appears to have been very minutely examined by the Dutch, and as our track with the ſoundings will appear by the chart, it is ſufficient to ſay, that we continued our courſe to the northward, with very ſhallow water, upon a bank of mud, at ſuch a diſtance from the ſhore as that it could ſcarcely be ſeen from the ſhip till the 3d of September. Dur-

1770. August. ing this time we made many attempts to get near enough to go on ſhore, but without ſucceſs; and having now loſt ſix days of fair wind, at a time when we knew the ſouth-eaſt monſoon to be nearly at an end, we began to be impatient of farther delay, and determined to run the ſhip in as near to the ſhore as poſſible, and then land with the pinnace, while ſhe kept playing off and on, to examine the produce of the country, and the diſpoſition of the inhabitants. For the two laſt days we had, early in the morning, a light breeze from the ſhore, which was ſtrongly impregnated with the fragrance of the trees, ſhrubs, and herbage that covered it, the ſmell being ſomething like that of Gum Benjamin. On the 3d of September, at day-break, we ſaw the land extending from N. by E. to S. E. at about four leagues diſtance, and we then kept ſtanding in for it with a freſh gale at E. S. E. and E. by S. till nine o'clock, when being within about three or four miles of it, and in three fathoms water, we brought to. The pinnace being hoiſted out, I ſet off from the ſhip with the boat's crew, accompanied by Mr. Banks, who alſo took his ſervants, and Dr. Solander, being in all twelve perſons well armed. We rowed directly towards the ſhore, but the water was ſo ſhallow that we could not reach it by about two hundred yards; we waded, however, the reſt of the way, having left two of the ſeamen to take care of the boat. Hitherto we had ſeen no ſigns of inhabitants at this place; but as ſoon as we got a-ſhore we diſcovered the prints of human feet, which could not long have been impreſſed upon the ſand, as they were below high-water mark; we therefore concluded that the people were at no great diſtance, and, as a thick wood came down within a hundred yards of the water, we thought it neceſſary to proceed with caution, leſt we ſhould fall into an ambuſcade, and our retreat to the boat be cut off. We walked along the ſkirts of the wood, and at the diſtance of about two hundred yards from the place where we landed, we came to a grove of cocoa-nut trees, which ſtood upon the banks of a little brook of brackiſh water. The trees were of a ſmall growth, but well hung with fruit, and near them

September. Monday 3.

was

was a ſhed or hut, which had been covered with their leaves, though moſt of them were now fallen off; about the hut lay a great number of the ſhells of the fruit, ſome of which appeared to be juſt freſh from the tree. We looked at the fruit very wiſhfully, but not thinking it ſafe to climb, we were obliged to leave it without taſting a ſingle nut. At a little diſtance from this place we found plantains, and a bread-fruit-tree, but it had nothing upon it; and having now advanced about a quarter of a mile from the boat, three Indians ruſhed out of the wood, with a hideous ſhout, at about the diſtance of an hundred yards; and, as they ran towards us, the foremoſt threw ſomething out of his hand, which flew on one ſide of him, and burned exactly like gunpowder, but made no report; the other two inſtantly threw their lances at us; and, as no time was now to be loſt, we diſcharged our pieces, which were loaded with ſmall-ſhot. It is probable that they did not feel the ſhot, for though they halted a moment they did not retreat, and a third dart was thrown at us. As we thought their farther approach might be prevented with leſs riſk of life, than it would coſt to defend ourſelves againſt their attack if they ſhould come nearer, we loaded our pieces with ball, and fired a ſecond time: by this diſcharge it is probable that ſome of them were wounded, yet we had the ſatisfaction to ſee that they all ran away with great agility. As I was not diſpoſed forcibly to invade this country, either to gratify our appetites or our curioſity, and perceived that nothing was to be done upon friendly terms, we improved this interval, in which the deſtruction of the natives was no longer neceſſary to our own defence, and with all expedition returned towards our boat. As we were advancing along the ſhore, we perceived that the two men on board made ſignals that more Indians were coming down; and before we got into the water we ſaw ſeveral of them coming round a point, at the diſtance of about five hundred yards: it is probable that they had met with the three who firſt attacked us; for as ſoon as they ſaw us they halted, and ſeemed to wait till their main body ſhould come up. We entered the water, and waded towards the boat. and they remained at their ſtation without giving us any moleſtation. As ſoon as we were a-board we rowed

1770. September.

a-breaſt

1770. September. a-breaſt of them, and their number then appeared to be between ſixty and a hundred. We now took a view of them at our leiſure; they made much the ſame appearance of the New Hollanders, being nearly of the ſame ſtature, and having their hair ſhort cropped; like them alſo they were all ſtark naked, but we thought the colour of their ſkin was not quite ſo dark; this, however, might perhaps be merely the effect of their not being quite ſo dirty. All this while they were ſhouting defiance, and letting off their fires by four or five at a time. What theſe fires were, or for what purpoſe intended, we could not imagine; thoſe who diſcharged them had in their hands a ſhort piece of ſtick, poſſibly a hollow cane, which they ſwung ſideways from them, and we immediately ſaw fire and ſmoke, exactly reſembling thoſe of a muſket, and of no longer duration. This wonderful phænomenon was obſerved from the ſhip, and the deception was ſo great that the people on board thought they had fire-arms; and in the boat, if we had not been ſo near as that we muſt have heard the report, we ſhould have thought they had been firing vollies. After we had looked at them attentively ſome time, without taking any notice of their flaſhing and vociferation, we fired ſome muſquets over their heads; upon hearing the balls rattle among the trees they walked leiſurely away, and we returned to the ſhip. Upon examining the weapons they had thrown at us, we found them to be light darts about four feet long, very ill made, of a reed or bamboo cane, and pointed with hard wood, in which there were many barbs. They were diſcharged with great force; for though we were at ſixty yards diſtance, they went beyond us, but in what manner we could not exactly ſee; poſſibly they might be ſhot with a bow, but we ſaw no bows among them when we ſurveyed them from the boat; and we were in general of opinion that they were thrown with a ſtick, in the manner practiſed by the New Hollanders.

This place lies in the latitude of 6° 15′ S. and about ſixty-five leagues to the N. E. of Port St. Auguſtine, or Walche Caep, and is near what is called in the charts C. de la Colta de St. Bonaventura. The land here, like that in every other part of the coaſt, is very low,

low, but covered with a luxuriance of wood and herbage, that can ſcarcely be conceived. We ſaw the cocoa-nut, the bread-fruit, and the plantain tree, all flouriſhing in a ſtate of the higheſt perfection, though the cocoa-nuts were green, and the bread-fruit not in ſeaſon, beſides moſt of the trees, ſhrubs, and plants that are common to the South Sea iſlands, New Zealand, and New Holland. 1770. September.

Soon after our return to the ſhip we hoiſted in the boat, and made ſail to the weſtward, being reſolved to ſpend no more time upon this coaſt, to the great ſatisfaction of a very conſiderable majority of the ſhip's company. But I am ſorry to ſay, that I was ſtrongly urged by ſome of the officers to ſend a party of men a-ſhore, and cut down the cocoa-nut trees, for the ſake of the fruit; this I peremptorily refuſed, as equally unjuſt and cruel. The natives had attacked us merely for landing upon their coaſt, when we attempted to take nothing away; and it was therefore morally certain that they would have made a vigorous effort to defend their property, if it had been invaded, in which caſe many of them muſt have fallen a ſacrifice to our attempt, and perhaps alſo ſome of our own people. I ſhould have regretted the neceſſity of ſuch a meaſure, if I had been in want of the neceſſaries of life; and certainly it would have been highly criminal, when nothing was to be obtained but two or three hundred of green cocoa-nuts, which would at moſt have procured us a mere tranſient gratification. I might indeed have proceeded farther along the coaſt, to the northward and weſtward, in ſearch of a place where the ſhip might have lain ſo near the ſhore as to cover the people with her guns when they landed; but this would have obviated only part of the miſchief; and though it might have ſecured us, it would probably, in the very act, have been fatal to the natives. Beſides, we had reaſon to think that before ſuch a place would have been found, we ſhould have been carried ſo far to the weſtward as to have been obliged to go to Batavia, on the north ſide of Java; which I did not think ſo ſafe a paſſage as to the ſouth of Java, through the Streights of Sunda: the ſhip alſo was ſo leaky, that I doubted whether it would not be neceſſary to heave her down at Batavia, which

1770. September. which was another reaſon for making the beſt of our way to that place; eſpecially as no diſcovery could be expected in ſeas which had already been navigated, and where every coaſt had been laid down by the Dutch geographers. The Spaniards indeed, as well as the Dutch, ſeem to have circumnavigated all the iſlands in New Guinea, as almoſt every place that is diſtinguiſhed in the chart has a name in both languages. The charts with which I compared ſuch parts of this coaſts as I viſited, are bound up with a French work, intitled, "Hiſtoire des Navigations aux Terres Auſtrales," which was publiſhed in 1756, and I found them tolerably exact; yet I know not by whom, nor when they were taken: and though New Holland and New Guinea are in them repreſented as two diſtinct countries, the very hiſtory in which they are bound up, leaves it in doubt. I pretend, however, to no more merit in this part of the voyage, than to have eſtabliſhed the fact beyond all controverſy.

As the two countries lie very near each other, and the intermediate ſpace is full of iſlands, it is reaſonable to ſuppoſe that they were both peopled from one common ſtock: yet no intercourſe appears to have been kept up between them; for if there had, the cocoa-nuts, bread-fruits, plantains, and other fruits of New Guinea, which are equally neceſſary for the ſupport of life, would certainly have been tranſplanted to New Holland, where no traces of them are to be found. The author of the "Hiſtoire des Navigations aux Terres Auſtrales," in his account of La Maire's voyage, has given a vocabulary of the language that is ſpoken in an iſland near New Britain, and we find, by comparing that vocabulary with the words which we learned in New Holland, that the languages are not the ſame. If therefore it ſhould appear, that the languages of New Britain and New Guinea are the ſame, there will be reaſon to ſuppoſe that New Britain and New Guinea were peopled from a common ſtock: But that the inhabitants of New Holland had a different origin, notwithſtanding the proximity of the countries.

CHAP.

1770.
September.

CHAP. X.

The Paſſage from New Guinea to the Iſland of Savu, and the Tranſactions there.

WE made ſail, from noon on Monday the 3d to noon on Tueſday the 4th, ſtanding to the weſtward, and all the time kept in ſoundings, having from fourteen to thirty fathoms; not regular, but ſometimes more, ſometimes leſs. At noon on the 4th, we were in fourteen fathoms, and latitude 6° 44′ S. longitude 223° 51′ W. our courſe and diſtance ſince the 3d at noon, were S. 76 W. one hundred and twenty miles to the weſtward. At noon, on the 5th of September, we were in latitude 7° 25′ S. longitude 225° 41′ W. having been in ſoundings the whole time from ten to twenty fathoms. Monday 3. Tueſday 4. Wedneſ. 5.

At half an hour after one in the morning of the next day, we paſſed a ſmall iſland which bore from us N. N. W. diſtant between three and four miles; and at day-light we diſcovered another low iſland, extending from N. N. W. to N. N. E. diſtant about two or three leagues. Upon this iſland, which did not appear to be very ſmall, I believe I ſhould have landed to examine its produce, if the wind had not blown too freſh to admit of it. When we paſſed this iſland we had only ten fathoms water, with a rocky bottom; and therefore I was afraid of running down the leeward, leſt I ſhould meet with ſhoal water and foul ground. Theſe iſlands have no place in charts except they are the Arrou iſlands; and if theſe, they are laid down much too far from New Guinea. I found the ſouth part of them to lie in latitude 7° 6′ S. longitude 225° W. Thurſd. 6.

We continued to ſteer W. S. W. at the rate of four miles and an half an hour, till ten o'clock at night, when we had forty-two fathoms, at eleven we had thirty-ſeven, at twelve forty-five, at one in the morning forty-nine, and at three 120, after which we had no ground. At day-light we made all the ſail we could, and at ten o'clock ſaw land, extending from N. Friday 7.

N. W.

1770. September. N. W. to W. by N. diſtant between five and ſix leagues: at noon it bore from N. to W. and at about the ſame diſtance: it appeared to be level, and of a moderate height: by our diſtance from New Guinea, it ought to have been part of the Arrou Iſlands, but it lies a degree farther to the ſouth than any of theſe iſlands are laid down in the charts; and by the latitude ſhould be Timor Laoet: we ſounded, but had no ground with fifty fathoms.

As I was not able to ſatisfy myſelf from any chart, what land it was that I ſaw to leeward, and fearing that it might trend away more ſoutherly, the weather alſo being ſo hazy that we could not ſee far, I ſteered S. W. and by four had loſt ſight of the iſland. I was now ſure that no part of it lay to the ſouthward of 8° 15′ S. and continued ſtanding to the S. W. with an eaſy ſail, and a freſh breeze at S. E. by E. with E. S. E. we ſounded every hour, but had no bottom with 120 fathoms.

At day-break in the morning we ſteered to W. S. W. and afterwards W. by S. which by noon brought us into the latitude of 9° 30′ S. longitude 229° 34′ W. and, by our run from New Guinea, we ought to have been within ſight of Wexel Iſles, which in the charts are laid down at the diſtance of twenty or twenty-five leagues from the coaſt of New Holland; we however ſaw nothing, and therefore they muſt have been placed erroneouſly; nor can this be thought ſtrange, when it is conſidered that not only theſe iſlands, but the coaſt which bounds this ſea, have been diſcovered and explored by different people, and at different times, and the charts upon which they are delineated, put together by others, perhaps at the diſtance of more than a century after the diſcoveries had been made; not to mention that the diſcoverers themſelves had not all the requiſites for keeping an accurate journal, of which thoſe of the preſent age are poſſeſſed.

We continued our courſe, ſteering W. till the even-
Saturday 8. ing of the 8th, when the variation of the compaſs, by ſeveral azimuths, was 12′ W. and by the amplitude
Sunday 9. 5 W. At noon on the 9th, our latitude, by obſervation, was 9° 46′ S. longitude 232° 7′ W. For the laſt two days we had ſteered due W. yet, by obſervation,

tion, we made ſixteen miles ſouthing, ſix miles from noon on the 6th to noon on the 7th, and ten miles from noon on the 7th to noon on the 8th, by which it appeared that there was a current ſetting to the ſouthward. At ſunſet we found the variation to be 2 W. and, at the ſame time, ſaw an appearance of very high land bearing N. W. 1770. September.

In the morning of the 10th we ſaw clearly that what had appeared to be land the night before was Timor. At noon our latitude, by obſervation, was 10° 1′ S. which was fifteen miles to the ſouthward of that given by the log; our longitude, by obſervation, was 233° 27′ W. We ſteered N. W. in order to obtain a more diſtinct view of the land in ſight, till four o'clock in the morning of the 11th, when the wind came to the N. W. and W. with which we ſtood to the ſouthward till nine, when we tacked and ſtood N. W. having the wind now at W. S. W. At ſun-riſe, the land had appeared to extend from W. N. W. to N. E. and at noon, we could ſee it extend to the weſtward as far as W. by S. ½ S. but no farther to the eaſtward than N. by E. We were now well aſſured, that as the firſt land we had ſeen was Timor, the laſt iſland we had paſſed was Timor Laoet, or Laut. Laoet, is a word in the language of Malacca ſignifying Sea, and this iſland was named by the inhabitants of that country. The ſouth part of it lies in latitude 8° 15′ S. longitude 228° 10′ W. but in the charts the ſouth point is laid down in various latitudes, from 8° 30′ to 9° 30′; it is indeed poſſible that the land we ſaw might be ſome other iſland, but the preſumption to the contrary is very ſtrong; for if Timor Laut had lain where it is placed in the charts, we muſt have ſeen it there. We were now in latitude 9° 27′ S. longitude, by an obſervation of the ſun and moon, 233° 54′ W. we were the day before in 233° 27′; the difference is 27′, exactly the ſame that was given by the log: this, however, is a degree of accuracy in obſervation that is ſeldom to be expected. In the afternoon, we ſtood in ſhore till eight in the evening, when we tacked and ſtood of, being at a diſtance of about three leagues from the land, which at ſun-ſet extended from S. W. ½ W. to N. E. at this time we ſounded, and had no ground with 140 fathoms. Monday 10.

1770. September. Wedneſ. 12. fathoms. At midnight, having but little wind, we tacked, and ſtood in, and at noon the next day our latitude by obſervation, was 9° 36′ S. This day, we ſaw ſmoke on ſhore in ſeveral places, and had ſeen many fires during the night. The land appeared to be very high, riſing in gradual ſlopes one above another: the hills were in general covered with thick woods, but among them we could diſtinguiſh naked ſpots of a conſiderable extent, which had the appearance of having been cleared by art. At five o'clock in the afternoon we were within a mile and a half of the ſhore, in ſixteen fathoms water, and a-breaſt of a ſmall inlet into the low land, which lies in latitude 9° 34′ S. and probably is the ſame that Dampier entered with his boat, for it did not ſeem to have ſufficient depth of water for a ſhip. The land here anſwered well to the deſcription that he has given of it: cloſe to the beach it was covered with high ſpiry trees, which he mentions as having the appearance of pines; behind theſe there ſeemed to be ſalt water creeks, and many mangroves, interſperſed however with cocoa-nut trees: the flat land at the beach appeared in ſome places to extend inward two or three miles before the riſe of the firſt hill; in this part, however, we ſaw no appearance of plantations or houſes, but great fertility, and from the number of fires, we judged that the place muſt be well peopled.

When we had approached within a mile and an half of the ſhore, we tacked and ſtood off, and the extremes of the coaſt then extended from N. E. by E. to W. by S. ½ S. The ſouth weſterly extremity was a low point, diſtant from us about three leagues. While we were ſtanding in for the ſhore, we ſounded ſeveral times, but had no ground till we came within two miles and a half, and then we had five and twenty fathoms, with a ſoft bottom. After we had tacked, we ſtood off till midnight, with the wind at S. we then tacked and ſtood two hours to the weſtward, when the wind veered to Thurſd. 13. S. W. and W. S. W. and we then ſtood to the ſouthward again In the morning we found the variation to be 1° 10′ W. by the amplitude, and by the azimuth 10° 27′. At noon our latitude was by obſervation, 9° 45′ S. our longitude 234° 12 W. we were then about ſeven

ſeven leagues diſtant from the land, which extended from N. 31 E. to W. S. W. ½ W. 1770. September.

With light land breezes from W. by N. for a few hours in a morning, and ſea breezes from S. S. W. and S. we advanced to the weſtward but ſlowly. At noon, on the 14th, we were between ſix and ſeven leagues from the land, which extended from N. by E. to S. 78 W. we ſtill ſaw ſmoke in many places by day, and fire by night, both upon the low land and the mountains beyond it. We continued ſteering along the ſhore, till the morning of the 15th, the land ſtill appearing hilly, but not ſo high as it had been: the hills in general came quite down to the ſea, and where they did not, we ſaw, inſtead of flats and mangrove land, immenſe groves of cocoa-nut trees, reaching about a mile up from the beach: there the plantations and houſes commenced, and appeared to be innumerable. The houſes were ſhaded by groves of the fan-palm, or *boraſſus*, and the plantations, which were incloſed by a fence, reached almoſt to the tops of the higheſt hills. We ſaw however neither people nor cattle, though our glaſſes were continually employed, at which we were not a little ſurpriſed. Friday 14. Saturd. 15.

We continued our courſe with little variation, till nine o'clock in the morning of the 16th, when we ſaw the ſmall iſland called ROTTE; and at noon, the iſland SEMAU, lying off the ſouth end of Timor, bore N. W. Sunday 16.

Dampier, who has given a large deſcription of the iſland of Timor, ſays, that it is ſeventy leagues long, and ſixteen broad, and that it lies nearly N. E. and S. W. I found the eaſt ſide of it to lie neareſt N. E. by E. and S. W. by W. and the ſouth end to lie in latitude 10° 23′ S. longitude 236° 5′ W. We ran about forty-five leagues along the eaſt ſide, and found the navigation altogether free from danger. The land, which is bounded by the ſea, except near the ſouth end, is low for two or three miles within the beach, and in general interſected by ſalt creeks: behind the low land are mountains, which riſe one above another to a conſiderable height. We ſteered W. N. W. till two in the afternoon, when, being within a ſmall diſtance of the north end of Rotte, we hauled up N. N. W.

1770. September. in order to go between it and Semau: after ſteering three leagues upon this courſe, we edged away N. W. and W. and by ſix, we were clear of all the iſlands. At this time the ſouth part of Semau, which lies in latitude 10° 15′ S. bore N. E. diſtant four leagues, and the iſland of Rotte extended as far to the ſouthward as S. 36 W. The north end of this iſland, and the ſouth end of Timor, lie N. ½ E. and S. ½ W. and are about three or four leagues diſtant from each other. At the weſt end of the paſſage between Rotte and Semau, are two ſmall iſlands, one of which lies near the Rotte ſhore, and the other off the ſouth-weſt point of Semau: there is a good channel between them, about ſix miles broad, through which we paſſed. The iſle of Rotte has not ſo lofty and mountainous an appearance as Timor, though it is agreeably diverſified by hill and valley: on the north ſide there are many ſandy beaches, near which grew ſome trees of the fan palm, but the far greater part was covered with a kind of bruſhy wood, that was without leaves. The appearance of Semau was nearly the ſame with that of Timor, but not quite ſo high. About ten o'clock at night, we obſerved a phænomenon in the heavens, which in many particulars reſembled the aurora borealis, and in others was very different: it conſiſted of a dull reddiſh light, and reached about twenty degrees above the horizon: its extent was very different at different times, but it was never leſs than eight or ten points of the compaſs: through, and out of this, paſſed rays of light of a brighter colour, which vaniſhed, and were renewed nearly in the ſame time as thoſe of the aurora borealis, but had no degree of the tremulous or vibratory motion which is obſerved in that phænomenon: the body of it bore S. S. E. from the ſhip, and it continued, without any diminution of its brightneſs, till twelve o'clock, when we retired to ſleep, but how long afterwards, I cannot tell.

Monday 17. Being clear of all the iſlands, which are laid down in the maps we had on board, between Timor and Java, we ſteered a weſt courſe till ſix o'clock the next morning, when we unexpectedly ſaw an iſland bearing W. S. W. and at firſt I thought we had made a new diſcovery. We ſteered directly for it, and by ten o'clock

o'clock were close in with the north side of it, where we saw houses, cocoa-nut trees, and, to our very agreeable surprise, numerous flocks of sheep. This was a temptation not to be resisted by people in our situation, especially as many of us were in a bad state of health, and many still repining at my not having touched at Timor: it was therefore soon determined to attempt a commerce with people who appeared to be so well able to supply our many necessities, and remove at once the sickness and discontent that had got footing among us. The pinnace was hoisted out, and Mr. Gore, the Second Lieutenant, sent to see if there was any convenient place to land, taking with him some trifles, as presents to the natives if any of them should appear. While he was gone, we saw from the ship two men on horseback, who seemed to be riding upon the hills for their amusement, and often stopped to look at the ship. By this we knew that the place had been settled by Europeans, and hoped that the many disagreeable circumstances which always attend the first establishment of commerce with savages, would be avoided. In the mean time, Mr. Gore landed in a small sandy cove near some houses, and was met by eight or ten of the natives, who, as well in their dress as their persons very much resembled the Malays: they were without arms, except the knives which it is their custom to wear in their girdles, and one of them had a jack-ass with him: they courteously invited him ashore, and conversed with him by signs, but very little of the meaning of either party could be understood by the other. In a short time he returned with this report, and, to our great mortification, added, that there was no anchorage for the ship. I sent him however a second time, with both money and goods, that he might, if possible, purchase some refreshments, at least for the sick; and Dr. Solander went in the boat with him. In the mean time I kept standing on and off with the ship, which at this time was within about a mile of the shore. Before the boat could land, we saw two other horsemen, one of whom was in a compleat European dress, consisting of a blue coat, a white waistcoat, and a laced hat: these people when the boat came to the shore, took little notice of her, but sauntered

1770. September.

1770. September. tered about, and ſeemed to look with great curioſity at the ſhip. We ſaw, however, other horſemen, and a great number of perſons on foot, gather round our people, and, to our great ſatisfaction, perceived ſeveral cocoa-nuts carried into the boat, from which we concluded that peace and commerce were eſtabliſhed between us.

After the boat had been aſhore about an hour and a half, ſhe made the ſignal for having intelligence that there was a bay to the leeward where we might anchor: we ſtood away directly for it, and the boat following, ſoon came on board. The Lieutenant told us, that he had ſeen ſome of the principal people, who were dreſſed in fine linen, and had chains of gold round their necks; he ſaid that he had not been able to trade, becauſe the owner of the cocoa-nuts was abſent, but that about two dozen had been ſent to the boat as a preſent, and that ſome linen had been accepted in return. The people, to give him the information that he wanted, drew a map upon the ſand, in which they made a rude repreſentation of a harbour to leeward, and a town near it: they alſo gave him to underſtand, that ſheep, hogs, fowls, and fruit might there be procured in great plenty. Some of them frequently pronounced the word Portugueſe, and ſaid ſomething of Larntuca, upon the iſland of Ende: from this circumſtance, we conjectured that there were Portugueſe ſomewhere upon the iſland; and a Portugueſe, who was in our boat, attempted to converſe with the Indians in that language, but ſoon found that they knew only a word or two of it by rote: one of them, however, when they were giving our people to underſtand that there was a town near the harbour to which they had directed us, intimated, that as a token of going right, we ſhould ſee ſomewhat, which he expreſſed by croſſing his fingers, and the Portugueſe inſtantly conceived that he meant to expreſs a croſs. Juſt as our people were putting off, the horſeman in the European dreſs came up; but the officer not having his commiſſion about him, thought it beſt to decline a conference.

At ſeven o'clock in the evening, we came to an anchor in the bay to which we had been directed, at about

about the diſtance of a mile from the ſhore, in thirty-eight fathoms water, with a clear ſandy bottom. The north point of the bay bore N. 30 E. diſtant two miles and an half, and the ſouth point, or weſt end of the iſland, bore S. 63 W. Juſt as we got round the north point, and entered the bay, we diſcovered a large Indian town, or village, upon which we ſtood on, hoiſting a jack on the fore-top-maſt head: ſoon after, to our great ſurpriſe, Dutch colours were hoiſted in the town, and three guns fired; we ſtood on, however, till we had ſoundings, and then anchored. 1770. September.

As ſoon as it was light in the morning we ſaw the ſame coulours hoiſted upon the beach, a-breaſt of the ſhip; ſuppoſing therefore that the Dutch had a ſettlement here, I ſent Lieutenant Gore a-ſhore, to wait upon the Governor, or the chief perſon reſiding upon the ſpot, acquainting him who we were, and for what purpoſe we had touched upon the coaſt. As ſoon as he came a-ſhore, he was received by a guard of between twenty and thirty Indians, armed with muſkets, who conducted him to the town where the colours had been hoiſted the night before, carrying with them thoſe that had been hoiſted upon the beach, and marching without any military regularity. As ſoon as he arrived, he was introduced to the Raja, or King of the iſland, and by a Portugueſe interpreter told him, that the ſhip was a man of war belonging to the king of Great Britain, and that ſhe had many ſick on board, for whom he wanted to purchaſe ſuch refreſhments as the iſland afforded. His Majeſty replied, that he was willing to ſupply us with whatever we wanted, but that, being in alliance with the Dutch Eaſt India Company, he was not at liberty to trade with any other people, without having firſt procured their conſent, for which, however, he ſaid he would immediately apply to a Dutchman who belonged to the company, and who was the only white man upon the iſland. To this man, who reſided at ſome diſtance, a letter was immediately diſpatched, acquainting him with our arrival and requeſt; in the mean time, Mr. Gore diſpatched a meſſenger to me, with an account of the ſituation, and the ſtate of the treaty. In about three hours the Dutch reſident anſwered the letter that had Tueſday 18.

1770. September. been ſent him in perſon: he proved to be a native of Saxony, and his name is Johan Chriſtopher Lange, and the ſame perſon whom we had ſeen on horſeback in an European dreſs: he behaved with great civility to Mr. Gore, and aſſured him that we were at liberty to purchaſe of the natives whatever we pleaſed. After a ſhort time, he expreſſed a deſire of coming on board, ſo did the King alſo, and ſeveral of his attendants. Mr. Gore intimated that he was ready to attend them, but they deſired that two of our people might be left on ſhore as hoſtages; and in this alſo they were indulged.

About two o'clock they all came a-board the ſhip, and our dinner being ready, they accepted our invitation to partake of it. I expected them immediately to ſit down; but the King ſeemed to heſitate, and at laſt, with ſome confuſion, ſaid, he did not imagine that we, who were white men, would ſuffer him, who was of a different colour, to ſit down in our company; a compliment ſoon removed his ſcruples, and we all ſat down together with great chearfulneſs and cordiality. Happily we were at no loſs for interpreters, both Dr. Solander and Mr. Sporing underſtanding Dutch enough to keep up a converſation with Mr. Lange; and ſeveral of the ſeamen were able to converſe with ſuch of the natives as ſpoke Portugueſe. Our dinner happened to be mutton, and the King expreſſed a deſire of having an Engliſh ſheep: we had but one left, however, that was preſented to him. The facility with which this was procured encouraged him to aſk for an Engliſh dog, and Mr. Banks politely gave up his greyhound. Mr. Lange then intimated, that a ſpying-glaſs would be acceptable, and one was immediately put into his hand. Our gueſts then told us, that the iſland abounded with buffaloes, ſheep, hogs, and fowls, plenty of which ſhould be driven down to the beach the next day, that we might purchaſe as many of them as we ſhould think fit: this put us all into high ſpirits, and the liquor circulated rather faſter than either the Indians or the Saxon could bear. They intimated their deſire to go away, however, before they were quite drunk: they were received upon deck, as they had been when they came a-board, by the marines

rines under arms. The King expreſſed a curioſity to ſee them exerciſe, in which he was gratified, and they fired three rounds. He looked at them with great attention, and was much ſurpriſed at their regularity and expedition, eſpecially in cocking their pieces: the firſt time they did it, he ſtruck the ſide of the ſhip with a ſtick that he had in his hand, and cried out with great vehemence, that all the locks made but one click. They were diſmiſſed with many preſents, and when they went away ſaluted with nine guns: Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went a-ſhore with them, and as ſoon as they put off gave us three cheers. 1770. September.

Our gentlemen, when they came a-ſhore, walked up with them to the town, which conſiſts of many houſes, and ſome of them were large; they are, however, nothing more than a thatched roof, ſupported over a boarded floor, by pillars about four feet high. They produced ſome of their palm-wine, which was the freſh unfermented juice of the tree; it had a ſweet but not a diſagreeable taſte, and hopes were conceived that it might contribute to recover our ſick from the ſcurvy. Soon after it was dark Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander returned on board.

In the morning of the 19th I went a-ſhore with Mr. Banks, and ſeveral of the officers and gentlemen, to return the King's viſit; but my chief buſineſs was to procure ſome buffaloes, ſheep, and fowls, which we had been told ſhould be driven down to the beach. We were greatly mortified to find that no ſteps had been taken to fulfil this promiſe; however, we proceeded to the houſe of aſſembly, which, with two or three more, had been erected by the Dutch Eaſt India Company, and are diſtinguiſhed from the reſt by two pieces of wood reſembling a pair of cow's horns, one of which is ſet up at each end of the ridge that terminates the roof; and theſe were certainly what the Indian intended to repreſent by croſſing his fingers; though our Portugueſe, who was a good Catholic, conſtrued the ſign into a croſs, which had perſuaded us that the ſettlement belonged to his countrymen. In this place we met Mr. Lange and the King, whoſe name was A Madocho Lomi Djara, attended by many of the principal people. We told them, that we had Wedneſ. 19.

1770. September. in the boat goods of various kinds, which we propoſed to barter for ſuch refreſhments as they would give us in exchange, and deſired leave to bring them on ſhore; which being granted, they were brought a-ſhore accordingly. We then attempted to ſettle the price of the buffaloes, ſheep, hogs, and other commodities which we propoſed to purchaſe, and for which we were to pay in money; but as ſoon as this was mentioned Mr. Lange left us, telling us, that theſe preliminaries muſt be ſettled with the natives; he ſaid, however, that he had received a letter from the Governor of Concordia, in Timor, the purport of which he would communicate to us when he returned.

As the morning was now far advanced, and we were very unwilling to return on board and eat ſalt proviſions, when ſo many delicacies ſurrounded us a-ſhore, we petitioned his Majeſty for liberty to purchaſe a ſmall hog and ſome rice, and to employ his ſubjects to dreſs them for us. He anſwered very graciouſly, that if we could eat victuals dreſſed by his ſubjects, which he could ſcarcely ſuppoſe, he would do himſelf the honour of entertaining us. We expreſſed our gratitude, and immediately ſent on board for liquors.

About five o'clock dinner was ready; it was ſerved in ſix-and-thirty diſhes, or rather baſkets, containing alternately rice and pork, and three bowls of earthen ware, filled with the liquor in which the pork had been boiled; theſe were ranged upon the floor, and mats laid round them for us to ſit upon. We were then conducted by turns to a hole in the floor, near which ſtood a man with water in a veſſel, made of the leaves of the fan-palm, who aſſiſted us in waſhing our hands. When this was done, we placed ourſelves round the victuals, and waited for the King. As he did not come, we inquired for him, and were told, that the cuſtom of the country did not permit the perſon who gave the entertainment to ſit down with his gueſts; but that, if we ſuſpected the victuals to be poiſoned, he would come and taſte them. We immediately declared that we had no ſuch ſuſpicion, and deſired that none of the rituals of hoſpitality might be violated on our account. The Prime Miniſter and

Mr.

Mr. Lange were of our party, and we made a moſt luxurious meal; we thought the pork and rice excellent, and the broth not to be deſpiſed, but the ſpoons, which were made of leaves, were ſo ſmall that few of us had patience to uſe them. After dinner our wine paſſed briſkly about, and we again enquired for our royal hoſt, thinking that though the cuſtom of his country would not allow him to eat with us, he might at leaſt ſhare in the jolity of our bottle; but he again excuſed himſelf, ſaying, that the maſter of a feaſt ſhould never be drunk, which there was no certain way to avoid but by not taſting the liquor. We did not however drink our wine where we had eaten our victuals, but as ſoon as we had dined made room for the ſeamen and ſervants, who immediately took our places: they could not diſpatch all that we had left, but the women who came to clear away the bowls and baſkets, obliged them to carry away with them what they had not eaten. As wine generally warms and opens the heart, we took an opportunity, when we thought its influence began to be felt, to revive the ſubject of the buffaloes and ſheep, of which we had not in all this time heard a ſyllable, though they were to have been brought down early in the morning. But our Saxon Dutchman, with great phlegm, began to communicate to us the contents of the letter which he pretended to have received from the Governor of Concordia. He ſaid, that after acquainting him that a veſſel had ſteered from thence towards the iſland where we were now a-ſhore, it required him, if ſuch ſhip ſhould apply for proviſions, in diſtreſs, to relieve her, but not to ſuffer her to ſtay longer than was abſolutely neceſſary, nor to make any large preſents to the inferior people, or to leave any with thoſe of ſuperior rank, to be afterwards diſtributed among them; but he was graciouſly pleaſed to add, that we were at liberty to give beads and other trifles in exchange for petty civilities and palm-wine. 1770. September.

It was the general opinion that this letter was a fiction; that the prohibitory orders were feigned, with a view to get money from us for breaking them; and that, by precluding our liberality to the natives, this man

1770. September. man hoped more eaſily to turn it into another channel.

In the evening we received intelligence from our trading place, that no buffaloes or hogs had been brought down, and only a few ſheep, which had been taken away before our people, who had ſent for money, could procure it. Some fowls, however, had been bought, and a large quantity of a kind of ſyrup, made of the juice of the palm-tree, which, though infinitely ſuperior to molaſſes or treacle, ſold at a very low price. We complained of our diſappointment to Mr. Lange, who had now another ſubterfuge; he ſaid, that if we had gone down to the beach ourſelves, we might have purchaſed what we pleaſed; but that the natives were afraid to take money of our people, leſt it ſhould be counterfeit. We could not but feel ſome indignation againſt a man who had concealed this, being true, or alledged it, being falſe. I ſtarted up, however, and went immediately to the beach, but no cattle or ſheep were to be ſeen, nor were any at hand to be produced. While I was gone, Lange, who knew well enough that I ſhould ſucceed no better than my people, told Mr. Banks that the natives were diſpleaſed at our not having offered them gold for their ſtock, and that if gold was not offered, nothing would be bought. Mr. Banks did not think it worth his while to reply, but ſoon after roſe up, and we all returned on board, very much diſſatisfied with the iſſue of our negociations. During the courſe of the day the King had promiſed that ſome cattle and ſheep ſhould be brought down in the morning, and had given a reaſon for our diſappointment ſomething more plauſible; he ſaid, that the buffaloes were far up the country, and that there had not been time to bring them down to the beach.

Thurſ. 20. The next morning we went a-ſhore again. Dr. Solander went up to the town to ſpeak to Lange, and I remained upon the beach, to ſee what could be done in the purchaſe of proviſions. I found here an old Indian, who, as he appeared to have ſome authority, we had among ourſelves called the Prime Miniſter. To engage this man in our intereſt, I preſented him with a ſpying-

a ſpying-glaſs, but I ſaw nothing at market except one ſmall buffalo. I inquired the price of it, and was told five guineas: this was twice as much as it was worth; however, I offered three, which I could perceive the man who treated with me thought a good price; but he ſaid that he muſt acquaint the King with what I had offered before he could take it. A meſſenger was immediately diſpatched to his Majeſty, who ſoon returned, and ſaid, that the buffalo would not be ſold for any thing leſs than five guineas. This price I abſolutely refuſed to give; and another meſſenger was ſent away with an account of my refuſal. This meſſenger was longer abſent than the other, and while I was waiting for his return I ſaw, to my great aſtoniſhment, Dr. Solander coming from the town, followed by above a hundred men, ſome armed with muſquets and ſome with lances. When I inquired the meaning of this hoſtile appearance, the Doctor told me, that Mr. Lange had interpreted to him a meſſage from the King, purporting, that the people would not trade with us, becauſe we had refuſed to give them more than half the value of what they had to ſell, and that we ſhould not be permitted to trade upon any terms longer than this day. Beſides the officers who commanded the party, there came with it a man who was born at Timor, of Portugueſe parents, and who, as we afterwards diſcovered, was a kind of colleague to the Dutch factor. By this man, what they pretended to be the King's order, was delivered to me, of the ſame purport of that which Dr. Solander had received from Mr. Lange. We were all clearly of opinion, that this was a mere artifice of the factor's to extort money from us, for which we had been prepared by the account of a letter from Concordia. And while we were heſitating what ſtep to take, the Portugueſe, that he might the ſooner accompliſh his purpoſe, began to drive away the people who had brought down poultry and ſyrup, and others that were now coming down with buffaloes and ſheep. At this time I glanced my eye upon the old man whom I had complimented in the morning with the ſpying-glaſs, and I thought, by his looks, that he did not heartily approve of what

1770. September.

was

1770. September. was doing; I therefore took him by the hand, and preſented him with an old broad ſword. This inſtantly turned the ſcale in our favour; he received the ſword with a tranſport of joy, and flouriſhing it over the buſy Portugueſe, who crouched like a fox to a lion, he made him, and the officer who commanded the party, ſit down upon the ground behind him. The people who, whatever were the crafty pretences of theſe iniquitous factors for a Dutch company, were eager to ſupply us with whatever we wanted, and ſeemed alſo to be more deſirous of goods than money, inſtantly improved the advantage that had been procured them, and the market was ſtocked almoſt in an inſtant. To eſtabliſh a trade for buffaloes, however, which I moſt wanted, I found it neceſſary to give ten guineas for two, one of which weighed no more than an hundred and ſixty pounds; but I bought ſeven more much cheaper, and might afterwards have purchaſed as many as I pleaſed almoſt upon my own terms, for they were now driven down to the water-ſide in herds. In the firſt two that I had bought ſo dear, Lange had certainly a ſhare; and it was in hopes to obtain part of the price of others, that he had pretended we muſt pay for them in gold. The natives, however, ſold what they afterwards brought down much to their ſatisfaction, without paying part of the price to him, as a reward for exacting money from us. Moſt of the buffaloes that we bought, after our friend the Prime Miniſter, had procured us a fair market, were ſold for a muſquet a-piece, and at this price we might have bought as many as would have freighted our ſhip.

The refreſhments which we procured here conſiſted of nine buffaloes, ſix ſheep, three hogs, thirty dozen of fowls, a few limes, and ſome cocoa-nuts, many dozens of eggs, half of which, however, proved to be rotten, a little garlic, and ſeveral hundred gallons of palm-ſyrup.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

A particular Deſcription of the Iſland of Savu, its Produce and Inhabitants, with a Specimen of their Language.

THIS iſland is called by the natives SAVU; the middle of it lies in about the latitude 10° 35′ S. longitude 237° 30′ W. and has in general been ſo little known, that I never ſaw a map or chart in which it is clearly or accurately laid down. I have ſeen a very old one, in which it is called Sou, and confounded with Sandel Boſch. Rumphius mentions an iſland by the name of Saow; and he alſo ſays that it is the ſame which the Dutch call Sandel Boſch: but neither is this iſland, nor Timor, nor Rotte, nor indeed any one of the iſlands that we have ſeen in theſe ſeas, placed within a reaſonable diſtance of its true ſituation. It is about eight leagues long from eaſt to weſt; but what is its breadth, I do not know, as I ſaw only the north ſide. The harbour in which we lay is called Seba, from the diſtrict in which it lies: it is on the north-weſt ſide of the iſland, and well ſheltered from the ſouth-weſt trade wind, but it lies open to the north-weſt. We were told, that there were two other bays, where ſhips might anchor; that the beſt, called Timo, was on the ſouth-weſt ſide of the ſouth-eaſt point; of the third we learned neither the name nor ſituation. The ſea-coaſt in general is low; but in the middle of the iſland there are hills of a conſiderable height. We were upon the coaſt at the latter end of the dry ſeaſon, when there had been no rain for ſeven months; and we were told that when the dry ſeaſon continues ſo long, there is no running ſtream of freſh water upon the whole iſland, but only ſmall ſprings, which are at a conſiderable diſtance from the ſea-ſide: yet nothing can be imagined ſo beautiful as the proſpect of the country from the ſhip. 1770. September.

The level ground next to the ſea-ſide was covered with cocoa-nut trees, and a kind of palm called *Arecas*; and beyond them the hills, which roſe in a gentle and regular aſcent, were richly cloathed, quite to the ſummit, with plantations of the fan-palm, forming an almoſt impenetrable grove. How much even this proſpect muſt be improved, when every foot of ground between

1770. September. between the trees is covered with verdure, by maize and millet and indigo, can ſcaree be conceived but by a powerful imagination, not unacquainted with the ſtatelineſs and beauty of trees that adorn this part of the earth. The dry ſeaſon commences in March, or April, and ends in October or November.

The principal trees of this iſland are the fan-palm, the cocoa-nut, tamarind, limes, oranges, and mangoes; the other vegetable productions are maize, Guinea corn, rice, millet, callevances, and water melons. We ſaw alſo one ſugar-cane, and a few kinds of European garden-ſtuff; particularly cellery, marjoram, fennel, and garlic. For the ſupply of luxury, it has betel, areca, tobacco, cotton, indigo, and a ſmall quantity of cinnamon, which ſeems to be planted here only for curioſity; and indeed we doubted whether it was the genuine plant, knowing that the Dutch are very careful not to truſt the ſpecies out of their proper iſlands. There are however ſeveral kinds of fruit, beſides thoſe which have been already mentioned; particularly the ſweet ſop, which is well known to the Weſt Indians, and a ſmall oval fruit, called the *Blimbi*, both of which grow upon trees. The blimbi is about three or four inches long, and in the middle about as thick as a man's finger, tapering towards each end: it is covered with a very thick ſkin of a light green colour, and in the inſide are a few ſeeds diſpoſed in the form of a ſtar: its flavour is a light, clean, pleaſant acid, but it cannot be eaten raw; it is ſaid to be excellent as a pickle; and ſtewed, it made a moſt agreeable ſour ſauce to our boiled diſhes.

The tame animals are buffaloes, ſheep, goats, hogs, fowls, pigeons, horſes, aſſes, dogs and cats; and of all theſe there is great plenty. The buffaloes differ very conſiderably from the horned cattle of Europe in ſeveral particulars; their ears are much larger, their ſkins are almoſt without hair, their horns are curved towards each other, but together bend directly backwards, and they have no dewlaps. We ſaw ſeveral that were as big as a well grown European ox, and there muſt be ſome much larger; for Mr. Banks ſaw a pair of horns which meaſured from tip to tip three feet nine inches and an half, acroſs their wideſt diameter four feet one inch and an half, and in the whole

ſweep

ſweep of their ſemicircle in front ſeven feet ſix inches and an half. It muſt however be obſerved, that a buffalo here of any ſize, does not weigh above half as much as an ox of the ſame ſize in England: thoſe that we gueſſed to weigh four hundred weight did not weigh more than two hundred and fifty; the reaſon is, that ſo late in the dry ſeaſon the bones are very thinly covered with fleſh: there is not an ounce of fat in a whole carcaſe, and the flanks are literally nothing but ſkin and bone: the fleſh however is well taſted and juicy, and I ſuppoſe better than the fleſh of an Engliſh ox would be if he was to ſtarve in this ſun-burnt country. 1770. September.

The horſes are from eleven to twelve hands high; but though they are ſmall, they are ſpirited and nimble, eſpecially in pacing, which is their common ſtep: the inhabitants generally ride them without a ſaddle, and with no better bridle than a halter. The ſheep are of the kind which in England are called Bengal ſheep, and differ from ours in many particulars. They are covered with hair inſtead of wool, their ears are very large, and hang down under their horns, and their noſes are arched; they are thought to have a general reſemblance to a goat, and for that reaſon are frequently called *cabritos:* their fleſh we thought the worſt mutton we had ever eaten, being as lean as that of the buffaloes, and without flavour. The hogs, however, were ſome of the fatteſt we had ever ſeen, though, as we were told, their principal food is the outſide huſks of rice, and the palm ſyrup diſſolved in water. The fowls are chiefly of the game breed, and large, but the eggs are remarkably ſmall.

Of the fiſh which the ſea produces here, we know but little: turtles are ſometimes found upon the coaſt, and are by theſe people, as well as all others, conſidered as a dainty.

The people are rather under than over the middle ſize; the women eſpecially are remarkably ſhort and ſquat built: their complexion is a dark brown, and their hair univerſally black and lank. We ſaw no difference in the colour of rich and poor, though in the South Sea iſlands thoſe that were expoſed to the weather were almoſt as brown as the New Hollanders, and the better ſort nearly as fair as the natives of Europe. The men are in general well made, vigorous and active,

1770. September. tive, and have a greater variety in the make and diſpoſition of their features than uſual; the countenances of the women, on the contrary, are all alike.

The men faſten their hair up to the top of their heads with a comb, the women tie it behind in a club, which is very far from becoming. Both ſexes eradicate the hair from under the arm, and the men do the ſame by their beards: for which purpoſe, the better ſort always carry a pair of ſilver pincers hanging by a ſtring round their necks; ſome however ſuffer a very little hair to remain upon their upper lips, but this is always kept ſhort.

The dreſs of both ſexes conſiſts of cotton cloth, which being dyed blue in the yarn, and not uniformly of the ſame ſhade, is in clouds or waves of that colour, and even in our eye had not an inelegant appearance. This cloth they manufacture themſelves, and two pieces, each about two yards long, and a yard and a half wide, make a dreſs: one of them is worn round the middle, and the other covers the upper part of the body; the lower edge of the piece that goes round the middle the men draw pretty tight juſt below the fork, the upper edge of it is left looſe, ſo as to form a kind of hollow belt, which ſerves them as a pocket to carry their knives, and other little implements which it is convenient to have about them. The other piece of cloth is paſſed through this girdle behind, and one end of it being brought over the left ſhoulder, and the other over the right, they fall down over the breaſt, and are tucked into the girdle before; ſo that by opening or cloſing the plaits, they can cover more or leſs of their bodies as they pleaſe; the arms, legs, and feet are always naked. The difference between the dreſs of the two ſexes conſiſts principally in the manner of wearing the waiſt-piece, for the women, inſtead of drawing the lower edge tight, and leaving the upper edge looſe for a pocket, draw the upper edge tight, and let the lower edge fall as low as the knees, ſo as to form a petticoat; the body-piece, inſtead of being paſſed thro' the girdle, is faſtened under the arms and acroſs the breaſt, with the utmoſt decency. I have already obſerved that the men faſten the hair upon the top of the head, and the women tie it in a club behind, but there is another difference in the head dreſs, by which the ſexes

are

1770. September.

are diſtinguiſhed: the women wear nothing as a ſuccedaneum for a cap, but the men conſtantly wrap ſomething round their heads in the manner of a fillet; it is ſmall, but generally of the fineſt materials that can be procured; we ſaw ſome who applied ſilk handkerchiefs to this purpoſe, and others that wore fine cotton, or muſlin, in the manner of a ſmall turban.

Theſe people bore their teſtimony that the love of finery is an univerſal paſſion, for their ornaments were very numerous. Some of the better ſort wore chains of gold round their necks, but they were made of plaited wire, and conſequently were light and of little value; others had rings, which were ſo much worn that they ſeemed to have deſcended through many generations; and one perſon had a ſilver-headed cane, marked with a kind of a cypher, conſiſting of the Roman letters V, O, C, and therefore probably a preſent from the Dutch Eaſt India Company, whoſe mark it is: they have alſo ornaments made of beads, which ſome wear round their necks as a ſolitaire, and others, as bracelets, upon their wriſts: theſe are common to both ſexes, but the women have, beſides, ſtrings or girdles of beads, which they wear round their waiſts, and which ſerve to keep up their petticoat. Both ſexes had their ears bored, nor was there a ſingle exception that fell under our notice, yet we never ſaw an ornament in any of them; we never indeed ſaw either man or woman in any thing but what appeared to be their ordinary dreſs, except the King and his Miniſter, who in general wore a kind of a nightgown of coarſe chintz, and one of whom once received us in a black robe, which appeared to be made of what is called prince's ſtuff. We ſaw ſome boys, about twelve or fourteen years old, who had ſpiral circles of thick braſs wire paſſed three or four times round their arms, above the elbow, and ſome men wore rings of ivory, two inches in breadth, and above an inch in thickneſs, upon the ſame part of the arm; theſe, we are told, were the ſons of the Rajas, or Chiefs, who wore theſe cumbrous ornaments as badges of their high birth.

Almoſt all the men had their names traced upon their arms, in indelible characters of a black colour, and the women had a ſquare ornament of flouriſhed lines, im-

1770. September. preſſed in the ſame manner, juſt under the bent of the elbow. We were ſtruck with the ſimilitude between theſe marks, and thoſe made by tattowing in the South Sea iſlands, and upon enquiring into its origin, we learned, that it had been practiſed by the natives long before any Europeans came among them; and that in the neighbouring iſlands the inhabitants were marked with circles upon their necks and breaſts. The univerſality of this practice, which prevails among ſavages in all parts of the world, from the remoteſt limits of North America, to the iſlands in the South Seas, and which probably differs but little from the method of ſtaining the body, that was in uſe among the ancient inhabitants of Britain, is a curious ſubject of ſpeculation*.

The houſes of Savu are all built upon the ſame plan, and differ only in ſize, being large in proportion to the rank and riches of the proprietor. Some are four hundred feet long, and ſome are not more than twenty; they are all raiſed upon poſts, or piles, about four feet high, one end of which is driven into the ground, and upon the other end is laid a ſubſtantial floor of wood, ſo that there is a vacant ſpace of four feet between the floor of the houſe and the ground. Upon this floor are placed other poſts or pillars, that ſupport a roof of ſloping ſides, which meet in a ridge at the top, like thoſe of our barns: the eaves of this roof, which is thatched with palm leaves, reach within two feet of the floor, and over-hang it as much: the ſpace within is generally divided lengthwiſe into three equal parts; the middle part, or centre, is encloſed by a partition of four ſides, reaching about ſix feet above the floor, and one or two ſmall rooms are alſo ſometimes taken off from the ſides, the reſt of the ſpace under the roof is open, ſo as freely to admit the air and the light: the particu-

* In the account which Mr. Boſſu has given of ſome Indians who inhabit the banks of the Akanza, a river of North America, which riſes in New Mexico, and falls into the Miſſiſſippi, he relates the following incident: "The Akanzas, ſays he, have adopted me, and as a mark of my privilege, have imprinted the figure of a roe-buck upon my thigh, which was done in this manner: an Indian having burned ſome ſtraw, diluted the aſhes with water, and with this mixture, drew the figure upon my ſkin; he then retraced it by pricking the lines with needles, ſo as at every puncture juſt to draw the blood, and the blood mixing with the aſhes of the ſtraw, forms a figure which can never be effaced." See Travels through Louiſiana, vol. i. p. 107.

lar

lar uſes of theſe different apartments, our ſhort ſtay would not permit us to learn, except that the cloſe room in the centre was appropriated to the women. 1770. September.

The food of theſe people conſiſts of every tame animal in the country, of which the hog holds the firſt place in their eſtimation, and the horſe the ſecond; next to the horſe is the buffalo, next to the buffalo their poultry, and they prefer dogs and cats to ſheep and goats. They are not fond of fiſh, and, I believe, it is never eaten but by the poor people, nor by them, except when their duty or buſineſs requires them to be upon the beach, and then every man is furniſhed with a light caſting net, which is girt round him, and makes part of his dreſs, and with this he takes any ſmall fiſh which happen to come in his way.

The aeſculent vegetables and fruits have been mentioned already, but the fan-palm requires more particular notice, for at certain times it is a ſuccedaneum for all other food both to man and beaſt. A kind of wine, called toddy, is procured from the tree, by cutting the buds which are to produce flowers, ſoon after their appearance, and tying under them ſmall baſkets, made of the leaves, which are ſo cloſe as to hold liquids without leaking. The juice, which trickles into theſe veſſels, is collected by perſons who climb the trees for that purpoſe, morning and evening, and it is the common drink of every individual upon the iſland; yet a much greater quantity is drawn off than is conſumed in this uſe, and of the ſurplus they make both a ſyrup and coarſe ſugar. The liquor is called *dua* or *duac*, and both the ſyrup and the ſugar *gula*. The ſyrup is prepared by boiling the liquor down in pots of earthen ware, till it is ſufficiently inſpiſſated; it is not unlike treacle in appearance, but it is ſomewhat thicker, and has a much more agreeable taſte: the ſugar is of a reddiſh brown, perhaps the ſame with the Jugata ſugar upon the continent of India, and it was more agreeable to our palates than any cane ſugar, unrefined, that we had ever taſted. We were at firſt afraid that the ſyrup, of which ſome of our people eat very great quantities, would have brought on fluxes, but its aperient quality was ſo very ſlight, that what effect it produced was rather ſalutary than hurtful. I have already obſerved, that it is given with the huſks of rice to the hogs, and that they grow

1770. September. enormouſly fat without taking any other food: we were told alſo, that this ſyrup is uſed to fatten their dogs and their fowls, and that the inhabitants themſelves have ſubſiſted upon this alone for ſeveral months, when other crops have failed, and animal food has been ſcarce. The leaves of this tree are alſo put to various uſes, they thatch houſes, and make baſkets, cups, umbrellas, and tobacco-pipes. The fruit is leaſt eſteemed, and as the bloſſoms are wounded for the tuac, or toddy, there is not much of it: it is about as big as a large turnip, and covered, like the cocoa-nut, with a fibrous coat, under which are three kernels, that muſt be eaten before they are ripe, for afterwards they become ſo hard that they cannot be chewed; in their eatable ſtate they taſte not unlike a green cocoa-nut, and, like them, probably they yield a nutriment that is watry and unſubſtantial.

The common method of dreſſing food here is by boiling, and as fire-wood is very ſcarce, and the inhabitants have no other fuel, they make uſe of a contrivance to ſave it, that is not wholly unknown in Europe, but it is ſeldom practiſed except in camps. They dig a hollow under ground, in a horizontal direction, like a rabbit-burrow, about two yards long, and opening into a hole at each end, one of which is large and the other ſmall: by the large hole the fire is put in, and the ſmall one ſerves for a draught. The earth over this burrow is perforated by circular holes, which communicate with the cavity below; and in theſe holes are ſet earthen pots, generally about three to each fire, which are large in the middle, and taper towards the bottom, ſo that the fire acts upon a large part of their ſurface. Each of theſe pots generally contains about eight or ten gallons, and it is ſurpriſing to ſee with how ſmall a quantity of fire they may be kept boiling; a palm leaf, or a dry ſtalk, thruſt in now and then, is ſufficient: in this manner they boil all their victuals, and make all their ſyrup and ſugar. It appears, by Frezier's account of his voyage to the South Sea, that the Peruvian Indians have a contrivance of the ſame kind, and perhaps it might be adopted with advantage by the poor people even of this country, where fuel is very dear.

Both ſexes are enſlaved by the hateful and pernicious habit of chewing beetle and areca, which they contract even

even while they are children, and practiſe inceſſantly from morning till night. With theſe they always mix a kind of white lime, made of coral ſtone and ſhells, and frequently a ſmall quantity of tobacco, ſo that their mouths are diſguſtful in the higheſt degree both to the ſmell and the ſight: the tobacco taints their breath, and the beetle and lime make the teeth not only as black as charcoal, but as rotten too. I have ſeen men between twenty and thirty, whoſe fore-teeth have been conſumed almoſt down to the gums, though no two of them were exactly of the ſame length or thickneſs, but irregularly corroded like iron by ruſt. This loſs of teeth is, I think, by all who have written upon the ſubject, imputed to the tough and ſtringy coat of the areca nut; but I impute it wholly to the lime: they are not looſened, or broken, or forced out, as might be expected if they were injured by the continual chewing of hard and rough ſubſtances, but they are gradually waſted like metals that are expoſed to the action of powerful acids; the ſtumps always adhering firmly to the ſocket in the jaw, when there is no part of the tooth above the gums: and poſſibly thoſe who ſuppoſe that ſugar has a bad effect upon the teeth of Europeans, may not be miſtaken; for it is well known, that refined loaf ſugar contains a conſiderable quantity of lime; and he that doubts whether lime will deſtroy bone of any kind, may eaſily aſcertain the fact by experiment.

1770. September.

If the people here are at any time without this odious mouthful, they are ſmoaking. This operation they perform by rolling up a ſmall quantity of tobacco, and putting it into one end of a tube about ſix inches long, and as thick as a gooſe quill, which they make of a palm leaf. As the quantity of tobacco in theſe pipes is very ſmall, the effect of it is increaſed, eſpecially among the women, by ſwallowing the ſmoke.

When the natives of this iſland were firſt formed into a civil ſociety, is not certainly known, but at preſent it is divided into five principalities or nigrees: LAAI, SEBA, REGREUA, TIMO, and MASSARA, each of which is governed by its reſpective Raja, or King. The Raja of Seba, the principality in which we were aſhore, ſeemed to have great authority, without much

1770. September. external parade, or ſhow, or much appearance of perſonal reſpect. He was about five and thirty years of age, and the fatteſt man we ſaw upon the whole iſland: he appeared to be of a dull phlegmatic diſpoſition, and to be directed almoſt implicitly by the old man, who, upon my preſenting him with a ſword, had procured us a fair market, in ſpight of the craft and avarice of the Dutch factors. The name of this perſon was MANNU DJARME, and it may reaſonably be ſuppoſed that he was a man of uncommon integrity and abilities, as, notwithſtanding his poſſeſſion of power in the character of a favourite, he was beloved by the whole principality. If any difference ariſes among the people, it is ſettled by the Raja and his counſellors, without delay or appeal, and, as we were told, with the moſt ſolemn deliberation and impartial juſtice.

We were informed by Mr. Lange, that the Chiefs who had ſucceſſively preſided over the five principalities of this iſland, had lived for time immemorial in the ſtricteſt alliance and moſt cordial friendſhip with each other; yet, he ſaid, the people were of a warlike diſpoſition, and had always courageouſly defended themſelves againſt foreign invaders. We were told alſo, that the iſland was able to raiſe, upon very ſhort notice, 7300 fighting men, armed with muſkets, ſpears, lances, and targets. Of this force, Laai was ſaid to furniſh 2600, Sebo 2000, Regeeua 1500, Timo 800, and Maſſara 400. Beſides the arms that have been already mentioned, each man is furniſhed with a large pole-axe, reſembling a wood-bill, except that it has a ſtraight edge, and is much heavier: this in the hands of people who have courage to come to cloſe quarters with an enemy, muſt be a dreadful weapon; and we are told that they were ſo dexterous with their lances, that at the diſtance of ſixty feet they would throw them with ſuch exactneſs as to pierce a man's heart, and ſuch force as to go quite through his body.

How far this account of the martial proweſs of the inhabitants of Savu may be true, we cannot take upon us to determine, but, during our ſtay, we ſaw no appearance of it. We ſaw indeed in the town-houſe, or houſe of aſſembly, about one hundred ſpears and targets, which ſerved to arm the people who were ſent down to intimidate

intimidate us at the trading-place; but they ſeemed to be the refuſe of old armouries, no two being of the ſame make or length, for ſome were ſix and ſome ſixteen feet long. We ſaw no lance among them, and as to the muſkets, though they were clean on the outſide, they were eaten into holes by the ruſt within, and the people themſelves appeared to be ſo little acquainted with military diſcipline, that they marched like a diſorderly rabble, every one having, inſtead of his target, a cock, ſome tobacco, or other merchandiſe of the like kind, which he took that opportunity to bring down to ſell, and few or none of their cartridge-boxes were furniſhed with either powder or ball, though a piece of paper was thruſt into the hole to ſave appearances. We ſaw a few ſwivel guns and pateraroes at the town-houſe, and a great gun before it; but the ſwivels and pateraroes lay out of their carriages, and the great gun lay upon a heap of ſtones, almoſt conſumed with ruſt, with the touch-hole downwards, poſſibly to conceal its ſize, which might perhaps be little leſs that that of the bore. 1770. September.

We could not diſcover that, among theſe people, there was any rank of diſtinction between the Raja and the land-owners; the land-owners were reſpectable in proportion to their poſſeſſions. The inferior ranks conſiſt of manufacturers, labouring poor, and ſlaves. The ſlaves, like the peaſants in ſome parts of Europe, are connected with the eſtate, and both deſcend together; but though the land-owner can ſell his ſlave, he has no other power over his perſon, not even to correct him, without the privity and approbation of the Raja. Some have five hundred of theſe ſlaves, and ſome not half a dozen; the common price of them is a fat hog. When a great man goes out, he is conſtantly attended by two or more of them; one of them carries a ſword or hanger, the hilt of which is commonly of ſilver, and adorned with large taſſels of horſe-hair, and another carries a bag which contains beetle, areca, lime, and tobacco. In theſe attendants conſiſt all their magnificence, for the Raja himſelf has no other mark of diſtinction.

The chief object of pride among theſe people, like that of a Welchman, is a long pedigree of reſpectable

1770. September.

anceſtors, and indeed a veneration for antiquity ſeems to be carried farther here than in any other country; even a houſe that has been well inhabited for many generations, becomes almoſt ſacred, and few articles either of uſe or luxury bear ſo high a price as ſtones, which having been long ſat upon are become even and ſmooth: thoſe who can purchaſe ſuch ſtones, or are poſſeſſed of them by inheritance, place them round their houſes, where they ſerve as ſeats for their dependants.

Every Raja ſets up, in the principal town of his province, or nigree, a large ſtone, which ſerves as a memorial of his reign. In the principal town of Seba, where we lay, there are thirteen ſuch ſtones, beſides many fragments of others, which had been ſet up in earlier times, and are now mouldering away: theſe monuments ſeem to prove that ſome kind of civil eſtabliſhment here is of conſiderable antiquity. The laſt thirteen reigns in England make ſomething more than 276 years.

Many of theſe ſtones are ſo large, that it is difficult to conceive by what means they were brought to their preſent ſtation, eſpecially as it is the ſummit of a hill; but the world is full of memorials of human ſtrength, in which the mechanical powers that have been ſince added, by mathematical ſcience, ſeem to be ſurpaſſed; and of ſuch monuments there are not a few, among the remains of barbarous antiquity, in our own country, beſides thoſe upon Saliſbury Plain.

Theſe ſtones not only record the reigns of ſucceſſive princes, but ſerve for a purpoſe much more extraordinary, and probably altogether peculiar to this country. When a Raja dies, a general feaſt is proclaimed throughout his dominions, and all his ſubjects aſſemble round theſe ſtones; almoſt every living creature that can be caught is then killed, and the feaſt laſts for a leſs or greater number of weeks or months, as the kingdom happens to be more or leſs furniſhed with live ſtock at the time; the ſtones ſerve for tables. When this madneſs is over, a faſt muſt neceſſarily enſue, and the whole kingdom is obliged to ſubſiſt upon ſyrup and water, if it happens in the dry ſeaſon, when no vegetables can be procured, till a new ſtock of animals can be raiſed from

from the few that have eſcaped by chance, or been preſerved by policy from the general maſſacre, or can be procured from the neighbouring kingdoms. Such, however, is the account that we received from Mr. Lange. 1770. September.

We had no opportunity to examine any of their manufactures, except that of their cloth, which they ſpin, weave, and dye; we did not indeed ſee them employed, but many of the inſtruments which they uſe fell in our way. We ſaw their machine for clearing cotton of its ſeeds, which is made upon the ſame principles as thoſe in Europe, but is ſo ſmall that it might be taken for a model or a toy; it conſiſt of two cylinders, lie our round rulers, ſomewhat leſs than an inch in diameter, one of which, being turned round by a plain winch, turns the other by means of an endleſs worm, and the whole machine is not more than fourteen inches long, and ſeven high; that which we ſaw had been much uſed, and many pieces of cotton were hanging about it, ſo that there is no reaſon to doubt its being a fair ſpecimen of the reſt. We alſo once ſaw their apparatus for ſpinning; it conſiſted of a bobbin, on which was wound a ſmall quantity of thread, and a kind of diſtaff filled with cotton; we conjecture therefore that they ſpin by hand, as the women of Europe did before the introduction of wheels; and, I am told, that they have not yet found their way into ſome parts of it. Their loom ſeemed to be, in one reſpect, preferable to ours, for the web was not ſtretched upon a frame, but extended by a piece of wood at each end, round one of which the cloth was rolled, and round the other the threads; the web was about half a yard broad, and the length of the ſhuttle was equal to the breadth of the web, ſo that, probably, their work goes on but ſlowly. That they dyed this cloth we firſt gueſſed from its colour, and from the indigo which we ſaw in their plantations; and our conjecture was afterwards confirmed by Mr. Lange's account. I have already obſerved, that it is dyed in the yarn, and we once ſaw them dying what was ſaid to be girdles for the women, of a dirty red, but with what drug we did not think it worth while to inquire.

The

1770. September. The religion of theſe people, according to Mr. Lange's information, is an abſurd kind of paganiſm, every man chuſing his own god, and determining for himſelf how he ſhould be worſhipped; ſo that there are almoſt as many gods and modes of worſhip as people. In their morals, however, they are ſaid to be irreproachable, even upon the principles of Chriſtianity: no man is allowed more than one wife, yet an illicit commerce between the ſexes is in a manner unknown among them: inſtances of theft are very rare; and they are ſo far from revenging a ſuppoſed injury by murder, that if any difference ariſes between them, they will not ſo much as make it the ſubject of debate, leſt they ſhould be provoked to reſentment and ill-will, but immediately and implicitly refer it to the determination of their King.

They appeared to be a healthy and long-lived people: yet ſome of them were marked with the ſmall-pox, which Mr. Lange told us had ſeveral times made its appearance among them, and was treated with the ſame precautions as the plague. As ſoon as a perſon was ſeized with the diſtemper, he was removed to ſome ſolitary place, very remote from any habitation, where the diſeaſe was left to take its courſe, and the patient ſupplied with daily food by reaching it to him at the end of a long pole.

Of their domeſtic œconomy we could learn but little; in one inſtance, however, their delicacy and cleanlineſs are very remarkable. Many of us were aſhore here three ſucceſſive days, from a very early hour in the morning till it was dark; yet we never ſaw the leaſt trace of an offering to Cloacina, nor could we ſo much as gueſs where they were made. In a country ſo populous this is very difficult to be accounted for, and perhaps there is no other country in the world where the ſecret is ſo effectually kept.

The boats in uſe here are a kind of proa.

This iſland was ſettled by the Portugueſe, almoſt as ſoon as they firſt found their way into this part of the ocean, but they were in a ſhort time ſupplanted by the Dutch. The Dutch, however, did not take poſſeſſion of it, but only ſent ſloops to trade with the natives, probably for proviſions to ſupport the inhabitants of their ſpice iſlands, who applying themſelves wholly to the

the cultivation of that important article of trade, and laying out all their ground in plantations, can breed few animals: poſſibly their ſupplies, by this occaſional traffic, were precarious: poſſibly they were jealous of being ſupplanted in their turn; but, however that be, their Eaſt-India Company, about ten years ago, entered into a treaty with the Rajas, by which the Company ſtipulated to furniſh each of them with a certain quantity of ſilk, fine linen, cutlery ware, arrack, and other articles every year; and the Rajas engaged, that neither they nor their ſubjects ſhould trade with any perſon except the Company, without having firſt obtained their conſent, and that they would admit a reſident on behalf of the company, to reſide upon the iſland, and ſee that their part of the treaty was fulfilled; they alſo engaged to ſupply annually a certain quantity of rice, maize, and calevances. The maize and calevances are ſent to Timor in ſloops, which are kept there for that purpoſe, each of which is navigated by ten Indians; and the rice is fetched away annually by a ſhip which brings the Company's returns, and anchors alternately in each of the three bays. Theſe returns are delivered to the Rajas in the form of a preſent, and the caſk of arrack they and their principal people never ceaſe to drink, as long as a drop of it remains. 1770. September.

In conſequence of this treaty, the Dutch placed three perſons upon the iſland; Mr. Lange, his colleague, the native of Timor, the ſon of an Indian woman by a Portugueſe, and one Frederick Craig, the ſon of an Indian woman by a Dutchman. Lange viſits each of the Rajas once in two months, when he makes the tour of the iſland, attended by fifty ſlaves on horſeback. He exhorts their Chiefs to plant, if it appears that they have been remiſs, and obſerves where the crops are got in, that he may order ſloops to fetch it; ſo that it paſſes immediately from the ground to the Dutch ſtore-houſes at Timor. In theſe excurſions he always carries with him ſome bottles of arrack, which he finds of great uſe in opening the hearts of the Rajas with whom he is to deal.

During the ten years that he had reſided upon this iſland he had never ſeen an European beſides ourſelves, except at the arrival of the Dutch ſhip, which had

ſailed

1770. September. ſailed about two months before we arrived; and he is now to be diſtinguiſhed from the natives only by his colour and his dreſs, for he ſits upon the ground, chews his beetle, and in every reſpect has adopted their characters and manners: he has married an Indian woman of the iſland of Timor, who keeps his houſe after the faſhion of her country, and he gave that as a reaſon for not inviting us to viſit him, ſaying, that he could entertain us in no other manner than the Indians had done, and he ſpoke no language readily but that of the country.

The office of Mr. Frederick Craig is to inſtruct the youth of the country in reading and writing, and the principles of the Chriſtian religion; the Dutch having printed verſions of the New Teſtament, a catechiſm, and ſeveral other tracts, in the language of this and the neighbouring iſlands. Dr. Solander, who was at his houſe, ſaw the books, and the copy-books alſo of his ſcholars, many of whom wrote a very fair hand. He boaſted that there were no leſs than ſix hundred Chriſtians in the townſhip of Seba; but what the Dutch Chriſtianity of theſe Indians may be, it is not perhaps very eaſy to gueſs; for there is not a church, nor even a prieſt, in the whole iſland.

While we were at this place, we made ſeveral inquiries concerning the neighbouring iſlands, and the intelligence which we received is to the following effect:

A ſmall iſland to the weſtward of Savu, the name of which we did not learn, produces nothing of any conſequence but areca-nuts, of which the Dutch receive annually the freight of two ſloops, in return for preſents that they make to the iſlanders.

Timor is the chief, and the Dutch reſidents on the other iſlands go thither once a year to paſs their accompts. The place is nearly in the ſame ſtate as in Dampier's time, the Dutch having there a fort and ſtore-houſes; and by Lange's account, we might there have been ſupplied with every neceſſary that we expected to procure at Batavia, ſalt proviſions and arrack not excepted. But the Portugueſe are ſtill in poſſeſſion of ſeveral towns on the north ſide of the iſland, particularly Laphao and Seſial.

About

About two years before our arrival, a French ſhip was wrecked upon the eaſt coaſt of Timor; and after ſhe had lain ſome days upon the ſhoal, a ſudden gale broke her up at once, and drowned the captain, with the greateſt part of the crew: thoſe who got a-ſhore, among whom was one of the lieutenants, made the beſt of their way to Concordia; they were four days upon the road, where they were obliged to leave part of their company through fatigue, and the reſt, to the number of about eighty, arrived at the town. They were ſupplied with every neceſſary, and ſent back to the wreck, with proper aſſiſtance, for recovering what could be fiſhed up: they fortunately got up all their bullion, which was in cheſts, and ſeveral of their guns, which were very large. They then returned to the town, but their companions who had been left upon the road were miſſing, having, as it was ſuppoſed, been kept among the Indians, either by perſuaſion or force; for they are very deſirous of having Europeans among them, to inſtruct them in the art of war. After a ſtay of more than two months at Concordia, their number was diminiſhed nearly one half by ſickneſs, in conſequence of the fatigue and hardſhip which they had ſuffered by the ſhipwreck, and the ſurvivors were ſent in a ſmall veſſel to Europe. 1770. September.

Rotte is in much the ſame ſituation as Savu; a Dutch factor reſides upon it to manage the natives, and look after its produce, which conſiſts, among other articles, of ſugar. Formerly it was made only by bruiſing the canes, and boiling the juice to a ſyrup, in the ſame manner as toddy; but great improvements have lately been made in preparing this valuable commodity. The three little iſlands called the Solars, are alſo under the influence of the Dutch ſettlement at Concordia: they are flat and low, but abound with proviſions of every kind, and the middlemoſt is ſaid to have a good harbour for ſhipping. Erde, another little iſland to the weſtward of the Solars, is ſtill in the hands of the Portugueſe, who have a good town and harbour on the north-eaſt corner of it called Larntuca; they had formerly an harbour on the ſouth ſide of it, but that, being much inferior to Larntuca, has for ſome time been altogether neglected.

The

1770 September. The inhabitants of each of theſe little iſlands ſpeak a language peculiar to themſelves, and it is an object of Dutch policy to prevent, as much as poſſible, their learning the language of each other. If they ſpoke a common language, they would learn, by a mutual intercourſe with each other, to plant ſuch things as would be of more value to themſelves than their preſent produce, though of leſs advantage to the Dutch; but their languages being different, they can communicate no ſuch knowledge to each other, and the Dutch ſecure themſelves the benefit of ſupplying their ſeveral neceſſities upon their own terms, which, it is reaſonable to ſuppoſe, are not very moderate. It is probably with a view to this advantage that the Dutch never teach their own language to the natives of theſe iſlands, and have been at the expence of tranſlating the Teſtament and catechiſms into the different languages of each; for in proportion as Dutch had become the language of their religion, it would have become the common language of them all.

To this account of Savu, I ſhall only add a ſmall ſpecimen of its language, by which it will appear to have ſome affinity with that of the South Sea iſlands, many of the words being exactly the ſame, and the numbers manifeſtly derived from the ſame ſource.

A man,	Momonne.	*The feet,*	Dunceala.
A woman,	Mobunnee.	*The toes*	Kiſſovei yilla.
The head,	Catoo.	*The arms,*	Camacoo.
The hair,	Row catoo.	*The hand,*	Wulaba.
The eyes,	Matta.	*A buffaloo,*	Cabaou.
The eye-laſhes,	Rowna matta.	*A horſe,*	Djara.
The noſe,	Swanga.	*A hog,*	Vavee.
The cheeks,	Cavaranga.	*A ſheep,*	Doomba.
The ears,	Wodeeloo.	*A goat,*	Keſavoo.
The tongue,	Vaio.	*A dog,*	Guaca.
The neck,	Lacoco.	*A cat,*	Maio.
The breaſts,	Sooſoo.	*A fowl,*	Mannu.
The nipples,	Caboo ſooſoo.	*The tail,*	Carow.
The belly,	Duldoo.	*The beak,*	Pangoutoo.
The navel,	Aſſoo.	*A fiſh,*	Ica.
The thighs,	Tooga,	*A turtle,*	Unjoo.
The knees,	Rootoo.	*A cocoa-nut,*	Nieu.

The

The legs,	Baibo.	*Two,*	Lhua.
Areca,	Calella	*Three,*	Tullu.
Beetle,	Canana.	*Four,*	Uppah.
Lime,	Aou.	*Five,*	Lumme.
A fiſh hook,	Maanadoo.	*Six.*	Unna.
Tattow, the marks on the ſkin,	Tata.	*Seven,*	Pedu,
		Eight,	Arru.
The ſun,	Lodo.	*Nine,*	Saou.
The moon,	Wurroo.	*Ten,*	Singooroo.
The ſea,	Aidaſſee.	*Eleven,*	Singurungſſeu.
Water,	Ailea.	20,	Lhuangooroo.
Fire,	Aee.	100,	Sing aſſu.
Fan-palm,	Boaceree.	1000,	Setuppah.
To die,	Maate.	10,000,	Selacuſſa.
To ſleep,	Tabudge.	100,000,	Serata,
To riſe,	Tateetoo.	1,000,000	Sereboo.
One,	Uſſe.		

In this account of the iſland of Savu it muſt be remembered, that except the facts in which we were parties, and the account of the objects which we had an opportunity to examine, the whole is founded merely upon the report of Mr. Lange, upon whoſe authority alone therefore it muſt reſt.

CHAP. XII.

The Run from the Iſland of Savu to Batavia, and an Account of the Tranſactions there while the Ship was refitting.

IN the morning of Friday the 21ſt of September, 1770, we got under ſail, and ſtood away to the weſtward, along the north ſide of the iſland of Savu, and of the ſmaller that lies to the weſtward of it, which at noon bore from us S. S. E. diſtant two leagues. At four o'clock in the afternoon we diſcovered a ſmall low iſland, bearing S. S. W. diſtant three leagues, which has no place in any chart now extant, at leaſt in none that I have been able to procure: it lies in latitude 10° 47′ S. longitude 238° 28′ W. Frid. 24.

At

1770. September. Saturd. 22. Sunday 23. Wedneſ. 26. Thurſ. 27. Friday 28. Satur. 29. Sunday 30. October. Mond. 1.

At noon on the 22d, we were in latitude 11° 10′ S. longitude 240° 38′ W. In the evening of the 23d, we found the variation of the needle to be 2° 44′ W. as ſoon as we got clear of the iſlands we had conſtantly a ſwell from the ſouthward, which I imagined was not cauſed by a wind blowing from that quarter, but by the ſea being ſo determined by the poſition of the coaſt of New Holland.

At noon on the 26th, being in latitude 19° 47′ S. longitude 249° 42′ W. we found the variation to be 3° 10′ W. and our ſituation to be twenty-five miles to the northward of the log; for which I know not how to account. At noon on the 27th our latitude, by obſervation, was 10° 51′ S. which was agreeable to the log; and our longitude was 252° 11′ W. We ſteered N. W. all day on the 28th, in order to make the land of Java; and at noon on the 29th, our latitude by obſervation was 9° 31′ S. longitude 254° 10′ W. and in the morning of the 30th, I took into my poſſeſſion the log-book and journals, at leaſt all I could find, of the officers, petty officers, and ſeamen, and enjoined them ſecrecy, with reſpect to where they had been.

At ſeven in the evening, being in the latitude of Java Head, and not ſeeing any land, I concluded that we were too far to weſtward; I therefore hauled up E. N. E. having before ſteered N. by E. In the night we had thunder and lightning: and about twelve o'clock, by the light of the flaſhes, we ſaw the land bearing eaſt. I then tacked and ſtood to the S. W. till four o'clock in the morning of the 1ſt of October, and at ſix, Java Head, or the weſt end of Java, bore S. E. by E. diſtant five leagues: ſoon after we ſaw Prince's Iſland, bearing E. ½ S. and at ten the Iſland of Cracatoa, bearing N. E. Cracatoa is a remarkably high-peaked iſland, and at noon it bore N. 40 E. diſtant ſeven leagues.

I muſt now obſerve, that, during our run from Savu, I allowed twenty minutes a-day for the weſterly current, which I concluded muſt run ſtrong at this time, eſpecially off the coaſt of Java, and I found that this allowance was equivalent to the effect of the current upon the ſhip.

At

At four o'clock in the morning of the 2d we fetched close in with the coaſt of Java, in fifteen fathoms; we then ſtood along the coaſt, and early in the forenoon, I ſent the boat aſhore to try if ſhe could procure ſome fruit for Tupia, who was very ill, and ſome graſs for the buffaloes that were ſtill alive. In an hour or two ſhe returned with four cocoa-nuts, and a ſmall bunch of plantains, which had been purchaſed for a ſhilling, and ſome herbage for the cattle, which the Indians not only gave us, but aſſiſted our people to cut. The country looked like one continued wood, and had a very pleaſant appearance. 1770. October. Tueſd. 2.

About eleven o'clock, we ſaw two Dutch ſhips lying off Anger point, and I ſent Mr. Hicks on board of one of them to enquire news of our country, from which we had been abſent ſo long. In the mean time it fell calm, and about noon I anchored in eighteen fathoms with a muddy bottom. When Mr. Hicks returned, he reported that the ſhips were Dutch Eaſt Indiamen from Batavia, one of which was bound to Ceylon, and the other to the coaſt of Malabar; and that there was alſo a flyboat or packet, which was ſaid to be ſtationed here to carry letters from the Dutch ſhips that came hither to Batavia, but which I rather think was appointed to examine all ſhips that paſs the ſtreight: from theſe ſhips we heard, with great pleaſure, that the Swallow had been at Batavia about two years before.

At 7 o'clock a breeze ſprung up at S. S. W. with which having weighed, we ſtood to the N. E. between Thwart-the-way Iſland and the Cap, ſounding from eighteen to twenty-eight fathoms: we had but little wind all night, and having a ſtrong current againſt us, we got no further by eight in the morning than Bantham point. At this time the wind came to the N. E. and obliged us to anchor in two and twenty fathoms, at about the diſtance of two miles from the ſhore; the point bore N. E. by E. diſtant one league, and here we found a ſtrong current ſetting to the N. W. In the morning we had ſeen the Dutch packet ſtanding after us; but when the wind ſhifted to the N. E. ſhe bore away. Wedneſ. 3.

At 6 o'clock in the evening, the wind having obliged us to continue at anchor, one of the country boats

1770. October. came along ſide of us, on board of which was the Maſter of the packet. He ſeemed to have two motives for his viſit, one to take an account of the ſhip, and the other to ſell us refreſhments, for in the boat were turtle, fowls, ducks, parrots, paroquets, rice-birds, monkies, and other articles, which they held at a very high price, and brought to a bad market, for our Savu ſtock was not yet expended: however, I gave a Spaniſh dollar for a ſmall turtle, which weighed about ſix and thirty pounds; I gave alſo a dollar for ten large fowls, and afterwards bought fifteen more for the ſame price; for a dollar we might alſo have bought two monkies, or a whole cage of rice-birds. The maſter of the ſloop brought with him two books, in one of which he deſired that any of our officers would write down the name of the ſhip and its commander, with that of the place from which ſhe ſailed, and of the port to which ſhe was bound, with ſuch other particulars relating to themſelves, as they might think proper, for the information of any of our friends that ſhould come after us: and in the other he entered the names of the ſhip and the commander himſelf, in order to tranſmit them to the Governor and Council of the Indies. We perceived that in the firſt book many ſhips, particularly Portugueſe, had made entries of the ſame kind with that for which it was preſented to us. Mr. Hicks, however, having written the name of the ſhip, only added "from Europe." He took notice of this, but ſaid, he was ſatisfied with any thing we thought proper to write, it being intended merely for the information of thoſe who ſhould enquire after us from motives of friendſhip.

Having made ſeveral attempts to ſail with a wind that would not ſtem the current, and as often come to an anchor, a proa came along ſide of us in the morning of the 5th, in which was a Dutch officer, who ſent Friday 5. me down a printed paper in Engliſh, duplicates of which he had in other languages, particularly in French and Dutch, all regularly ſigned, in the name of the Governor and Council of the Indies, by their ſecretary: it contained nine queſtions, very ill expreſſed, in the following terms:

"1. To

" 1. To what nation the ſhip belongs, and its " name,? 1770. October.

" 2. If it comes from Europe, or any other place ?

" 3. From what place it laſtly departed from ?

" 4. Whereunto deſigned to go ?

" 5. What and how many ſhips of the Dutch Com- " pany by departure from the laſt ſhore there layed, " and their names ?

" 6. If one or more of theſe ſhips in company with " this, is departed from this, or any other place ?

" 7. If during the voyage any particularities is hap- " pened or ſeen ?

" 8. If not any ſhips in ſea, or the Streights of " Sunda, have ſeen or hailed in, and which ?

" 9. If any other news worth attention, at the " place from whence the ſhip laſtly departed, or dur- " ing the voyage, is happened ?

" BATAVIA, in the Caſtle,

" By order of the Governor-General, and the " Counſellors of India,

" J. BRANDER BUNGL, Sec."

Of theſe queſtions I anſwered only the firſt and the fourth: which when the officer ſaw, he ſaid anſwers to the reſt were of no conſequence: yet he immediately added, that he muſt ſend that very paper away to Batavia, and that it would be there the next day at noon. I have particularly related this incident, becauſe I have been credibly informed that it is but of late years that the Dutch have taken upon them to examine ſhips that paſs through this Streight.

At ten o'clock the ſame morning, we weighed, with a light breeze at S. W. but did little more than ſtem the current, and about two o'clock anchored again under Bantam Point, where we lay till nine; a light breeze then ſpringing up at S. E. we weighed and ſtood to the eaſtward till ten o'clock the next morning, when Saturday 6. the current obliged us again to anchor in twenty-two fathoms, Pulababi bearing E. by S. ½ S. diſtant between three and four miles. Having alternately weighed and anchored ſeveral times, till four in the afternoon of the 7th, we then ſtood to the eaſtward, Sunday 7. with a very faint breeze at N. E. and paſſed Wapping Iſland, and the firſt iſland to the eaſtward of it; when

1770. October. the wind dying away, we were carried by the current between the firſt and ſecond of the iſlands that lie to the eaſtward of Wapping Iſland, where we were obliged to anchor in thirty fathoms, being very near a ledge of rocks that run out from one of the iſlands. At two Monday 8. the next morning we weighed with the land wind at ſouth, and ſtood out clear of the ſhoal; but before noon were obliged to come to again in twenty-eight fathoms, near a ſmall iſland among thoſe that are called the Thouſand Iſlands, which we did not find laid down in any chart. Pulo Pare at this time bore E. N. E. diſtance between ſix and ſeven miles.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went a-ſhore upon the iſland, which they found not to be more than five hundred yards long, and one hundred broad: yet there was a houſe upon it, and a ſmall plantation, where, among other things, was the *Palma Chriſti*, from which the caſtor oil is made in the Weſt Indies: they made a ſmall addition to their collection of plants, and ſhot a bat, whoſe wings, when extended, meaſured three feet from point to point: they ſhot alſo four plovers, which exactly reſembled the golden plover of England. Soon after they returned, a ſmall Indian boat came along-ſide with two Malays on board, who brought three turtles, ſome dried fiſh, and a few pumpkins: we bought the turtle, which altogether weighed a hundred and forty-ſix pounds, for a dollar, and conſidering that we had lately paid the Dutchman a dollar for one that weighed only ſix and thirty pounds, we thought we had a good bargain. The ſeller appeared equally ſatisfied, and we then treated with him for his pumpkins, for which he was very unwilling to take any money but a dollar; we ſaid that a whole dollar was greatly too much; to which he readily aſſented, but deſired that we would cut one and give him a part; at laſt, however, a fine ſhining Portugueſe petacka tempted him, and for that he ſold us his whole ſtock of pumpkins, being in number twenty-ſix. At parting he made ſigns that we ſhould not tell at Batavia that any boat had been aboard us.

We were not able to weather Pulo Pare this day, but getting the land wind at ſouth about ten o'clock at night, we weighed and ſtood to the E. S. E. all night. At

ten

ten in the morning we anchored again to wait for the ſea breeze; and at noon it ſprung up at N. N. E. with which we ſtood in for Batavia road, where at four o'clock in the afternoon we came to an anchor. 1770. October. Tueſday 9.

We found here the Harcourt Indiaman from England, two Engliſh private traders of that country, thirteen ſail of large Dutch ſhips, and a conſiderable number of ſmall veſſels. A boat came immediately on board, from a ſhip which had a broad pendant flying, and the officer who commanded having inquired who we were, and whence we came, immediately returned with ſuch anſwers as we thought fit to give him: both he and his people were as pale as ſpectres, a ſad preſage of our ſufferings in ſo unhealthy a country; but our people, who, except Tupia, were all roſy and plump, ſeemed to think themſelves ſo ſeaſoned by various climates that nothing could hurt them. In the mean time, I ſent a Lieutenant a-ſhore to acquaint the Governor of our arrival, and to make an excuſe for our not ſaluting; for as I could ſalute with only three guns, except the ſwivels, which I was of opinion would not be heard, I thought it was better to let it alone. As ſoon as the boat was diſpatched the Carpenter delivered me an account of the defects of the ſhip, of which the following is a copy:

"The defects of his Majeſty's bark Endeavour, Lieu-
"tenant James Cook, Commander.

"The ſhip very leaky, as ſhe makes from twelve to "ſix inches water an hour, occaſioned by her main "keel being wounded in many places, and the ſcarfs "of her ſtern being very open: the falſe keel gone be-"yond the midſhips from forward, and perhaps far-"ther, as I had no opportunity of ſeeing for the wa-"ter when hauled a-ſhore for repairing: wounded on "the larboard ſide under the main channel, where I "imagine the greateſt leak is, but could not come at "it for the water: one pump on the larboard ſide uſe-"leſs; the others decayed within an inch and an half "of the bore. Otherwiſe maſts, yards, boats, and "hull, in pretty good condition."

As it was the univerſal opinion that the ſhip could not ſafely proceed to Europe without an examination of her bottom, I determined to apply for leave to heave

1770. October, Wedneſ. 10. her down at this place; and as I underſtood that it would be neceſſary to make this application in writing, I drew up a requeſt, and the next morning, having got it tranſlated into Dutch, we all went a-ſhore.

We repaired immediately to the houſe of Mr. Leith, the only Engliſhman of any credit who is reſident at this place; he received us with great politeneſs, and engaged us to dinner: to this gentleman we applied for inſtructions how to provide ourſelves with lodgings and neceſſaries while we ſhould ſtay a-ſhore, and he told us, that there was a hotel, or kind of inn, kept by the order of government, where all merchants and ſtrangers were obliged to reſide, paying half per cent. upon the value of their goods for warehouſe room, which the maſter of the houſe was obliged to provide; but that as we came in a King's ſhip, we ſhould be at liberty to live where we pleaſed, upon aſking the Governor's permiſſion, which would be granted of courſe. He ſaid, that it would be cheaper for us to take a houſe in the town, and bring our own ſervants a-ſhore, if we had any body upon whom we could depend to buy in our proviſions; but as this was not the caſe, having no perſon among us who could ſpeak the Malay language, our gentlemen determined to go to the hotel. At the hotel, therefore, beds were immediately hired, and word was ſent that we ſhould ſleep there at night.

At five o'clock in the afternoon, I was introduced to the Governor-General, who received me very courteouſly; he told me, that I ſhould have every thing I wanted, and that in the morning my requeſt ſhould be laid before the council, which I was deſired to attend.

About nine o'clock, we had a dreadful ſtorm of thunder, lightning, and rain, during which the main-maſt of one of the Dutch Eaſt Indiamen was ſplit, and carried away by the deck; the main-top-maſt and top-gallant-maſt were ſhivered all to pieces; ſhe had an iron ſpindle at the main-top-gallant-maſt-head, which probably directed the ſtroke. This ſhip lay not more than the diſtance of two cables length from ours, and in all probability we ſhould have ſhared the ſame fate, but

but for the electrical chain which we had but juſt got up, and which conducted the lightning over the ſide of the ſhip; but though we eſcaped the lightning, the exploſion ſhook us like an earthquake, the chain at the ſame time appearing like a line of fire: a centinel was in the action of charging his piece, and the ſhock forced the muſket out of his hand, and broke the rammer rod. Upon this occaſion, I cannot but earneſtly recommend chains of the ſame kind to every ſhip, whatever be her deſtination, and I hope that the fate of the Dutchman will be a warning to all who ſhall read this narrative, againſt having an iron ſpindle at the maſt-head. 1770. October.

The next morning I attended at the council-chamber, and was told that I ſhould have every thing I wanted. In the mean time, the gentlemen a-ſhore agreed with the keeper of the hotel for their lodging and board, at the rate of two rix-dollars, or nine ſhillings ſterling a day for each; and as there were five of them, and they would probably have many viſitors from the ſhip, he agreed to keep them a ſeparate table, upon condition that they ſhould pay one rix-dollar for the dinner of every ſtranger, and another for his ſupper and bed, if he ſhould ſleep a-ſhore. Under this ſtipulation they were to be furniſhed with tea, coffee, punch, pipes and tobacco, for themſelves and their friends, as much as they could conſume; they were alſo to pay half a rupee, or one ſhilling and three pence a-day for each of their ſervants. Thurſ. 11.

They ſoon learned that theſe rates were more than double the common charges of board and lodging in the town, and their table, though it had the appearance of magnificence, was wretchedly ſerved. Their dinner conſiſted of one courſe of fifteen diſhes, and their ſupper of one courſe of thirteen, but nine or ten of them conſiſted of bad poultry, variouſly dreſſed, and often ſerved up the ſecond, third, and even the fourth time: the ſame duck having appeared more than once roaſted, found his way again to the table as a fricaſee, and a fourth time in the form of forced meat. It was not long, however, before they learned that this treatment was only by way of eſſay, and that it was the invariable cuſtom of the houſe, to ſupply all ſtrangers, at their

1770. October. first coming, with such fare as could be procured for the least money, and consequently would produce the most gain: that if either through indolence or good-nature they were content, it was continued for the benefit of the host, but that if they complained, it was gradually amended till they were satisfied, which sometimes happened before they had the worth of their money. After this discovery, they remonstrated, and their fare became better; however, after a few days, Mr. Banks hired a little house, the next door on the left hand to the hotel, for himself and his party, for which he paid after the rate of ten rix-dollars, or two pounds five shillings sterling a month; but here they were very far from having either the convenience or the privacy which they expected; no person was permitted to sleep in this private house occasionally, as a guest to the person who hired it, under a penalty, but almost every Dutchman that went by ran in without any ceremony, to ask what they sold, there having been very seldom any private persons at Batavia who had not something to sell. Every body here hires a carriage, and Mr. Banks hired two. They are open chaises, made to hold two people, and driven by a man sitting on a coach-box; for each of these he paid two rix-dollars a day.

As soon as he was settled in his new habitation, he sent for Tupia, who till now had continued on board upon account of his illness, which was of the bilious kind, and for which he had obstinately refused to take any medicine. He soon came a-shore, with his boy Tayeto, and tho' while he was on board, and after he came into the boat, he was exceedingly listless and dejected, he no sooner entered the town, than he seemed to be animated with a new soul. The houses, carriages, streets, people, and a multiplicity of other objects, all new, which rushed upon him at once, produced an effect like the sudden and secret power that is imagined of fascination. Tayeto expressed his wonder and delight with still less restraint, and danced along the street in a kind of extacy, examining every object with a restless and eager curiosity, which was every moment excited and gratified. One of the first things that Tupia remarked, was the various dresses of the passing

paſſing multitude, concerning which he made many inquiries; and when he was told that in this place, where people of many different nations were aſſembled, every one wore the habit of his country, he deſired that he might conform to the cuſtom, and appear in that of Otaheite. South-Sea cloth was therefore ſent for from the ſhip, and he equipped himſelf with great expedition and dexterity. The people who had ſeen Otourou, the Indian who had been brought hither by M. Bougainville, inquired whether Tupia was not the ſame perſon. From theſe enquiries, we learned who it was that we had ſuppoſed to be Spaniards, from the accounts that had been given of two ſhips by the Iſlanders. 1770. October.

In the mean time I procured an order to the Superintendant of the iſland of Ouruſt, where the ſhip was to be repaired, to receive her there; and ſent, by one of the ſhips that ſailed for Holland, an account of our arrival here, to Mr. Stephens, the Secretary to the Admiralty.

The expences that would be incurred by repairing and refitting the ſhip, rendered it neceſſary for me to take up money in this place, which I imagined might be done without difficulty, but I found myſelf miſtaken: for, after the moſt diligent enquiry, I could not find any private perſon that had ability and inclination to advance the ſum that I wanted. In this difficulty I applied to the Governor himſelf, by a written requeſt; in conſequence of which, the Shebander had orders to ſupply me with what money I ſhould require, out of the Company's Treaſury.

On the 18th, as ſoon as it was light, having by ſeveral accidents and miſtakes ſuffered a delay of many days, I took up the anchor, and ran down to Ouruſt; a few days afterwards we went along-ſide of the wharf, on Cooper's Iſland, which lies cloſe to Ouruſt, in order to take out our ſtores. Thurſd. 18.

By this time, having been here only nine days, we began to feel the fatal effects of the climate and ſituation. Tupia, after the flow of ſpirits which the novelties of the place produced upon his firſt landing, ſunk on a ſudden; and grew every day worſe and worſe. Tayeto was ſeized with an inflammation upon his

1770. October. his lungs, Mr. Banks's two ſervants became very ill, and himſelf and Dr. Solander were attacked by fevers. In a few days almoſt every perſon, both on board and a-ſhore, was ſick; affected, no doubt, by the low ſwampy ſituation of the place, and the numberleſs dirty canals which interſect the town in all directions.

Friday 26. On the 26th, I ſet up the tent for the reception of the ſhip's company, of whom there was but a ſmall number able to do duty. Poor Tupia, of whoſe life we now began to deſpair, and who till this time had continued a-ſhore with Mr. Banks, deſired to be removed to the ſhip, where, he ſaid, he ſhould breathe a freer air than among the numerous houſes which obſtructed it a-ſhore; on board the ſhip, however, he could not go, for ſhe was unrigged, and preparing to be laid

Sunday 28. down at the careening place. But on the 28th Mr. Banks went with him to Cooper's Iſland, or, as it is called here, Kuypor, where ſhe lay, and as he ſeemed pleaſed with the ſpot, a tent was there pitched for him. At this place both the ſea breeze and the land breeze blew directly over him, and he expreſſed great ſatisfaction in his ſituation. Mr. Banks, whoſe humanity kept him two days with this poor Indian, return-

Tueſday 30. ed to the town on the 30th, and the fits of his intermittent, which was now become a regular tertian, were ſo violent as to deprive him of his ſenſes while they laſted, and leave him ſo weak that he was ſcarce able to crawl down ſtairs: at this time Dr. Solander's diſorder alſo increaſed, and Mr. Monkhouſe, the Surgeon, was confined to his bed.

November. Monday 5. On the 5th of November, after many delays, in conſequence of the Dutch ſhips coming along-ſide the wharfs to load pepper, the ſhip was laid down, and the ſame day Mr. Monkhouſe, our Surgeon, a ſenſible ſkilful man, fell the firſt ſacrifice to this fatal country, a loſs which was greatly aggravated by our ſituation. Dr. Solander was juſt able to attend his funeral, but Mr. Banks was confined to his bed. Our diſtreſs was now very great, and the proſpect before us diſcouraging in the higheſt degree: our danger was not ſuch as we could ſurmount by any efforts of our own; courage, ſkill, and diligence were all equally ineffectual, and death was every day making advances upon us, where

we

we could neither reſiſt nor fly. Malay ſervants were hired to attend the ſick, but they had ſo little ſenſe, either of duty or humanity, that they could not be kept within call, and the patient was frequently obliged to get out of bed to ſeek them. On the 9th we loſt our poor Indian boy Tayeto, and Tupia was ſo much affected, that it was doubted whether he would ſurvive till the next day. 1770. November. Friday 9.

In the mean time, the bottom of the ſhip being examined, was found to be in a worſe condition than we apprehended; the falſe keel was all gone to within twenty feet of the ſtern-poſt; the main keel was conſiderably injured in many places; a great quantity of the ſheathing was torn off, and ſeveral planks were much damaged; two of them, and the half a third, under the main channel near the keel, were, for the length of ſix feet, ſo worn, that they were not above an eighth part of an inch thick, and here the worms had made their way quite into the timbers; yet in this condition ſhe had ſailed many hundred leagues, where navigation is as dangerous as in any part of the world. How much miſery did we eſcape, by being ignorant that ſo conſiderable a part of the bottom of the veſſel was thinner than the ſoal of a ſhoe, and that every life on board depended upon ſo ſlight and fragile a barrier between us and the unfathomable ocean! It ſeemed, however, that we had been preſerved only to periſh here. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were ſo bad, that the phyſician declared they had no chance for recovery but by removing into the country; a houſe was therefore hired for them, at the diſtance of about two miles from the town, which belonged to the maſter of the hotel, who engaged to furniſh them with proviſions, and the uſe of ſlaves. As they had already experienced their want of influence over ſlaves that had other maſters, and the unfeeling inattention of theſe fellows to the ſick, they bought each of them a Malay woman, which removed both the cauſes of their being ſo ill ſerved; the women were their own property, and the tenderneſs of the ſex, even here, made them good nurſes. While theſe preparations were making, they received an account of the death of Tupia, who ſunk at once after

1770. November. after the loſs of the boy, whom he loved with the tenderneſs of a parent.

Wedn. 14. By the 14th the bottom of the ſhip was thoroughly repaired, and very much to my ſatisfaction. It would indeed be injuſtice to the officers and workmen of this yard, not to declare, that, in my opinion, there is not a marine yard in the world where a ſhip can be laid down with more convenience, ſafety, and diſpatch, nor repaired with more diligence and ſkill. At this place they heave down by two maſts, a method which we do not now practiſe; it is, however, unqueſtionably more ſafe and expeditious to heave down with two maſts than one, and he muſt have a good ſhare of bigotry to old cuſtoms, and an equal want of common ſenſe, who will not allow this, after ſeeing with what facility the Dutch heave down their largeſt ſhips at this place.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander recovered ſlowly at their country-houſe, which was not only open to the ſea breeze, but ſituated upon a running ſtream, which greatly contributed to the circulation of the air; but I was now taken ill myſelf; Mr. Sporing, and a ſeaman who had attended Mr. Banks, were alſo ſeized with intermittents; and indeed there were not more than ten of the whole ſhips company that were able to do duty.

We proceeded, however, in rigging the ſhip, and getting water and ſtores a-board; the water we were obliged to procure from Batavia, at the rate of ſix ſhillings and eight pence a leager, or one hundred and fifty gallons.

Monday 26. About the 26th the weſterly monſoon ſet in, which generally blows here in the night from the S. W. and in the day from the N. W. or N. For ſome nights before this we had very heavy rain, with much thunder; and in the night, between the 25th and 26th, ſuch rain as we had ſeldom ſeen, for near four hours without intermiſſion. Mr. Banks's houſe admitted the water in every part like a ſieve, and it ran through the lower rooms in a ſtream that would have turned a mill. He was by this time ſufficiently recovered to go out, and upon his entering Batavia the next morning, he was

was much ſurpriſed to ſee the bedding every where hung out to dry. 1770. November.

The wet ſeaſon was now ſet in, though we had ſome intervals of fair weather. The frogs in the ditches, which croak ten times louder than any frogs in Europe, gave notice of rain by an inceſſant noiſe, that was almoſt intolerable; and the gnats and muſquitos, which had been very troubleſome even during the dry weather, were now become innumerable, ſwarming from every plaſh of water like bees from a hive; they did not, however, much incommode us in the day, and the ſtings, however troubleſome at firſt, never continued to itch above half an hour; ſo that none of us felt in the day the effects of the wounds they had received in the night.

On the 8th of December, the ſhip being perfectly refitted, and having taken in moſt of her water and ſtores, and received her ſick on board, we ran up to Batavia Road, and anchored in four fathoms and an half water. December. Saturd. 8.

From this time to the 24th we were employed in getting on board the remainder of our water and proviſions, with ſome new pumps, and in ſeveral other operations that were neceſſary to fit the ſhip for the ſea, all which would have been effected much ſooner, if ſickneſs and death had not diſabled or carried off a great number of our men. Monday 24.

While we lay here the Earl of Elgin, Captaien Cook, a ſhip belonging to the Engliſh Eaſt India Company, came to an anchor in the Road. She was bound from Madraſs to China, but having loſt her paſſage, put in here to wait for the next ſeaſon.

The Phœnix, Captain Black, an Engliſh country ſhip, from Bencoolen, alſo came to an anchor at this place.

In the afternoon of Chriſtmas eve, the 24th, I took leave of the Governor, and ſeveral of the principal gentlemen of the place, with whom I had formed connections, and from whom I received every poſſible civility and aſſiſtance; but, in the mean time, an accident happened which might have produced diſagreeable conſequences: A ſeaman had run away from one of the Dutch ſhips in the Road, and entered on board

of

1770. December. of mine: the Captain had applied to the Governor, to reclaim him as a ſubject of Holland, and an order for that purpoſe was procured: this order was brought to me ſoon after I returned from my laſt viſit, and I ſaid, that if the man appeared to be a Dutchman, he ſhould certainly be delivered up. Mr. Hicks commanded on board, and I gave the Dutch officer an order to him, to deliver the man up under that condition. I ſlept myſelf this night on ſhore, and in the morning, the Captain of the Dutch Commodore came and told me that he had carried my order on board, but that the officer had refuſed to deliver up the man, alledging, not only that he was not a Dutchman, but that he was a ſubject of Great Britain, born in Ireland. I replied, that the officer had perfectly executed my orders, and that if the man was an Engliſh ſubject, it could not be expected that I ſhould deliver him up. The Captain then ſaid, that he was juſt come from the Governor, to demand the man of me in his name, as a ſubject of Denmark, alledging, that he ſtood in the ſhip's books as born at Elſineur. The claim of this man as a ſubject of Holland, being now given up, I obſerved to the captain, that there appeared to be ſome miſtake in the Governor's meſſage, for that he would certainly never demand a Daniſh ſeaman from me, who had committed no other crime than preferring the ſervice of the Engliſh to that of the Dutch. I added, however, to convince him of my ſincere deſire to avoid diſputes, that if the man was a Dane he ſhould be delivered up as a courteſy, though he could not be demanded as a right; but that if I found he was an Engliſh ſubject, I would keep him at all events. Upon theſe terms we parted; and ſoon after I received a letter from Mr. Hicks, containing indubitable proof that the ſeaman in queſtion was a ſubject of his Britannic Majeſty. This letter I immediately carried to the Shebandar, with a requeſt that it might be ſhewn to the Governor, and that his excellency might at the ſame time be told, I would not upon any terms part with the man. This had the deſired effect, and I heard no more of the affair.

Tueſd. 25.

In the evening, I went on board, accompanied by Mr. Banks, and the reſt of the gentlemen, who had conſtantly

conſtantly reſided on ſhore, and who, though better, were not yet perfectly recoveted. 1770. December.

At ſix in the morning, of the 26th, we weighed and ſet ſail, with a light breeze at S. W. The Elgin Indiaman ſaluted us with three cheers and thirteen guns, and the garriſon with fourteen, both which, with the help of our ſwivels, we returned, and ſoon after the ſea breeze ſet in at N. by W. which obliged us to anchor juſt without the ſhips in the Road. Wedneſ. 27.

At this time, the number of ſick on board amounted to forty, and the reſt of the ſhip's company were in a very feeble condition. Every individual had been ſick except the ſail-maker, an old man between ſeventy and eighty years of age, and it is very remarkable that this old man, during our ſtay at this place, was conſtantly drunk every day: we had buried ſeven, the Surgeon, three ſeamen, Mr. Green's ſervant, Tupia, and Tayeto his boy. All but Tupia fell a ſacrifice to the unwholeſome, ſtagnant, putrid air of the country, and he who from his birth had been uſed to ſubſiſt chiefly upon vegetable food, particularly ripe fruit, ſoon contracted all the diſorders that are incident to a ſea life, and would probably have ſunk under them before we could have compleated our voyage, if we had not been obliged to go to Batavia to refit.

CHAP. XIII.

Some Account of Batavia, and the adjacent Country, with their Fruits, Flowers, and other Productions.

BATAVIA, the capital of the Dutch dominions in India, and generally ſuppoſed to have no equal among all the poſſeſſions of the Europeans in Aſia, is ſituated on the North ſide of the iſland of Java, in a low fenny plain, where ſeveral ſmall rivers, which take their riſe in the mountains called Blaeuwen Berg, about forty miles up the country, empty themſelves into the ſea, and where the coaſt forms a large bay, called the Bay of Batavia, at the diſtance of about eight leagues from the ſtreight of Sunda. It lies in latitude 6° 10 S. and longitude 106° 50′ E. from the meridian of Greenwich, as appears from aſtronomical obſervations made

1770. December. made upon the ſpot, by the Reverend Mr. Mohr, who has built an elegant obſervatory, which is as well furniſhed with inſtruments as moſt in Europe.

The Dutch ſeem to have pitched upon this ſpot for the convenience of water-carriage, and in that it is indeed a ſecond Holland, and ſuperior to every other place in the world. There are very few ſtreets that have not a canal of conſiderable breadth running thro' them, or rather ſtagnating in them, and continued for ſeveral miles in almoſt every direction beyond the town, which is alſo interſected by five or ſix rivers, ſome of which are navigable thirty or forty miles up the country. As the houſes are large, and the ſtreets wide, it takes up a much greater extent, in proportion to the number of houſes it contains, than any city in Europe. Valentyn, who wrote an account of it about the year 1726, ſays, that in his time there were, within the walls, 1242 Dutch houſes, and 1200 Chineſe; and without the walls 1066 Dutch, and 1240 Chineſe, beſides 12 arrack houſes, making in all 4760: but this account appeared to us to be greatly exaggerated, eſpecially with reſpect to the number of houſes within the walls.

The ſtreets are ſpacious and handſome, and the banks of the canals are planted with rows of trees, that make a very pleaſing appearance; but the trees concur with the canals to make the ſituation unwholeſome. The ſtagnant canals in the dry ſeaſon exhale an intolerable ſtench, and the trees impede the courſe of the air, by which in ſome degree the putrid effluvia would be diſſipated. In the wet ſeaſon the inconvenience is equal, for then theſe reſervoirs of corrupted water overflow their banks in the lower part of the town, eſpecially in the neighbourhood of the hotel, and fill the lower ſtories of the houſes, where they leave behind them an inconceivable quantity of ſlime and filth: yet theſe canals are ſometimes cleaned; but the cleaning of them is ſo managed as to become as great a nuiſance as the foulneſs of the water; for the black mud that is taken from the bottom is ſuffered to lie upon the banks, that is, in the middle of the ſtreet, till it has acquired a ſufficient degree of hardneſs to be made the lading of a boat, and carried away. As the mud

conſiſts

consists chiefly of human ordure, which is regularly thrown into the canals every morning; there not being a necessary house in the whole town, it poisons the air, while it is drying, to a considerable extent. Even the running streams become nuisances in their turn, by the nastiness or negligence of the people; for every now and then a dead hog, or a dead horse, is stranded upon the shallow parts, and it being the business of no particular person to remove the nuisance, it is negligently left to time and accident. While we were here, a dead buffalo lay upon the shoal of a river that ran through one of the principal streets above a week, and at last was carried away by a flood. 1770. December.

The houses are in general well adapted to the climate; they consist of one very large room or hall on the ground floor, with a door at each end, both which generally stand open: at one end a room is taken off by a partition, where the master of the house transacts his business; and in the middle, between each end, there is a court, which gives light to the hall, and at the same time increases the draught of air. From one corner of the hall the stairs go up to the floor above, where also the rooms are spacious and airy. In the alcove, which is formed by the court, the family dine; and at other times it is occupied by the female slaves, who are not allowed to sit down any where else.

The public buildings are most of them old, heavy, and ungraceful; but the new church is not inelegant; it is built with a dome, that is seen from a great distance at sea, and though the outside has rather a heavy appearance, the inside forms a very fine room: it is furnished with an organ of a proper size, being very large, and is most magnificently illuminated by chandeliers.

The town is inclosed by a stone wall, of a moderate height; but the whole of it is old, and many parts are much out of repair. This wall itself is surrounded by a river, which in some places is fifty, and in some a hundred yards wide: the stream is rapid, but the water is shallow. The wall is also lined within by a canal, which in different parts is of different breadths; so that in passing either out or in through the gates, it is necessary to cross two draw-

1770. December. bridges; and there is no acceſs for idle people or ſtrangers to walk upon the ramparts, which ſeem to be but ill provided with guns.

In the north-eaſt corner of the town ſtands the caſtle or citadel, the walls of which are both higher and thicker than thoſe of the town, eſpecially near the landing-place, where there is depth of water only for boats, which it completely commands, with ſeveral large guns, that make a very good appearance.

Within this caſtle are apartments for the Governor General, and all the Council of India, to which they are enjoined to repair in caſe of a ſiege. Here are alſo large ſtore-houſes, where great quantities of the Company's goods are kept, eſpecially thoſe that are brought from Europe, and where almoſt all their writers tranſact their buſineſs. In this place alſo are laid up a great number of cannon, whether to mount upon the walls or furniſh ſhipping, we could not learn; and the Company is ſaid to be well ſupplied with powder, which is diſperſed in various magazines, that if ſome ſhould be deſtroyed by lightning, which in this place is very frequent, the reſt may eſcape.

Beſides the fortifications of the town, numerous forts are diſperſed about the country to the diſtance of twenty or thirty miles; theſe ſeem to have been intended merely to keep the natives in awe, and indeed they are fit for nothing elſe. For the ſame purpoſe a kind of houſes, each of which mounts about eight guns, are placed in ſuch ſituations as command the navigation of three or four canals, and conſequently the roads upon their banks: ſome of theſe are in the town itſelf, and it was from one of theſe that all the beſt houſes belonging to the Chineſe were levelled with the ground in the Chineſe rebellion of 1740. Theſe defences are ſcattered over all parts of Java, and the other iſlands of which the Dutch have got poſſeſſion in theſe ſeas. Of one of theſe ſingular forts, or fortified houſes, we ſhould have procured a drawing, if our gentlemen had not been confined by ſickneſs almoſt all the time they were upon the iſland.

If the Dutch fortifications here are not formidable in themſelves, they become ſo by their ſituation; for they are among motaſſes where the roads, which are nothing

nothing more than a bank thrown up between a canal and a ditch, may eaſily be deſtroyed, and conſequently the approach of heavy artillery either totally prevented or greatly retarded: for it would be exceedingly difficult, if not impoſſible, to tranſport them in boats, as they all muſter every night under the guns of the caſtle, a ſituation from which it would be impoſſible for an enemy to take them. Beſides, in this country, delay is death; ſo that whatever retards an enemy, will deſtroy him. In leſs than a week we were ſenſible of the unhealthineſs of the climate; and in leſs than a month half the ſhip's company was unable to do their duty. We were told, that of an hundred ſoldiers who arrive here from Europe, it was a rare thing for fifty to ſurvive the firſt year; that of thoſe fifty, half would then be in the hoſpital, and not ten of the reſt in perfect health: poſſibly this account may be exaggerated; but the pale and feeble wretches whom we ſaw crawling about with a muſket, which they were ſcarcely able to carry, inclined us to believe that it was true. Every white inhabitant of the town indeed is a ſoldier; the younger are conſtantly muſtered, and thoſe who have ſerved five years are liable to be called out when their aſſiſtance is thought to be neceſſary; but as neither of them are ever exerciſed, or do any kind of duty, much cannot be expected from them. The Portugueſe, indeed, are in general good marksmen, becauſe they employ themſelves much in ſhooting wild hogs and deer: neither the Mardykers nor the Chineſe know the uſe of fire arms; but as they are ſaid to be brave, they might do much execution with their own weapons, ſwords, lances, and daggers. The Mardykers are Indians of all nations who are deſcended from free anceſtors, or have themſelves been made free. 1770. December.

But if it is difficult to attack Batavia by land, it is utterly impoſſible to attack it by ſea: for the water is ſo ſhallow, that it will ſcarcely admit a long-boat to come within cannon ſhot of the walls, except in a narrow channel, called the river, that is walled on both ſides by ſtrong piers, and runs about half a mile into the harbour. At the other end it terminates under the fire of the ſtrongeſt part of the caſtle; and here its

1770. December. communication with the canals that interſect the town is cut off by a large wooden boom, which is ſhut every night at ſix o'clock, and upon no pretence opened till the next morning. The harbour of Batavia is accounted the fineſt in India, and to all appearance with good reaſon; it is large enough to contain any number of ſhips, and the ground is ſo good that one anchor will hold till the cable decays: it never admits any ſea that is troubleſome, and its only inconvenience is the ſhoal water between the road and the river. When the ſea breeze blows freſh, it makes a cockling ſea that is dangerous to boats: our long-boat once ſtruck two or three times as ſhe was attempting to come out, and regained the river's mouth with ſome difficulty. A Dutch boat, laden with ſails and rigging for one of the Indiamen, was entirely loſt.

Round the harbour, on the outſide, lie many iſlands, which the Dutch have taken poſſeſſion of, and apply to different uſes. To one of them, called Edam, they tranſport all Europeans who have been guilty of crimes that are not worthy of death: ſome are ſentenced to remain there ninety-nine years, ſome forty, ſome twenty, ſome leſs, down to five, in proportion to their offence: and during their baniſhment, they are employed as ſlaves in making ropes, and other drudgery. In another iſland called Pulmerent, they have an hoſpital, where people are ſaid to recover much faſter than at Batavia. In a third called Kuyper, they have ware-houſes belonging to the Company, chiefly for rice and other merchandize of ſmall value; and here the foreign ſhips that are to be laid down at Ouruſt, another of theſe iſlands, which with Kuyper has been mentioned before, diſcharge their cargoes at wharfs, which are very convenient for the purpoſe. Here the guns, ſails, and other ſtores of the Falmouth, a man of war, which was condemned at this place when ſhe was returning from Manilla, were depoſited, and the ſhip herſelf remained in the harbour with only the warrant officers on board for many years. Remittances were regularly made them from home: but no notice was ever taken of the many memorials they ſent, deſiring to be recalled. Happily for them, the Dutch thought fit, about ſix months before our arrival, to

ſell

ſell the veſſel and all her ſtores, by public auction, and ſend the officers home in their own ſhips. At Ouruſt, they repair all their own ſhipping, and keep a large quantity of naval ſtores. 1770. December.

The country round Batavia is for ſome miles a continued range of country houſes and gardens. Many of the gardens are very large, and, by ſome ſtrange fatality, all are planted with trees almoſt as thick as they can ſtand; ſo that the country derives no advantage from its being cleared of the wood that originally covered it, except the fruit of that which has been planted in its room. Theſe impenetrable foreſts ſtand in a dead flat, which extends ſome miles beyond them, and is interſected in many directions by rivers, and more ſtill by canals, which are navigable for ſmall veſſels. Nor is this the worſt, for the fence of every field and garden is a ditch; and interſperſed among the cultivated ground there are many filthy fens, bogs, and moraſſes, as well freſh as ſalt.

It is not ſtrange that the inhabitants of ſuch a country ſhould be familiar with diſeaſe and death: preventive medicines are taken almoſt as regularly as food; and every body expects the returns of ſickneſs, as we do the ſeaſons of the year. We did not ſee a ſingle face in Batavia that indicated perfect health, for there is not the leaſt tint of colour in the cheeks either of man or woman: the women indeed are moſt delicately fair; but with the appearance of diſeaſe there never can be perfect beauty. People talk of death with as much indifference as they do in a camp; and when an acquaintance is ſaid to be dead, the common reply is, "Well, he owed me nothing;" or, "I muſt get my money of his executors."

To this deſcription of the environs of Batavia there are but two exceptions. The Governor's country-houſe is ſituated upon a riſing ground; but its aſcent is ſo inconſiderable, that it is known to be above the common level only by the canals being left behind, and the appearance of a few bad hedges: his Excellency, however, who is a native of this place, has, with ſome trouble and expence, contrived to incloſe his own garden with a ditch; ſuch is the influence of habit both upon the taſte and the underſtanding. A famous market alſo, called Paſſar Tanabank, is held upon an eminence that

1770. December. riſes perpendicularly about thirty feet above the plain, and except theſe ſituations, the ground for an extent of between thirty and forty miles round Batavia, is exactly parallel to the horizon. At the diſtance of about forty miles inland there are hills of a conſiderable height, where, as we are informed, the air is healthy, and comparatively cool. Here the vegetables of Europe flouriſh in great perfection, particularly ſtrawberries, which can but ill bear heat; and the inhabitants are vigorous and ruddy. Upon theſe hills ſome of the principal people have country houſes, which they viſit once a-year; and one was begun for the Governor, upon the plan of Blenheim, the famous ſeat of the Duke of Marlborough in Oxfordſhire, but it has never been finiſhed. To theſe hills alſo people are ſent by the phyſicians, for the recovery of their health, and the effects of the air are ſaid to be almoſt miraculous; the patient grows well in a ſhort time, but conſtantly relapſes ſoon after his return to Batavia.

But the ſame ſituation and circumſtances which render Batavia and the country round it unwholeſome, render it the beſt gardener's ground in the world. The ſoil is fruitful beyond imagination, and the conveniencies and luxuries of life that it produces are almoſt without number.

Rice, which is well known to be the corn of theſe countries, and to ſerve the inhabitants inſtead of bread, grows in great plenty: and I muſt here obſerve, that in the hilly parts of Java, and in many of the eaſtern iſlands, a ſpecies of this grain is planted, which in the weſtern parts of India is intirely unknown. It is called by the natives *Paddy Gunung*, or Mountain rice; this, contrary to the other ſort, which muſt be under water three parts in four of the time of its growth, is planted upon the ſides of hills where no water but rain can come: it is however planted at the beginning of the rainy ſeaſon, and reaped in the beginning of the dry. How far this kind of rice might be uſeful in our Weſt-Indian iſlands, where no bread-corn is grown, it may perhaps be worth while to inquire.

Indian corn, or maize, is alſo produced here; which the inhabitants gather when young, and roaſt in the ear. Here is alſo a great variety of kidney-beans and

and lentiles, which they call *Cadjang*, and which make a conſiderable part of the food of the common people; beſides millet, yams both wet and dry, ſweet potatoes, and European potatoes, which are very good, but not cultivated in great plenty. In the gardens there are cabbages, lettuces, cucumbers, radiſhes, the white radiſhes of China, which boil almoſt as well as a turnep; carrots, parſley, celery, pigeon peas, the egg-plant, which broiled, and eaten with pepper and ſalt, is very delicious; a kind of greens reſembling ſpinage; onions, very ſmall, but excellent; and aſparagus: beſides ſome European plants of a ſtrong ſmell, particularly ſage, hyſop, and rue. Sugar is alſo produced here in immenſe quantities: very great crops of the fineſt and largeſt canes that can be imagined are produced with very little care, and yield a much larger proportion of ſugar than the canes of the Weſt Indies. White ſugar is ſold here at two pence halfpenny a pound; and the molaſſes make the arrack of which, as of rum, it is the chief ingredient; a ſmall quantity of rice, and ſome cocoa-nut wine, being added, chiefly, I ſuppoſe, to give it flavour. A ſmall quantity of indigo is alſo produced here, not as an article of trade, but merely for home conſumption. 1770. December.

But the moſt abundant article of vegetable luxury here, is the fruit; of which there are no leſs than ſix and thirty different kinds, and I ſhall give a very brief account of each.

1. The pine apple; *Bromelia Ananas*. This fruit, which is here called *Nanas*, grows very large, and in ſuch plenty that they may ſometimes be bought at the firſt hand for a farthing a piece; and at the common fruit ſhops we got three of them for two-pence halfpenny. They are very juicy and well flavoured; but we all agreed that we had eaten as good from a hot-houſe in England: they are however ſo luxuriant in their growth, that moſt of them have two or three crowns, and a great number of ſuckers from the bottom of the fruit; of theſe Mr. Banks once counted nine; and they are ſo forward, that very often while they ſtill adhered to the parent plant they ſhot out their fruit, which by the time the large one became ripe, were of no inconſiderable ſize. We ſeveral times ſaw

1770. December. three upon one apple; and were told that a plant once produced a cluſtre of nine, beſides the principal: this indeed was conſidered as ſo great a curioſity, that it was preſerved in ſugar, and ſent to the prince of Orange.

2. Sweet oranges. Theſe are very good, but while we were here, ſold for ſix-pence a piece.

3. Pumplemoeſes, which in the Weſt Indies are called Shaddocks. Theſe were well flavoured, but not juicy; their want of juice, however, was an accidental effect of the ſeaſon.

4. Lemons. Theſe were very ſcarce; but the want of them was amply compenſated by the plenty of limes.

5. Limes. Theſe were excellent, and to be bought at about twelve pence a hundred. We ſaw only two or three Seville oranges, which were almoſt all rhind; and there are many ſorts, both of oranges and lemons, which I ſhall not particularly mention, becauſe they are neither eſteemed by Europeans nor the natives themſelves.

6. Mangos. This fruit, during our ſtay, was ſo infeſted with maggots, which bred in the inſide of them, that ſcarcely one in three was eatable; and the beſt of them were much inferior to thoſe of Brazil: they are generally compared by Europeans to a melting peach, which, indeed, they reſemble in ſoftneſs and ſweetneſs, but certainly fall much ſhort in flavour. The climate here, we were told, is too hot and damp for them; but there are as many ſorts of them as there are of apples in England, and ſome are much ſuperior to others. One ſort, which is called *Mangha Cowani*, has ſo ſtrong a ſmell, that a European can ſcarcely bear one in the room; theſe, however, the natives are fond of. The three ſorts which are generally preferred, are the *Mangha Doodool*, the *Mangha Santock*, and the *Mangha Gúre*.

7. Bananes. Of theſe alſo there are innumerable ſorts, but three only are good; the *Piſſang Mas*, the *Piſſang Radja*, and the *Piſſang Ambou:* all theſe have a pleaſant vinous taſte, and the reſt are uſeful in different ways; ſome are fried in batter, and others are boiled and eaten as bread. There is one which deſerves the particular

particular notice of the botaniſt, becauſe contrary to the nature of its tribe; it is full of ſeeds, and is therefore called *Piſſang Batu*, or *Piſſang Bidjie*; it has however no excellence to recommend it to the taſte, but the Malays uſe it as a remedy for the flux. 1770. December.

8. Grapes. Theſe are not in great perfection, but they are very dear; for we could not buy a moderate bunch for leſs than a ſhilling or eighteen-pence.

9. Tamarinds. Theſe are in great plenty, and very cheap: the people however do not put them up in the manner practiſed by the Weſt Indians, but cure them with ſalt, by which means they become a black maſs, ſo diſagreeable to the ſight and taſte, that few Europeans chooſe to meddle with them.

10. Water melons. Theſe are in great plenty, and very good.

11. Pumpkins. Theſe are beyond compariſon the moſt uſeful fruit that can be carried to ſea; for they will keep without any care ſeveral months, and with ſugar and lemon-juice, make a pye that can ſcarcely be diſtinguiſhed from one made of the beſt apples; and, with pepper and ſalt, they are a ſubſtitute for turneps, not to be deſpiſed.

12. Papaws. This fruit, when it is ripe, is full of ſeeds, and almoſt without flavour; but if when it is green it is pared, and the core taken out, it is better than the beſt turnep.

13. Guava. This fruit is much commended by the inhabitants of our iſlands in the Weſt Indies, who probably have a better ſort than we met with here, where the ſmell of them was ſo diſagreeably ſtrong, that it made ſome of us ſick; thoſe who taſted them, ſaid, that the flavour was equally rank.

14. Sweet ſop. The *Annona ſquammoſa* of Linnæus. This is alſo a Weſt Indian fruit: it conſiſts only of a maſs of large kernels, from which a ſmall proportion of pulp may be ſucked, which is very ſweet, but has little flavour.

15. Cuſtard Apple. The *Annona reticulata* of Linnæus. The quality of this fruit is well expreſſed by its Engliſh name, which it acquired in the Weſt Indies; for it is as like a cuſtard, and a good one too, as can be imagined.

16. The

1770. December. 16. The caſhew apple. This is ſeldom eaten on account of its aſtringency. The nut that grows upon the top of it is well known in Europe.

17. The cocoa-nut. This is alſo well known in Europe: there are ſeveral ſorts, but the beſt of thoſe we found here is called *Calappi Edjou*, and is eaſily known by the redneſs of the fleſh between the ſkin and the ſhell.

18. Mangoſtan. The *Garcinia Mangoſtan* of Linnæus. This fruit, which is peculiar to the Eaſt Indies, is about the ſize of a crab apple, and of a deep red-wine colour: on the top of it is the figure of five or ſix ſmall triangles joined in a circle, and at the bottom ſeveral hollow green leaves, which are remains of the bloſſom. When they are to be eaten, the ſkin, or rather fleſh, muſt be taken off, under which are found ſix or ſeven white kernels, placed in a circular order, and the pulp, with which theſe are enveloped, is the fruit, than which nothing can be more delicious: it is a happy mixture of the tart and the ſweet, which is no leſs wholeſome than pleaſant; and with the ſweet orange, this fruit is allowed, in any quantity, to thoſe who are afflicted with fevers, either of the putrid or inflammatory kind.

19. The jamboo. The *Eugenia Mallaceenſis* of Linnæus. This fruit is of a deep red colour, and an oval ſhape; the largeſt, which are always the beſt, are not bigger than a ſmall apple; they are pleaſant and cooling, though they have not much flavour.

20. The jambu-eyer. A ſpecies of the *Eugenia* of Linnæus. Of this fruit there are two ſorts of a ſimilar ſhape, reſembling a bell, but differing in colour; one being red, the other white. They ſomewhat exceed a large cherry in ſize, and in taſte have neither flavour nor even ſweetneſs, containing nothing but a watry juice, ſlightly acidulated; yet their coolneſs recommends them in this hot country.

21. Jambu-eyer mauwar. The *Eugenia jambos* of Linnæus. This is more grateful to the ſmell than the taſte; in taſte it reſembles the conſerve of roſes, and in ſmell the freſh ſcent of thoſe flowers.

22. The pomegranate. This is the ſame fruit that is known by the ſame name all over Europe.

23. Durion.

23. Durion. A fruit that in ſhape reſembles a ſmall melon, but the ſkin is covered with ſharp conical ſpines, whence its name; for *dure*, in the Malay language, ſignifies prickle. When it is ripe, it divides longitudinally into ſeven or eight compartments, each of which contains ſix or ſeven nuts, not quite ſo large as cheſtnuts, which are covered with a ſubſtance that in colour and conſiſtence very much reſembles thick cream: this is the part that is eaten, and the natives are fond of it to exceſs. To Europeans it is generally diſagreeable at firſt; for in taſte it ſomewhat reſembles a mixture of cream, ſugar, and onions; and in the ſmell, the onions predominate. 1770. December.

24. Nanca. This fruit, which in ſome parts of India is called Jack, has, like the Durion, a ſmell very diſagreeable to ſtrangers, and ſomewhat reſembling that of mellow apples mixed with garlic: the flavour is not more adapted to the general taſte. In ſome countries that are favourable to it, it is ſaid to grow to an immenſe ſize. Rumphius relates, that it is ſometimes ſo large, that a man cannot eaſily lift it; and we were told by a Malay, that at Madura it is ſometimes ſo large as not to be carried but by the united efforts of two men. At Batavia, however, they never exceed the ſize of a large melon, which in ſhape they very much reſemble: they are covered with angular prickles, like the ſhootings of ſome chryſtals, which, however, are not hard enough to wound thoſe who handle them.

25. Champada. This differs from the Nanca in little, except ſize, it being not ſo big.

26. Rambutan. This is a fruit little known to Europeans; in appearance it very much reſembles a cheſtnut with the huſk on, and, like that, is covered with ſmall points, which are ſoft, and of a deep red colour: under this ſkin is the fruit, and within the fruit a ſtone; the eatable part, therefore, is ſmall in quantity, but its acid is perhaps more agreeable than any other in the whole vegeteable kingdom.

27. Jambolan. This in ſize and appearance is not unlike a damaſcene; but in taſte is ſtill more aſtringent, and therefore leſs agreeable.

1770 December.

28. The Boa Bidarra; or *Rhamnus Jujuba* of Linnæus. This is a round yellow fruit, about the ſize of a gooſeberry; its flavour is like that of an apple, but it has the aſtringency of a crab.

29. Nam-nam. The *Cynometra Cauliflora* of Linnæus. This fruit in ſhape ſomewhat reſembles a kidney; it is about three inches long, and the outſide is very rough: it is ſeldom eaten raw, but fried with batter it makes a good fritter.

30, 31. The Catappa, or *Terminalia Catappa*; and the Canare, the *Canarium commune* of Linnæus; are both nuts, with kernels ſomewhat reſembling an almond; but the difficulty of breaking the ſhell is ſo great, that they are no where publicly ſold. Thoſe which we taſted were gathered for curioſity by Mr. Banks from the tree upon which they grew.

32. The Madja, or *Limonia* of Linnæus, contains, under a hard brittle ſhell, a lightly acid pulp, which cannot be eaten without ſugar; and with it is not generally thought pleaſant.

33. Suntul. The *Trichilia* of Linnæus. This is the worſt of all the fruits that I ſhall particularly mention: in ſize and ſhape it reſembles the Madja; and within a thick ſkin contains kernels like thoſe of the Mangoſtan, the taſte of which is both acid and aſtringent, and ſo diſagreeable that we were ſurpriſed to ſee it expoſed upon the fruit-ſtalls.

34, 35, 36. The Blimbing, or *Averrhoa Belimbi*; the Blimbing Beſſe, or *Averrhoa Carambola*; and the Cherrema, or *Averrhoa Acida* of Linnæus, are three ſpecies of one genus; and though they differ in ſhape, are nearly of the ſame taſte. The Blimbing Beſſe is the ſweeteſt: the other two are ſo auſterely acid, that they cannot be uſed without dreſſing; they make however excellent pickles and ſour ſauce.

37. The Salack; or *Calamus Rotang Zalacca* of Linnæus. This is the fruit of a prickly buſh; it is about as big as a walnut, and covered with ſcales, like thoſe of a lizard: below the ſcales are two or three yellow kernels, in flavour ſomewhat reſembling a ſtrawberry.

Beſides theſe, the iſland of Java, and particularly the country round Batavia, produces many kinds of fruit which were not in ſeaſon during our ſtay; we were

were alſo told, that apples, ſtrawberries, and many other fruits from Europe, had been planted up in the mountains, and flouriſhed there in great luxuriance. We ſaw ſeveral fruits preſerved in ſugar, that we did not ſee recent from the tree, one of which is called *Kemkit*, and another *Boa Atap*: and here are ſeveral others which are eaten only by the natives, particularly the *Kellor*, the *Guilindina*, the *Moringa*, and the *Soccum*. The Soccum is of the ſame kind with the bread-fruit in the South-Sea iſlands, but ſo much inferior, that if it had not been for the ſimilitude in the outward appearance, both of the fruit and the tree, we ſhould not have referred it to that claſs. Theſe, and ſome others, do not merit to be particularly mentioned. 1770. December.

The quantity of fruit that is conſumed at Batavia is incredible; but that which is publicly expoſed to ſale is generally over-ripe. A ſtranger, however, may get good fruit in a ſtreet called Paſſar Piſſang, which lies north from the great church, and very near it. This ſtreet is inhabited by none but Chineſe fruit-ſellers, who are ſupplied from the gardens of gentlemen in the neighbourhood of the town, with ſuch as is freſh, and excellent in its kind, for which, however, they muſt be paid more than four times the market price.

The town in general is ſupplied from a conſiderable diſtance, where great quantities of land are cultivated merely for the production of fruit. The country people, to whom theſe lands belong, meet the people of the town at two great markets, one on Monday, called Paſſar Sineen, and the other on Saturday, called Paſſar Tanabank. Theſe fairs are held at places conſiderably diſtant from each other, for the convenience of different diſtricts; neither of them, however, are more than five miles diſtant from Batavia. At theſe fairs the beſt fruit may be bought at the cheapeſt rate; and the ſight of them to an European is very entertaining. The quantity of fruit is aſtoniſhing; forty or fifty cart-loads of the fineſt pine-apples, packed as careleſsly as turneps in England, are common, and other fruit in the ſame profuſion. The days, however, on which theſe markets are held are ill contrived; the time between Saturday and Monday is too ſhort, and that between

1770. December. between Monday and Saturday too long: great part of what is bought on Monday is always much the worſe for keeping before a new ſtock can be bought, either by the retailer or conſumer; ſo that for ſeveral days, in every week, there is no good fruit in the hands of any people but the Chineſe in Paſſar Piſſang.

The inhabitants of this part of India practiſe a luxury which ſeems to be but little attended to in other countries; they are continually burning aromatic woods and reſins, and ſcatter odours round them in a profuſion of flowers, poſſibly as an antidote to the noiſome effluvia of their ditches and canals. Of ſweet ſmelling flowers they have a great variety, altogether unknown in Europe, the chief of which I ſhall briefly deſcribe.

1. The *Champacka*, or *Michelia Champacca*. This grows upon a tree as large as an apple tree, and conſiſts of fifteen long narrow petals, which give it the appearance of being double, though in reality it is not ſo: its colour is yellow, and much deeper than that of a jonquil, to which it has ſome reſemblance in ſmell.

2. The *Cananga*, or *Uvaria Cananga*, is a green flower, not at all reſembling the bloſſom of any tree or plant in Europe; it has indeed more the appearance of a bunch of leaves than a flower; its ſcent is agreeable, but altogether peculiar to itſelf.

3. The *Mulatti*, or *Nyctanthes Sambac*. This is well known in Engliſh hot houſes by the name of Arabian jeſſamine; it grows here in the greateſt profuſion, and its fragrance, like that of all other Indian flowers, though exquiſitely pleaſing, has not the over-powering ſtrength which diſtinguiſhes ſome of the ſame ſorts in Europe.

4, 5. The *Combang Caracnaſſi*, and *Combang Tonquin*, *Percularia Glabro*. Theſe are ſmall flowers of the dog's-bane kind, very much reſembling each other in ſhape and ſmell, highly fragrant, but very different from every product of an Engliſh garden.

6. The *Bonga Tanjong*, or *Mimuſops Elengi* of Linnæus. This flower is ſhaped like a ſtar of ſeven or eight rays, and is about half an inch in diameter; it is of a yellowiſh colour, and has an agreeable ſmell.

Beſides theſe, there is the *Sundal Malam*, or *Polianthes Tuberoſa*. This flower, being the ſame with our own

own tuberoſe, can have no place among thoſe that are unknown in Europe; but I mention it for its Malay name, which ſignifies "Intriguer of the Night," and is not inelegantly conceived. The heat of this climate is ſo great, that few flowers exhale their ſweets in the day; and this, in particular, from its total want of ſcent at that time, and the modeſty of its colour, which is white, ſeems negligent of attracting admirers; but as ſoon as night comes on it diffuſes its fragrance, and at once compels the attention, and excites the complacency of all who approach it. 1770. December.

Theſe are all ſold about the ſtreets every evening at ſun-ſet, either ſtrung upon a thread in wreaths of about two feet long, or made up into noſegays of different forms, either of which may be purchaſed for about a halfpenny. Beſides theſe, there are in private gardens many other ſweet flowers, which are not produced in a ſufficient quantity to be brought to market. With a mixture of theſe flowers, and the leaves of a plant called *pandang*, cut into ſmall pieces, perſons of both ſexes fill their hair and their clothes, and with the ſame mixture indulge a much higher luxury, by ſtrewing it on their beds; ſo that the chamber in which they ſleep breathes the richeſt and pureſt of all odours, unallayed by the fumes, which cannot but ariſe where the ſleeper lies under two or three blankets and a quilt; for the bed covering here is nothing more than a ſingle piece of fine chintz.

Before I cloſe my account of the vegetable productions of this part of India, I muſt take ſome notice of the ſpices. Java originally produced none but pepper. This is now ſent from hence into Europe to a great value, but the quantity conſumed here is very ſmall: the inhabitants uſe *Capſicum*, or, as it is called in Europe, Cayan pepper, almoſt univerſally in its ſtead. Cloves and nutmegs, having been monopolized by the Dutch, are become too dear to be plentifully uſed by the other inhabitants of this country, who are very fond of them. Cloves, although they are ſaid originally to have been the produce of Machian, or Bachian, a ſmall iſland far to the eaſtward, and only fifteen miles to the northward of the line, and to have been from thence diſſeminated by the Dutch, at their firſt coming into

theſe

1770. December. theſe parts, over all the eaſtern iſlands, are now confined to Amboina, and the ſmall iſles that lie in its neighbourhood; the Dutch having, by different treaties of peace between them and the conquered kings of all the other iſlands, ſtipulated that they ſhould have only a certain number of trees in their dominions, and in future quarrels, as a puniſhment for diſobedience and rebellion, leſſened the quantity, till at laſt they left them no claim to any. Nutmegs have in a manner been extirpated in all the iſlands except their native ſoil, Banda, which eaſily ſupplies every nation upon earth, and would as eaſily ſupply every nation in another globe of the ſame dimenſions, if there was any ſuch to which the induſtrious Hollander could tranſport the commodity; it is, however, certain, that there are a few trees of this ſpice upon the coaſt of New Guinea. There may perhaps be both cloves and nutmegs upon other iſlands to the eaſtward; for thoſe neither the Dutch nor any other European ſeem to think it worth while to examine.

The principal tame quadrupeds of this country are horſes, cattle, buffaloes, ſheep, goats, and hogs. The horſes are ſmall, never exceeding in ſize what we call a ſtout galloway, but they are nimble and ſpirited, and are reported to have been found here when the Europeans firſt came round the Cape of Good Hope. The horned cattle are ſaid to be the ſame ſpecies as thoſe of Europe; but they differ ſo much in appearance, that we are inclined to doubt it. They have, indeed, the *palearia* or *dewlap*, which naturaliſts make the diſtinguiſhing characteriſtic of the European ſpecies, but they certainly are found wild, not only in Java but ſeveral of the eaſtern iſlands. The fleſh of thoſe that we eat at Batavia had a finer grain than European beef, but it was leſs juicy, and miſerably lean. Buffaloes are plenty, but the Dutch never eat them, nor will they drink their milk, being prepoſſeſſed with a notion that both are unwholeſome, and tend to produce fevers; though the natives and Chineſe eat both, without any injury to their health. The ſheep are of the kind which have long ears that hang down, and hair inſtead of wool: the fleſh of theſe is hard and tough, and in every reſpect the worſt mutton we ever ſaw. We found here,

here, however, a few Cape ſheep, which are excellent, but ſo dear that we gave five-and-forty ſhillings a-piece for four of them, the heavieſt of which weighed only five-and-forty pounds. The goats are not better than the ſheep; but the hogs, eſpecially the Chineſe breed, are incomparable, and ſo fat, that the purchaſer agrees for the lean ſeparately. The butcher, who is always a Chineſe, without the leaſt ſcruple cuts off as much of the fat as he is deſired, and afterwards ſells it to his countrymen, who melt it down, and eat it inſtead of butter with their rice. But notwithſtanding the excellence of this pork, the Dutch are ſo ſtrongly prejudiced in favour of every thing that comes from their native country, that they eat only of the Dutch breed, which are here ſold as much dearer than the Chineſe, as the Chineſe are ſold dearer than the Dutch in Europe. 1770. December.

Beſides theſe animals, which are tame, they have dogs and cats, and there are among the diſtant mountains ſome wild horſes and cattle: buffaloes are not found wild in any part of Java, though they abound in Macaſſar, and ſeveral other eaſtern iſlands. The neighbourhood of Batavia, however, is plentifully ſupplied with two kinds of deer and wild hogs, which are ſold at a reaſonable price by the Portugueſe, who ſhoot them, and are very good food.

Among the mountains, and in the deſart parts of the iſland, there are tygers, it is ſaid, in great abundance, and ſome rhinoceroſes; in theſe parts alſo there are monkies, and there are a few of them even in the neighbourhood of Batavia.

Of fiſh, here is an amazing plenty; many ſorts are excellent, and all are very cheap, except the few that are ſcarce. It happens here, as in other places, that vanity gets the better even of appetite: the cheap fiſh, moſt of which is of the beſt kind, is the food only for ſlaves; and that which is dear, only becauſe it is ſcarce, and very much inferior in every reſpect, is placed upon the tables of the rich. A ſenſible houſekeeper once ſpoke to us freely upon the ſubject: I know, ſaid he, as well as you, that I could purchaſe a better diſh of fiſh for a ſhilling, than what now coſts me ten; but if I ſhould make ſo good a uſe of my money, I ſhould

1770. December. here be as much deſpiſed as you would be in Europe, if you were to cover your table with offals, fit only for beggars or dogs.

Turtle is alſo found here, but it is neither ſo ſweet nor ſo fat as the Weſt Indian turtle, even in London; ſuch as it is, however, we ſhould conſider it as a dainty; but the Dutch, among other ſingularities, do not eat it. We ſaw ſome lizards, or iguanas, here of a very large ſize; we were told that ſome were as thick as a man's thigh; and Mr. Banks ſhot one that was five feet long; the fleſh of this animal proved to be very good food.

Poultry is very good here, and in great plenty: fowls of a very large ſize, ducks, and geeſe are very cheap; pigeons are dear, and the price of turkies extravagant. We ſometimes found the fleſh of theſe animals lean and dry, but this was merely the effect of their being ill fed; for thoſe that we fed ourſelves were as good as any of the ſame kind that we had taſted in Europe, and we ſometimes thought them even better.

Wild fowl in general is ſcarce. We once ſaw a wild duck in the fields, but never any that were to be ſold. We frequently ſaw ſnipes of two kinds, one of them exactly the ſame as that in Europe; and a kind of thruſh was always to be had in great plenty of the Portugueſe, who, for I know not what reaſon, ſeem to have monopolized the wild fowl and game. Of ſnipes, it is remarkable that they are found in more parts of the world than any other bird, being common almoſt all over Europe, Aſia, Africa, and America.

With reſpect to drink, Nature has not been quite ſo liberal to the inhabitants of Java, as to ſome whom ſhe has placed in the leſs fruitful regions of the north. The native Javaneſe, and moſt of the other Indians who inhabit this iſland, are indeed Mahometans, and therefore have no reaſon to regret the want of wine; but, as if the prohibition of their law reſpected only the manner of becoming drunk, and not drunkenneſs itſelf, they chew opium, to the total ſubverſion not only of their underſtanding, but their health.

The arrack that is made here is too well known to need a deſcription; beſides which, the palm yields a wine of the ſame kind with that which has already been

been deſcribed in the account of the iſland of Savu; it is procured from the ſame tree, in the ſame manner, and is ſold in three ſtates. The firſt, in which it is called *Tuac maniſe*, differs little from that in which it comes from the tree; yet even this has received ſome preparation altogether unknown to us, in conſequence of which it will keep eight-and-forty hours, though otherwiſe it would ſpoil in twelve; in this ſtate it has an agreeable ſweetneſs, and will not intoxicate: in the other two ſtates it has undergone a fermentation, and received an infuſion of certain herbs and roots, by which it loſes its ſweetneſs, and acquires a taſte very auſtere and diſagreeable. In one of theſe ſtates it is called *Tuac cras*, and in the other *Tuac cuning*, but the ſpecific difference I do not know; in both, however, it intoxicates very powerfully. A liquor called Tuac is alſo made from the cocoa-nut tree; but this is uſed chiefly to put into the arrack, for in that which is good it is an eſſential ingredient. 1770. December.

CHAP. XIV.

Some Account of the Inhabitants of Batavia, and the adjacent Country, their Manners, Cuſtoms, and Manner of Life.

THE town of Batavia, although, as I have already obſerved, it is the capital of the Dutch dominions in India, is ſo far from being peopled with Dutchmen, that not one fifth part, even of the European inhabitants of the town, and its environs, are natives of Holland, or of Dutch extraction, the greater part are Portugueſe: and, beſides Europeans, there are Indians of various nations, and Chineſe, beſides a great number of negro ſlaves. In the troops there are natives of almoſt every country in Europe, but the Germans are more than all the reſt put together: there are ſome Engliſh and French, but the Dutch, though other Europeans are permitted to get money here, keep all the power in their own hands, and conſequently poſſeſs all public employments. No man, of whatever nation, can come hither to ſettle in any other character than that of a ſoldier in the company's ſervice, in

1770. December. which, before they are accepted, they muſt covenant to remain five years. As ſoon, however, as this form has been complied with, they are allowed, upon application to the council, to abſent themſelves from their corps, and enter immediately into any branch of trade, which their money or credit will enable them to carry on; and by this means it is that all the white inhabitants of the place are ſoldiers.

Women, however, of all nations, are permitted to ſettle here, without coming under any reſtrictions; yet we were told that there were not, when we were at Batavia, twenty women in the place that were born in Europe, but that the white women, who were by no means ſcarce, were deſcendants from European parents, of the third or fourth generation, the gleanings of many families who had ſucceſſively come hither, and in the male line become extinct; for it is certain that, whatever be the cauſe, this climate is not ſo fatal to the ladies as to the other ſex.

Theſe women imitate the Indians in every particular; their dreſs is made of the ſame materials, their hair is worn in the ſame manner, and they are equally enſlaved by the habit of chewing beetle.

The merchants carry on their buſineſs here with leſs trouble, perhaps, than in any other part of the world: every manufacture is managed by the Chineſe, who ſell the produce of their labour to the merchants reſident here, for they are permitted to ſell it to no one elſe; ſo that when a ſhip comes in, and beſpeaks perhaps an hundred leagers of arrack, or any quantity of other commodities, the merchant has nothing to do but to ſend orders to his Chineſe to ſee them delivered on board; he obeys the command, brings a receipt ſigned by the maſter of the ſhip for the goods to his employer, who receives the money, and, having deducted his profit, pays the Chineſe his demand. With goods that are imported, however, the merchant has a little more trouble; for theſe he muſt examine, receive, and lay up in his warehouſe, according to the practice of other countries.

The Portugueſe are called by the natives *Oranſerane*, or Nazareen men, (Oran being Man in the language of the country) to diſtinguiſh them from other Europeans;

ropeans; yet they are included in the general appellation of *Caper*, or *Caſir*, an opprobrious term, applied by Mahometans to all who do not profeſs their faith. Theſe people, however, are Portugueſe only in name; they have renounced the religion of Rome, and become Lutherans; neither have they the leaſt communication with the country of their forefathers, or even knowledge of it: they ſpeak, indeed, a corrupt dialect of the Portugueſe language, but much more frequently uſe the Malay. They are never ſuffered to employ themſelves in any but mean occupations; many of them live by hunting, many by waſhing linen, and ſome are handicraftſmen and artificers. They have adopted all the cuſtoms of the Indians, from whom they are diſtinguiſhed chiefly by their features and complexion, their ſkin being conſiderably darker, and their noſes more ſharp; their dreſs is exactly the ſame, except in the manner of wearing their hair. 1770. December.

The Indians, who are mixed with the Dutch and Portugueſe in the town of Batavia, and the country adjacent, are not, as might be ſuppoſed, Javaneſe, the original natives of the iſland, but natives of the various iſlands from which the Dutch import ſlaves, and are either ſuch as have themſelves been manumized, or the deſcendants of thoſe who formerly received manumiſſion; and they are all comprehended under the general name of *Oranſlam*, or *Iſalem*, ſignifying, Believers of the true Faith. The natives of every country, however, in other reſpects keep themſelves diſtinct from the reſt, and are not leſs ſtrongly marked than the ſlaves, by the vices or virtues of their reſpective nations. Many of theſe employ themſelves in the cultivation of gardens, and in ſelling fruit and flowers. The beetle and areca, which are here called *Siri* and *Pinang*, and chewed by both ſexes and every rank in amazing quantities, are all grown by theſe Indians: lime is alſo mixed with theſe roots here as it is in Savu, but it is leſs pernicious to the teeth, becauſe it is firſt ſlaked, and, beſides the lime, a ſubſtance called *gambir*, which is brought from the continent of India; the better ſort of women alſo add cardamum, and many other aromatics, to give the breath an agreeable ſmell. Some of the Indians, however, are employed in fiſhing, and

1770. December. as lightermen, to carry goods from place to place by water; and ſome are rich, and live with much of the ſplendor of their country, which chiefly conſiſts in the number of their ſlaves.

In the article of food theſe Iſalems are remarkably temperate; it conſiſts chiefly of boiled rice, with a ſmall proportion of buffalo, fiſh, or fowl, and ſometimes of dried fiſh, and dried ſhrimps, which are brought here from China; every diſh, however, is highly ſeaſoned with Cayan pepper, and they have many kinds of paſtry made of rice flour, and other things to which I am a ſtranger; they eat alſo a great deal of fruit, particularly plantains.

But, notwithſtanding their general temperance, their feaſts are plentiful, and, according to their manner, magnificent. As they are Mahometans, wine and ſtrong liquors profeſſedly make no part of their entertainment; neither do they often indulge with them privately, contenting themſelves with their beetle and opium.

The principal ſolemnity among them is a wedding, upon which occaſion both the families borrow as many ornaments of gold and ſilver as they can, to adorn the bride and bridegroom, ſo that their dreſſes are very ſhewy and magnificent. The feaſts that are given upon theſe occaſions among the rich laſt ſometimes a fortnight, and ſometimes longer; and during this time the man, although married on the firſt day, is by the women kept from his wife.

The language that is ſpoken among all theſe people, from what place ſoever they originally came, is the Malay, at leaſt it is a language ſo called, and probably it is a very corrupt dialect of that ſpoken at Malacca. Every little iſland, indeed, has a language of its own, and Java has two or three; but this Lingua Franca is the only language that is now ſpoken here, and, as I am told, it prevails over a great part of the Eaſt Indies. A dictionary of Malay and Engliſh was publiſhed in London by Thomas Bowrey, in the year 1701.

Their women wear as much hair as can grow upon the head, and to increaſe the quantity they uſe oils, and other preparations of various kinds. Of this ornament

nament Nature has been very liberal; it is univerſally black, and is formed into a kind of circular wreath upon the top of the head, where it is faſtened with a bodkin, in a taſte which we thought inexpreſſibly elegant: the wreath of hair is ſurrounded by another of flowers, in which the Arabian jeſſamine is beautifully intermixed with the golden ſtars of *Bonger Tanjong*. 1770. December.

Both ſexes conſtantly bathe themſelves in the river, at leaſt once a day; a practice which, in this hot country, is equally neceſſary both to perſonal delicacy and health. The teeth of theſe people alſo, whatever they may ſuffer in their colour by chewing beetle, are an object of great attention; the ends of them, both in the upper and under jaw, are rubbed with a kind of whet-ſtone, by a very troubleſome and painful operation, till they are perfectly even and flat, ſo that they cannot loſe leſs than half a line in their length. A deep groove is then made croſs the teeth of the upper jaw, parallel with the gums, and in the middle between them and the extremity of the teeth; the depth of this groove is at leaſt equal to one-fourth of the thickneſs of the teeth, ſo that it penetrates far beyond what is called the enamel, the leaſt injury to which, according to the dentiſts of Europe, is fatal; yet among theſe people, where the practice of thus wounding the enamel is univerſal, we never ſaw a rotten tooth; nor is the blackneſs a ſtain, but a covering, which may be waſhed off at pleaſure, and the teeth then appear as white as ivory, which, however, is not an excellence in the eſtimation of the belles and beaus of theſe nations.

Theſe are the people among whom the practice that is called a *mock*, or running a muck, has prevailed for time immemorial. It is well known that to run a muck, in the original ſenſe of the word, is to get intoxicated with opium, and then ruſh into the ſtreet with a drawn weapon, and kill whoever comes in the way, till the party is himſelf either killed or taken priſoner. Of this ſeveral inſtances happened while we were at Batavia; and one of the officers, whoſe buſineſs it is, among other things, to apprehend ſuch people, told us, that there was ſcarcely a week in which he, or ſome of his brethren, were not called

1770. December. upon to take one of them in cuſtody. In one of the inſtances that came to our knowledge, the party had been ſeverely injured by the perfidy of women, and was mad with jealouſy before he made himſelf drunk with opium; and we are told, that the Indian who runs a muck is always firſt driven to deſperation by ſome outrage, and always firſt revenges himſelf upon thoſe who have done him wrong. We were alſo told, that though theſe unhappy wretches afterwards run into the ſtreet with a weapon in their hand, frantic and foaming at the mouth, yet they never kill any but thoſe who attempt to apprehend them, or thoſe whom they ſuſpect of ſuch an intention, and that whoever gives them way is ſafe. They are generally ſlaves, who indeed are more ſubject to inſults, and leaſt able to obtain legal redreſs. Freemen, however, are ſometimes provoked into this extravagance, and one of the perſons who run a muck, while we were at Batavia, was free and in eaſy circumſtances. He was jealous of his own brother, whom he firſt killed, and afterwards two others, who attempted to oppoſe him; he did not, however, come out of his houſe, but endeavoured to defend himſelf in it, though the opium had ſo far deprived him of his ſenſes, that of three muſkets, which he attempted to uſe againſt the officers of juſtice, not one was either loaded or primed. If the officer takes one of theſe amocks, or mohawks, as they have been called by an eaſy corruption, alive, his reward is very conſiderable; but if he kills them, nothing is added to his uſual pay; yet ſuch is the fury of their deſperation, that three out of four are of neceſſity deſtroyed in the attempt to ſecure them, though the officers are provided with inſtruments, like large tongs or pincers, to lay hold of them, without coming within the reach of their weapon. Thoſe who happen to be taken alive are generally wounded, but they are always broken alive upon the wheel; and if the phyſician who is appointed to examine their wounds, think them likely to be mortal, the puniſhment is inflicted immediately, and the place of execution is generally the ſpot where the firſt murder was committed.

Among

Among theſe people there are many abſurd practices and opinions which they derive from their Pagan anceſtors: they believe that the devil, whom they call Satan, is the cauſe of all ſickneſs and adverſity; and for this reaſon, when they are ſick, or in diſtreſs, they conſecrate meat, money, and other things to him as a propitiation. If any one among them is reſtleſs, and dreams for two or three nights ſucceſſively, he concludes that Satan has taken that method of laying his commands upon him, which, if he neglects to fulfil, he will certainly ſuffer ſickneſs or death, though they are not revealed with ſufficient perſpicuity to aſcertain their meaning: to interpret his dream, therefore, he taxes his wits to the uttermoſt, and if, by taking it literally or figuratively, directly or by contraries, he can put no explication upon it that perfectly ſatisfies him, he has recourſe to the cawin or prieſt, who aſſiſts him with a comment and illuſtrations, and perfectly reveals the myſterious ſuggeſtions of the night. It generally appears that the devil wants victuals or money, which are always allotted him, and being placed on a little plate of cocoa-nut leaves, are hung upon the branch of a tree near the river; ſo that it ſeems not to be the opinion of theſe people, that in prowling the earth the devil "walketh through dry places." Mr. Banks once aſked, whether they thought Satan ſpent the money, or eat the victuals? He was anſwered, that as to the money, it was conſidered rather as a mulct upon an offender, than a gift to him who had enjoined it; and that therefore, if it was devoted by the dreamer, it mattered not into whoſe hands it came, and they ſuppoſed that it was generally the prize of ſome ſtranger who wandered that way; but as to the meat, they were clearly of opinion that, although the devil did not eat the groſs parts, yet, by bringing his mouth near it, he ſucked out all its ſavour without changing its poſition, ſo that afterwards it was as taſteleſs as water. 1770. December.

But they have another ſuperſtitious opinion, that is ſtill more unaccountable. They believe that women, when they are delivered of children, are frequently at the ſame time delivered of a young crocodile, as a twin to the infant: they believe that theſe creatures are received

1770. December. ceived moſt carefully by the midwife, and immediately carried down to the river, and put into the water. The family in which ſuch a birth is ſuppoſed to have happened, conſtantly put victuals into the river for their amphibious relation, and eſpecially the twin, who, as long as he lives, goes down to the river at ſtated ſeaſons, to fulfil this fraternal duty, for the neglect of which, it is the univerſal opinion, that he will be viſited with ſickneſs or death. What could at firſt produce a notion ſo extravagant and abſurd, it is not eaſy to gueſs, eſpecially as it ſeems to be totally unconnected with any religious myſtery; and how a fact which never happened, ſhould be pretended to happen every day, by thoſe who cannot be deceived into a belief of it by appearances, nor have any apparent intereſt in the fraud, is a problem ſtill more difficult to ſolve. Nothing, however, can be more certain, than the firm belief of this ſtrange abſurdity among them; for we had the concurrent teſtimony of every Indian who was queſtioned about it, in its favour. It ſeems to have taken its riſe in the iſlands of Celebes and Bouton, where many of the inhabitants keep crocodiles in their families; but however that be, the opinion has ſpread over all the eaſtern iſlands, even to Timor and Ceram, and weſtward as far as Java and Sumatra, where, however, young crocodiles are, I believe, never kept.

Theſe crocodile twins are called *Sudaras*; and I ſhall relate one of the innumerable ſtories that were told us, in proof of their exiſtence, from ocular demonſtration.

A young female ſlave, who was born and bred up among the Engliſh at Bencoolen, and had learned a little of the language, told Mr. Banks that her father, when he was dying, acquainted her that he had a crocodile for his *Sudara*, and ſolemnly charged her to give him meat when he ſhould be dead; telling her in what part of the river he was to be found, and by what name he was to be called up. That in purſuance of her father's inſtructions and command, ſhe went to the river, and ſtanding upon the bank, called out *Radja Pouti*, white king; upon which a crocodile came to her out of the water, and eat from her hand the proviſions that ſhe had brought him. When ſhe was deſired to deſcribe this paternal uncle, who in ſo ſtrange a ſhape had

had taken up his dwelling in the water, ſhe ſaid that he was not like other crocodiles, but much handſomer; that his body was ſpotted and his noſe red; that he had bracelets of gold upon his feet, and ear-rings of the ſame metal in his ears. Mr. Banks heard this tale of ridiculous falſehood patiently to the end; and then diſmiſſed the girl, without reminding her, that a crocodile with ears was as ſtrange a monſter as a dog with a cloven foot. Some time after this, a ſervant whom Mr. Banks had hired at Batavia, and who was the ſon of a Dutchman by a Javaneſe woman, thought fit to acquaint his maſter that he had ſeen a crocodile of the ſame kind, which had alſo been ſeen by many others, both Dutchmen and Malays: and being very young, it was but two feet long, and had bracelets of gold upon its feet. There is no giving credit to theſe ſtories, ſaid Mr. Banks, for I was told the other day that a crocodile had ear-rings; and you know that could not be true, becauſe crocodiles have no ears. Ah! Sir, ſaid the man, theſe Sudara Oran are not like other crocodiles; they have five toes upon each foot, a large tongue that fills their mouth, and ears alſo, although they are indeed very ſmall. 1770. December.

How much of what theſe people related they believed, cannot be known; for there are no bounds to the credulity of ignorance and folly. In the girl's relation, however, there are ſome things in which ſhe could not be deceived; and therefore muſt have been guilty of wilful falſehood. Her father might perhaps give her a charge to feed a crocodile, in conſequence of his believing that it was his Sudara; but its coming to her out of the river, when ſhe called it by the name of White King, and taking the food ſhe had brought it, muſt have been a fable of her own invention; for this being falſe, it was impoſſible that ſhe ſhould believe it to be true. The girl's ſtory, however, as well as that of the man, is a ſtrong proof that they both firmly believed the exiſtence of crocodiles that are Sudaras to men; and the girl's fiction will be eaſily accounted for if we recollect, that the earneſt deſire which every one feels to make others believe what he believes himſelf, is a ſtrong temptation to ſupport it by unjuſtifiable evidence. And the averring what is known to be falſe,

in

1770. December. in order to produce in others the belief of what is thought to be true, muſt, upon the moſt charitable principles, be imputed to many, otherwiſe venerable characters, through whoſe hands the doctrines of Chriſtianity paſſed for many ages in their way to us, as the ſource of all the ſilly fables related of the Romiſh ſaints, many of them not leſs extravagant and abſurd than this ſtory of the White King, and all of them the invention of the firſt relater.

The Bougis, Macaſſars, and Boetons, are ſo firmly perſuaded that they have relations of the crocodile ſpecies in the rivers of their own country, that they perform a periodical ceremony in remembrance of them. Large parties of them go out in a boat, furniſhed with great plenty of proviſions, and all kinds of muſic, and row backwards and forwards in places where crocodiles and allegators are moſt common, ſinging and weeping by turns, each invoking his kindred, till a crocodile appears; when the muſic inſtantly ſtops, and proviſions, beetle and tobacco, are thrown into the water. By this civility to the ſpecies, they hope to recommend themſelves to their relations at home; and that it will be accepted inſtead of offerings immediately to themſelves, which it is not in their power to pay.

In the next rank to the Indians ſtand the Chineſe, who in this place are numerous, but poſſeſs very little property; many of them live within the walls, and keep ſhops. The fruit-ſellers of Paſſar Piſſang have been mentioned already; but others have a rich ſhow of European and Chineſe goods: the far greater part, however, live in a quarter by themſelves, without the walls, called Campang China. Many of them are carpenters, joiners, ſmiths, taylors, ſlip-makers, dyers of cotton, and embroiderers; maintaining the character of induſtry that is univerſally given of them: and ſome are ſcattered about the country, where they cultivate gardens, ſow rice and ſugar, or keep cattle and buffaloes, whoſe milk they daily bring to town.

There is nothing clean or dirty, honeſt or diſhoneſt, provided there is not too much danger of a halter, that the Chineſe will not readily do for money. But though they work with great diligence, and patiently undergo any degree of labour, yet no ſooner have they laid down

down their tools than they begin to game, either at cards or dice, or ſome other play among the multitude that they have invented, which are altogether unknown in Europe: to this they apply with ſuch eagerneſs, as ſcarcely to allow time for the neceſſary refreſhments of food and ſleep; ſo that it is as rare to ſee a Chineſe idle, as it is to ſee a Dutchman or an Indian employed. 1770. December.

In manners they are always civil, or rather obſequious; and in dreſs they are remarkably neat and clean, to whatever rank of life they belong. I ſhall not attempt a deſcription either of their perſons or habits; for the better kind of China paper, which is now common in England, exhibits a perfect repreſentation of both, though perhaps with ſome ſlight exaggerations approaching towards the caricatura.

In eating they are eaſily ſatisfied, though the few that are rich have many ſavory diſhes. Rice, with a ſmall proportion of fleſh or fiſh, is the food of the poor; and they have greatly the advantage of the Mahometan Indians, whoſe religion forbids them to eat of many things which they could moſt eaſily procure. The Chineſe, on the contrary, being under no reſtraint, eat, beſides pork, dogs, cats, frogs, lizards, ſerpents of many kinds, and a great variety of ſea animals, which the other inhabitants of this country do not conſider as food: they eat alſo many vegetables, which an European, except he was periſhing with hunger, would never touch.

The Chineſe have a ſingular ſuperſtition with regard to the burial of their dead; for they will, upon no occaſion, open the ground a ſecond time, where a body has been interred. Their burying grounds, therefore, in the neighbourhood of Batavia, cover many hundred acres; and the Dutch, grudging the waſte of ſo much land, will not ſell any for this purpoſe but at the moſt exorbitant price. The Chineſe, however, contrive to raiſe the purchaſe money, and afford another inſtance of the folly and weakneſs of human nature, in transferring a regard for the living to the dead, and making that the object of ſolicitude and expence, which cannot receive the leaſt benefit from either. Under the influence of this univerſal prejudice, they take an uncommon

1770. December. common method to preſerve the body intire, and prevent the remains of it from being mixed with the earth that ſurrounds it. They incloſe it in a large thick coffin of wood, not made of planks joined together, but hollowed out of the ſolid timber like a canoe; this being covered, and let down into the grave, is ſurrounded with a coat of their mortar, called Chinam, about eight or ten inches thick, which in a ſhort time becomes as hard as a ſtone. The relations of the deceaſed attend the funeral ceremony, with a conſiderable number of women that are hired to weep: it might reaſonably be ſuppoſed that the hired appearance of ſorrow could no more flatter the living than benefit the dead; yet the appearance of ſorrow is known to be hired among people much more reflective and enlightened than the Chineſe. In Batavia the law requires that every man ſhould be buried according to his rank, which is in no caſe diſpenſed with; ſo that if the deceaſed has not left ſufficient to pay his debts, an officer takes an inventory of what he has in his poſſeſſion when he died, and out of the produce buries him in the manner preſcribed, leaving only the overplus to his creditors. Thus in many inſtances are the living ſacrificed to the dead; and money that ſhould diſcharge a debt, or feed an orphan, laviſhed in idle proceſſions, or materials that are depoſited in the earth to rot.

Another numerous claſs among the inhabitants of this country is the ſlaves; for by ſlaves the Dutch, Portugueſe, and Indians, however different in their rank or ſituation, are conſtantly attended: they are purchaſed from Sumatra, Malacca, and almoſt all the eaſtern iſlands. The natives of Java, very few of whom, as I have before obſerved, live in the neighbourhood of Batavia, have an exemption from ſlavery under the ſanction of very ſevere penal laws, which I believe are ſeldom violated. The price of theſe ſlaves is from ten to twenty pounds ſterling; but girls, if they have beauty, ſometimes fetch a hundred. They are a very lazy ſet of people; but as they will do but little work, they are content with a little victuals, ſubſiſting altogether upon boiled rice, and a ſmall quantity of the cheapeſt fiſh. As they are natives of different countries, they differ from

from each other extremely, both in perſon and diſpoſition. The African negroes, called here *Papua*, are the worſt, and conſequently may be purchaſed for the leaſt money: they are all thieves, and all incorrigible. Next to theſe are the Bougis and Macaſſars, both from the iſland of Celebes; theſe are lazy in the higheſt degree, and though not ſo much addicted to theft as the negroes, have a cruel and vindictive ſpirit, which renders them extremely dangerous; eſpecially as, to gratify their reſentment, they will make no ſcruple of ſacrificing life. The beſt ſlaves, and conſequently the deareſt, are procured from the iſland of Bali: the moſt beautiful women from Nias, a ſmall iſland on the coaſt of Sumatra; but they are of a tender and delicate conſtitution, and ſoon fall a ſacrifice to the unwholeſome air of Batavia. Beſides theſe, there are Malays, and ſlaves of ſeveral other denominations, whoſe particular characteriſtics I do not remember. 1770. December.

Theſe ſlaves are wholly in the power of their maſters with reſpect to any puniſhment that does not take away life; but if a ſlave dies in conſequence of puniſhment, though his death ſhould not appear to have been intended, the maſter is called to a ſevere account, and he is generally condemned to ſuffer capitally. For this reaſon the maſter ſeldom inflicts puniſhment upon the ſlave himſelf, but applies to an officer called a Marineu, one of whom is ſtationed in every diſtrict. The duty of the Marineu is to quell riots, and take offenders into cuſtody; but more particularly to apprehend runaway ſlaves, and puniſh them for ſuch crimes as the maſter, ſupported by proper evidence, lays to their charge: the puniſhment however is not inflicted by the Marineu in perſon, but by ſlaves who are bred up to the buſineſs. Men are puniſhed publicly, before the door of their maſter's houſe; but women within it. The puniſhment is by ſtripes, the number being proportioned to the offence; and they are given with rods made of rattans; which are ſplit into ſlender twigs for the purpoſe, and fetch blood at every ſtroke. A common puniſhment coſts the maſter a rix-dollar, and a ſevere one a ducatoon, about ſix ſhillings and eight pence. The maſter is alſo obliged to allow the ſlave three dubbelcheys, equal to about ſeven pence half-penny a week,

1770. December.

as an encouragement, and to prevent his being under temptations to ſteal too ſtrong to be reſiſted.

Concerning the government of this place I can ſay but little. We obſerved however a remarkable ſubordination among the people. Every man who is able to keep houſe, has a certain ſpecific rank, acquired by the length of his ſervices to the company; the different ranks which are thus acquired are diſtinguiſhed by the ornaments of the coaches and the dreſſes of coachmen: ſome are obliged to ride in plain coaches, ſome are allowed to paint them in different manners and degrees, and ſome to gild them. The coachman alſo appears in clothes that are quite plain, or more or leſs adorned with lace.

The officer who preſides here has the title of Governor General of the Indies; and the Dutch Governors of all the other ſettlements are ſubordinate to him, and obliged to repair to Batavia that he may paſs their accounts. If they appear to have been criminal, or even negligent, he puniſhes them by delay, and detains them during pleaſure, ſometimes one year, ſometimes two years, and ſometimes three; for they cannot quit the place till he gives them a diſmiſſion. Next to the Governor are the members of the council, called here *Edele Heeren*, and by the corruption of the Engliſh, *Idoleers*. Theſe Idoleers take upon them ſo much ſtate, that whoever meets them in a carriage, is expected to riſe up and bow, then to drive on one ſide of the road, and there ſtop till they are paſt; the ſame homage is required alſo to their wives, and even to their children; and it is commonly paid them by the inhabitants. But ſome of our captains have thought ſo ſlaviſh a mark of reſpect beneath the dignity which they derived from the ſervice of his Britannic Majeſty, and have refuſed to pay it; yet, if they were in a hired carriage, nothing could deter the coachman from honouring the Dutch Grandee at their expence, but the moſt peremptory menace of immediate death.

Juſtice is adminiſtered here by a body of lawyers, who have ranks of diſtinction among themſelves. Concerning their proceedings in queſtions of property, I know nothing; but their deciſions in criminal caſes ſeem to be ſevere with reſpect to the natives, and lenient

tent with reſpect to their own people, in a criminal degree. A Chriſtian always is indulged with an opportunity of eſcaping before he is brought to a trial, whatever may have been his offence; and if he is brought to a trial and convicted, he is ſeldom puniſhed with death: while the poor Indians, on the contrary, are hanged, and broken upon the wheel, and even impaled alive without mercy. 1770. December.

The Malays and Chineſe have judicial officers of their own, under the denominations of Captains and Lieutenants, who determine in civil caſes, ſubject to an appeal to the Dutch court.

The taxes paid by theſe people to the Company are very conſiderable; and that which is exacted of them for liberty to wear their hair, is by no means the leaſt. They are paid monthly; and to ſave the trouble and charge of collecting them, a flag is hoiſted upon the top of a houſe in the middle of the town when a payment is due; and the Chineſe have experienced that it is their intereſt to repair thither with their money without delay.

The money current here conſiſts of ducats, worth a hundred and thirty two ſtivers; ducatoons, eighty ſtivers; imperial rix-dollars, ſixty; rupees of Batavia, thirty; ſchellings, ſix; double cheys, two ſtivers and a half; and doits, one fourth of a ſtiver. Spaniſh dollars, when we were here, were at five ſhillings and five pence; and we were told, that they were never lower than five ſhillings and four pence, even at the Company's warehouſe. For Engliſh guineas we could never get more than nineteen ſhillings upon an average; for though the Chineſe would give twenty ſhillings for ſome of the brighteſt, they would give no more than ſeventeen ſhillings for thoſe that were much worn.

It may perhaps be of ſome advantage to ſtrangers to be told that there are two kinds of coin here, of the ſame denomination, milled and unmilled, and that the milled is of moſt value. A milled ducatoon is worth eighty ſtivers; but an unmilled ducatoon is worth no more than ſeventy-two. All accounts are kept in rix-dollars and ſtivers, which, here at leaſt, are mere nominal coins, like our pound ſterling. The rix-dollar is equal to forty-eight ſtivers, about four ſhillings and ſix pence Engliſh currency.

1770. December.

CHAP. XV.

The Paſſage from Batavia to the Cape of Good Hope: Some Account of Prince's Iſland, and its Inhabitants, and a comparative View of their Language with the Malay and Javaneſe.

Thurſ. 27. ON Thurſday the 27th of December, at ſix o'clock in the morning, we weighed again and ſtood out to ſea. After much delay by contrary winds, we wea-
Satur. 29. thered Pulo Pare on the 29th, and ſtood in for the main; ſoon after we fetched a ſmall iſland under the main, in the midway between Batavia and Bantam,
Sunday 30. called Man-eater's Iſland. The next day we weathered firſt Wapping Iſland, and the Pulo Babi. On the
Mond. 31. 31ſt, we ſtood over to the Sumatra ſhore; and on the
1771. January. morning of New Year's day, 1771, we ſtood over for
Tueſday 1. the Java ſhore.

We continued our courſe, as the wind permitted us,
Saturday 5. till three o'clock in the afternoon of the 5th, when we anchored under the ſouth-eaſt ſide of Prince's Iſland in eighteen fathoms, in order to recruit our wood and water, and procure refreſhments for the ſick, many of whom were now become much worſe than they were when we left Batavia. As ſoon as the ſhip was ſecured, I went aſhore, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, and we were met upon the beach by ſome Indians, who carried us immediately to a man, who, they ſaid, was their King. After we had exchanged a few compliments with his Majeſty, we proceeded to buſineſs; but in ſettling the price of turtle we could not agree; this however did not diſcourage us, as we made no doubt but that we ſhould buy them at our own price in the morning. As ſoon as we parted, the Indians diſperſed, and we proceeded along the ſhore in ſearch of a watering-place. In this we were more ſucceſsful; we found water very conveniently ſituated, and, if a little care was taken in filling it, we had reaſon to believe that it would prove good. Juſt as we were going off, ſome Indians, who remained with a canoe upon the beach, ſold us three turtle; but exacted a promiſe of us that we ſhould not tell the King.

The

The next morning, while a party was employed in filling water, we renewed our traffic for turtle: at firſt, the Indians dropped their demands ſlowly; but about noon they agreed to take the price that we offered; ſo that before night we had turtle in plenty: the three that we had purchaſed the evening before, were in the mean time ſerved to the ſhip's company, who, till the day before, had not once been ſerved with ſalt proviſions; from the time of our arrival at Savu, which was now near four months. In the evening, Mr. Banks went to pay his reſpects to the King, at his palace, in the middle of a rice field, and though his Majeſty was buſily employed in dreſſing his own ſupper, he received the ſtranger very graciouſly. 1771. January. Sunday 6.

The next day the natives came down to the trading-place, with fowls, fiſh, monkies, ſmall deer, and ſome vegetables, but no turtle; for they ſaid, that we had bought them all the day before. The next day, however, more turtle appeared at market, and ſome were brought down every day afterwards, during our ſtay, though the whole together was not equal to the quantity that we bought the day after our arrival.

On the 11th, Mr. Banks having learned from the ſervant whom he had hired at Batavia, that the Indians of this iſland had a town upon the ſhore, at ſome diſtance to the weſtward, he determined to ſee it. With this view he ſet out in the morning, accompanied by the Second Lieutenant, and as he had ſome reaſon to think that his viſit would not be agreeable to the inhabitants, he told the people whom he met, as he was advancing along the ſhore, that he was in ſearch of plants, which indeed was alſo true. In about two hours they arrived at a place where there were four or five houſes, and meeting with an old man, they ventured to make ſome inquiries concerning the town. He ſaid, that it was far diſtant; but they were not to be diſcouraged in their enterprize; and he, ſeeing them proceed in their journey, joined company and went on with them. He attempted ſeveral times to lead them out of the way, but without ſucceſs; and at length they came within ſight of the houſes. The old man then entered cordially into their party, and conducted them into the town. The name of it is Samadang; Friday 11.

1771. January. it conſiſts of about four hundred houſes, and is divided by a river of brackiſh water into two parts, one of which is called the old town, and the other the new. As ſoon as they entered the old town, they met ſeveral Indians whom they had ſeen at the trading place, and one of them undertook to carry them over to the new town, at the rate of two pence a head. When the bargain was made, two very ſmall canoes were produced, in which they embarked; the canoes being placed along ſide of each other, and held together, a precaution which was abſolutely neceſſary to prevent their overſetting, the navigation was at length ſafely performed, though not without ſome difficulty; and when they landed in the new town, the people received them with great friendſhip, and ſhewed them the houſes of their kings and principal people, which are in this diſtrict; few of them, however, were open; for at this time the people had taken up their reſidence in the rice grounds, to defend the crop againſt the birds and monkies, by which it would otherwiſe have been deſtroyed. When their curioſity was ſatisfied, they hired a large ſailing boat for two rupees (four ſhillings) which brought them back to the ſhip time enough to dine upon one of the ſmall deer, weighing only forty pounds, which had been bought the day before, and proved to be very good and ſavory meat.

We went on ſhore in the evening, to ſee how the people who were employed in wooding and watering went on, and were informed that an axe had been ſtolen. As the paſſing over this fault might encourage the commiſſion of others of the ſame kind, application was immediately made to the King, who after ſome altercation, promiſed that the axe ſhould be reſtored in
Saturd. 12. the morning; and kept his word; for it was brought to us by a man who pretended that the thief, being afraid of a diſcovery, had privately brought it and left it at his houſe in the night.

We continued to purchaſe between two and three hundred weight of turtle in a day, beſides fowls and
Sunday 13. other neceſſaries; and in the evening of the 13th, having nearly compleated our wood and water, Mr. Banks went aſhore to take leave of his Majeſty, to whom he had

had made ſeveral trifling preſents, and at parting gave him two quires of paper, which he graciouſly received. They had much converſation; in the courſe of which his Majeſty, inquired, Why the Engliſh did not touch there, as they had been uſed to do? Mr. Banks replied, that he ſuppoſed it was becauſe they found a deficiency of turtle; of which there not being enough to ſupply one ſhip, many could not be expected. To ſupply this defect, he adviſed his Majeſty to breed cattle, buffaloes, and ſheep; a meaſure which he did not ſeem much inclined to adopt. 1771. January.

On the 14th we made ready to ſail, having on board a good ſtock of refreſhments, which we purchaſed of the natives, conſiſting of turtle, fowl, fiſh, two ſpecies of deer, one as big as a ſheep, the other not larger than a rabbit: with cocoa-nuts, plantains, limes, and other vegetables. The deer however ſerved only for preſent uſe, for we could ſeldom keep one of them alive more than four-and-twenty hours after it was on board. On our part, the trade was carried on chiefly with Spaniſh dollars, the natives ſeeming to ſet little value upon any thing elſe; ſo that our people, who had a general permiſſion to trade, parted with old ſhirts and other articles, which they were obliged to ſubſtitute for money to great diſadvantage. In the morning of the 15th, we weighed, with a light breeze at N. E. and ſtood out to ſea. Java Head, f om which I took my departure, lies in latitude 6° 49′ S. longitude 253° 12′ W. Monday 14. Tueſday 15.

Prince's Iſland, where we lay about ten days, is; in the Malay language, called, *Pulo Selan*; and, in the language of the inhabitants, *Pulo Paneitan*. It is a ſmall iſland, ſituated in the weſtern mouth of the Streight of Sunda. It is woody, and a very ſmall part of it only has been cleared: there is no remarkable hill upon it, yet the Engliſh call the ſmall eminence which is juſt over the landing-place the Pike. It was formerly much frequented by the Indian ſhips of many nations, but eſpecially thoſe of England, which of late have forſaken it, as it is ſaid, becauſe the water is bad; and touch either at North Iſland, a ſmall iſland that lies on the coaſt of Sumatra, without the eaſt entrance of the Streight, or at New Bay, which lies only a few leagues

1771. January. from Prince's Iſland, at neither of which places any conſiderable quantity of other refreſhments can be procured. Prince's Iſland is, upon the whole, certainly more eligible than either of them; and though the water is brackiſh, if it is filled at the lower part of the brook, yet higher up it will be found excellent.

The firſt and ſecond, and perhaps the third ſhip that comes in the ſeaſon, may be tolerably ſupplied with turtle; but thoſe that come afterwards muſt be content with ſmall ones: thoſe that we bought were of the green kind, and at an average coſt us about an half-penny or three farthings a pound. We were much diſappointed to find them neither fat nor well flavoured, and we imputed it to their having been long kept in crawls, or pens, of brackiſh water, without food. The fowls are large, and we bought a dozen of them for a Spaniſh dollar, which is about five pence a-piece; the ſmall deer coſt us two pence a-piece, and the larger, of which two only were brought down, a rupee. Many kinds of fiſh are to be had here, which the natives ſell by hand, and we found them tolerably cheap. Cocoa-nuts we bought at the rate of an hundred for a dollar, if they were picked, and if they were taken promiſcuouſly, one hundred and thirty. Plantains we found in great plenty; we procured alſo ſome pine apples, water melons, jaccas, and pumpkins, beſides rice, the greater part of which was of the mountain kind, that grows in dry land; yams, and ſeveral other vegetables, at a very reaſonable rate.

The inhabitants are Javaneſe, whoſe Raja is ſubject to the Sultan of Bantam. Their cuſtoms are very ſimilar to thoſe of the Indians about Batavia; but they ſeem to be more jealous of their women; for we never ſaw any of them during all the time that we were there, except one by chance in the woods, as ſhe was running away to hide herſelf. They profeſs the Mahometan religion; but I believe there is not a moſque in the whole iſland. We were among them during the faſt, which the Turks call *Ramadan*, which they ſeemed to keep with great rigour, for not one of them would touch a morſel of victuals, or even chew their beetle, till ſun-ſet.

Their

Their food is nearly the ſame as that of the Batavian Indians, except the addition of the nuts of the palm, called *Cycas circinalis*, with which, upon the coaſt of New Holland, ſome of our people were made ſick, and ſome of our hogs poiſoned. 1771. January.

Upon obſerving theſe nuts to be part of their food, we enquired by what means they deprived them of their deleterious quality; and they told us, that they firſt cut them into thin ſlices, and dried them in the ſun, then ſteeped them in freſh water for three months, and afterwards preſſing out the water, dried them in the ſun a ſecond time; but we learned, that after all they are only eaten in times of ſcarcity, when they mix them with their rice, to make them go farther.

The houſes of their town are built upon piles, or pillars, four or five feet above the ground; upon theſe is laid a floor of bamboo canes, which are placed at ſome diſtance from each other, ſo as to leave a free paſſage for the air from below; the walls alſo are of bamboo, which are interwoven hurdlewiſe, with ſmall ſticks, that are faſtened perpendicularly to the beams which form the frame of the building; it has a ſloping roof, which is ſo well thatched with palm leaves, that neither the ſun nor the rain can find entrance. The ground over which this building is erected is an oblong ſquare, in the middle of one ſide is the door, and in the middle, between that and the end of the houſe, towards the left hand, is a window; a partition runs out from each end towards the middle, which, if continued, would divide the whole floor into two equal parts, longitudinally, but they do not meet in the middle, ſo that an opening is left over-againſt the door; each end of the houſe, therefore, to the right and left of the door, is divided into two rooms, like ſtalls in a ſtable, all open towards the paſſage from the door to the wall on the oppoſite ſide: in that next the door, to the left hand, the children ſleep; that oppoſite to it, on the right hand, is allotted to ſtrangers; the maſter and his wife ſleep in the inner-room on the left hand, and that oppoſite to it is the kitchen. There is no difference between the houſes of the poor and the rich, but in the ſize; except that the royal palace, and the houſe of a man whoſe name is *Gundang*, the next in

1771. January. riches and influence to the king, is walled with boards, inſtead of being wattled with ſticks and bamboo.

As the people are obliged to abandon the town, and live in the rice-fields at certain ſeaſons, to ſecure their crops from the birds and monkies, they have occaſional houſes there for their accommodation; they are exactly the ſame as the houſes in the town, except that they are ſmaller, and are elevated eight or ten feet above the ground, inſtead of four.

The diſpoſition of the people, as far as we could diſcover it, is good. They dealt with us very honeſtly, except, like all other Indians, and the itinerant retailers of fiſh in London, they aſked ſometimes twice, and ſometimes thrice as much for their commodities as they would take. As what they brought to market belonged, in different proportions, to a conſiderable number of the natives, and it would have been difficult to purchaſe it in ſeparate lots, they found out a very eaſy expedient, with which every one was ſatisfied: they put all that was bought of one kind, as plantains or cocoanuts, together, and when we had agreed for the heap, they divided the money that was paid for it among thoſe of whoſe ſeparate property it conſiſted, in a proportion correſponding with their contributions. Sometimes, indeed, they changed our money, giving us 240 doits, amounting to five ſhillings, for a Spaniſh dollar, and ninety ſix, amounting to two ſhillings, for a Bengal rupee.

They all ſpeak the Malay language, though they have a language of their own, different both from the Malay and the Javaneſe. Their own language they called *Catta Gunung*, the Language of the Mountains; and they ſay that it is ſpoken upon the mountains of Java, whence their tribe originally migrated, firſt to New Bay, and then to their preſent ſtation, being driven from their firſt ſettlement by tigers, which they found too numerous to ſubdue. I have already obſerved, that ſeveral languages are ſpoken by the native Javaneſe, in different parts of their iſland; but when I ſay that the language of theſe people is different from the Javaneſe, I mean that it is different from the language which is ſpoken at Samarang, a place that is diſtant only one day's journey from the reſidence of the emperor

emperor of Java. The following is a liſt of correſponding words in the languages of Prince's Iſland, Java, and Malacca. 1771. January.

Engliſh.	Prince's Iſland.	Javaneſe.	Malay.
A man,	Jalma,	Oong Langan,	OranLackiLacki.
A woman,	Becang,	Oong Wadong,	Parampuan.
A child,	Oroculatacke,	Lari,	Anack.
The head,	Holo,	Undaſs,	Capalla.
The noſe,	Erung,	Erung,	Edung.
The eyes,	Mata,	Moto,	Mata.
The ears,	Chole,	Cuping,	Cuping.
The teeth,	Cutock,	Untu,	Ghigi.
The belly,	Beatung,	Wuttong,	Prot.
The backſide,	Serit,	Celit,	Pantat.
The thigh,	Pimping,	Poopoo,	Paha.
The knee,	Hullootoor,	Duncul,	Lontour.
The leg,	Metis,	Sickil,	Kauki.
A nail,	Cucu,	Cucu,	Cucu.
A hand,	Langan,	Tangan,	Tangan.
A finger,	Ramo Langan,	Jari,	Jaring.

In this ſpecimen of the languages of places ſo near to each other, the names of different parts of the body are choſen, becauſe they are eaſily obtained from people whoſe language is utterly unknown, and becauſe they are more likely to be part of the original ſtamen of the language, than any other, as types of the firſt objects to which they would give names. It is very remarkable that the Malay, the Javaneſe, and the Prince's Iſland language, have words which, if not exactly ſimilar to the correſponding words in the language of the iſlands in the South Seas, are manifeſtly derived from the ſame ſource, as will appear from the following table:

Engliſh.	South Sea.	Malay.	Javaneſe.	Pr. Iſland.
An eye,	Matta,	Mata,	Moto,	Mata.
To eat,	Maa	Macan,	Mangan,	
To drink,	Einu,	Menum,	Gnumbe,	
To kill,	Matte,	Matte,	Matte,	
A louſe,	Outou,	Coutou,		
Rain,	Euwa,	Udian,	Udan,	
Bamboo cane,	Owhe,			Awe,
A breaſt,	Eu,	Souſou,	Souſou,	
A bird,	Mannu,		Manu,	Mannuck.

A fiſh,

1771. January.

Engliſh.	South Sea.	Malay.	Javaneſe.
A fiſh,	Eyca,	Ican,	Iwa.
The foot,	Tapao,		Tapaan.
A lobſter,	Tooura,	Udang,	Urang.
Yams,	Eufwhe,	Ubi,	Urve.
To bury,	Etannou,	Tannam	Tandour.
A moſchito,	Enammou,	Gnammuck,	
To ſcratch,	Hearu,	Garru,	Garu.
Coccos roots,	Taro,	Tallas,	Talas.
In-land,	Uta,	Utan,	

This ſimilitude is particularly remarkable in the words expreſſing number, which at firſt ſight ſeems to be no inconſiderable proof, that the ſcience at leaſt of theſe different people has a common root. But the names of numbers in the iſland of Madagaſcar are, in ſome inſtances, ſimilar to all theſe, which is a problem ſtill more difficult to ſolve. That the names of numbers, in particular, are in a manner common to all theſe countries, will appear from the following comparative table, which Mr. Banks drew up, with the aſſiſtance of a negroe ſlave, born at Madagaſcar, who was on board an Engliſh ſhip at Batavia, and ſent to him to gratify his curioſity on this ſubject.

Engl.	S.Sea Iſlands.	Malay.	Javaneſe.	Fr. Iſland.	Madagaſcar.
One,	Tahie,	Satou,	Sigi,	Hegie,	Iſſe.
Two,	Rua,	Dua,	Lorou,	Dua,	Rua.
Three,	Torou,	Tiga,	Tullu,	Tollu,	Teliou,
Four,	Haa,	Ampat,	Pappat,	Opat,	Effats,
Five,	Reina,	Lima,	Limo,	Limah,	Limi,
Six,	Wheney,	Annam,	Nunnam,	Gunnap,	Ene,
Seven,	Hetu,	Tudju,	Petu,	Tudju,	Titou,
Eight,	Waru,	Delapau,	Wolo,	Delapan,	Walon,
Nine,	Iva,	Sembilan,	Songo,	Salapan,	Sivi,
Ten,	Ahouroa,	Sapoulou,	Sapoulou,	Sapoulou,	Tourou.

In the language of Madagaſcar there are other words ſimilar to words of the ſame import in the Malay. The noſe in Malay is called *Erung*, at Madagaſcar, *Ourou*; *Lida*, the tongue, is *Lala*; *Tangan*, the hand, is *Tang*; and *Tanna*, the ground, is *Taan*.

From the ſimilitude between the language of the Eaſtern Indies and the iſlands of the South-Sea, conjectures may be formed with reſpect to the peopling thoſe countries, which cannot eaſily be referred to Madagaſcar. The inhabitants of Java and Madagaſcar appear

to

to be a different race; the Javaneſe is of an olive complexion, and has long hair; the native of Madagaſcar is black, and his head is not covered with hair, but wool; and yet, perhaps, this will not conclude againſt their having common anceſtors ſo ſtrongly as at firſt appears. It does not ſeem leſs difficult to account for the perſonal difference between a native of England and France, as an effect of mere local ſituation, than for the difference between the natives of Java and Madagaſcar; yet it has never been ſuppoſed that England and France were not peopled from common anceſtors. If two natives of England marry in their own country, and afterwards remove to our ſettlements in the Weſt Indies, the children that are conceived and born there will have the complexion and caſt of countenance that diſtinguiſh the Creole; if they return, the children conceived and born afterwards will have no ſuch characteriſtics. If it be ſaid, that the mother's mind, being impreſſed with different external objects, impreſſes correſponding features and complexion upon the child during her pregnancy, it will be as difficult to refer the effect into this cauſe, upon mere phyſical principles, as in to the other; for it can no more be ſhewn how a mere idea, conceived in the mother's imagination, can change the corporeal form of her infant, than how its form can be changed by mere local ſituation. We know that people within the ſmall circle of Great Britain and Ireland, who are born at the diſtance of two or three hundred miles from each other, will be diſtinguiſhed by the Scots face, the Welſh face, and the Iriſh face; may we not then reaſonably ſuppoſe, that there are in nature qualities which act powerfully as efficient cauſes, and yet are not cognizable by any of the five modes of perception which we call ſenſes? A deaf man, who ſees the ſtring of an harpſichord vibrate, when a correſponding tone is produced by blowing into a flute at a diſtance, will ſee an effect, of which he can no more conceive the cauſe to exiſt in the blowing air into the flute, than we can conceive the cauſe of the perſonal difference of the various inhabitants of the globe to exiſt in mere local ſituation; nor can he any more form an idea of the cauſe itſelf, in one caſe, than we can in the other: what happens to him then, in conſequence

1771. January.

1771. January. ſequence of having but four ſenſes inſtead of five, may, with reſpect to many phænomena of nature, happen to us, in conſequence of having but five ſenſes inſtead of ſix, or any greater number.

Poſſibly, however, the learning of ancient Ægypt might run in two courſes, one through Africa and the other through Aſia, diſſeminating the ſame words in each, eſpecially terms of number, which might thus become part of the language of people who never had any communication with each other.

We now made the beſt of our way for the Cape of Good Hope; but the ſeeds of diſeaſe, which we had received at Batavia, began to appear with the moſt threatening ſymptoms in dyſenteries and ſlow fevers. Leſt the water which we had taken in at Prince's Iſland ſhould have had any ſhare in our ſickneſs, we purified it with lime, and we waſhed all parts of the ſhip between decks with vinegar, as a remedy againſt infection. Mr. Banks was among the ſick, and for ſome time there was no hope of his life. We were very ſoon in a moſt deplorable ſituation; the ſhip was nothing better than an hoſpital, in which thoſe that were able to go about, were too few to attend the ſick, who were confined to their hammocks, and we had almoſt every night a dead body to commit to the ſea. In the courſe of about ſix weeks we buried Mr. Sporing, a gentleman who was in Mr. Banks's retinue, Mr. Parkinſon, his natural hiſtory painter, Mr. Green, the aſtronomer, the boatſwain, the carpenter and his mate, Mr. Monkhouſe the midſhipman, who had ſothered the ſhip after ſhe had been ſtranded on the coaſt of New Holland, our old jolly ſail-maker and his aſſiſtant, the ſhip's cook, the corporal of the marines, two of the carpenter's crew, a midſhipman, and nine ſeamen; in all three-and-twenty perſons, beſides the ſeven that we buried at Batavia.

CHAP.

1771.
March.

CHAP. XVI.

Our Arrival at the Cape of Good Hope; ſome Remarks on the Run from Java Head to that Place; a Deſcription of the Cape, and of Saint Helena; with ſome Account of the Hottentots, and the Return of the Ship to England.

ON Friday the 15th of March, about ten o'clock in the morning, we anchored off the Cape of Good Hope, in ſeven fathoms, with an oozy bottom. The weſt point of the bay, called the Lion's Tail, bore W. N. W. and the caſtle S. W. diſtant about a mile and a half. I immediately waited upon the Governor, who told me, that I ſhould have every thing the country afforded. My firſt care was to provide a proper place a-ſhore for the ſick, which were not a few; and a houſe was ſoon found, where it was agreed they ſhould be lodged and boarded at the rate of two ſhillings a head per day. Friday 15.

Our run, from Java Head to this place, afforded very few ſubjects of remark that can be of uſe to future navigators: ſuch as occurred, however, I ſhall ſet down. We had left Java Head eleven days before we got the general ſouth-eaſt trade-wind, during which time we did not advance above 5° to the ſouthward, and 3° to the weſt, having variable light airs, interrupted by calms, with ſultry weather and an unwholeſome air, occaſioned probably by the load of vapours which the eaſtern trade-wind and weſterly monſoons bring into theſe latitudes, both which blow in theſe ſeas at the time of year when we happened to be there. The eaſterly wind prevails as far as 10 or 12° S. and the weſterly as far as 6 or 8°; in the intermediate ſpace the winds are variable, and the air, I believe, always unwholeſome: it certainly aggravated the diſeaſes which we brought with us from Batavia, and particularly the flux, which was not in the leaſt degree checked by any medicine, ſo that whoever was ſeized with it conſidered himſelf as a dead man; but we had no ſooner got into the trade-wind, than we began to feel its ſalutary effects: we buried, indeed, ſeveral of our people afterwards,

1771. March. wards, but they were ſuch as had been taken on board in a ſtate ſo low and feeble, that there was ſcarcely a poſſibility of their recovery. At firſt we ſuſpected that this dreadful diſorder might have been brought upon us by the water that we took on board at Prince's Iſland, or even by the turtle that we bought there; but there is not the leaſt reaſon to believe that this ſuſpicion was well grounded; for all the ſhips that came from Batavia, at the ſame ſeaſon, ſuffered in the ſame degree, and ſome of them even more ſeverely, though none of them touched at Prince's Iſland in their way.

A few days after we left Java, we ſaw boobies about the ſhip for ſeveral nights ſucceſſively; and as theſe birds are known to rooſt every night on ſhore, we thought them an indication that ſome iſland was not far diſtant; perhaps it might be the iſland of Selam, which in different charts, is very differently laid down both in name and ſituation.

The variation of the compaſs off the weſt coaſt of Java is about 3° W. and ſo it continued, without any ſenſible variation, in the common track of ſhips, to the longitude of 288° W. latitude 22° S. after which it increaſed apace, ſo that in longitude 295°, latitude 23°, the variation was 10° 20′ W. In ſeven degrees more of longitude, and one of latitude, it increaſed two degrees. In the ſame ſpace, farther to the weſt, it increaſed five degrees; in latitude 28°, longitude 314°, it was 24° 20′; in latitude 29°, longitude 317°, it was 26° 10′, and was then ſtationary for the ſpace of about ten degrees farther to the weſt; but in latitude 34°, longitude 333°, we obſerved it twice to be 28° $\frac{1}{4}$ W. and this was its greateſt variation; for in latitude 35° $\frac{1}{2}$, longitude 337°, it was 24°, and continued gradually to decreaſe; ſo that off Cape Anguillas it was 22° 30′ and in Table Bay 20° 30′ W.

As to currents, it did not appear that they were at all conſiderable, till we came within a little diſtance of the meridian of Madagaſcar; for after we had made 52° of longitude from Java Head, we found, by obſervation, that our error in longitude was only two degrees, and it was the ſame when we had made only nineteen. This error might be owing partly to a current ſetting to the weſtward, partly to our not making proper

proper allowances for the ſetting of the ſea before which we run, and perhaps to an error in the aſſumed longitude of Java Head. If that longitude is erroneous, the error muſt be imputed to the imperfection of the charts of which I made uſe in reducing the longitude from Batavia to that place; for there can be no doubt but that the longitude of Batavia is well determined. After we had paſſed the longitude of 307°, the effects of the weſterly currents began to be conſiderable; for in three days our error in longitude was 10 5′. The velocity of the current kept increaſing, as we proceeded to the weſtward, inſomuch that for five days ſucceſſively, after we made the land, we were driven to the S. W. or S. W. by W. not leſs than twenty leagues a day; and this continued till we were within ſixty or ſeventy leagues of the Cape, where the current ſet ſometimes one way, and ſometimes the other, though inclining rather to the weſtward. 1771. March.

After the boobies had left us, we ſaw no more birds till we got nearly a-breaſt of Madagaſcar, where, in latitude 27° ¾ S. we ſaw an albatroſs, and after that time we ſaw them every day in great numbers, with birds of ſeveral ſorts, particularly one about as big as a duck, of a very dark brown colour, with a yelloviſh bill. Theſe birds became more numerous as we approached the ſhore, and as ſoon as we got into ſoundings we ſaw gannets, which we continued to ſee as long as we were upon the bank which ſtretches off Anguillas to the diſtance of forty leagues, and extends along the ſhore to the eaſtward, from Cape Falſe, according to ſome charts, one hundred and ſixty leagues. The real extent of this bank is not exactly known; it is, however, uſeful as a direction to ſhipping when to haul in, in order to make the land.

While we lay here the Houghton Indiaman ſailed for England, who, during her ſtay in India, loſt by ſickneſs between thirty and forty men, and when ſhe left the Cape had many in a helpleſs condition with the ſcurvy. Other ſhips ſuffered in the ſame proportion, who had been little more than twelve months abſent from England: our ſufferings, therefore, were comparatively light, conſidering that we had been abſent near three times as long.

Having

1771. April. Having lain here to recover the ſick, procure ſtores, and perform ſeveral neceſſary operations upon the ſhip and rigging, till the 13th of April, I then got all the ſick on board, ſeveral of whom were ſtill in a dangerous ſtate, and, having taken leave of the Governor, I unmoored the next morning, and got ready to ſail.

Saturd. 13.

Sunday 14.

The Cape of Good Hope has been ſo often deſcribed, and is ſo well known in Europe, that I ſhall mention only a few particulars, which in other relations are omitted or miſrepreſented.

Notwithſtanding all that has been ſaid to the contrary, no country that we ſaw during the voyage makes a more forlorn appearance, or is in reality a more ſterile deſart. The land over the Cape, which conſtitutes the peninſula formed by Table Bay on the north, and Falſe Bay on the ſouth, conſiſts of high mountains, altogether naked and deſolate: the land behind theſe to the eaſt, which may be conſidered as the iſthmus, is a plain of vaſt extent, conſiſting almoſt wholly of a light kind of ſea-ſand, which produces nothing but heath and is utterly incapable of cultivation. All the ſpots that will admit of improvement, which together bear about the ſame proportion to the whole as one to one thouſand, are laid out in vineyards, orchards, and kitchen grounds; and moſt of theſe little ſpots lie at a conſiderable diſtance from each other. There is alſo the greateſt reaſon to believe, that in the interior parts of this country, that which is capable of cultivation does not bear a greater proportion to that which is incorrigibly barren; for the Dutch told us, that they had ſettlements eight-and-twenty days journey up the country, a diſtance equal to at leaſt nine hundred miles, from which they bring proviſions to the Cape by land; ſo that it ſeems reaſonable to conclude, that proviſions are not to be had within a leſs compaſs. While we were at the Cape, a farmer came thither from the country, at the diſtance of fifteen days journey, and brought his young children with him. We were ſurpriſed at this, and aſked him, if it would not have been better to have left them with his next neighbour? Neighbour! ſaid the man, I have no neighbour within leſs than five days journey of me. Surely the country muſt be deplorably barren, in which thoſe who

ſettle

ſettle only to raiſe proviſions for a market, are diſperſed at ſuch diſtances from each other. That the country is every where deſtitute of wood appears to demonſtration; for timber and planks are imported from Batavia, and fuel is almoſt as dear as food. We ſaw no tree, except in plantations near the town, that was ſix feet high; and the ſtems, that were not thicker than a man's thumb, had roots as thick as an arm or a leg; ſuch is the influence of the winds here to the diſadvantage of vegetation, ſetting the ſterility of the ſoil out of the queſtion. 1771. April.

The only town which the Dutch have built here is, from its ſituation, called Cape Town, and conſiſts of about a thouſand houſes, neatly built of brick, and in general whited on the outſide; they are, however, covered only with thatch, for the violence of the ſouth-eaſt winds would render any other roof inconvenient and dangerous. The ſtreets are broad and commodious, all croſſing each other at right angles. In the principal ſtreet there is a canal, on each ſide of which is planted a row of oaks, that have flouriſhed tolerably well, and yield an agreeable ſhade; there is a canal alſo in one other part of the town, but the ſlope of the ground in the courſe of both is ſo great, that they are furniſhed with flood-gates, or locks, at intervals of little more than fifty yards.

A much greater proportion of the inhabitants are Dutch in this place than in Batavia; and as the town is ſupported principally by entertaining ſtrangers, and ſupplying them with neceſſaries, every man, to a certain degree, imitates the manners and cuſtoms of the nation with which he is chiefly concerned. The ladies, however, are ſo faithful to the mode of their country, that not one of them will ſtir without a chaudpied, or chauffet, which is carried by a ſervant, that it may be ready to place under her feet whenever ſhe ſhall ſit down. This practice is the more remarkable, as very few of theſe chauffets have fire in them, which indeed the climate renders unneceſſary.

The women in general are very handſome; they have fine clear ſkins, and a bloom of colour that indicates a purity of conſtitution, and high health. They make the beſt wives in the world, both as miſtreſſes of a

1771. April. family and mothers; and there is ſcarcely a houſe that does not ſwarm with children.

The air is ſalutary in a high degree, ſo that thoſe who bring diſeaſes hither from Europe, generally recover perfect health in a ſhort time; but the diſeaſes that are brought from India are not ſo certainly cured.

Notwithſtanding the natural ſterility of the climate, induſtry has ſupplied this place with all the neceſſaries, and even the luxuries of life, in the greateſt profuſion. The beef and mutton are excellent, though the cattle and ſheep are natives of the country; the cattle are lighter than ours, more neatly made, and have horns that ſpread to a much wider extent. The ſheep are cloathed with a ſubſtance between wool and hair, and have tails of an enormous ſize; we ſaw ſome that weighed twelve pounds, and were told that there were many much larger. Good butter is made of the milk of the cows, but the cheeſe is very much inferior to our own. Here are goats, but they are never eaten; hogs, and a variety of poultry; hares are alſo found there, exactly like thoſe of Europe; antelopes of many kinds, quails of two ſorts, and buſtards, which are well flavoured, but not juicy. The fields produce European wheat and barley, and the gardens European vegetable, and fruit of all kinds, beſides plantains, guavas, jambu, and ſome other Indian fruits, but theſe are not in perfection; the plantains in particular are very bad, and the guavas no larger than gooſeberries. The vineyards alſo produce wine of various ſorts, but not equal to thoſe of Europe, except the Conſtantia, which is made genuine only at one vineyard, about ten miles diſtant from the town. There is another vineyard near it, where wine is made that is called by the ſame name, but it is greatly inferior.

The common method in which ſtrangers live here, is to lodge and board with ſome of the inhabitants, many of whoſe houſes are always open for their reception: the rates are from five ſhillings to two ſhillings a day, for which all neceſſaries are found. Coaches may be hired at four-and-twenty ſhillings a day, and horſes at ſix ſhillings; but the country affords very little temptation to uſe them. There are no public entertainments: and thoſe that are private, to which ſtrangers

ſtrangers of the rank of Gentlemen are always admitted, were ſuſpended while we were there by the breaking out of the meaſles. 1771. April.

At the farther end of the High-ſtreet the company have a garden, which is about two thirds of an Engliſh mile long; the whole is divided by walks, that interſect each other at right angles, and are planted with oaks that are clipped into wall hedges, except in the centre walk, where they are ſuffered to grow to their full ſize, and afford an agreeable ſhade, which is the more welcome, as, except the plantations by the ſides of the two canals, there is not a ſingle tree that would ſerve even for a ſhepherd's buſh, within many miles of the town. The greater part of this garden is kitchen ground; but two ſmall ſquares are allotted to botanical plants, which did not appear to be ſo numerous by one half as they were when Odenland wrote his catalogue. At the farther end of the garden is a menagerie, in which there are many birds and beaſts that are never ſeen in Europe, particularly a beaſt called by the Hottentots Coe Doe, which is as large as a horſe, and has the fine ſpiral horns which are ſometimes ſeen in private and public collections of curioſities.

Of the natives of this country we could learn but little, except from report; for there were none of their habitations, where alone they retain their original cuſtoms, within leſs than four days journey from the town; thoſe that we ſaw at the Cape were all ſervants to Dutch farmers, whoſe cattle they take care of, and are employed in other drudgery of the meaneſt kind. Theſe are in general of a ſlim make, and rather lean than plump, but remarkably ſtrong, nimble, and active. Their ſize is nearly the ſame with that of Europeans, and we ſaw ſome that were ſix feet high; their eyes are dull, and without expreſſion; their ſkins are of the colour of ſoot, but that is in a great meaſure cauſed by the dirt, which is ſo wrought into the grain that it cannot be diſtinguiſhed from the complexion; for I believe they never waſh any part of their bodies. Their hair curls ſtrongly, not like a negroe's but falls in ringlets about ſeven or eight inches long. Their cloathing conſiſts of a ſkin, generally that of a ſheep, thrown over their ſhoulders; beſides which the men wear

1771. April. a ſmall pouch in the middle of the waiſt, and the women, a broad leather flap, both which hang from a girdle or belt that is adorned with beads and ſmall pieces of copper. Both men and women wear necklaces, and ſometimes bracelets, of beads; and the women wear rings of hard leather round their ancles, to defend them from the thorns, with which their country every where abounds: ſome of them have a ſandal, made of wood or bark; but the greater part of them are unſhod.

To a European, their language appears to be ſcarcely articulate; beſides which it is diſtinguiſhed by a very remarkable ſingularity. At very frequent intervals, while they are ſpeaking, they cluck with the tongue againſt the roof of the mouth: theſe clucks do not appear to have any meaning, but rather to divide what they ſay into ſentences. Moſt of theſe Hottentots ſpeak Dutch, without any peculiarity of pronunciation.

They are all modeſt, even to ſheepiſhneſs; for it was not without the greateſt difficulty that we could perſuade any of them to dance, or even to ſpeak in their own language to each other, in our preſence. We did however both ſee them dance, and hear them ſing; their dances are by turns active and ſluggiſh to exceſs; ſometimes conſiſting of quick and violent motions, with ſtrange diſtortions of the body, and unnatural leaps backwards, and forwards, with the legs croſſing each other; and being ſometimes ſo ſpiritleſs that the dancer only ſtrikes the ground firſt with one foot, and then with the other, neither changing place nor moving any other part of his body: the ſongs alſo are alternately to quick and ſlow movement, in the ſame extremes as the dance.

We made many inquiries concerning theſe people of the Dutch, and the following particulars are related upon the credit of their report:

Within the boundaries of the Dutch ſettlements there are ſeveral nations of theſe people, who very much differ from each other in their cuſtoms and manner of life: all however are friendly and peaceable, except one clan that is ſettled to the eaſtward, which the Dutch call Boſch men, and theſe live entirely by plunder, or rather

rather by theft; for they never attack their neighbours openly, but ſteal the cattle privately in the night. They are armed however to defend themſelves, if they happen to be detected, with lances or aſſagays, and arrows, which they know how to poiſon by various ways; ſome with the juice of herbs, and ſome with the venom of the ſerpent called Cobra di Capelo. In the hands of theſe people a ſtone is alſo a very formidable weapon; for they can throw it with ſuch force and exactneſs as repeatedly to hit a dollar at the diſtance of an hundred paces. As a defence againſt theſe freebooters, the other Indians train up bulls, which they place round their towns in the night, and which, upon the approach of either man or beaſt, will aſſemble and oppoſe them, till they hear the voice of their maſters encouraging them to fight, or calling them off, which they obey with the ſame docility as a dog. 1771. April.

Some nations have the art of melting and preparing copper, which is found among them, probably native, and of this they make broad plates, which they wear as ornaments upon their foreheads. Some of them alſo know how to harden bits of iron, which they procure from the Dutch, and form into knives, ſo as to give them a temper ſuperior to that of any they can buy.

The Chiefs, many of whom are poſſeſſors of very numerous herds of cattle, are generally clad in the ſkins of lions, tygers, or zebras, to which they add fringes, and other ornaments, in a very good taſte. Both ſexes frequently anoint the body with greaſe, but never uſe any that is rancid or fœtid, if freſh can be had. Mutton ſuet and butter are generally uſed for this purpoſe; butter is preferred, which they make by ſhaking the milk in a bag made of the ſkin of ſome beaſt.

We were told that the prieſt certainly gives the nuptial benediction by ſprinkling the bride and bridegroom with his urine. But the Dutch univerſally declared, that the women never wrapped the entrails of ſheep round their legs, as they have been ſaid to do, and afterwards make them part of their food. Semicaſtration was alſo abſolutely denied to be general; but it was acknowledged that ſome among the particular nation which knew how to melt copper had ſuffered that operation,

1771. April. ration, who were ſaid to be the beſt warriors, and particularly to excel in the art of throwing ſtones.

We were very deſirous to determine the great queſtion among natural hiſtorians, whether the women of this country have or have not that fleſhy flap or apron which has been called the Sinus pudoris, and what we learned I ſhall relate. Many of the Dutch and Malays, who ſaid they had received favours from Hottentot women, poſitively denied its exiſtence; but a phyſician of the place declared that he had cured many hundreds of venereal complaints, and never ſaw one without two fleſhy, or rather ſkinny appendages, proceeding from the upper part of the Labia, in appearance ſomewhat reſembling the teats of a cow, but flat; they hung down, he ſaid, before the Pupendum, and were in different ſubjects of different lengths, in ſome not more than half an inch, in others three or four inches: theſe he imagined to be what ſome writers have exaggerated into a flap, or apron, hanging down from the bottom of the abdomen, of ſufficient extent to render an artificial covering of the neighbouring parts unneceſſary.

Thus much for the country, its productions, and inhabitants. The bay is large, ſafe, and commodious; it lies open indeed to the north-weſt winds, but they ſeldom blow hard; yet as they ſometimes ſend in a great ſea, the ſhips moor N. E. and S. W. ſo as to have an open hawſer with north-weſt winds: the ſouth-eaſt winds blow frequently with great violence; but as this direction is right out of the bay, they are not dangerous. Near the town a wharf of wood is run out to a proper diſtance for the convenience of landing and ſhipping goods. To this wharf water is conveyed in pipes, from which ſeveral boats may fill water at the ſame time; and ſeveral large boats or hoys are kept by the Company to carry ſtores and proviſions to and from the ſhipping in the harbour. The bay is defended by a ſquare fort, ſituated cloſe to the beach on the eaſt ſide of the town, and by ſeveral outworks and batteries extending along the ſhore, as well on this ſide of the town as the other; but they are ſo ſituated as to be cannonaded by ſhipping, and are in a manner defenceleſs againſt an enemy of any force by land. The garriſon

conſiſts

conſiſts of eight hundred regular troops, beſides militia of the country, in which is comprehended every man able to bear arms. They have contrivances to alarm the whole country by ſignals in a very ſhort time, and the militia is then to repair immediately to the town. 1771. April.

The French at Mauritius are ſupplied from this place with ſalted beef, biſcuit, flour, and wine: the proviſions for which the French contracted this year were 500,000lb. weight of ſalt beef, 400,000lb. of flour, 400,000lb. of biſcuit, and 1,200 leagers of wine.

In the morning of the 14th we weighed and ſtood out of the bay; and at five in the evening anchored under Penquin, or Robin Iſland: we lay here all night, and as I could not ſail in the morning for want of wind, I ſent a boat to the iſland for a few trifling articles which we had forgot to take in at the Cape. But as ſoon as the boat came near the ſhore, the Dutch hailed her, and warned the people not to land at their peril, bringing down at the ſame time ſix men armed with muſquets, who paraded upon the beach. The officer who commanded the boat not thinking it worth while to riſk the lives of the people on board for the ſake of a few cabbages, which were all we wanted, returned to the ſhip. At firſt we were at a loſs to account for our repulſe, but we afterwards recollected, that to this iſland the Dutch at the Cape baniſh ſuch criminals as are not thought worthy of death, for a certain number of years, proportioned to the offence; and employ them as ſlaves in digging limeſtone, which though ſcarce upon the continent is plenty here: and that a Daniſh ſhip which by ſickneſs had loſt great part of her crew, and had been refuſed aſſiſtance at the Cape, came down to this iſland, and ſending her boat a-ſhore, ſecured the guard, and took on board as many of the criminals as ſhe thought proper to navigate her home: we conclude therefore that the Dutch, to prevent the reſcue of their criminals in time to come, had given orders to their people here to ſuffer no boat of any foreign nation to come a-ſhore. Sunday 14.

On the 25th, at three o'clock in the afternoon, we weighed, with a light breeze at S. E. and put to ſea. Thurſd. 25.

About

1771. April. About an hour afterwards we loſt our Maſter, Mr. Robert Mollineux, a young man of good parts, but unhappily given up to intemperance, which brought on diſorders that put an end to his life.

We proceeded in our voyage homeward without any Monday 29. remarkable incident; and in the morning of the 29th we croſſed our firſt meridian, having circumnavigated the globe in the direction from eaſt to weſt, and conſequently loſt a day, for which we made an allowance at Batavia.

May. Wedneſ. 1. At day-break, on the 1ſt of May, we ſaw the iſland of St. Helena; and at noon we anchored in the road before James's fort.

We ſtayed here till the 4th, to refreſh, and Mr. Banks improved the time in making the complete circuit of the iſland, and viſiting the moſt remarkable places upon it.

It is ſituated, as it were, in the middle of the vaſt Atlantic ocean, being four hundred leagues diſtant from the coaſt of Africa, and ſix hundred from that of America. It is the ſummit of an immenſe mountain riſing out of the ſea, which, at a little diſtance all round it, is of an unfathomable depth, and is no more than twelve leagues long and ſix broad.

The ſeat of volcanoes has, without exception, been found to be the higheſt part of the countries in which they are found. Ætna and Veſuvius have no land higher than themſelves in their neighbourhood; Hecla is the higheſt hill in Iceland; volcanoes are frequent in the higheſt part of the Andes, in South America; and the Pike of Teneriffe is known to be the covering of ſubterraneous fire; theſe are ſtill burning, but there are innumerable other mountains which bear evident marks of fire that is now extinct, and has been ſo from the time of our earlieſt traditions: among theſe is Saint Helena, where the inequalities of the ground, in its external ſurface, are manifeſtly the effect of the ſinking of the earth; for the oppoſite ridges, though ſeparated always by deep, and ſometimes by broad vallies, are exactly ſimilar both in appearance and direction; and that the ſinking of the earth in theſe parts was cauſed by ſubterraneous fire, is equally manifeſt from the ſtones; for ſome of them, eſpecially

cially thoſe in the bottom of the vallies, are burnt almoſt to a cinder: in ſome there are ſmall bubbles, like thoſe that are ſeen in glaſs which has been urged almoſt to fuſion, and ſome, though at firſt ſight they do not appear to have been expoſed to the action of great heat, will be found, upon a cloſer inſpection, to contain ſmall pieces of extraneous bodies, particularly mundick, which have yielded to the power of fire, tho' it was not ſufficient to alter the appearance of the ſtone which contained them. 1771. May.

It appeared, as we approached it on the windward ſide, like a rude heap of rocks, bounded by a precipice of amazing height, and conſiſting of a kind of half friable ſtone, which ſhews not the leaſt ſign of vegetation, nor is it more promiſing upon a nearer view: in ſailing along the ſhore, we came ſo near the huge cliffs, that they ſeemed to over-hang the ſhip, and the tremendous effect of their giving way made us almoſt fear the event: at length we opened a valley, called Chapel Valley, which reſembles a large trench; and in this valley we diſcovered the town. The bottom of it is ſlightly covered with herbage, but the ſides are as naked as the cliffs that are next the ſea. Such is the firſt appearance of the iſland in its preſent cultivated ſtate, and the firſt hills muſt be paſſed before the vallies look green, or the country diſplays any other marks of fertility.

The town ſtands juſt by the ſea ſide, and the far greater part of the houſes are ill built; the church, which originally was a mean ſtructure, is in ruins, and the market-houſe is nearly in the ſame condition.

The white inhabitants are all Engliſh, who, as they are not permitted by the Eaſt India Company, to whom the iſland belongs, to carry on any trade or commerce on their own account, ſubſiſt wholly by ſupplying ſuch ſhips as touch at the place with refreſhments, which, however, they do not provide in proportion to the fertility of the ſoil, and the temperament of the climate, which would enable them by cultivation to produce all the fruits and vegetables both of Europe and India. This iſland indeed, ſmall as it is, enjoys the different advantages of different climates; for the cabbage-trees, which grow upon the higheſt ridges, can by no art be cultivat-

1771. May. ed upon the ridges next below, where the red-wood and gum-wood both flouriſh, which will not grow upon the ridges above, and neither of the three are to be found in the vallies, which in general are covered with European plants, and the more common ones of India.

Here are a few horſes, but they are kept only for the ſaddle, ſo that all labour is performed by ſlaves; nor are they furniſhed with any of the various machines which art has invented to facilitate their taſk. The ground is not every where too ſteep for a cart, and where it is, the wheel-barrow might be uſed with great advantage, yet there is no wheel-barrow in the whole iſland; every thing is conveyed from place to place by the ſlaves, and they are not furniſhed even with the ſimple convenience of a porter's knot, but carry their burthen upon their heads. They are indeed very numerous, and are brought from almoſt every part of the world; but they appeared to be a miſerable race, worn out partly by exceſſive labour, and partly by ill uſage, of which they frequently complained; and I am ſorry to ſay, that inſtances of wanton cruelty are much more frequent among my countrymen here, than among the Dutch, who are, and perhaps not without reaſon, generally reproached with want of humanity at Batavia and the Cape.

Among the native products of this iſland, which are not numerous, muſt be reckoned ebony, tho' the trees are now nearly extinct, and are not remembered to have been plenty: pieces of wood are frequently found in the vallies, of a fine black colour, and a hardneſs almoſt equal to iron; theſe pieces, however, are always ſo ſhort and crooked, that no uſe can be made of them. Whether the tree is the ſame with that which produces ebony upon the Iſle of Bourbon or the iſlands adjacent, is not known, as the French have not yet publiſhed any account of it.

There are but few inſects in this place; but there is a ſpecies of ſnail found upon the tops of the higheſt ridges, which probably has been there ſince the original creation of their kind at the beginning of the world. It is indeed very difficult to conceive how any thing which was not depoſited here at its creation, or brought hither by the diligence of man, could find its way to a place ſo ſevered from the reſt of the world, by ſeas of immenſe extent,

extent, except the hypotheſis that has been mentioned on another occaſion be adopted, and this rock be ſuppoſed to have been left behind, when a large tract of country, of which it was part, ſubſided by ſome convulſion of nature, and was ſwallowed up in the ocean. 1771. May.

At one o'clock in the afternoon of the 4th of May, we weighed and ſtood out of the road, in company with the Portland man-of-war and twelve ſail of Indiamen. Saturd. 4.

We continued to ſail in company with the fleet, till the 10th in the morning, when, perceiving that we ſailed much heavier than any other ſhip, and thinking it for that reaſon probable that the Portland would get home before us, I made the ſignal to ſpeak with her; upon which Captain Elliot himſelf came on board, and I delivered to him a letter from the Admiralty, with a box, containing the common log-books of the ſhip, and the journals of ſome of the officers. We continued in company, however, till the 23d in the morning, and then there was not one of the ſhips in ſight. About one o'clock in the afternoon, died our Firſt Lieutenant, Mr. Hicks, and in the evening we committed his body to the ſea, with the uſual ceremonies. The diſeaſe of which he died was a conſumption; and as he was not free from it when he ſailed from England, it may be truly ſaid that he was dying during the whole voyage, tho' his decline was very gradual till we came to Batavia: the next day, I gave Mr. Charles Clerk an order to act as lieutenant in his room, a young man who was extremely well qualified for that ſtation. Friday 10. Thurſd. 23. Friday 24.

Our rigging and ſails were now become ſo bad, that ſomething was giving way every day. We continued our courſe, however, in ſafety till the 10th of June, when land, which proved to be the Lizard, was diſcovered by Nicholas Young, the ſame boy that firſt ſaw New Zealand; on the 11th we run up the channel, at ſix in the morning of the 12th we paſſed Beachy Head, at noon we were a-breaſt of Dover, and about three came to an anchor in the Downs, and went a-ſhore at Deal. June. Monday 10. Tueſday 11. Wedneſ. 12.

FINIS.

2 JY 61